



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

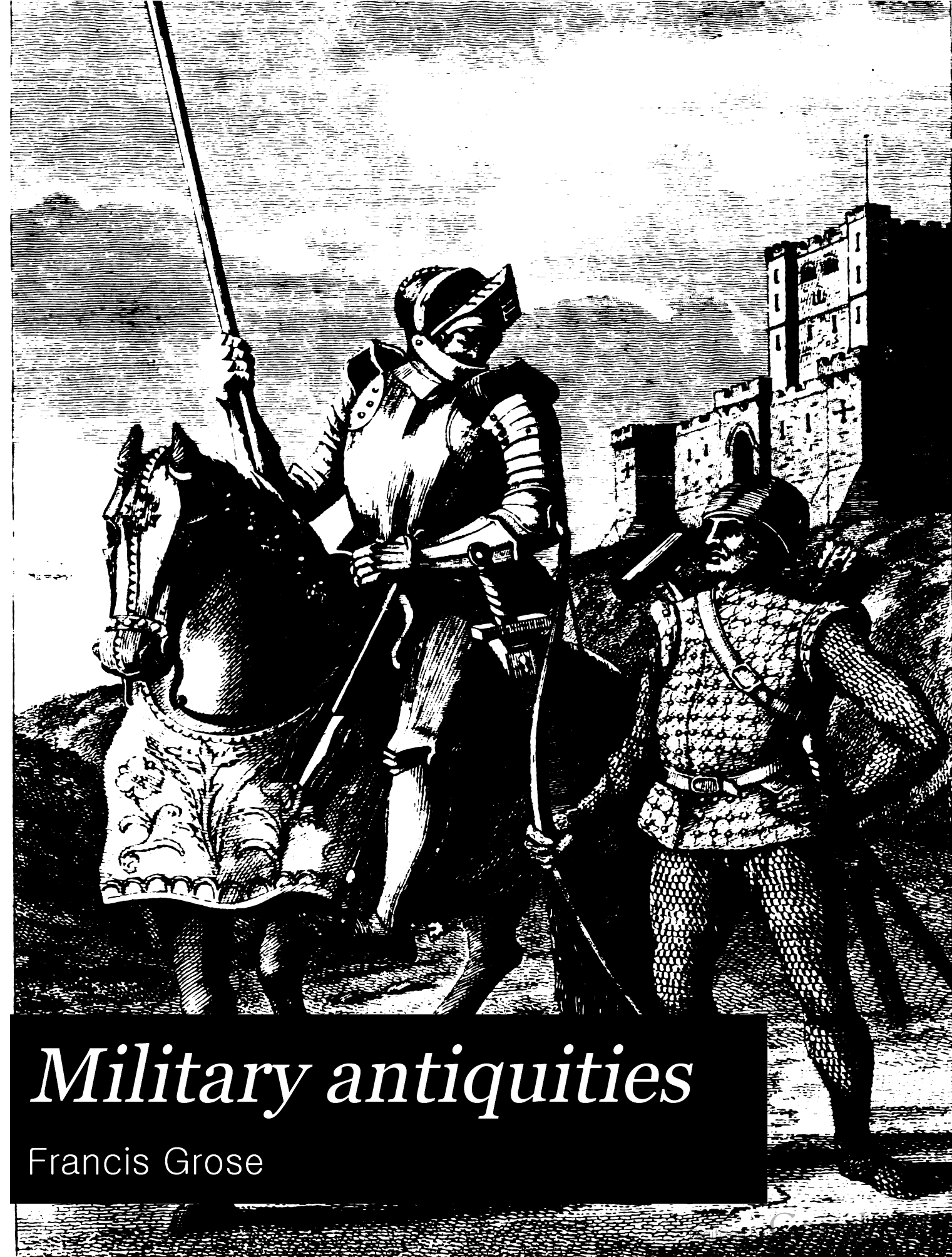
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



# *Military antiquities*

Francis Grose



M 254.



TAYLOR INSTITUTION

BEQUEATHED

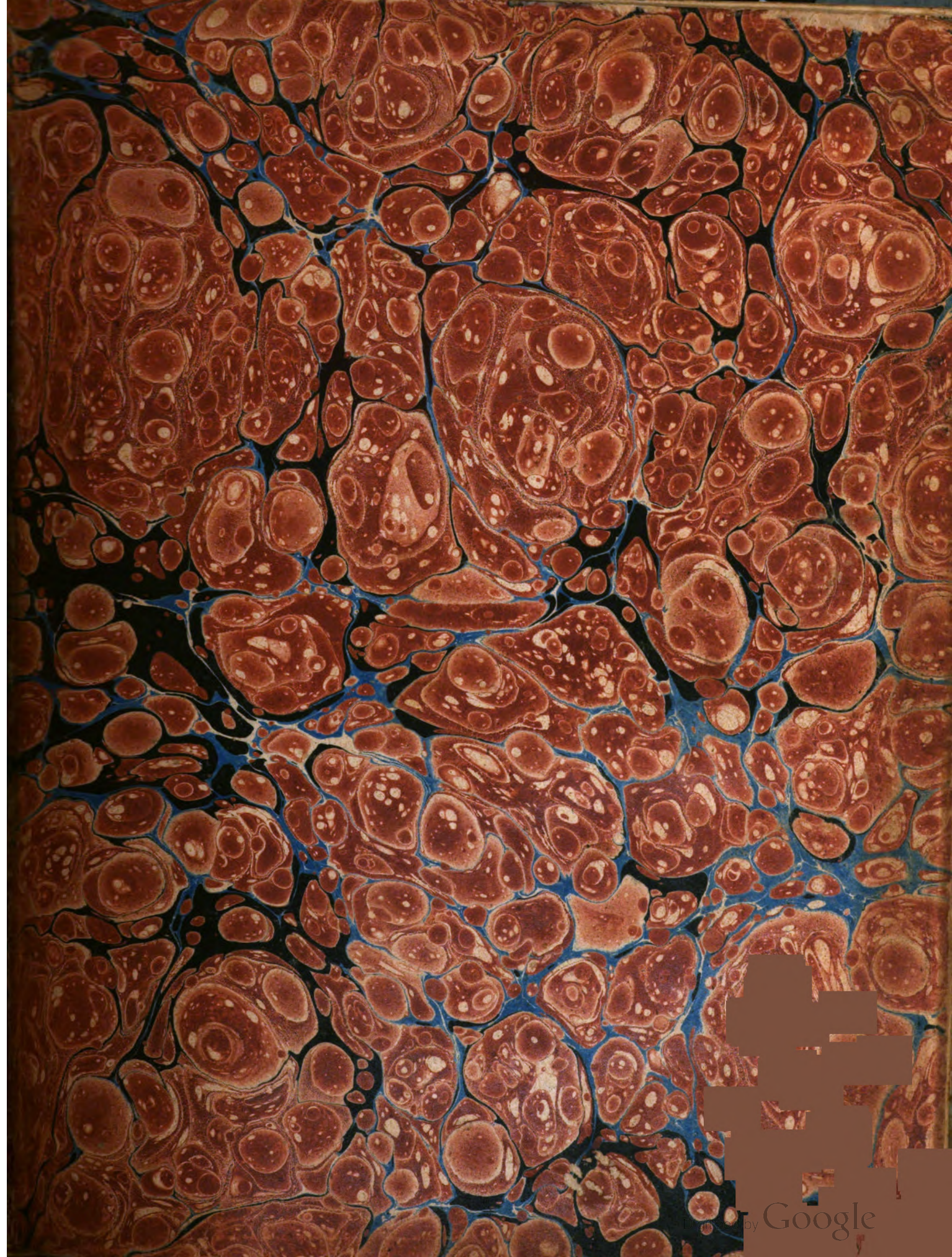
TO THE UNIVERSITY

BY

ROBERT FINCH, M. A.

OF BALLIOL COLLEGE.







23167

d.

82









## FRONTISPIECE.



*A Man at Arms in Plate Armour mounted on a Barded Horse, and an Archer,  
with his Bow, Arrows, & Wooden Mallet.*

MILITARY  
ANTIQUITIES  
RESPECTING  
A HISTORY

OF

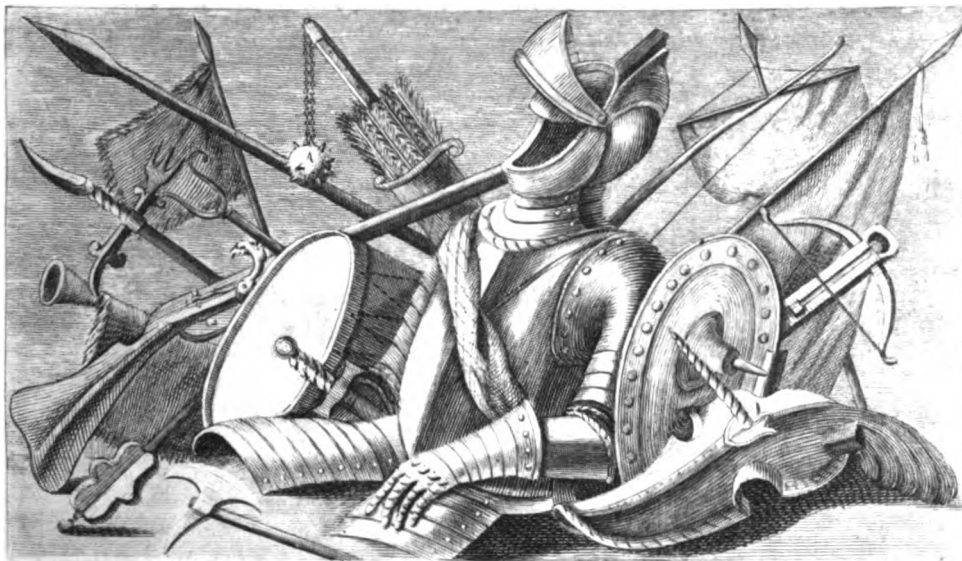
*THE ENGLISH ARMY,*

FROM

THE CONQUEST TO THE PRESENT TIME.

By Francis Grose Esq. F. A. S.

*A new Edition with material additions & improvements.*



VOL. I.

London. Printed for T. Egerton, Whitehall; & G. Kearsley, Fleet Street.

1801.



# P R E F A C E

TO THIS EDITION.

---

*THESE Military Antiquities respecting a History of the English Army first appeared in 1786. The former edition was received by the Public as one of those works of rare merit which claim a place in every well-selected library; and for some time past the booksellers' shops have been without a copy. This new edition, it may be hoped, will not be less acceptable, at a time when the minds of men have a greater tendency towards such investigations, and when the military spirit of the nation, now revived, burns with as much ardour as in the days of chivalry under our princes of the Norman race, or the Plantagenets.*

*It is not, however, to professional men only that this Work will be found valuable. It cannot less interest the curiosity of the general reader, as it tends greatly to illustrate our history; and indeed affords to historians themselves a copious fund of information.*

*The antiquities collected by the Author on this subject take a still wider range. They are not merely confined to Britain, but relate, in a great measure, to the military system of a considerable part of Europe for several centuries. Nor is this History, as far as it particularly respects England, the annals of an army of a secondary rate, nor of a service eclipsed by the superior brilliancy and utility of another: it is the History of an Army which, at several æras, held a pre-eminent rank among the European nations, and scarcely at any time was inferior to those of its most warlike neighbours.*

*Mr. GROSE, the Author of this History (though his diffidence would not allow him to give it that title,) was peculiarly qualified for such a work. He had entered the army early in life, and had served successively in the Cavalry, the Infantry, and the Militia. He was adjutant and paymaster of his last regiment, had officiated often as deputy judge advocate, and besides being an excellent draughtsman, had considerable know-*

*[Printed by T. Davison,  
Whitefriars.]*

A

ledge as an engineer. His industry in the pursuit of his object was indefatigable; and his profound knowledge of antiquities has been sufficiently proved by former publications. He had been the greatest part of his life collecting the materials for these volumes; and he had free access to the repositories of our antient and modern weapons, armour, and ordnance. Though at the close of his work he modestly intimates a wish that some person of greater ability would take up the subject, it does not appear that there is, or has been, any one more able to do it justice\*.

The principal defect of the last edition was the want of arrangement and method, which caused a certain degree of confusion, and made the work seem void of chronological order. This the Editor has endeavoured to remedy in the present edition, by a division of the whole into distinct chapters. Some errors, which will unavoidably find their way into every original work, have been corrected; and the history, which in no part reached later than 1785, has been brought down to the present year, 1800.

It was not the wish of the Editor to add to the Author's researches into antiquities, which are already so ample.

The period between the year when the Author left off, and that to which the work is now brought, is but a short one; yet in those fifteen years our military institutions have undergone very material changes. Where the New Regulations partake too much of detail, the Reader, after some slight notice in the text, will often find them in the Appendix: and to this part of the Book the Editor has thought it proper to assign some articles, that were rather too prolix in the last Edition. Some other parts are compressed, the Editor trusts, without injury to the Author, and he is sure with advantage to the Reader.

This compression has enabled the Publisher to add to the Work the Treatise on Antient Armour and Weapons, which was written about the same time by the Author; so that both are now comprehended in Two Quarto Volumes.

The following Advertisement was prefixed by the Author to the First Edition.

---

\* FRANCIS GROSE, Esq. the author of these volumes, of the Antiquities of England and Wales, &c. died at Dublin, in an apoplectic fit, on the 12th of May, 1791, in the 52d year of his age.

## ADVERTISEMENT.

---

**T**HE design of this Work being to give an historical and chronological detail of the different constituent parts of the English Army, from the conquest to the present time, with the various changes they have successively undergone; for the sake of method, they will be arranged, and considered under the following heads:

A BRIEF account of the Anglo-Saxon Army before the battle of Hastings. The general outlines of that part of the feudal system which respects military service, instituted by William I. The constitutional force of this kingdom shortly after the Norman invasion, with the subsequent regulations relative thereto. Of stipendiary or mercenary troops. Of troops, provision, and munition, levied by the Royal Prerogative.

THE modes of summoning the military tenants. The forms of assembling the posse comitatus. Of embodying and arming the clergy. Commission of array. Methods of engaging for troops by



indenture, and other occasional expedients practised for levying foldiers in cafes of emergency.

THE different kinds of troops of which our armies have from time to time been compofed. Their arms offensive and defensive, the divifion of the antient forces into troops and companies, the number and denomination of their officers, with the fucceffive alterations to the prefent time.

THE general, field and ftaff officers of different ranks. The antient manner of muftering the troops, and appreciating the horfes of the cavalry, with the prices allowed for them.

THE pay of the officers and foldiers at different periods. Clothing, quarters, castrametation, colours, ftandards, and military mufic; exercife, evolutions and manœuvres.

ARTILLERY. The antient machines ufed for projecting darts and ftones, their construction, power, and ranges. The machines impelled by human force. Thofe contrived for covering troops employed in a fieve. The Greek fire and other artificial fireworks. Gunpowder, with an investigation of the time when and by whom it was invented. Proportions obferved at different times in the materials of which it is compounded. The invention of cannons and mortars, with their improvements. The introduction of hand-guns of different forts and denominations.

FORTIFICATION. The antient manner of attack and defence of

## ADVERTISEMENT.

towns, forts, and castles, before the use of gunpowder ; alterations and improvements since that invention. Mines and infernals.

ADMINISTRATION of justice, and the various manners of trying military delinquents. The military laws and ordonnances of different reigns. Observations on the present articles of war. Military rewards and punishments.

THE laws and customs respecting prisoners of war, their parole, and ransom.

THESE are the different articles under which the author proposes to conduct his enquiry ; an undertaking it must be confessed of no small magnitude ; but as the due execution of it will depend more on industry than genius, he flatters himself a degree of patience and application, a great liking for the subject, and many years practical experience in divers branches of it, will enable him to complete his undertaking, if not in a manner equal to his wishes, at least so as to escape the accusation of temerity for the attempt ; and he farther hopes that his endeavours may excite some more able writer to take up the subject.

IT may be necessary to observe, that although the number of references to customs and usages observed in France, brought as proofs of like practices in England, may at first sight be deemed incompetent evidence ; yet when it is considered that the Conqueror would, undoubtedly, with the feudal system, introduce all the other Norman customs into his English army ; and when we recollect the intimate

connection that long subsisted between the two nations, and that most of our great barons were formerly possessed of estates and fiefdoms in both countries, with the number of French troops that served in the English armies, this objection will vanish, and the propriety of the introduction become apparent. Indeed the similarity of military usages was not confined to France and England; the number of different nations assembled by the crusades could not fail of making the military customs, arms, machines, and discipline, pretty much alike throughout Europe.

As many records and other authorities are recited in support of assertions, in which the mere word of the Author ought not to be taken as sufficient proof, such of them as cannot be conveniently inserted in the notes, will be placed at the end of the second volume, under the title of Appendix.

## CONTENTS OF THIS VOLUME.

---

	PAGE
CHAP. I. <i>OF the Military Establishment under the Feudal System</i>	4
II. <i>Of the Formation, Progress, and present Establishment,           of the National Militia</i>	20
III. <i>Of the Supplementary Militia</i>	54
IV. <i>Of the regular stipendiary Forces</i>	57
V. <i>Of the different Kinds of Troops; their Arms, offensive           and defensive; their Organization and Appoint-           ments</i>	100
VI. <i>Of the Method of arranging and mustering the Troops</i>	178
VII. <i>Of the Staff, Field, and Regimental Officers of different           Ranks; with the successive Alterations to the present           Time</i>	190
VIII. <i>Of the Pay of the English Armies</i>	271
IX. <i>Of the Clothing of the Troops</i>	323
X. <i>Of Quarters</i>	339
XI. <i>Of Field Exercise and Tactics</i>	349
XII. <i>Of Military Machines and Artillery</i>	366

## DIRECTIONS FOR PLACING THE CUTS.

	PAGE
<b>NORMAN Soldiers</b> - - - - -	101
<b>A Horseman's Arms, Armour, and Accoutrements</b> - - - - -	105
<b>Antient Dragoon</b> - - - - -	111
<b>Horse-Guard—Light Dragoon</b> - - - - -	112
<b>Officer of Pike-Men</b> - - - - -	132
<b>A Man at Arms in Plate-Armour, and an Archer (as a Frontispiece)</b> - - - - -	140
<b>Crosse Bowe</b> - - - - -	148
<b>A Soldier, armed with a Caliver</b> - - - - -	156
<b>Infantry</b> - - - - -	161
<b>An Officer and Serjeant of a Highland Regiment</b> - - - - -	164
<b>Highland Soldiers</b> - - - - -	166
<b>A Piper of a Highland Regiment</b> - - - - -	168
<b>A Yeoman of the Guard</b> - - - - -	176
<b>Double-armed Man, 2 Plates</b> - - - - -	354
<b>Exercise of the Pike, 4 Plates</b> - - - - -	356
<b>Exercise of the Musketeers, 5 Plates</b> - - - - -	359
<b>Musket and Halbert Exercise, 2 Plates</b> - - - - -	360
<b>Standing and Marching Salutes, 3 Plates</b> - - - - -	362
<b>Exercise of the Horse, 6 Plates</b> - - - - -	365
<b>Antient Artillery, 4 Plates</b> - - - - -	367
<b>Onager</b> - - - - -	381
<b>Machines for throwing Darts and Stones</b> - - - - -	382
<b>Pavifors and a moveable Tower</b> - - - - -	385
<b>Artillery, 4 Plates</b> - - - - -	398
<b>The Partridges</b> - - - - -	400
<b>Pierriers, or Pattateros</b> - - - - -	402
<b>Carts of War, 2 Prints</b> - - - - -	407
<b>The Petard</b> - - - - -	408
<b>The Infernal</b> - - - - -	410

# HISTORY

OF

## *THE ENGLISH ARMY.*

---

**A**LTHOUGH in the following work I propose to commence my investigations from the period immediately succeeding the Norman invasion, it will throw some light on the subject, briefly to describe the military establishment of the Anglo-Saxons, at, and about the time of that event.

By the Saxon laws, every freeman of an age capable of bearing arms, and not incapacitated by any bodily infirmity, was, in case of a foreign invasion, internal insurrection, or other emergency, obliged to join the army, that being one of the three services comprised under the title of the *trinoda necessitas*; these were, attending personally in war for the defence of the nation, working at, and con-

VOL. I.

B



tributing to the building of the public castles and fortresses, and repairing bridges and highways.

IN forming their armies the following regulations were observed: all such as were qualified to bear arms in one family, were led to the field by the head of that family. Every ten families made a tything, which was commanded by the borsholder, in his military capacity styled conductor. Ten tythings constituted an hundred; the foldiers of each hundred were led by the chief magistrate of the hundred, sometimes called the hundredary. Several hundreds formed a trything (a), which was commanded by the officer called a trything-man; and the force of the county or shire was commanded by the hertoch, dux or duke, and he by the king or an officer called the kynings hold, *i. e.* the king's lieutenant or general, which office lasted only during the war. In times of peace, or when the king did not think it necessary to have a general, the militia remained under the command of the dukes of each county.

EVERY landholder was obliged to keep armour and weapons according to his rank and possessions; these he might neither sell, lend, nor pledge, nor even alienate from his heirs. In order to instruct them in the use of arms, they had their stated times for performing their military exercise; and once in a year, usually in the spring, there was a general review of arms, throughout each county.

THE clergy were exempted from personal military services, not only as being contrary to their profession, but likewise that they might the better attend to their religious duties. Their estates,

(a) CORRUPTLY in Yorkshire called a ryding, from the similarity of sound; the east, north, and west ridings, really meaning the east, north, and west trythings.

THIS officer was elected by the hundred, at their public court, where they met armed, and every member, as a token of his obedience, touched the weapon of the hundredary; whence these courts were called *wapentakes*, a name still kept up in Yorkshire.

though held in franc almoigne, were however chargeable to the *trioda necessitas*, the only imposition to which they were liable.

THE greater part of the Anglo-Saxon forces consisted of infantry; the cavalry was chiefly composed of the *Thanes*, and such men of property as kept horses.

THE Saxon cavalry are frequently delineated in ancient illuminations as riding without stirrups, with no other defensive armour than a helmet; their weapon a spear. It is nevertheless certain, that defensive armour was worn by their officers and great men about the time of the Norman conquest.

THEIR infantry seem to have been of two sorts, the heavy and light armed. The first are represented with helmets made of the skins of beasts, the hair outwards; large oval convex shields, with spikes projecting from the bosses; long and very broad swords, and spears. The light infantry with spears only, and some no other weapon than a sword, besides which, different histories relate that they also used clubs, battle-axes, or bills, and javelins; the latter they darted with great dexterity, and then instantly came to close fight. The dress of both horse and foot was a tunic with sleeves, the skirts reaching down to the knees: the horsemen wore spurs with only one point.

THE kings commonly wore their crowns in battle, which also in some measure answered the purpose of a helmet.

THE Anglo-Saxon mode of drawing up their armies was in one large dense body, surrounding their standard, and placing their foot with their heavy battle-axes in the front.

By the laws of King Edward the Confessor, any man who from cowardice abandoned his lord, or fellow-soldiers, whilst under the command of the hertoch, in any expedition by land or sea, forfeited both his life and property, and his lord might resume any lands he had formerly granted him. Of him who was slain in war-fighting before his lord, either at home or abroad, all payments due for reliefs on his estates were remitted to his heirs, who were to enjoy his lands and money without any diminution, and might divide it among them.

## CHAPTER I.

*Of the Military Establishment under the Feudal System.*

THE introduction of the feudal system, which took place in this kingdom about the year 1086, gave a very considerable change to the military establishment of the nation. This alteration in the constitution was not, it is said, effected by the sole power of King William, but was adopted with the consent of the great council of the realm, assembled at Sarum, where all the principal land-holders subjected their possessions to military services, became the king's vassals and did homage, and swore fealty to his person for the lands held of him as superior lord and original proprietor. But when it is considered, that the great land-holders at that meeting were most of them Normans, the friends and followers of the king, on whom he had bestowed the estates taken from the English; the suffrage of such an assembly, though freely obtained, will scarce justify the measure being deemed a national choice.

By this system all the lands of the realm were considered as divided into certain portions, each producing an annual revenue, styled a knight's fee. Our ancient lawyers are not agreed as to the quantity of land or sum of money of which it consisted; it indeed seems to have varied at different periods: however in the reigns of Henry II. and Edward II. a knight's fee was stated at 20l. per annum; the number of knights' fees in this kingdom was estimated at sixty thousand.

By the feudal law, every tenant in capite, that is, every person holding immediately from the king the quantity of land amounting

to a knight's fee, was bound to hold himself in readiness, with horse and arms, to serve the king in his wars, either at home or abroad, at his own expence, for a stated time, generally forty days in a year (d), to be reckoned from the time of joining the army. Persons holding more or less, were bound to do duty in proportion to their tenures; thus, one possessed of but half a fee, was to perform service for twenty days only (e). The lands of the church were not exempt, but ecclesiastics were generally indulged with performing their service by deputies. Although sometimes their personal appearance was insisted on, possibly from a supposition that their presence with the army would give a confidence to the soldiers, and a sanction to the cause, effects not unlikely in those days of superstition; or perhaps the instance here particularly alluded to, was occasioned by some new contrivance of the clergy, to avoid the performance of their military services, by calling a convocation (f).

---

(d) OMNES comites et barones, et milites, et servientes, et universi liberi homines totius regni nostri prædicti, habeant & teneant se semper bene in armis et in equis, ut decet et oportet: et sint semper prompti et bene parati ad servitium suum integrum nobis explendum et peragendum cum opus fuerit; secundum quod nobis debent de fœdis et tenementis suis de jure facere; et sicut illis statuimus per commune concilium totius regni nostri prædicti. Cap. 58, Wilk. 228.

(e) KNIGHTS' fees were often divided into many parts, some tenants in chief holding only a fourth, or an eighth part; and an instance occurs of a tenant in capite, enfeoffed after the death of Henry I. who had only one twentieth. These small tenancies are supposed to have arisen from the desire of holding in chief of the crown, though by ever so small a fief, on account of the honour and superior protection annexed to that tenure.

(f) AN instance of this happened in the 41st of Hen. III. as appears by the following writ, printed in Rymer's *Fœdera*, which, as it seems extremely singular, is here given at length. Rex H. Linc. Episcopo salutem. Cum pro exercitu nostro, cum quo tendimus ad partes Cestrie contra Wallenses inimicos nostros, vos et omnes alios prælatos & magnates regni nostri fecerimus summoneri, ad eundem nobiscum cum toto servitio suo, nobis debito, pro defensione terræ nostræ contra prædictos Wallenses. Et archiepiscopos Cantuariensis quondam convocationem episcoporum fieri fecit London, in octabri assumptionis Beatæ

THE service being accomplished, the tenant was at liberty to return home; if he or his followers afterwards continued to serve with the army, they were paid by the king: certificates from the constable or marshal were sometimes required, in proof that a knight had duly performed his service.

If a tenant in capite, or knight, could not perform his service in person, through sickness, being a minor, or any other cause, he obtained leave to send some able person in his stead, an indulgence for which it was often necessary to fine to the king; a fine being in the language of those days, not only an amercement for an offence, but also the price of a favour. Our records afford several instances, wherein feudal tenants unable to bear arms, were by proclamation directed to find unexceptionable persons to perform their services for them (g).

Beatæ Mariæ ut audivimus; quæ quidem convocatio, aut alii tractatus vel concilia, nobis existentibus & agentibus in exercitu nostro, fieri non debent, eo quo singuli, *tam prelati quam alii in propriis personis venire debeant* ad defensionem coronæ et regni nostri, & per absentiam eorundem grave nobis & terræ nostræ periculæ posset imminire; inhibuimus districtè præfato archiepiscopo, ne dictam convocationem faciat, sed convocationem illam, dum fuerimus in exercitu nostro, revocat & suspendat.

UNDE sub debiti fidelitatis qua nobis tenemini & forisfactura terrarum & tenementorum, quæ in regno nostro tenetis, vobis districtè prohibemus ne ad convocationem hujusmodi, dum fuerimus in exercitu nostro, accedere præsumatis, sed ad nos versus Walliam pro defensionem nostra et terræ nostræ contra prædictos Wallenses sine moræ dispendie veniatis, servitium vestrum nobis debitum *personaliter* impensuri, ne pro defectu vestri, exheredationem perpetuam patiamur. Teste meipso apud Wodest. 19 die Julii.

EODUM modo mandatum est aliis episcopis Cantuar. provinciæ in Anglia existentibus.

ET mandatum est officialibus episcoporum ejusdem provinciæ agentium in partibus transmarinis, quod ad convocationem prædictam non accedant, sed sub amissione omnium terrarum dominorum suorum mittent regia servitia, quæ domino suo regi debent.

(g) A. D. 1294, 22d Ed. I. that king granted a commission to the bishop of Bath and Wells, appointing him, with the barons of the exchequer, to receive fines to his use, according to their direction, from archbishops, bishops, abbots, priors, and other religious and ecclesiastical persons, ladies, widows, and other women, in lieu of military service

## THE ENGLISH ARMY.

7

As a tenant who held several knights' fees could not do the service of more than one in his person, he might discharge the others by able substitutes being knights, or by two esquires, sometimes styled *fervientes*, in lieu of each knight (h).

SOMETIMES the king compounded with his tenants for particular services, and sometimes for those of the whole year, accepting in lieu thereof pecuniary payments, with which he hired stipendiary troops: this is generally supposed to have introduced the practice of levying scutages, first begun by King Henry II. (i). The punishment

---

service in the present expedition to Gascony. Rymer. And anno 1303, 31st of the same reign, that king having summoned his feudal tenants to assemble at Berwick, in order to go against the Scots, commanded the sheriffs to proclaim publicly, that such prelates, or women, as were willing to pay fines in lieu of personal service, should come before the barons of the exchequer, the morrow of the Ascension of our Lord next ensuing, or sooner if possible, at York, or send some one for them, in order to fine for their said services, there to pay at the rate of 20l. for one knight's fee, otherwise to attend and perform their services. See Rymer in anno.

(h) In the reign of Edward I. the bishop of Hereford did his services for five knights' fees, by two knights, and six esquires, each knight being estimated equal to two esquires. *Madox Baron.* l. 1, c. 5, p. 9.

(i) THE other ancient levies were in the nature of a modern land-tax, for we may trace the original of that charge as high as the introduction of our military tenures; when every tenant of a knight's fee was bound, if called upon, to attend the king in his army for forty days in every year. But this personal attendance growing troublesome in many respects, the tenants found means of compounding for it, by first sending others in their stead, and in process of time, by making a pecuniary satisfaction to the crown in lieu of it. This pecuniary satisfaction at last came to be levied by assessments, at so much every knight's fee, under the name of scutages: which appear to have been levied for the first time in the fifth year of Henry II. on account of his expedition to Thoulouse, and were then (I apprehend) mere arbitrary compositions, as the king and the subject could agree; but this precedent being afterwards abused into a means of oppression, by levying scutages on the landholders by the royal authority only, whenever our kings went to war, in order to hire mercenary troops, and pay their contingent expences; it became therefore a matter of national complaint, and King John was obliged to promise in his magna charta,



for non-attendance, when duly summoned, was a heavy fine (k) or forfeiture of the tenure (l).

THE tenants in capite, in order to find substitutes for those fees for which they could not serve themselves, made under-grants to their favourites and dependents, liable to the same conditions as those on which they held them from the crown, namely fealty and homage, and that their tenant should attend them to the wars, when they should be called upon by the king, there to serve for a stated time at their own expence, properly armed and mounted: these again had their under-tenants and vassals. Men at arms, or knights, were generally attended by their tenants and vassals, both on horseback and on foot; these served in the infantry either as archers or bill-men.

THE constitutional military force of England, soon after the conquest, consisted of the feudal troops and the posse comitatus.

THE feudal troops were either the persons who held lands in capite (m), that is immediately of the crown; or their vassals and

charta, that no scutage should be imposed without the consent of the common council of the realm. This clause was indeed omitted in the charters of Henry III. where we only find it stipulated, that scutages shall be taken as they were used to be in the time of King Henry II. yet afterwards by a variety of statutes under Edward I. and his grandson, it was provided, that the king shall not take any aids or tasks, any talliage or tax, but by the common assent of the great men and commons in parliament. *Blackstone's Commentaries*, vol. 1, p. 299, octavo.

(k) AN hundred marks was the fine imposed on two defaulters of this kind. William de Hastings, and William bishop of Winchester, the first in the reign of Richard I. the second in the 30th of Henry III. See *Madox's History of the Exchequer*.

(l) MATHEW TURPIN was disseised of his land and serjeantry in Wanterlow, because he was not in the king's service beyond sea. Mag. Rot. 1st of John, Rot. 13, f. Wilts. And Duncan de Locals was disseised of three knights' fees and a half, for non-attendance in Scotland. Mag. Rot. 12, John 2. b. Many other instances occur in our records.

(m) BY the statute of the 11th of Henry VIII. every person bearing an office, fee, or annuity of the king's grant, was bound to attend him personally whenever he went himself to the wars (except certain privileged persons mentioned in the act, or such as had the king's licence, or were prevented by some just cause), on pain to forfeit such office, fee, and annuity.

under-tenants, both of whom were, as has before been observed, obliged by their tenures to attend the king and their lords to the wars, at home or abroad, completely armed and mounted, for forty days in a year, or according to the value of the fees held by them.

THE posse comitatus, or power of the county, included every free man above the age of fifteen, and under that of sixty, and although the chief destination of this establishment was to preserve the peace under the command of the sheriff, they were also, in case of hostile invasions, called out to defend the country, and repel the enemy (n). The posse comitatus differed from the feudal troops in this; they were only liable to be called out in case of internal commotions, or actual invasions, on which occasions only they could legally be marched out of their respective counties, and in no case out of the kingdom (o); whereas the feudal troops were subject to foreign service at the king's pleasure. That this body of men might be ready to take the field, the following law was enacted by Henry II. A. D. 1181, in the 27th year of his reign; which was in substance similar to that mentioned in treating of the military establishment before the battle of Hastings.

WHOSOEVER holds one knight's fee shall have a coat of mail, a helmet, a shield and a lance; and every knight as many coats of

(n) HE (the sheriff) is also to defend his county against any of the king's enemies, when they come into the land, and for that purpose, as well as for the keeping of the peace and pursuing of felons, he may command all the people of his county to attend him; which is called the posse comitatus, or power of the county; which summons every person above fifteen years old, and under the degree of a peer, is bound to attend upon warning, under pain of fine and imprisonment. *Blackstone's Commentaries*, vol. I. p. 332. 8vo.

(o) ITEM le Roy voet deformes nul soit charge de soi armer, autrement quil ne soleit en temps de ces auncestres Roys d' Engleterre. Et que nul soient distreintz daler hors de leur countez, si non par cause de necessite de sodeyne venue des estraunges enemys en roialme et adonques soit fait come ad este fait avant ces heures par defens du roialme. Stat. 1. Ed. 3d. cap. 5.

mail (p), helmets, shields, and lances, as he shall have knights' fees in his domain.

EVERY free layman having in chattels or rent to the value of sixteen marks, shall keep a coat of mail, a helmet, a shield, and a lance.

EVERY free layman who shall have in chattels or rent ten marks, shall have a habergon (q), a chapelet of iron, and a lance.

ALSO all burgeses and the whole community of freemen shall have a wambais (r), a chaplet of iron, and a lance.

EVERY one of these (before-mentioned) shall swear that he will have these arms before the feast of St. Hilary, and will bear fealty to King Henry, to wit, the son of the Empress Matilda; and that he will keep these arms for his service according to his command, and with fidelity to our lord the king and his realm: and no man having these arms shall sell, pledge, nor lend them, nor alienate them in any other manner; nor shall the lord take them from his vassal by forfeiture, gift, pledge, or any other manner.

ON the death of any one having these arms, they shall remain to his heir; and if the said heir is not of such age as to be able to use arms, they shall, if necessary, be put into the custody of him who has the guardianship of his person, who shall provide a man to use them in the service of our lord the king, if required, until the heir shall be of proper age to bear arms, and then they shall be delivered to him.

ANY burges having more arms than he is by this assize required

(p) LORICA. A coat of mail either composed of ringlets of iron or small plates like scales, sewed on leather, so as to lap over each other.

(q) HALBERGELLUM et capelet ferri. The halbergellum or haubergeon was a small coat, composed either of plate or chain mail, without sleeves; the chaplet an iron scull cap, commonly without visor or bever.

(r) WAMBAIS, &c. Doublets composed of many folds of linen, stuffed with cotton, wool, or hair, and commonly covered with leather.

to have, shall sell or give them, or so alienate them, that they may be retained for the service of our lord the king of England; and none of them shall keep more arms than he is by this assize bound to have.

No Jew shall have in his custody a coat of mail or habergeon, but shall sell or give it away, or in some other manner so dispose of it, that it shall remain in the king's service.

Also, no man shall carry arms out of the kingdom, unless by the command of our lord the king, nor shall any man sell arms to another, who means to carry them out of the kingdom.

By other parts of this law, it was directed, that juries should be appointed in the hundreds and boroughs of every county, to discover who had chattels or rent to the value expressed therein; on which inquest no person who had not chattels to the value of sixteen marks, or ten at least, was to serve. The king's justices in their circuits were required to enrol the names of the jurors, and of those who should be found to have chattels or rents to the value above mentioned, after which they were to cause this assize to be publicly read, and all the persons concerned were to be sworn to observe it in all points.

AND if it happened that any one of those who ought to have these arms was not in his county at the time the justices were there, they were directed to appoint another time and county for his appearance; and if he did not come to them in any of the counties through which they passed, they were in that case to appoint him a time at Westminster, at the octaves of St. Michael, then to attend and take his oath, as he loved himself and all that belonged to him; and he was likewise to be commanded to have, before the feast of St. Hilary, arms such as he was by law bound to possess.

Also the justices were enjoined to cause it to be notified over all the counties through which they were to pass, that those who had not these arms as aforesaid, the king would punish corporally in their limbs, and not in their goods, their lands, or chattels.

Also none might act as jurors respecting legal and freemen, who hath not sixteen marks in land, or ten marks in chattels.

Also the justices to command in all the counties by which they should pass, that no one as he loved himself, and all that belonged to him, should buy or sell any ship, to be taken out of England; and the king commanded that none but a freeman should be admitted to take the oath of arms.

THIS regulation, or assize, received a farther corroboration, by the statute of the 13th of King Edward I. called the statute of Winchester, by which every man was bound to provide and keep armour and weapons, according to his estate or goods.

THE armour and weapons directed by the statute of Winchester, to be kept by persons of different possessions, were thus allotted: every one possessed of lands to the yearly value of fifteen pounds, and forty marks in goods, to keep a haubergeon, an iron headpiece, a sword, knife, and horse. Those having from ten and under fifteen pounds in lands and chattels, or the value of forty marks, the same as the preceding class, the horse excepted. Persons having an hundred shillings per annum in land, and upwards, were to keep a doublet, a headpiece of iron, a sword, and a knife. And from forty shillings annual rent in land, and upwards, to one hundred, a sword, bow and arrows, and a knife. He that had under forty shillings in land, was sworn to keep faulchions, gisarmes, daggers, and other small arms. Persons possessing less than twenty marks in chattels, to have swords, daggers, and other inferior weapons; and all others authorized to keep bows and arrows, might have them out of the forests. A review of these arms was to be made twice a-year, by two constables out of every hundred, who were to report defaulters to the justices, and they were to present them to the king in parliament. This statute was repealed in the first of Philip and Mary, and another enacted, wherein armour and weapons of more modern date were inserted.

By that act it was provided that all temporal persons, having estates of a thousand pounds or upwards, should from the 1st of May, 1588, keep six horses or geldings fit for mounting demi-lances, three of them at least to have sufficient harness, steel sad-

dles (s) and weapons requisite and appertaining to the said demi-lances, horses or geldings; and ten light horses or geldings, with the weapons and harness requisite for light-horsemen; also forty corselets furnished (t), forty almaine rivetts (u), or instead of the said forty almaine rivetts, forty coats of plate (x), corselets or brigandines (y) furnished; forty pikes, thirty long bowes, thirty sheafs of arrowes (z), thirty steele cappes or sculles (a), twenty black bills (b) or halberts, twenty haquebuts (c), and twenty morians (d), or fallets (e).

(s) SADDLES whose burts or bowe were covered with steel.

(t) THE corselet was a species of armour chiefly worn by pikemen, who were thence often denominated corselets; strictly speaking, the word corselet meant only that part which covered the body, but was generally used to express the whole suit, under the term of a corselet furnished or complete; this included the head-piece and gorget, the back and breast, with skirts of iron called tasses or tassets covering the thighs.

(u) ALMAINE rivetts were probably coats of armour made flexible by means of rivetts, invented in or imported from Germany.

(x) COATS of plate were made of thin plates of iron.

(y) BRIGANDINES took their name from the troops by whom they were first worn, these were called Brigans; they were a kind of light-armed irregular foot, much addicted to plunder, frequently mentioned by Froissart: from their irregularities, the appellation of brigands was used in common to signify all sorts of freebooters. The brigandine was composed of a number of small plates of iron sewed upon quilted linen or leather through a small hole in the center of each plate, their edges laid over each other, like tiles or the scales of a fish. These scales were covered over with leather or cloth, so as to have the appearance of common coats; they were proof against the stroke of a sword, or push of a pike, and yet extremely pliable to every motion of the body.

(z) A SHEAF contained twenty-four arrows.

(a) THE scull was a head-piece resembling a bowl, or a bason.

(b) A BLACK bill was a species of halbert, not commonly kept bright, whence they were called black and sometimes brown bills.

(c) HAQUEBUT, a hand-gun, called haque or hook-but, from its stock being hooked or bent.

(d) A MORION was commonly an open helmet without visor or beaver, worn by the harquebusiers and musketeers; Guillim says, it took its name of morion from being commonly worn by the Moors.

(e) SALLETS or celates were head-pieces without crests, sometimes having a visor, and sometimes without one.

TEMPORAL persons having estates to the value of 1000 marks and upwards, and under the clear yearly value of 1000l. to maintain four horses or geldings for demi-launces, whereof two, at the least, to be horses; with sufficient weapons, saddles, meete and requisite to the said demi-launces; six light horses, with furniture, &c. necessary for the same, thirty corselets furnished, thirty almaine rivetts, or in lieu thereof, thirty coats of plate, corselets, or brigandines furnished; thirty pikes, twenty long bowes, twenty sheafs of arrowes, twenty steel caps or sculls, ten black bills or halberts, ten haquebuts and ten morians or fallets.

EVERY temporal person having 400l. per annum, and under the clear yearly value of 1000 marks, to keep two horses, or one horse and one gelding; for light horses, twenty corselets furnished, twenty almaine rivetts furnished, or instead thereof, twenty coats of plate, corselets, or brigandines furnished; twenty pikes, fifteen long bowes, fifteen sheafs of arrowes, fifteen steel caps, or sculls, six haquebuts, and six morians, or fallets.

TEMPORAL persons having clear 200l. per annum, and under 400l. per annum, one great horse or gelding fit for a demi-launce, with sufficient furniture and harness, steeled saddle, &c. two geldings for light horse, with harness and weapons as aforesaid: ten corselets furnished, ten almaine rivetts, or instead thereof, ten coats of plate, corselets, or brigandines furnished, ten pikes, eight long bows, eight sheafs of arrowes, eight steel caps or sculls, three haquebuts, and three morians or fallets.

EVERY temporal person, &c. having 100l. or under 200l. per annum, two geldings and furniture, &c. for light horsemen, three corselets furnished, three almaine rivetts, corselets or brigandines furnished, three long pikes, three bowes, three sheafs of arrowes, three steel caps or sculls, two haquebuts, and two morians or fallets.

TEMPORAL persons having 100 marks and under 100l. per annum, one gelding and furniture for a light horseman, two corselets fur-

nished, two almaine rivetts, coats of plate or brigandines furnished, two pikes, two long bowes, two sheafs of arrowes, two steel caps, or sculls, one haquebut, one morian or fallet.

TEMPORAL persons having 40l. or under 100 marks per annum, two corselets furnished, two almaine rivetts, corselets or brigandines furnished; two pikes, one long bowe, one sheaf of arrowes, one steel cap or scull, two haquebuts, two morians or fallets.

PERSONS having 20l. and under 40l. per annum, one corselet furnished, one pike, one haquebut, one morain or fallet, one long bowe, one sheaf of arrowes, and one steel cap or scull.

TEMPORAL persons having 10l. and under 20l. per annum, one almaine rivett, a coat of plate or brigandine furnished, one haquebut, one morian or fallet, and one long bowe, one sheaf of arrowes, and one steel cap or scull.

TEMPORAL persons having 5l. and under 10l. per annum, one coat of plate furnished, one black bill or halbert, one long bowe, and one sheaf of arrowes, steel cap or scull.

TEMPORAL persons having goods and chattels to the amount of 1000 marks, one horse or gelding furnished for a demi-launce, one gelding furnished for a light-horseman, or eighteen corselets furnished, instead of the said horse and gelding, and furniture of the same, at their choice; two corselets furnished, two almaine rivetts, or instead thereof two corselets or two brigandines furnished, two pikes, four long bowes, four sheafs of arrowes, four steel caps or sculls, and three haquebuts, with three morains or fallets.

TEMPORAL persons having goods, &c. to the amount of 400l. and above, and under 1000 marks, one gelding for a light-horseman, properly furnished, or instead thereof nine corselets furnished at his choice, and one other corselet furnished; one pike, two almaine rivetts, or plate coates, or brigandines furnished, one haquebut, two long bowes, two sheafs of arrowes, and two steel caps or sculls.

GOODS, &c. to the amount of 200l. and upwards, and under 400l. one corselet furnished, one pike, two almaine rivetts, plate coats, or



brigandines furnished ; one haquebut, one morian or fallet, two long bowes, two sheafs of arrowes, and two scull or steel caps.

Goods, &c. to the amount of 100l. or above, and under 200l. one corselet furnished, one pike, one pair of almaine rivetts, one plate coat, or pair of brigandines furnished, two long bowes, and two sheafs of arrowes and two sculls.

Goods, &c. to the amount of 40l. and under 100l. two pair of almaine rivetts, or two coats of plate or brigandines furnished, one long bowe, one sheaf of arrowes, one steel cap or one scull, and one black bill or halbert.

Goods, &c. to the amount of 20l. and upwards, and under 40l. one pair of almaine rivetts, or one coat of plate, or one pair of brigandines, two long bowes, two sheafs of arrowes, two sculls or steel caps, and one black bill or halbert.

Goods, &c. to the amount of 10l. and above, and under 20l. one long bowe, one sheaf of arrowes, with one steel cap or scull, and one black bill or halbert.

TEMPORAL persons not charged by this act, having annuities, copyholds, or estate of inheritance to the clear yearly value of 30l. or upwards, to be chargeable with furniture of war, according to the proportion appointed for goods and chattels.

AND every person, who by the act of the 33d of King Hen. VIII. cap. 5. was bound by reason, that his wife should wear such kind of apparell, or other thing, as in the same statute is mentioned and declared, to keepe or find one great stoned trotting horse, viz. Every person temporall, whose wife (not being divorced nor willingly absenting herself from him) doth weare any gowne of silke, French hood, or bonet of velvet, with any habiliment, past, or edge of golde, pearle, or stone, or any chaine of golde about her necke, or in her partlet, or in any apparell of her body, except the sonnes and heirs apparent of dukes, marquises, earles, viconts, and barons, and others having hereditaments to the yearly value of 600 marks or above, during the life of their fathers; and wardes having hereditaments of

the yearly value of 200*l.* and who are not by this act before charged, to have, maintaine, and keep any horse or gelding; shall from the said 1<sup>st</sup> of May, have, keep, and maintaine, one gelding, able and meete for a light-horseman, with sufficient harness and weapon for the same, in such manner and forme, as every person having lordships, houses, lands, &c. the clear yearly value of 100 marks is appointed to have.

ANY person chargeable by this act, who for three whole months from the 1<sup>st</sup> of May, shall lack or want the horses or armour, with which he is charged, shall forfeit for every horse or gelding in which he is deficient, ten pounds: for every demi-launce and furniture, three pounds; for every corselet and furniture of the same, forty shillings; and for every almaine rivet, coat of plate, or brigandine and furniture of the same, twenty shillings; and for every bow and sheaf of arrows, bill, halbert and hacquebut, steel cap, scull, morian, and fallet, ten shillings, one half of these forfeitures to the king and queen, the other half to the parties suing for the same.

THE inhabitants of all cities, burroughs, towns, parishes, &c. other than such as are specially charged before in this act, shall keep and maintain at their common charges, such harness and weapons as shall be appointed by the commissioners of the king and queen, to be kept in such places as shall, by the said commissioners, be appointed.

INDENTURES to be made of the numbers and kinds thereof, between two or more of the said commissioners, and twelve, eight, or four, of the principal inhabitants of every such city, burrough, &c. &c. one part to remain with the chief officer of the said city, &c. and the other part with the clerk of the peace of the county.

AND if any of the inhabitants shall be deficient for three months in any of the articles directed to be found, they shall forfeit for every article according to the proportion before mentioned, to be applied and levied as there directed.

THE lord chancellor for the time being shall have full power to grant commissions under the great seal of England, to as many justices of every shire or county as he shall deem necessary, for making this appointment of horses and armour. This act not to invalidate

any covenant between a landlord and his tenant for finding of horses, armour, or weapons.

THE justices of every county are hereby authorized to make search and view from time to time of and for the horses, armour, &c. to be kept by persons possessed of 200l. per ann. and not above 400l. per ann. or to be found by persons chargeable on account of their goods, chattels, &c. as aforesaid, and to hear and determine at their quarter sessions every default committed or done, contrary to this act, within the county, and to levy the penalties.

ANY soldier making sale of his horse, harness, or weapon, or any of them, contrary to the form of the statute made in the said 2d and 3d year of the late king, *i. e.* the 2d and 3d of King Edw. VI. (which see in Captains), shall incur the penalty of the said statute, and the sale shall be void, the purchaser knowing him to be a soldier.

ALL presentments and prosecutions to be within one year after the commission of the offence.

PERSONS prosecuted for deficiencies of armour may plead their inability to procure it, on account of the want of it within the realm; which plea, if true, shall be a sufficient justification; if denied, issue to be joined, and the trial of such issue, only had by the certificate of the lord chancellor, lord treasurer, the lord president of the council, the lord steward of the king's and queen's most honourable household, the lord privy seal, the lord admiral, and the lord chamberlain of the said household, or by three of them, under their hands and seals, &c. &c. this act or any usage to the contrary notwithstanding. No persons to be charged both for lands and goods. This act not to repeal the act of the 33d Henry VIII. for having long bowes and exercising archery.

PROVIDED any horses shall die, or be killed, or armour be lost or expended in the defence of the realm, the owner shall not be prosecuted for the deficiency within one year after such loss.

THE want of a gantlet or gantlets shall not be reckoned a deficiency for a corselet.

THE servants of such persons as are bound to find haquebut, may exercise themselves in shooting at such marks as are limited and ap-

pointed by the 33d of Henry VIII. (which see in cros bowes), so that they do not use such haquebut in any highway. This act not to extend to Wales, Lancaster, or Chester, nor to oblige any one to have or to find a haquebut, but that they may, at their will and pleasure, have and keep, instead of every haquebut charged in this act, one long bowe, and one sheaf of arrows, over and above such other armour and munition, as is by the laws of the realm appointed (i).

THE lord chancellor or lord keeper of the great seal may from time to time, by virtue of the king's commission, appoint commissioners in every city, borough, &c. &c. as well in England as in Wales, consisting of justices, with other persons joined with them, as he shall think meet, to take a view of armour, and to assign what harneis, &c. they shall be bound to provide and keep.

IN the reigns of Richard II. Henry VII. and Henry VIII. four military bodies were instituted, which are still existing; the serjeants at arms, the yeomen of the guard, the gentlemen pensioners, and the artillery company; the first are entirely degenerated into a civil employment, and several of the others have retained very little of their ancient military character. An account of their establishment shall be given under the head of the different species of troops, of which the English armies have at various times been composed.

DURING the troubles under King Charles I. the royal army consisted chiefly of regiments, raised by the nobility and gentry who adhered to the royal cause, from among their tenants and dependents. Most of the militia, and particularly the trained bands of London, have sided with the parliamentarians, who likewise employed the public money in levying and paying their armies.

(i) THIS clause plainly shews that the rulers of those times were not very solicitous to introduce the use of fire-arms into the nation, but considered the long bow as equal to a haquebut.

IN a set of instructions for executing the commission for mustering and training all manner of persons, 15 Eliz. 1572, subscribed by the privy council, No. 6844, Harleian MSS. in every hundred footmen, forty are directed to be harquebusiers, twenty archers, if so many can be procured, the remainder to be bill-men, halberdiers, or morris-pykes.

## CHAPTER II.

*Of the Formation, Progress, and present Establishment, of the National Militia.*

**A**FTER the restoration of King Charles II. feudal tenures being abolished by act of parliament, a national militia was established, wherein housekeepers, and other substantial persons, were bound to find men and horses, arms, ammunition and pay, each according to their real or personal estates; which militia was declared by an act of parliament, to be under the immediate orders of the king; a matter that had in the preceding reign been strongly contested by the commons, and which had in a great measure contributed to that unhappy rupture, which so long had deluged this country with blood. By this regulation the king was authorized to appoint lieutenants to the several counties, cities, and places, who with his approbation might appoint deputies, liable to be dismissed at the royal pleasure; these deputies were bound to obey all such orders as they should receive from their principals, the lieutenants.

No peer was capable of acting as a lieutenant, or deputy lieutenant, unless he had first taken the oath of allegiance and supremacy, before six of the privy council, or such other persons as should be authorized by the king.

No person under the degree of a peer, could be capable of acting as a lieutenant, or deputy lieutenant, till he had taken the above-mentioned oaths, before a justice of the peace. A lieutenant of a county might administer them to his deputies.

THE lieutenants of counties were authorized to grant commissions of colonels, majors, captains, and other commission officers, to such persons as they thought proper, who, before they acted, were obliged to take the oaths prescribed, to be administered by the lieutenants, or two of their deputies. It is to be always understood, that the king had power to confirm or displace such officers at his pleasure.

THE lieutenants and deputies, or the major part of them then present, or in the absence of the lieutenant, the major part of the deputy lieutenants then present, such majority not being less in number than three, had power to charge any person, in the county, city, or town corporate, wherein his estate was situated, having respect to, and not exceeding, the following proportions:

No person could be charged with finding a horse, horseman, and arms, unless he had a real estate of 500*l.* per annum in possession, or a personal estate of 6000*l.* in goods and money, exclusive of the furniture of his house, and so in proportion for a greater or lesser estate. No person was liable to be charged with finding a foot soldier and arms, that had not a yearly revenue of 50*l.* in possession, or a personal estate of 600*l.* in goods and money, other than stock upon the ground; and after the said rate, proportionally for a greater or lesser revenue or estate.

But the deputy lieutenants might require the constables to furnish, at a reasonable time, and place, to be appointed, on a penalty not exceeding 40*s.* so many sufficient arms, with wages, and other incidental charges, as they should assess, according to the said proportions, upon revenue under 50*l.* a year, or on personal estates less than 600*l.* And in order thereunto, if any person on demand refused, or neglected, to provide a foot soldier, or soldiers, according to the proportions aforesaid, or to pay any sums of money, whereat he was assessed by a pound rate, according to a list signed by the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, towards the defraying the necessary charge in providing such arms as aforesaid; the constable by warrant might levy such sum by distress and sale, rendering the overplus (the charge of distraining being first deducted); and the tenant was bound

to pay the same, and deduct it out of his next rent, and in default thereof, his goods also were liable to be distrained and sold.

No person having an estate of 200l. a year, or personal estate of 2,400l. was liable to be charged with finding a foot soldier, or soldiers.

ANY one possessed of an estate of 100l. per annum, or under 200l. or having a personal estate of 1,200l. and under 2,400l. might be charged towards the finding of foot or horse, as by the lieutenant shall be deemed most expedient, but no one could be charged to find both horse and foot in the same county.

Two, three, or more persons, might be joined in the charge of finding an horseman and arms, but no person who had not 100l. a year in possession, in lands, leasehold or copyhold, or 1,200l. personal estates, was compellable to contribute towards the finding a horse or horseman.

No person chargeable to find a horse and horseman, or to be contributory thereunto, could for the same estate be charged with finding a foot soldier with arms, or be liable to pay towards the cost thereof.

WHEN two, or more, were charged to find any horse or foot soldier and arms, three deputy lieutenants might appoint who should find the same, and who should be contributors, and settle the sums to be paid by each contributor, in cases where the contribution was not ascertained by the agreement of the parties.

AND for the better discovery of the abilities of persons to be assessed and charged, and likewise of all misdemeanors tending to the hindrance of the service, the deputy lieutenants were authorized to examine upon oath, such persons as they should think necessary or convenient, or as should be produced by the party charged or accused, other than the persons themselves who were accused, or to be assessed; and they might likewise hear complaints, and give redress, according to the merits of the cause.

No peers might be charged otherwise than as follows, viz. The king might issue out commissions under the great seal, to so many

peers (not fewer than twelve) as he thought fit, who, or any five of them, had power to assess all, or any peers, according to the proportions mentioned in the act (except the monthly taxes, hereafter following), and to execute all the powers of the act, as well for laying assessments, as imposing of penalties (imprisonment only excepted), which assessment, or charge so made, and penalties imposed, were to be certified to the lieutenants. And in case of default in performance of any thing to be done, or paid by any peer, the lieutenant and deputies, or any three of them, might cause distresses to be taken on the lands of such defaulter; and if satisfaction was not made in one week after such distress was taken, then the same to be sold: and if a tenant was distrained, he might deduct the sum so levied out of his next rent.

EVERY commissioned foot officer was exempted from finding, or contributing to find, any horse or foot soldier, for his whole estate, if it was but charged with one horse, or less charge, or for such part of his estate as was charged with one horse; if his whole estate was charged with a greater charge than one horse, in the county or lieutenancy where he served as a foot officer in respect of the expence necessarily incurred by the said employment.

ANY papist, reputed papist, or other person, refusing to take the oaths, who are chargeable in respect of his estate, the lieutenant or his deputies, or three of them, might appoint such persons as they judge meet, to furnish the same, and might charge the estate with the payment of the yearly sum of 8*l.* for every horse, horseman, and arms, and of 3*s.* for a foot soldier and his arms; and if he did not pay the same on demand, they might, by their warrant, levy the same by distress and sale of the goods of such person, or of his tenants, rendering them the overplus, all necessary charges in levying thereof being first deducted: and such tenant might deduct the same out of his rent.

WHEN any person was charged in the county, city, or place, wherein he did not reside, the deputy lieutenants were to send him notice of the charge, if he had any land in his own occupation, to



such person as he employed as his servant in managing the same; and if all his estate was let to farm, then to one or two of the most sufficient tenants; who were forthwith, with all convenient speed, to convey the same to their master or landlord, and within a time appointed, to bring an account of his answer; and on neglect or refusal of the landlord to provide such horse or foot, as was duly charged upon him for the yearly rent, reserved upon every demise, or other grant, and not otherwise, within the time limited; then the tenant to provide, and do as the landlord in that behalf ought to have done; and if the tenant refused or neglected within the time limited, the lieutenants, or in their absence, or by their directions, the deputies, or two of them, might levy by their warrant, all such penalties as are appointed by this act, by distress and sale of the offender's goods.

AND the tenant might stop out of his next rent, all such money as he had necessarily laid out in providing the same, or as had been levied on him by distress for any default; unless the landlord could make it appear in two months after such levying, before the lieutenant, or by his direction, the deputies, or any two of them, that the default and penalty was occasioned by the wilful neglect of the tenant. But this was not to make void any covenant between landlord and tenant, but all charges were to be borne by such tenant, according to the agreement.

IF any person refused, or neglected, by a reasonable appointed time, to provide such horse, horseman, arms, and other furniture, or to pay such sums as were directed towards providing the same, the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, might inflict a penalty on such person, not exceeding 20*l.* and by their warrant might levy such sum, or the value of such horse, arms, and furniture, and such penalty inflicted by distress and sale, rendering the overplus, all necessary charges in levying thereof being first deducted: the same to be employed to the uses, in default whereof the same was imposed.

AND if any person refused, or neglected, in a reasonable time to

be appointed, to provide and furnish such foot soldier and arms, as was charged upon him, the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, might inflict a penalty not exceeding 5*l.* to be employed to the uses, in default whereof it was imposed. And the constable, by warrant for that purpose, might levy such sum by distress and sale, rendering the overplus, charges of distraining first deducted, and the tenant might deduct the same out of his next rent.

BUT no person charged with the finding horse or foot, or with contributing thereunto, was compellable to serve in person, but might find one to serve for him, to be approved by the captain, subject nevertheless to be altered upon appeal to the lieutenant, or in his absence to two deputy lieutenants.

EVERY man who served in his own person, or such person as was accepted in his stead, was at the next muster of his troop or company, to give in his name and place of abode, unto such person as the lieutenant, or in his absence, or by his direction, any two deputy lieutenants should appoint, to the end that the same might be listed, that is, written on the list. No one was capable of acting as a soldier, unless he had first taken the oaths of allegiance and supremacy before-mentioned, to be administered by the lieutenant, the deputy lieutenants, or any two of them.

THE lieutenants had power to call together the militia, to arm and array them, to form them into companies, troops, and regiments, and in cases of insurrection, rebellion, or invasion, to lead, conduct, or employ them, or cause them to be led, conducted, or employed, as well within the several counties, cities, and places for which they were commissioned respectively, as also into any other counties and places, for the suppressing of all such insurrections and rebellions, and repelling of invasions, as might happen to be, according as they should receive directions from his majesty.

THE lieutenants, and in their absence, or by their directions, the deputy lieutenants, or two of them, had power to lead, train, and exercise, or by warrant under their hands and seals, to cause to be led, trained, and exercised, the persons so raised, arrayed, and wea-

poned. But nothing in these acts might extend to the giving any power for marching any subjects out of the realm, otherwise than by the laws of England ought to be done.

THE ordinary times for training, exercising, and mustering, were these : the general muster and exercise of regiments, not above once a year ; the training and exercising of single companies, not above four times a year, unless special directions were given by the king, or his privy council, and such single companies and troops, might not at any time be continued in exercise above the space of two days ; and at a general muster and exercise of regiments, no officer, nor soldier, could be constrained to stay above four days together from their habitations.

At every such muster and exercise, every musketeer was to bring with him half a pound of powder, and half a pound of bullets, and every musketeer serving with a match lock, to bring with him three yards of match ; every horseman to bring with him a quarter of a pound of powder, and a quarter of a pound of bullets, all which were to be at the charge of him who provided the said soldier and arms, on pain of five shillings for every omission.

THE arms offensive and defensive of a trooper, with the furniture for his horse, were as follows : the defensive armour, a breast, back, and pot (a), pistol proof ; the offensive arms, a sword, and a case of pistols, the barrels not under fourteen inches in length ; the furniture for the horse, a great saddle, or pad, with burs and straps for affixing the holsters, a bit and bridle, with a pectoral and crupper : for the foot, a musketeer had a musket, the barrel not under three feet in length, and the gauge of the bore for twelve bullets to the pound, a collar of bandileers, with a sword. A pikeman was armed with a pike of ash, not under sixteen feet in length (head and foot included), with a back, breast, head piece, and sword. It was enacted, that the

---

(a) A CUIRASS consisting of a breast-plate, joined to a backpiece, with a pot or scull cap without vizor or beaver. Some of them have brims round them like a flapped hat.

muster master should be an inhabitant of the county, and that once a year each soldier should pay to him, such sum, not exceeding one shilling for a horseman, and sixpence for a footman, as the lieutenants, and their deputies, or any three of them, should under their hands and seals direct; who had power to levy the same, by distress and sale of the goods of the person charged to find such horseman, or foot soldier, unless the default was caused by the neglect of such soldier, who in that case was to be accountable for it.

IF any person charged, refused, or neglected to send in, or deliver his horse, arms, or other furniture, at the beat of the drum, sound of the trumpet, or other summons, the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, might inflict a penalty not exceeding 5*l.* to be levied by distress and sale, rendering the overplus, after deducting the necessary charges incurred in levying it.

IT was provided, that no officer, or soldier of the militia, belonging to any city, borough, or town corporate, being a county of itself, or to any other corporation or port town, who had used to be mustered only within their own precincts, should be compellable to appear out of any such precincts at any muster, or exercise only.

FOR the furnishing ammunition and other necessaries, the lieutenants and deputies, or any three of them, were empowered to lay rates on the respective counties and places, not exceeding in the whole, in any one year, the proportion of a fourth part of one month's assessment in each county, after the rate of 70,000*l.* a month, charged by the act of the 12th of Charles II. c. 29. to be assessed, collected, and paid by such persons, and according to such directions as should be given by the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, under the like penalties, and by the like way and means, as were prescribed in the said act.

WHICH said act of the 12th of Charles II. c. 29. directs the sum of 70,000*l.* a month to be raised in the same manner as by the act of the 12th of Charles II. c. 21. which act did direct the same to be raised, according to the proportions, and in such manner as by an

ordinance of both houses, made in his majesty's absence: which ordinance was as followeth, that is to say, there shall be raised an assessment of 70,000 l. a month, in these proportions:

	£.	s.	d.		£.	s.	d.
Bedford - - -	933	6	8	Oxon City - - -	107	6	8
Berks - - -	1088	17	10	Rutland - - -	272	4	6
Buckingham - - -	1283	6	8	Salop - - -	1322	4	4
Cambridge - - -	1102	10	0	Stafford - - -	919	6	8
Isle of Ely - - -	367	10	0	Litchfield - - -	14	0	0
Chester County - - -	770	0	0	Somerfet - - -	2722	4	6
City - - -	85	11	2	Bristol - - -	171	2	2
Cornwall - - -	1633	6	8	Southampton - - -	2022	4	4
Cumberland - - -	108	0	0	Suffolk - - -	3655	11	2
Derby - - -	933	6	8	Surrey - - -	1565	5	6
Devon - - -	3003	15	6	Southwark - - -	184	14	6
Dorset - - -	1311	10	6	Suffex - - -	1905	11	2
Town of Pool - - -	10	14	0	Warwick - - -	1244	8	10
Durham - - -	153	14	4	Westmoreland - - -	73	19	4
Effex - - -	3500	0	0	Wilts - - -	1944	8	10
Gloucester - - -	1626	6	8	Worcester - - -	1182	4	4
City - - -	162	11	6	City - - -	62	4	6
Hereford - - -	1166	13	4	York - - -	3043	8	10
Hertford - - -	1400	0	0	Kingston - - -	67	13	4
Huntingdon - - -	622	4	6	Anglesea - - -	135	14	4
Kent - - -	3655	11	2	Brecknock - - -	361	13	4
Lancaster - - -	933	6	8	Cardigan - - -	213	10	0
Leicester - - -	1088	17	8	Carmarthen - - -	352	6	8
Lincoln - - -	2722	4	10	Carnarvon - - -	202	4	4
Middlesex - - -	1788	17	10	Denbigh - - -	272	4	6
London - - -	4666	13	4	Flint - - -	135	14	6
Northampton - - -	1400	0	0	Glamorgan - - -	458	17	8
Nottingham - - -	903	4	4	Merioneth - - -	124	8	10
Town - - -	30	2	4	Monmouth - - -	466	13	4
Norfolk - - -	3624	8	10	Montgomery - - -	295	11	0
Norwich - - -	186	13	4	Pembroke - - -	406	0	0
Northumberland - - -	179	19	10	Radnor - - -	254	6	8
Newcastle - - -	35	11	8	Haverford West - - -	14	11	8
Oxon - - -	1127	15	6	Berwick - - -	5	16	8

AND the commissioners were to cause the proportions to be equally assessed; and to appoint assessors in each parish, who were to assess the same by a pound rate, according to all estates, both real and personal, within the limits of their parishes.

AND in case the way of assessing by a pound rate, was found obstructive to the speedy bringing in of the assessment; the commissioners

were authoris'd to direct the assessors to assess the same, according to the most just and usual way of rates practis'd in such places : provided that the appointment of the assessment should not be drawn into precedent. No privileged place was to be exempted from the assessment. But nothing contained in this ordinance, could charge any master, fellow, or scholar of any college, in either of the universities, or of Winchester, Eaton, or Westminster, or in any other free schools ; or any reader, officer, or minister of the same, or of any hospitals, or alms-houses, in respect of any profit arising from the said places ; nor charge any houses or lands belonging to Christ Hospital, Bartholomew, Bridewell, Thomas, and Bethlehem. But their tenants were to pay for so much as their leases were yearly worth, over and above the rents reserved.

PERSONS in London were to be assessed in the parishes wherein they dwelt, and persons out of London, having offices in that town, to be assessed where they resided.

THE assessors were obliged to deliver one copy of the assessment to the commissioners, who were to sign and seal two duplicates, one of which was to be delivered to the sub-collectors, with warrant to collect, the other to the receiver general.

IF any difference arose between the landlord and tenant concerning the rates, the commissioners might settle the same, and persons aggrieved by being over-rated, on complaint made to the commissioners, within six days after the said assessment was demanded, might be by them relieved. If any controversy arose, in which any one of the commissioners was concerned, that commissioner was bound to withdraw.

IN case of non-payment, the collectors might distrain, and in the day time, taking with them the constable, might break open any house, chest, or box, wherein any goods were deposited. And if any question arose upon the taking of such distress, the same might be determined by the commissioners. If any persons conveyed away

their goods, the commissioners might imprison them (they not being peers), till payment, and tenants might deduct the same out of their rent.

AND if the proportions were not fully paid, nor could be levied, the commissioners might re-assess.

IF any person wilfully neglected to perform his duty in the execution of this ordinance, the commissioners might fine him in any sum not exceeding 20*l.* to be levied by distress, and paid to the receiver general, who had for his fees one penny in the pound; the same poundage was allowed to the sub-collectors, the head-collectors, and the commissioners clerks. Nothing herein was to be drawn into example, to the prejudice of the ancient rights belonging to the peers. The same power which the commissioners had by this ordinance (which is much in the manner of the ancient subsidies, and of the present land tax) the lieutenants and deputy lieutenants seem to have had by the act of the 13th and 14th of Charles II.

THE lieutenants and deputy-lieutenants, or the chief officers upon the place in the respective counties and places, might charge carts, waggons, wains, and horses, for the carrying of powder, match, bullet, and other ammunition or accoutrements, allowing sixpence a mile outward only, to every such cart, waggon and wain with five horses, or six oxen, and so proportionably, and for every horse employed out of waggon or cart one penny, upon the marching of any regiment, company, or troop, on occasion of invasion, insurrection, or rebellion.

THE lieutenants were authorized to appoint one or more treasurers, or clerks, for receiving and paying such monies as were levied; of all which receipts and disbursements thereof, they were, every six months, to give in written accounts upon oath, to the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, which accounts were forthwith to be certified to the privy council, and duplicates thereof to be certified by the justices at the next sessions.

It was provided that the lieutenants or their deputies should not issue warrants for raising any trophy money (b), till the justices in sessions should have examined, stated and allowed the accounts of the trophy money, collected for any preceding year, and certified such examination.

THE lieutenants, or two of their deputies, might, by warrant under their hands and seals, employ such persons as they thought fit (of which a commissioned officer, and the constable or his deputy, or in his absence some other person bearing office in the parish where the search was to be made, were always to be two) to search for and seize all arms in the custody of any person whom the lieutenants or two of their deputies judged dangerous to the peace of the kingdom, and to secure the same, and thereof to give an account to the lieutenants; and in their absence, or by their direction, to the deputies, or two of them; provided that no search was made in any house between sun-setting and sun-rising, other than in cities or their suburbs, and towns corporate, market towns, and houses within the bills of mortality, where they might search in the night time, if the warrant so directed; and in case of resistance, might enter by force: but no dwelling-house of a peer might be searched, but by immediate warrant from the king, or in presence of the lieutenant or a deputy lieutenant: and in all places and houses whatsoever, where search was to be made, it was lawful, in case of resistance, to enter by force. And the arms so seized might be restored to the owners, if the lieutenants, or in their absence as aforesaid, their deputies, or two of them, so thought fit.

IF any militia man did not appear and serve, completely furnished with horse, arms, and other furniture, at the beat of the drum, sound of the trumpet, or other summons: the deputies, or two of them, if

---

(b) TROPHY Money originally meant a fund for providing ammunition, drums, colours, music, and other contingent expenses.



the default was in that person, might imprison him for five days; or might inflict a penalty, if a horseman, not exceeding twenty shillings, and if a footman, not exceeding ten shillings: and the lieutenants or deputies, or chief officers upon the place might imprison mutineers and such soldiers as did not do their duty at the days of muster and training: and might inflict for punishment for every such offence any pecuniary mulct, not exceeding five shillings, or imprisonment, not exceeding twenty days.

No militia man duly enlisted, could be exchanged, discharged, or leave his colours, but by the leave of the lieutenants, or two deputies, or his captain, upon reasonable cause, first obtained under his hand and seal, on pain of forfeiture of 20*l.* to be levied as other penalties; and for non-payment, or want of distress, he was to be committed to the common gaol of the county, for any time not exceeding three months.

If any person detained, or embezzled his horse, arms, or furniture, the lieutenants, and in their absence, or by their directions, the deputies, or two of them, if the default was in such person, might imprison him till he had made satisfaction.

THE pay of the officers, during such time as they were with their soldiers, not exceeding one month in actual service, was to be provided for by the king, out of the treasury. And the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, were authorised to dispose of so much of the fourth part of the 70,000*l.* a month, to the inferior officers, for their pains and encouragement, as to them should seem expedient.

EVERY person charged, was on pain of 5*s.* to pay on demand, 2*s.* 6*d.* a day to each trooper; and on pain of 2*s.* on demand, 1*s.* a day to each foot soldier, for so many days as they were absent from their dwellings, or callings, by occasion of muster or exercise, unless some certain agreement had been made to the contrary, before good witness, and the said penalty was to be paid to such soldier, to whom his pay was denied: the respective penalties to be demanded in six

weeks after default, or at, or before the next muster, or exercise, and not afterwards.

AND in case of invasions, insurrections, or rebellions, whereby occasions happened for drawing out such soldiers into actual service; the persons so charged, were to provide each their soldier, with pay in hand, not exceeding one month's pay, as should be directed by the lieutenants, and in their absence, or by their directions, by the deputies, or any two of them, for the payment whereof provision was to be made by the king, out of the treasury.

AND in case a month's pay had been provided, and advanced as aforesaid, no person who had advanced his proportion thereof, could be charged with any other like month's payment, until he had been reimbursed the said month's pay, and so from time to time the month's pay by him last before provided and advanced.

ALL forfeitures, penalties, and payments, by the 15th of Ch. II. c. 4. not otherwise directed by this act, might be recovered by warrant under the hands and seals of the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, by distress and sale; and if sufficient distress could not be found, then the party to be imprisoned till satisfaction should be made. And all high and petty constables, and other officers and ministers, were directed to be aiding and assisting to the lieutenants and their deputies, or any of them.

THESE ordinances were for a while executed, and the militia occasionally mustered and exercised, but being found expensive and troublesome to the country, it was by degrees neglected, inasmuch, that, the city of London excepted, the name of a militia muster was almost forgotten: but about the year 1756, the nation being so much alarmed by the apprehension of an invasion, that a body of Hanoverians and Hessians were called in for its defence; many leading persons resumed the idea of instituting a well-disciplined militia, which after some opposition, was at length carried into a law (c).

---

(c) THE new militia laws were at first set on foot in the 30th of George II. which in a few years' time received so many alterations, that in the 2d of George III. it was thought  
VOL. I. F necessary

By which it was enacted, that a body of thirty thousand seven hundred and forty men, should be forthwith raised in the different counties of England and Wales, in the proportions specified in the note below (d). These, in case of actual invasion or rebellion, might

necessary to repeal the whole, and reduce the substance thereof into one act of parliament. Since which time so many other alterations have been made, that a new revival thereof seems very desirable, and this the rather as the leading statute, 2d of George III. c. 20. to which all the subsequent statutes refer, was founded on the principles of the original statute, of the 30th of George II. c. 25. being before any militia were then raised, and consequently proceeds all along upon that supposition, giving directions concerning the first raising of the militia in the several places, which directions, when the militia are now already on foot, are in some instances superfluous, or otherwise inapplicable. *Burn's Digest of the Militia Laws, 1779.*

(d) NUMBER of men to be raised in the several counties.

Bedford - - - - -	400	Lancaster - - - - -	800
Berks - - - - -	560	Leicester - - - - -	560
Bucks - - - - -	560	Lincoln, with the city and county	
Cambridge - - - - -	480	of the city of Lincoln - - -	1200
Chester, with the city and county of		Middlesex, (exclusive of the Tower	
the city of Chester - - - -	560	Hamlets) - - - - -	1600
Cornwall - - - - -	640	Monmouth - - - - -	240
Cumberland - - - - -	320	Norfolk, with the city and county	
Derby - - - - -	560	of the city of Norwich - - -	960
Devon, with the city and county of		Northampton - - - - -	640
the city of Exeter - - - -	1600	Northumberland, with the town and	
Dorset, with the Island of Purbeck,		county of the town of Newcastle,	
and the town and county of the		and town of Berwick - - -	560
town of Poole - - - - -	640	Nottingham, with the town and	
Durham - - - - -	400	county of the town of Notting-	
Essex - - - - -	960	ham - - - - -	480
Gloucester, with the city and county		Oxford - - - - -	560
of the city of Bristol - - -	960	Rutland - - - - -	120
Hereford - - - - -	480	Salop - - - - -	640
Hertford - - - - -	560	Somerset - - - - -	840
Huntingdon - - - - -	320	Southampton, with the town and	
Kent, with the city and county of		county of the town of Southamp-	
the city of Canterbury - - -	960	ton - - - - -	960
		Stafford;	

be called forth, embodied, and put under the command of general officers, who might march them to any part of the kingdom; but they might not on any account be transported out of the realm. The general outlines of the chief regulations of this act, stood in the year 1779 as follows:

IN order to put this law into execution, the lords lieutenants of counties were authorised, with the king's approbation, to appoint twenty, or more, gentlemen, in each county, all having a freehold estate of 200l. per annum, in actual possession, being heirs apparent to double that sum (e), or possessed of an estate for life, or lease determinable on one or more lives. A certain number of these, might, in case of the vacancy of a lieutenant, or in his absence, by the king's

Stafford, with the city and county of the city of Litchfield - - -	560	York, East Riding, with the town and county of the town of Kingston - - -	400
Suffolk - - - - -	960	Anglesea - - - - -	80
Surry - - - - -	800	Brecknock - - - - -	160
Suffex - - - - -	800	Cardigan - - - - -	120
Warwick, with the city and county of the city of Coventry - - -	640	Caermarthen - - - - -	200
Westmorland - - - - -	240	Caernarvon - - - - -	80
Worcester, with the city and county of the city of Worcester - - -	560	Denbigh - - - - -	280
Wilts - - - - -	800	Flint - - - - -	120
York, West Riding, with the city and county of the city of York -	1240	Glamorgan - - - - -	360
North Riding - - - - -	720	Merioneth - - - - -	80
		Montgomery - - - - -	240
		Pembroke - - - - -	160
		Radnor - - - - -	120
		Total 30,740	

(e) THE qualifications for deputy lieutenants and officers. The counties of Cumberland, Huntingdon, Monmouth, Westmorland, and Rutland, were for a deputy lieutenant 150, colonel 600, lieutenant colonel, or major commandant 400, major or captain 150, lieutenant 30, and ensign 20, or the proportionable reversions, &c. In the Isle of Ely, the qualification of a deputy lieutenant was 150l. per ann. a captain 100l. lieutenant 30l. and ensign 20l.

appointment, act for him. They were likewise to proportion the numbers of men, to be raised in the different divisions, or parishes, and at their meetings to ballot for the men to complete the establishment, and fill up occasional vacancies.

THE commission officers to be appointed by the lord lieutenant, the king's approbation first obtained, he having a right to disapprove, or dismiss any deputy lieutenant, or officer, at his pleasure. That the command of the militia might be in the hands of persons interested in the defence of the kingdom, it was required that every commission officer should be possessed of a certain estate, according to the rank in which he served. The qualification of a colonel was 1000l. a year, in possession, or double that sum in expectancy, as heir apparent. A lieutenant colonel 600l. a year, or being heir apparent to some person possessed of 1,200l. a year. Major, or captain, an estate of the yearly value of 200l. heir apparent to some person possessed of an estate of the yearly value of double that sum, or the younger son of some person, who at his death was possessed of an estate of the yearly value of 600l. A lieutenant an estate of 50l. per annum, with personal estate of the value of 1000l. or real and personal estate together, amounting to 2000l. or being the son of a person who died possessed of an estate of the yearly value of 600l. An ensign, an estate of 20l. a year, with personal to the value of 500l. or real and personal together to the value of 1000l. or being the son of some person, who at the time of his death was possessed of an estate of the annual value of 50l. with personal estate to the amount of 1000l. or real and personal estates together of the value of 2000l. a moiety of all these estates to be situated in the counties for which the officers served. On receiving their commissions, the different officers were obliged to lodge a description of their qualifications with the clerk of the peace, and to take the proper oaths, and sign the declaration. The penalty of acting, not being qualified, or neglecting to deliver in their qualifications, and taking the oaths, &c. was for a colonel, lieutenant colonel, or major, 200l. captain, lieutenant, or ensign, 100l. half to the person

who sued for it. The acceptance of a commission in the militia, did not vacate a seat in parliament, or prevent the party, if a reduced officer, from receiving his half pay, and exempted him from serving the office of high sheriff.

THE pay of the militia officers, when called out for their annual exercise, was the same as the subsistence of the officers of the army (f), but the field officers received no other subsistence than as captains.

WHEN the militia were embodied, and called out into actual service, the officers were to rank with those of the army of equal degree, but as the youngest of that rank, and during such time as they remained embodied, they were to be subject to all the penalties in the mutiny act, and articles of war, unless where specially otherwise provided by the militia act (g). Officers might be promoted on account of military merit, in time of actual rebellion, or invasion, notwithstanding they had not the necessary qualifications, but this was not to exceed the rank of lieutenant colonel, nor could any person, not having the qualification for a captain, be promoted higher than that rank.

IN order to circulate the knowledge of military discipline among the country gentlemen, the lord lieutenant, together with three deputy lieutenants, or on his death, or removal, any five deputy lieutenants, might, at the end of four years, at their annual meeting, the militia not being then embodied, discharge one field officer, and a number of other officers, equal to the number of qualified persons, giving notice in writing to the lieutenant, one month at least before such meeting, that they are willing to serve. But to prevent a corps being left destitute of a sufficient number of experienced officers, it

---

(f) ALL the militia officers now receive the same pay, when employed, with those of a corresponding rank in the regular infantry; and the subaltern officers of a certain standing are to receive an allowance, similar to half pay, after their corps are disembodied.

(g) BOTH officers and private militia men were likewise subject to these articles at the time of their annual exercise, but not to extend to life, or limb.



was provided that the number so discharged, should not exceed one third of those who had served for four years. Any commissioned officer having served four years, was not compellable to serve in person as a private man in any militia, nor to find a substitute.

No officer of the army could sit as a member of a court martial, for the trial of any officer, or private militia man; nor might an officer of the militia sit on the trial of an officer, or soldier of the army.

For the due instruction of the militia men in the use of arms, the king was authorised to appoint to each regiment, battalion, or independent company, a proper person then serving, or who had served as a commissioned officer in his regular forces. This qualification, after the militia had been some time raised and embodied, was changed for that of having served in an embodied corps of militia. The adjutant, if appointed out of the army, retained his rank therein, during his service in the militia, and if on half pay, was entitled to receive it, notwithstanding his commission of adjutant, which was signed by the king. The lord lieutenant might also grant him an ensigncy, or lieutenancy, although he had not a legal qualification for either of these appointments; his pay was 6s. a day, without deduction, or arrears: it was commonly paid two months in advance. A provision of half pay was likewise made for him, in several annual acts, for the payment and clothing of the militia. The adjutant, besides the duty of instructing, and drilling the officers and private men at their annual exercise, had the particular care of the serjeants and drummers, when not assembled, and the charge of the arms.

The serjeants, that they might be properly qualified to instruct the private men in their exercise, were at the first raising of the militia, to be appointed by the king out of his regular forces, from persons who had served therein for one year. This qualification, like that of the adjutant, was afterwards changed, and the having served in an embodied militia, was deemed sufficient.

The proportion of serjeants to be one to every twenty men. The service in the militia of persons so appointed out of the regular forces,

entitled them to the benefit of Chelsea Hospital, in the same manner as if they had continued in the army. Serjeants taken from among the invalids or pensioners of that hospital, upon their discharge from the militia, provided they produced certificates of their good behaviour from the commanding officer, were to be put again upon that establishment. A serjeant on the Chelsea list at an allowance of 1s. 4d. per day, being appointed to serve in the militia, might receive that allowance together with his militia pay. A serjeant who had served as such fifteen years in the militia, and was discharged on account of age and infirmities, on a recommendation to the Chelsea board, from the commanding officer of the corps in which he served, and the lord lieutenant or deputy lieutenants of the county, was capable of being placed on the pension of 5s. a day. No serjeant, during his service in the militia, was liable to statute work, or to serve as a peace or parish officer.

To prevent their enticing the private men to spend their money in liquor, no person selling liquors by retail, could be appointed a serjeant.

THE daily pay of a serjeant was a shilling, without deduction, with an annual allowance of 3l. 10s. for a suit of clothes, besides a billet on a public house in the district to which his company belonged, but this entitled him to lodgings only. The commanding officer of a corps, being a field officer, might, on the application of the captain, displace a serjeant.

A SERJEANT convicted of misbehaviour, might by a court martial be reduced to the ranks, in which case, if he had been made from a private militia man, he was to serve till he had completed his three years' service as such. If taken from the regular forces, he was within one month after such reduction, if not restored, to be sent back to the corps from whence he was taken. And it was afterwards added, that any serjeant by the commanding officer, or the sentence of a court martial, reduced to the ranks for misbehaviour, besides the punishment inflicted on him by the court, should be obliged to serve as a private militia man for one year, notwithstanding he might have

already served three years, before his being appointed to the halbert ; but this seems only to respect those promoted from militia men.

THE vacancy of a serjeant happening in any corps, might be filled up by the captain of the company, with the approbation of the commanding officer. A serjeant on being appointed, was to swear allegiance to the king and his successors, that he was a protestant, and would faithfully serve as a serjeant in the militia, within the kingdom of Great Britain, for the defence of the same, until he should be legally discharged.

THE duty of the serjeant, besides assisting in the drilling of the private men, was to attend the courts of lieutenancy for recruits, to take care of, and clean the arms, and air the clothes when deposited in store, to deliver them out at the annual meetings, and to collect them in from the militia men, previously to their dismissal ; they were when disembodied to take their orders from the adjutant.

THE commanding officer of the regiment might out of these serjeants appoint one serjeant major, to whom there was an additional allowance of 2s. 6d. per week, over and above his pay as a serjeant, and of 1l. in his annual clothing.

THESE were the chief clauses and regulations respecting the serjeants, a body of men who even in regular regiments are of the utmost use and importance, but in the militia constitute the muscles and sinews of the corps, and although by the above establishment they bear a greater proportion to the private men than is allowed in the army, an increase of them would highly benefit the militia service, although purchased by the diminution of some of the higher commissioned officers : if this observation be true, how false and destructive is that œconomy which tends to diminish their number !

THE captain of a company was by this act authorized to appoint two drummers or fifers to his company, whom he might also for misbehaviour discharge, and appoint others in their places. Their daily pay when unembodied was 6d. they were annually clothed, for which 2l. was allowed for each suit, and they as well as the serjeants were entitled to quarters. Having received pay, they were compel-

lable to serve in the regiment or battalion, until legally discharged. If any drummer deserted at the time the militia was not assembled, he was when taken to be committed to gaol, there to remain till the assembling of the militia, when he was to be tried by a court martial; negligence, or disobedience to the adjutant, or any other superior officer, when the militia were not assembled, being proved on oath before a justice of the peace, was punishable by a fine of 40s. which if not immediately paid, the captain of the company was authorised to stop out of his pay, to be applied to the common stock of the corps; and by a subsequent act, over and above this punishment, such offender might be committed to the common gaol of the county for which he served, for any time not exceeding six months. In these clauses, serjeant majors, drum majors, and serjeants, were included. Persons harbouring such deserters forfeited 5l. If any militia serjeant, drummer, or fifer, enlisted into any of his majesty's other forces, such enlistment was declared void. The commanding officer of the regiment might appoint a drum major out of the drummers; he, like the serjeant major, had an additional allowance for pay and clothing, the first was 6d. a day, the latter 20s. for the suit.

ALL persons not labouring under bodily incapacity, were liable to be chosen for private militia men, and obliged either to serve in person, or find a proper substitute, except such persons as were specially excepted in the act. These were, peers of the realm, commissioned and non-commissioned officers, and private men serving in his majesty's regular forces, or in any of his castles or forts, commissioned officers serving or who had served four years in the militia, members of the two universities, clergymen, and licensed teachers of separate congregations, constables, and other such peace officers, articulated clerks, apprentices, seamen, or seafaring men, persons mustered and trained, and doing duty in the royal docks, freemen of the company of watermen on the river Thames, poor men having three children born in wedlock, and persons of more than forty-five years of age.

THE mode of making out the lists of persons liable to serve in the militia, with divers regulations respecting the balloting for, and swearing in of the persons chosen, were as follows :

A GENERAL meeting being held on the day appointed, consisting of the lord lieutenant, and two of his deputies, or in his absence, of three deputy lieutenants ; the times and places for holding the sub-division meetings were to be fixed. These to consist of three deputy lieutenants, two deputy lieutenants and one justice, or one deputy lieutenant and two justices, except in counties where the militia was on actual service, where the business might be transacted by two deputy lieutenants, or one deputy lieutenant and one justice. At this general meeting also, precepts were to be issued to the chief constables, or principal peace officers, of the several hundreds, rapes, or other great divisions of the county, requiring the constables, or other such officers of each parish, or place, to return to the deputy lieutenants within the sub-divisions, on a day appointed, lists in writing of the names of all persons, usually, and at that time, dwelling within their several parishes, &c. between the ages of eighteen and forty-five, distinguishing their ranks and occupations, and which of the persons so returned laboured under any infirmities incapacitating them from serving, having first affixed a copy thereof on the door of the church or chapel. Any chief, or other constable, or officer, neglecting to return such list, or making a fraudulent or partial return, was punishable by a fine not exceeding 5*l.* nor under 4*os.* or a month's imprisonment in the common gaol, at the discretion of the deputy lieutenants, and justices on the bench. Persons endeavouring, by threats or bribes, to prevail on a constable to make a false return, forfeited 5*ol.* to any one that would sue for it, and any person refusing to tell his christian and sur-name to the officer authorised to demand it, for the purpose of making out the lists, forfeited 1*ol.*

ON the day, and at the place appointed for the first sub-division meeting, and the return of the lists, the constables were to attend and to deliver in their lists, which they were to verify upon oath.

AT this meeting, persons who thought themselves aggrieved,

either by being inserted on the lists, or by any of their neighbours being omitted, might appeal, and the names of all such as were exempted by the act, or any other cause, were to be struck out, and the lists so corrected, to be returned to the next general meeting, where the number of men to be found by each hundred, rape, and other of the larger divisions of the county, were allotted: and these were again divided, and proportioned at the next sub-division meeting, for each parish, tithing, or place. Where notice was given of the time of balloting, when the church-wardens might, with the consent of the parish, offer volunteers, provided they were men able and fit for service, and at the least five feet four inches in height. The money for hiring these volunteers to be collected by a parish rate, to which all were bound to contribute.

If no such volunteers were offered, the deputy lieutenants at the third sub-division meeting, proceeded to ballot, which being publicly done, notice was to be sent to the persons chosen, directing them to appear at a meeting to be held within three weeks, there to be sworn in, or to bring with them a proper substitute to serve in their stead. At this meeting the petty constables were to attend, and make a return upon oath, of the time when such notices were served. Here the ballotted men were either to be sworn in themselves, or to produce a substitute, such as was approved of by the court, and not being of a less height than five feet four inches. Sometimes, in particular cases, further time was given for procuring a substitute. The oath to be taken was this: "I, A. B. do sincerely promise and swear, that I will be faithful, and bear true allegiance, to his majesty King George, his heirs and successors: and I do swear, that I am a protestant, and that I will faithfully serve in the militia, within the kingdom of Great Britain, for the defence of the same, during the time which I am so certified for, unless I shall be sooner discharged, so help me God:" his name was then to be entered on the roll.

ANY person chosen by lot, quakers excepted, refusing to take the oaths, or find a substitute, if the regiment was not embodied, forfeited 10l. to be levied by distress, and at the expiration of three

years was liable to serve again, or provide a substitute. The penalty to be applied by the deputy lieutenants for hiring a substitute, and the remainder, if any, was to be paid to the commanding officer of the regiment, for the use of the stock purse. If the offender had not goods sufficient to produce that sum, he was to be committed to the common gaol, for any time not exceeding three months, but in case the regiment was embodied, he was to be delivered over to the commanding officer of the regiment, and his name enrolled. In case of desertion, he was subject to the same punishment, as if he had taken the oaths.

IN order to alleviate the distress, that being drawn for the militia might occasion to a poor man, the church-wardens were, when a regiment was embodied, obliged to pay such person chosen by lot, within one month after he was sworn and enrolled, or had provided a fit substitute, such sum, not exceeding 5*l.* as should be adjudged by the deputy lieutenants, and justices, one half of the current price of a substitute.

No person having served personally, or by a substitute, three years in the militia, could be obliged to serve again, until it came to his turn by rotation ; but having served as a substitute for another, did not excuse such substitute from serving for himself, if chosen by lot.

THE men being thus sworn in, and enrolled, copies of the rolls were to be transmitted to the lord lieutenant, and within one month after they were so returned, a general meeting was to be held, at which the militia was formed into companies and battalions, or regiments. A regiment was to consist of twelve, and in no case of less than eight, companies, of eighty men at the most, and sixty men at the least. To these they were to post the following commissioned and non-commissioned officers : a colonel, lieutenant colonel, and major, who were likewise captains of companies ; also as many captains as there were companies, exclusive of those of the field officers. A captain lieutenant to the colonel's company, with a lieutenant to every other, and an ensign to each company, except the grenadiers and light infantry, to both of which an additional lieutenant was

allowed. The adjutant, serjeant major, drum major, serjeants and drummers, with corporals, made from the militia men, completed the regiment ; a quarter master, surgeon and mate, were added when a regiment was embodied.

WHERE the numbers of men were not sufficient to make a regiment, but were from five to under eight companies, such militia was to be formed into a battalion, with only two field officers, a lieutenant colonel, and a major ; and where the number of private men amounted to only three companies, or any number under five, likewise into a battalion, but with only one field officer, a lieutenant colonel, or major. The captains, lieutenants, and ensigns, and non-commissioned officers, the same as in the regiments. Where a lieutenant colonel had commanded a battalion for five years, or longer, the lord lieutenant might, with the consent of his majesty, give such lieutenant colonel commandant a commission of colonel ; and in all counties where the militia amounted to four companies only, the lord lieutenant might appoint two persons, legally qualified, to serve without pay as field officers, with the same rank as if the number had been sufficient to form a regiment.

WHERE the number of companies were not sufficient to form a regiment, or battalion, they were to be formed into independent companies, each company to consist of eighty men, at the most, and sixty men at the least, with one captain, one lieutenant, and one ensign, to each. And his majesty might join together any number of such independent companies, as would form a battalion, or incorporate them with any regiment, or battalion ; but so that the number of companies in such corps did not exceed, or fall short of the number of companies by this act allowed for a regiment, or battalion. This clause was however afterwards virtually repealed, by the act for raising volunteer companies, by which some regiments had fourteen companies. When there were two companies only, as in some of the smaller Welch counties, the eldest captain ranked as a major.

HAVING thus raised our regiments, their pay and clothing comes next under consideration ; whence it is necessary to begin, by men-



tioning the regimental or battalion clerk, or in other words, the paymaster of the unembodied militia : the nomination of this officer was in the commanding officer of the regiment : his salary 50l. a year. To him the receiver general of the county, was by annual acts directed to issue the pay of the unembodied militia, four calendar months in advance : that of the adjutant, regimental clerk, serjeant major, drum major, serjeants, and drummers, at the rates before mentioned, and also 6d. per month for each private man, and drummer, for defraying contingent expences, 1d. whereof to be applied to the hospital expences, when the corps was assembled for the annual exercise ; and for half a year's salary for the clerk of the regiment, or battalion. The annual clothing for the non-commissioned officers, was also paid to him.

THE time being settled by the deputy lieutenants for the annual exercise, and a certificate thereof being sent by them to the receiver general, specifying the number of men, and the days they were to be absent from home, allowing them sufficient time for their coming to, and returning from, the place of exercise ; he within fourteen days after the receipt of such certificate, was to issue out the amount to the clerk of the regiment, at the rates for the commissioned officers, serjeants, and drummers, as has been before mentioned, and for the corporals, at the rate of 1s. 6d. and private men 1s. per day each, this to be paid by him to the commanding officers of companies, who were to account for it, according to a form prescribed by the act.

IN order to provide necessaries, such as shirts, shoes, and stockings, for those militia men who should be deficient in those articles, the commanding officers of companies were authorised to stop any sum not exceeding 6d. per diem, out of the daily subsistence, accounting with them for the balance, at their dismissal.

THE private militia men and corporals, were by the act of parliament to be clothed every three years : the sum allowed for that purpose was 1l. 10s. ; this was to be paid by the receiver general, so soon as he should receive a warrant under the hand of the colonel, or commanding officer, certifying the receipt of the clothing, and

an order for the same, payable to the clothier. This clothing, with their arms, was to be delivered out to the militia men, on their assembling for their annual exercise, and to be by them returned back into the stores, previous to their dismissal. Any militia man selling, pawning, or losing any of his arms, clothes, or accoutrements, on conviction before a justice, forfeited a sum not exceeding 3*l*. and if he did not immediately pay the same, might be committed to the house of correction for one month, and until the same was paid, and if he was not of ability to pay it, then for the space of three months. Any man neglecting to return his arms, clothes, and accoutrements, in good order to his captain, or the person appointed to receive them, whenever demanded, on conviction before a justice, forfeited 10*s*. and on default of immediate payment, might be committed to the house of correction, for any time not exceeding fourteen days. Any persons knowingly buying, taking in exchange, concealing, or otherwise receiving any arms, clothes, or accoutrements, belonging to the militia, upon any pretence whatsoever, on conviction before one justice, forfeited 5*l*. to be levied by distress, and for want of sufficient goods for such distress, was to be committed to the common gaol for three months, or to be publicly whipped, at the discretion of the justice.

At the end of three years, every militia man was entitled to his clothes.

THE regulations, respecting the training and exercise of the militia, were these : the militia to be trained and exercised by regiment or battalion, twice in a year, fourteen days at each time, or once in a year, for twenty-eight days together, as should be directed by the lord lieutenant, and two of his deputies, or by three deputy lieutenants, at such time and place as should be least inconvenient to the public, to be by the said deputy lieutenants appointed at a general meeting ; and during such time, all the provisions in any act for punishing mutiny and desertion, and the better payment of the army, and their quarters, was to extend and take place, in respect to the

officers and private men of every regiment, or battalion, but not to extend to life or limb.

NOTICE of the time and place appointed was to be sent by the clerk of the general meeting, to the chief constables, with directions to forward the same to the petty constables, or other officers of the several parishes, or places within the county, who were to cause such notices to be fixed on the doors of their churches, or chapels, respectively ; or if any place being extra parochial, should have no church, or chapels, belonging to it, on the door of the church, or chapel, of some place, or parish, thereto adjoining. At this place all militia men, not incapacitated by sickness, or other legal impediment, were directed to attend, under penalty, if convicted before a justice, of forfeiting 20l. or being committed to the common gaol of the county, or place where taken and convicted, there to remain without bail, or mainprize, for six months, or until they had paid that sum. And any militia man, who having joined the corps, deserted, during the time of the annual exercise, was liable to the same penalty, or punishment, or if taken before the dismissal of the corps, might be punished by the sentence of a court martial.

DESERTERS taken after the expiration of the term for which they were enrolled, might be punished for their crime, and be also obliged to complete the remainder of their three years' service, which was unexpired at the time of their desertion. And to prevent the too frequent practice of persons taking money to serve as substitutes, and deserting, who not having goods whereon to levy the pecuniary penalty, and the alternative of imprisonment tending only to corrupt their morals ; it was enacted, that every substitute who should desert, whenever taken, over and above any military punishment that should be inflicted upon him, should serve for three years, to be computed from the day on which he was apprehended, and that the commanding officer should order notice to be given to the clerk of the subdivision, in which he was engaged to serve, of his desertion, and the time of his apprehension, in order that he might make a fresh entry of his name in the roll, to serve for three years from that time.

ON the application made by the lord lieutenant, or the commanding officer of the regiment, assembled for exercise, to the mayors, bailiffs, or chief magistrates of the different places ; they were to billet the officers, serjeants, drummers, and private men, on such houses as soldiers were usually quartered on. And on the same application, constables of those places through which they marched were obliged to find them carriages, at the same rates as paid by his majesty's other forces.

THE commanding officers of corps of militia, as often as they were called out to exercise, were to return to the lord lieutenant a true state of their regiment, or battalion ; and also, within thirty days after the exercise was finished, to transmit to one of the secretaries of state a return, signed by him, of the several officers, non-commissioned officers, and private men, present at the said exercise, with the number of days on which each commissioned officer was present. A similar return was at the same time to be sent by him to the auditor of the exchequer.

A MILITIA man falling sick at, or in going to, or returning from, the annual exercise, was to be taken care of by the parish in which it happened, who were to be reimbursed their expences from the county stock.

IN case of actual invasion, or upon imminent danger thereof, or in case of rebellion in the kingdom, or any of the territories, or dominions thereunto belonging, it was lawful for the king (the occasion being first communicated to parliament, if then sitting, or if not sitting, declared in council, and notified by proclamation), to order his lieutenants, or three of the deputy lieutenants in each county, with all convenient speed, to draw out and embody their respective regiments, or battalions of militia, or as many of them as should be deemed necessary. And in such case, his majesty might direct the said forces to be put under the command of such general officers as he should appoint, and order them to be led by their respective officers into any parts of this kingdom, for the repelling, and suppression of such invasion, or rebellion ; provided that neither the

militia of this kingdom, nor any corps, detachment, or draught thereof, should on any account be transported out of the island of Great Britain.

AND the officers of the militia and private militia men, from the time of their being drawn out and embodied, and until they returned again to their respective parishes, or places of abode, were to remain under the command of such general officers, and to be entitled to the same pay as was received by the officers and private men of the king's other regiments of foot, and no other; and the officers of the militia were, during such time, to rank with the officers of the king's other forces, of equal degree with them, as the youngest of their rank (h).

---

(h) DURING the time the militia were last embodied, a notion was propagated, that they were not liable to be commanded by any regular officer under the rank of a general: this seems to have been a mistake; the clause which empowers the king to put the militia under the command of general officers, by no means implies, they are to be commanded by general officers only; the right of command, as far as the rank of colonel, had been settled by that clause in the act which provided, that militia officers, when embodied, shall rank with those of the army, as youngest of each degree; but as there were no militia generals, that rule did not extend to generals of the army; a declaratory clause therefore became necessary to settle that point, and authorise their command.

RANK, in the military acceptance, always implies command, a proof of which is shewn in the regulations of rank between the officers of the navy and army, wherein it was thought necessary to except the right of either to command out of their proper element, which would otherwise have followed of course.

THE brevets of army rank, granted at that time to the militia colonels of a certain standing, shew that the officers of the army occasionally, might command those of the militia; these brevets being given to prevent a very old colonel of militia from being commanded by a very young colonel of the army, the multitude of new levies having then given that rank to many young soldiers.

THAT the army and militia were meant to serve together, is clearly expressed by the act of the 18th of George III. cap. 59, where treating of fencible men, and corps whose officers after reduction were not entitled to rank or half pay, it is said, that during the time that the officers of such corps and the militia shall serve together, they shall rank according to the date of their respective commissions: several new-raised regular regiments were then under that predicament.

SHOULD an actual invasion take place, the militia regiments would certainly be mixed and brigaded with those of the army, in which case there would arise an indispensable necessity,

And during such time, as aforesaid, all the provisions contained in any act of parliament then in force for punishing mutiny and desertion, and for the better payment of the army, and their quarters, were to extend to the officers, and private militia men (except only such particulars as were, or should be, otherwise specially provided for by any act, or acts, of parliament for regulating the militia forces); on being disembodied, they were to return to the same regulations they were under before they were called forth.

THE lieutenant of the county, on receiving his majesty's orders for embodying the militia, or in his absence, three deputy lieutenants, were immediately to issue their precepts to the chief constables, with directions to them to forward the same to the petty constables, or other officers of the parishes, and places within the county; and such constables were, on the receipt thereof, forthwith to give, or leave in writing at their abodes, notices to the several militia men, to attend at the time and place mentioned in such order.

If any militia man, so ordered to be drawn out and embodied (not labouring under any infirmities incapacitating him to serve), did not appear, and march in pursuance thereof, on conviction before two justices, he forfeited 40l. which if he did not immediately pay, he was

cessity, that the officers of both denominations should roll together, and consequently the elder of the different ranks command. If the militia regiments are not bound to obey any other officers of the army but a general, they cannot be admitted into several of our garrisons and castles, where the lieutenant governors are mostly under that rank; as in that case, such lieutenant governor would have a garrison he did not command.

By a clause in the articles of war, the officers and soldiers of the foot guards can be tried only by their own officers, except in particular cases, where one half the members of the court may be officers of the line; they likewise commonly do separate duty; yet I believe no instance can be shewn, where any officer or soldier of that corps refused to obey any superior officer, though of a marching regiment.

Soon after the militia was first embodied, Captain Linch of the Suffolk regiment was tried for disobeying the orders of Lieutenant Governor Thicknefs, of Land-guard-fort: as was Captain Lewis of the Surry, for disobedience of those of Lieutenant Colonel Strode of the invalids, both under the rank of generals. Had not the militia been subject to their orders, such disobedience could not have been deemed criminal, nor would warrants to try them have been granted, the right of Mr. Thicknefs and Lieutenant Colonel Strode to issue orders to the militia being thereby admitted.

to be by them committed to the common gaol for twelve months, or until he had paid the same. Any person harbouring or concealing a militia man, not attending when ordered into actual service, knowing him to be such, on conviction thereof before one justice, forfeited 5*l*. to be levied by distress; and for want of sufficient distress, such justice to commit him to the house of correction for two months, or to cause him to be publicly whipped.

IN order to enable the militia men, ordered out on actual service, to provide themselves with necessaries, it was enacted, that when the militia was so ordered out, the receiver general of the land tax for the respective county, or place, should pay to the captain, or other commanding officer, of each company so ordered, one guinea for each private militia man belonging to his company, to be by him paid to such militia man, on, or before the day appointed for their marching; and the same for every militia man who should afterwards be enrolled and ordered out, to be paid when he joined his company. But this mode being found productive of great irregularities, the man spending it in liquor, instead of applying it to the purpose intended, that clause was afterwards altered; and the commanding officer of the company was authorised to lay out that guinea, in a manner most advantageous for each militia man, giving him an account within three months, or as soon as desired, how such money had been expended.

IN case any militia man chosen by lot to serve in a corps that was embodied and called into actual service, left a family unable to support themselves, one justice might order the overseers of the poor of the parish, where such family dwelt, to pay them a weekly allowance according to the following rule: for any child under ten years of age, a sum not exceeding the price of one day's labour; for two children under that age, a sum not exceeding two days' labour; for three or four children under the age aforesaid, any sum not exceeding the price of three days' labour; and for five or more children under the age before named, any sum not exceeding four days' labour; and for the wife of such militia man, any sum not exceeding the price of one day's labour: the same was to be forthwith reimbursed to such overseer by the treasurer of the county, out of the county stock. The families

of substitutes, hired men, or volunteers, were likewise to be taken care of by the parish wherein they dwelt, without such allowance making them removeable.

ANY person having served in the militia when called into actual service, and being a married man, might set up and exercise such trade as he was apt and able for, in any town or place within Great Britain or Ireland without molestation, the same as any soldier or mariner.

THE clothes of an embodied militia man were to be applied at the end of every year as the commanding officer should judge best for the use of such militia man.

ABOUT the year 1780, it being thought expedient to increase the militia, persons duly qualified according to the militia act then in force, were authorised to raise one or more volunteer companies, to be added to the regiment or battalion of any county; and the lord lieutenant was, with the king's approbation, to grant commissions to a sufficient number of officers for the same; and on a certificate from the commanding officer of the regiment of these companies being complete, they were entitled to the allowance of bounty, subsistence money, arms, and clothing, and to be subject to the same regulations in every respect as the rest of the militia forces. By a former clause, captains were authorised when embodied to augment their companies with volunteers, but then it was required they should be already trained, armed, and clothed. An act of parliament also passed in 1794, authorizing the lords lieutenants of counties to augment the militia by volunteer companies.

THESE are some of the most important clauses in the militia act, a more particular account would have exceeded the limits allowed for that part of the work, a general outline of it being all that is meant to be delineated (1).

---

(1) SUCH persons as wish to see an entire code of the Militia Laws, will meet with ample information from a digest of them, both old and new, drawn up by the Reverend Doctor Burne, from which most of these extracts have been taken. N.B. Since this note was written, the militia laws have been revised, and moulded into one act of parliament, An. 26. Geo. 3.



## CHAPTER III.

*Of the Supplementary Militia, and the new Establishment of the Militia Forces.*

IN 1796, this country being threatened with an invasion from France, an act of parliament passed to augment this part of the national force, by enrolling in each county a certain number of effective men, to be trained to arms, and called out, either a part or the whole, whenever the executive government should judge it necessary. This was called *the supplementary militia*, and its force was double that of the old militia. It was not, however, taken in the same proportion with the old corps from the several counties, but calculated to bring the number of the whole into a more equal ratio with the actual population of each. The following was the number to be ballotted for in each county, in the same manner with the established militia, and to be commanded by a sufficient number of qualified officers, or if a sufficient number of qualified officers could not be found, by officers who had retired from the army or the militia.

County of Bedford	- - 254	County of Hereford	- 662
Berks	- - 749	Huntingdon	- 0
Bucks	- - 662	Lancaster	- 5160
Cambridge	- 646	Lincoln	- 2140
Chester	- - 1460	Monmouth	- 360
Cornwall	- - 828	Northampton	1128
Cumberland	- 1180	Nottingham	- 896
Derby	- - 1666	Rutland	- - 80
Dorset	- - 185	Somerfet	- - 2960
Essex	- - 1756	Stafford	- - 2095

# THE ENGLISH ARMY.

55

County of Surry	-	2460	County of Middlesex	-	5820
Warwick	-	900	Norfolk	-	1992
Worcester	-	825	Northumberland	-	824
York, West Riding	-	4694	Oxford	-	852
North Riding	-	1360	Salop	-	1558
East Riding	-	861	Southampton	-	847
Carmarthen	-	790	Suffolk	-	1470
Denbigh	-	420	Suffex	-	1160
Glamorgan	-	622	Westmorland	-	350
Montgomery	-	259	Wilts	-	1049
Radnor	-	220	Anglesea	-	320
Devon	-	1694	Brecon	-	340
Durham	-	800	Cardigan	-	474
Gloucester	-	1757	Carnarvon	-	176
Hertford	-	500	Flint	-	311
Kent	-	1873	Merioneth	-	174
Leicester	-	928	Pembroke	-	331

His majesty was invested with power to call out this supplementary militia, in case of actual invasion, or other emergency : the consent of parliament was necessary if sitting ; but in the time of a prorogation or an adjournment, his majesty could embody either the whole or a part, of his own authority, at the same time summoning the parliament to meet within fourteen days.

THE supplementary militia was accordingly called out and embodied in the spring of 1798 ; but previously to this an act of parliament had authorised supplementary militia-men to receive bounties for enlisting into the marching regiments, not to a greater amount than 10,000 for the whole, or the fifth part of the number ballotted for any particular county. When called out, the supplementary militia was incorporated with the old, where the numbers were small ; the rest were formed into separate battalions, and commanded by their own officers.

THE plan for recruiting the regular army out of the militia was afterwards extended ; and another act of parliament in July, 1799,

enabled the marching regiments to enlist out of the old or new militia any number of men not exceeding one fourth of the whole establishment, or the same proportion of any particular corps. The number of the militia was at the same time reduced, so that this voluntary enlisting would occasion no fresh balloting in the counties. By these measures many of the marching regiments, which were mere skeletons, were filled up, and government was enabled to send a large force to Holland.

By the original constitution of the militia, this national force was to be confined to the island of Great Britain; but on the rebellion taking place in Ireland, parliament authorised the executive power to send any number of the militia that would voluntarily offer into the sister kingdom. Near a third of the old militia regiments, with the exception of a few individuals in each, accordingly tendered their services. A considerable number of regiments were sent to Ireland, and were instrumental in reducing the malcontents to submission.

THESE innovations having been made in the constitution of the militia, it has finally been carried to such a length, as to make that force answer nearly all the purposes of a regular standing army. The troops sent upon the expedition into Holland requiring reinforcements, a bill passed both houses in October, 1799, for reducing the whole of the militia forces, old and new, to the number of 30,626 men, and permitting the residue to enter on bounties into the marching regiments; but such volunteers from the militia, by this act, were not to be sent out of Europe.

## CHAPTER IV.

*Of the Regular Stipendiary Forces.*

BESIDES these constitutional forces, there were in the English armies and garrisons, at all times from the conquest downward, stipendiary troops, both national and foreigners, the first hired by our kings, with the money paid by persons commuting for their feudal services, and employed in castle guards, foreign garrisons, and protecting the marches or borders of the kingdom, next Wales and Scotland. The foreigners were paid out of the privy purse, or suffered to live upon free quarters. They were known by the various names of *ruptarii*, *routers*, and *ryters*, the last from a German word, signifying a horseman or knight; they were also stiled *Brabançons*, *Provençales*, *Cotterelli* and *Flemings*, and were really a set of free-booters of all nations, ready to embrace any side for hire. These were chiefly called in by our kings, in their disputes with the great barons. They were employed by the kings William Rufus, Stephen, Henry II. and John. Henry I. it is said, hired no foreigners to serve him in England: but this is contradicted by several deeds preserved in *Rymer's Foedera*, wherein there are agreements between that king and the earl of Flanders, and others; one wherein that earl, for the consideration of four hundred marks of silver per annum, engages to furnish five hundred foldiers for the king's service, either in England or Normandy, each foldier having three horses (k). The garrisons in Ireland were at first chiefly kept up by the persons who held lands

---

(k) VOL. I. p. 1, 2, 3.

there by grants from the crown; there were afterwards, besides these, a small number of the king's troops, which were gradually increased, as may be seen in the note below (l).

KING EDWARD I. employed mercenary soldiers in his French wars. In Rymer there is an order from his son Edward II. A. D. 1308, to the constable of Burgundy, to pay the arrears due to divers officers, particularly to Elias de Ponte, and William Alarde, for their wages, and those of their followers.

A. D. 1310, an allowance is directed to be made to Walter de Scudamore, sheriff of Dorset, for 25l. 5s. paid by the king's order to four men at arms, four cross bows, and four archers, of the guard of the castle of Shireburn, for one hundred and one days' wages (m).

A. D. 1322, the seneschal of Gascony was directed to raise two hundred cross bow men, and two hundred lance men, both foot, and to bring them over, so that they might be at Newcastle upon Tyne in October, to go against the Scots. Raymunde de Mille Sactis was made chief leader (n).

FROM the time of King Edward III. when it became customary for our kings to engage with their subjects, and other persons by inden-

(l) THE first established force in Ireland was the 14th of Edward IV. when one hundred and twenty archers on horseback, forty horsemen, and forty pages, were established by parliament there. These were six years afterwards reduced to eighty archers, and twenty spear-men on horseback. In the reign of Henry VIII. anno 1535, the army in Ireland consisted of three hundred men, and in 1543 was increased to three hundred and eighty horse, and one hundred and sixty foot, which was then the peace establishment. When the Irish were in rebellion, which frequently happened, the armies were considerably increased.

In the reign of Queen Mary, the standing forces in Ireland amounted to about one thousand two hundred men. During the greatest part of the reign of Queen Elizabeth, the Irish were in open rebellion, but when that was suppressed, the force kept up was between one thousand five hundred and two thousand men, at which number they continued till the army raised by Lord Stafford, the 15th of King Charles I.

ANNO 1680, the establishment in Ireland was seven thousand eight hundred men, officers included. And in King William's reign, anno 1698, twenty-four thousand eight hundred and ninety-one.—*Trenchard's Short History of Standing Armies*, London, 1698.

(m) SEE Rymer in anno.

(n) IBID.

ture to furnish soldiers at certain wages, most of our armies consisted of stipendiary troops: such was the army raised and commanded by the bishop of Norwich, A. D. 1382, the 6th of Richard II. and in the army of the 16th of Henry V. In France there were so many stipendiaries, that in his orders to the captain of Rouen, they, and the soldiers, are separately mentioned, and that in several articles (o); the particulars of these contracts, both as to form and substance, will be elsewhere fully explained: but as the agreement with the bishop of Norwich, respecting the army here alluded to, gave cause to a very extraordinary military trial, the substance of it, as extracted from the rolls of parliament, is here laid before the readers. The bishop of Norwich, who had before made an offer for guarding the seas, now came before the king and parliament, and offered, if he would grant him the whole fifteenth, lately voted by the commons for carrying on the war, he would serve him in France for one whole year, with two thousand five hundred men at arms, and two thousand five hundred archers, all well arrayed and mounted, of whom one thousand men at arms, and the same number of archers, should (God willing) be at the sea side, within twenty days from the payment of the money, properly equipped, and ready to embark for the succour of the city of Gaunt, and the county of Flanders; he likewise undertook to pay the expence of transporting this army, and all other incidental charges, for the due performance of which he offered to enter into sufficient obligations. This proposal appeared to the king and his parliament fair and advantageous; but before it was accepted, the king desired that he and his council might be acquainted what leaders the bishop intended to procure for commanding these troops, their numbers, and names, as it was well known, that unless an army had good officers at its head, it would soon fall to anarchy and ruin. To

---

(o) THE words soldier and stipendiary are etymologically the same; soldier is derived from *solde* pay, and stipendiary from *stipendium*, wages or hire. Custom perhaps made the difference; the first signifying one of the constitutional military and stipendiary of the indentured troops. See the orders above mentioned in Rymer.

this the bishop answered, that if it pleased the king to accept of his proposals, he would employ some of the best captains in the land, his majesty and the blood royal excepted, but that he would not give their names, till he was sure of having a grant of the expedition ; on this it was asked him, what lord he desired to have with him, to act as the king's lieutenant, as one was absolutely necessary in so high and weighty a business, who should have power to take cognizance of crimes, and to do other things necessary, which office never was to this time granted to a prelate, or any man of holy church. The bishop then offered to give the king in writing the names of a certain number of lords, out of whom he might select any one he thought best qualified for that office, who, on his appointment, should have orders to obey him (the bishop), in all things appertaining to the crusade (p), and he on his part, would engage to obey the lieutenant in all things relative to his lieutenantcy ; and moreover, if within the said year it should happen, that the kingdom of France submitted to Urban the true pope, he would furl and withdraw the banner of the crusade, and serve the king the remainder of the year with his stipulated number of men, under his own proper banner. This being approved of by the king and parliament, the king granted his licence to all such persons as chose to accompany the bishop in this expedition, the royal retinue, and those of the great lords excepted, to leave the realm without molestation. The bishop then delivered to the king the names of four persons of his kingdom, from among whom he might chuse his lieutenant ; this he did not do, for what reason is unknown ; but granted, that if the bishop could not agree with any of the lords by him named, or some other sufficient person, worthy to bear so high an office, he might in that case have the government and disposition of the army in all things.

THESE stipendiary forces were, the garrisons and castle guards excepted, kept up only in time of war, and though mercenary, were

---

(p) A CRUSADE was at that time on foot against Clement, the anti-pope, of which the bishop of Norwich was by Pope Urban appointed general.

not standing armies. Their subsistence was drawn from the grants made by parliament, in which their specific numbers were sometimes stipulated.

THE first standing forces employed by our kings were their immediate body guards, such as the serjeants at arms, the yeomen of the guards, and gentlemen pensioners; yet these were rather calculated for the splendour of a court, than the operations of the field.

DURING the troubles under Charles I. a number of troops were levied by both parties, without any attention to law or custom; their institution does not therefore come within the scope of this work. Many of the regiments raised by the parliament were on the restoration of Charles II. disbanded, and the same day relieved for that king's service. Two regiments of guards raised by him in 1660, one of horse, and one of foot, formed the two first corps of our present army: these were afterwards considerably increased. In 1661, the first regiment, or royal Scotch, were brought back from France (r),

(r) THIS regiment is from its antiquity jocularly stiled Pontius Pilate's guards.

FATHER DANIEL gives the following history of it, under the title of the Scotch Regiment of Douglas. " This regiment served several years in France, and distinguished itself very greatly. I find in the ordonnance of Louis XIV. of the year 1670, for the rank of regiments, that it was one of the first: it came from Scotland to France in the time of James VI.

THE chevalier Hepburne was the colonel; he was a man of distinguished merit, and beloved by Henry IV. and Louis XIII.; he was called in France Colonel Hebron, the name of Hepburne being difficult to pronounce. Although he was killed (anno 1636) during the reign of Louis XIII. his memory was so dear in France, that King Louis XIV. caused a magnificent monument to be erected for him in the cathedral of Toul. After the death of Hepburne, the Lord James Douglas was appointed colonel of the regiment, which from that time began to be called the regiment of Douglas. This colonel was killed between Douay and Arras, commanding a flying camp. He was a lieutenant general, and highly esteemed in France for his bravery and conduct.

His brother, the Lord George Douglas, who had afterwards the title of Lord Dumbarton, was appointed colonel of this regiment, and did not yield in merit to his predecessors.

THIS regiment of Douglas being in garrison at Avennes in 1661, had orders to pass over to England, where it rendered very considerable services to King Charles II.

IT consisted but of eight companies when it left France, but on its return a year afterwards,



where they had served from the time of King James I. There were also, about the same time, an English corps of cavalry in the French service (s).

---

wards, had thirty-three companies, which were composed at the least of an hundred men each. Lord George Douglas always commanded it in France. It is to be observed, that there was at the same time in France another regiment of Douglas, the colonel of which was brother to the two lords before mentioned; he was also called the Lord James Douglas. This regiment, which consisted of but one battalion, was incorporated with that of his brother. The regiment of my Lord George Douglas was recalled to England about the year 1678.

AFTER the last revolution, the colonel who had then the title of Lord Dumbarton, lieutenant general in France and England, and a great number of officers, followed the late King James into France. Many soldiers imitated the example of their officers. This regiment still subsists, and is incontestibly the finest corps in England. It is commanded by the Lord Orkney, a lieutenant general, and brother to the late duke of Hamilton, and nephew to the Lord Dumbarton. It is called the royal regiment, or Orkney's regiment. This regiment has furnished a number of excellent officers, many of whom are still serving in France. What I have here related was taken from the memoirs of a Scotch officer who was well informed on this subject.

THERE were besides this regiment, another of seventeen hundred men, commanded by Colonel Rutherford, which ranked as guards in France; they came over from Scotland in 1643, and were at the battle of Lens, in 1648. When King Charles was restored to the crown, he appointed Rutherford governor of Dunkirk, who quitted the French service, without paying the proper compliments to the king of France, by whom he had been loved and entrusted. On his quitting France the regiment was reduced, and the subalterns and such soldiers as chose to serve in France, incorporated in Douglas's regiment.

(s) THE English company of gens d'armes which is the second, was brought into France, in 1667, by the Count George Hamilton, lord of the branch of Hamilton Albercome, long established in Ireland; this company came into France on the following occasion. Charles II. having remounted on the throne in 1660, caused some catholick officers and soldiers, who had served in Flanders under him and his two brothers, to come to England; these he incorporated into his guards; some time after the parliament being at variance with the court obliged that prince to dismiss all these catholick officers and soldiers of his guards. On this occasion George Hamilton had permission from the king his master to enrol these officers and soldiers, and to take them over to France. There were in this company English, Scotch, and Irish. On Hamilton's arrival, the king of France, finding they were good and well-made men, formed them into a company of gens d'armes, under the title of the English gens d'armes, excepting that he draughted out the Scotch, and incorporated them in the Scotch gens d'armes; he declared himself captain of this new company, and appointed  
George

AMONG other unconstitutional innovations made by the ill-advised James II. that of dismissing the protestant officers from his army, and introducing Irish papists in their room, was the most impolitic, and lost him the affection and support of his troops, which towards the latter end of his reign were increased to upwards of twenty thousand men in England, and eight thousand seven hundred in Ireland (t). A list of the military establishment for the year 1684, is given in the appendix.

George Hamilton captain lieutenant, who was killed at the head of the regiment bearing his name, in an engagement near Severne, in 1675. *P. Daniel.* tom. 2. p. 249.

(t) THESE all, except the royal regiment, consisted of independent companies or troops, till April 1683, when they were regimented by King Charles II. and formed into three regiments of horse, and eight of foot. The 18th was one of these regiments; the earl of Granard was the first colonel; he resigned it to his son. A singular circumstance happened to this corps, in the year 1689, on the disbanding of the Irish regiments on the arrival of K. William III. which is thus related by one, then a soldier in it: "A most unaccountable rumour prevailed throughout the kingdom, that all the Irish soldiers had got together, burning and destroying all before them, and this alarm had so wonderful an effect, that not a town or village but had an account, that the very next town or village was in flames: in short it had prevailed so far, that the trained bands of London were all under arms, guarding the streets and avenues leading to the city.

UPON this alarm the country people came down in great numbers, to be revenged on the Irish regiment at Brentford, for the depredations their countrymen were making all over the kingdom; Sir John Edgworth, our major, was commanding officer (for Lord Brittas, our lieutenant colonel, being a papist, had fled); he ordered the regiment to their arms immediately, and drew them with all dispatch he could, within the walls of Lord Ossington's court yard. From thence he expostulated with the populace, but all to no purpose; they would have revenge. At last, perceiving two gentlemen among the croud, he called them to him, and assured them that his men were not Irish papists, as they imagined, but protestants, and descended from Englishmen, though born in Ireland; and to convince them they were all true church of England men, he desired they would send for the parson of the parish to read prayers to them; the parson was sent for, and to prayers they went.

THE soldiers had most of them their common prayer books about them, and (whether it was out of fear or devotion) they answered the responses of the church so distinctly, and behaved with so much decency, that it surprized both the parson and the gentlemen; whereupon they returned to the crowd who gave us a huzza; cried, the prince of Orange for ever! and went away.

THIS

THE revolution, which shortly after succeeded, caused the military part of the constitution to be new modelled, and the army to be voted from year to year only, by an act styled the mutiny bill, which is prefaced by a declaratory clause, that it is unlawful to raise or keep a standing army in time of peace, without the permission of parliament. In this act, the numbers of which the army is to consist are specified, and divers laws and regulations for their government are laid down; from these the king is authorised to frame such other articles as he shall deem expedient and necessary. This act has of late been regularly passed every year, whence an opinion has arisen, that should it be suffered to expire, the army would of course be disbanded, and that the soldiers might quit their colours without being liable to any punishment; this is however not universally allowed (u), and cannot in time of war be legal. The declaratory clause above-

---

THIS regiment going to Flanders, a dispute arose respecting its rank in the army, which a board of general officers was appointed to settle; but being all colonels of regiments interested in the decision, they would allow it rank only from the time it came on English pay, by which it lost precedency of eleven regiments. It obtained the title of a royal regiment for its gallant behaviour in mounting the breach at Namur, in 1695. See Captain Robert Parker's Memoirs. The list of the army published by Millan, and Kane in his Campaigns, date the raising of this regiment April 1, 1684.

(u) NOTWITHSTANDING this opinion, the mutiny act has expired, and been suffered to remain for some time unrenewed, more than once, since its institution; the first time was A. D. 1689, when the mutiny bill having expired the 10th of November, the new bill, which originated with the lords, was not sent to the commons, till the 14th, four days after the former act had expired; and though it did not receive the royal assent till the 23d of December, it was directed to take place on the 20th. In the year 1691, the mutiny bill, which expired on the 20th of December, was not renewed till March 14th, 1692-3, but ordered to be in force from the 10th.

In the year 1694, the new mutiny bill was not passed till the 16th of April, although it ceased on the 10th of the preceding month of March; and in the succeeding year it did not receive the royal assent till the 22d of April, six days after its expiration.

AFTER the bill which was passed in the 1st of April, 1697, *for one year longer*, had expired, no other bill was passed or ordered till January 31st, 1701, when one was offered which received the royal assent, 2d of March, 1701-2. See the Journals of the houses of lords and commons.

mentioned being restricted to the time of peace only ; and it being declared felony by the acts of the 7th of Henry VII. cap. 1, and 3d Henry VIII. cap. 5, for any soldier to depart from the army without the king's licence, which acts were, in the reign of Queen Elizabeth, pronounced by all the judges (x) perpetual ; and Blackstone in his Commentaries, vol. 4, p. 101, says, desertion from the king's armies in time of war, whether by land or sea, in England or in parts beyond the seas, is by the standing laws of the land (exclusive of the annual acts of parliament to punish mutiny and desertion), and particularly by statute 18th Hen. VI. c. 19, and 5th Eliz. c. 5. made felony, but not without benefit of clergy : but by the statute of 2d and 3d Edward VI. c. 2, clergy is taken away from such deserters, and the offence is made triable by the justices of every shire. The same statutes punish other inferior military offences, with fines, imprisonment, and other penalties.

THE regular modes of assembling the national forces were anciently as follows : the great barons, bishops, abbots, and other tenants holding immediately from the king, were, when circumstances permitted, warned to assemble by both a special and general summons ; the first was by the royal mandate particularly directed to each baron, bishop, or abbot, sent to the sheriffs of the counties wherein they resided, to be by them or their officers personally served on the parties to whom they were addressed (y). In these notices they were positively enjoined on their fidelity, as they regarded the king's honour and the lands they held of him, to be at a certain time and place, with their due service of men and horses, properly equipped, to set out with the king or his general on the intended expedition ; this was peculiar to the tenants in capite or great barons ; they likewise partook with the

---

(x) SEE Coke's Reports, p. 520, case of soldiers. Trinit. 43 Eliz.

(y) SEE a summons of this nature to William de Fortibus, A. D. 1257, 41 Hen. III. Rymer, vol. 1, p. 635. The summonses for such persons as resided at the king's court were sent by the treasurer to the exchequer, and thence to the keepers of the king's wardrobe, who delivered them. *Madox Hist. Excheq.*

inferior feudal tenants, in being summoned by public proclamation, made by the sheriffs and their officers, in all market towns and boroughs within their counties, commanding all persons bound to perform military service, to assemble at a time and place therein named, duly mounted and armed, under penalty of forfeiting their fees, or being severely amerced. These proclamations were made in consequence of the king's writ to the sheriff, many specimens of which are to be found in Rymer and the other public records (z). See the form of one in the note below. If it was found necessary to alter or postpone the time or place of meeting, it was done by like proclamation.

IN cases of popular insurrection, rebellion, or the apprehension of a foreign invasion, where it was deemed necessary to collect a greater force than the feudal troops, the king issued his writ to the sheriffs of those counties, whose forces it was thought expedient to array and embody, directing them to ride night and day through their districts, causing it to be proclaimed wherever they came, that all persons between the ages of sixteen and sixty, not labouring under bodily disability, called defensible men, were commanded to join the king's army, with all possible speed, at a place appointed, competently armed, according to their possessions, under pain of forfeiture of life, limb, and every other thing they could forfeit.

It was also customary, whilst the statute of Winchester, or that of Philip and Mary, continued in force, for the king to issue commissions of array, appointing certain experienced officers, in whom they could confide, to assemble, muster, array, and try, or exercise the inhabitants

---

(z) *VICCOMITI Kancie salutem. Præcipimus tibi quod sine delatione summoneri facias per totam ballivam tuam archiepiscopos, episcopos, abbates, priores, comites, barones, milites & libere tenentes, & omnes alios qui servitiam nobis debent, sive servitiam militare vel serjeantie: quodque similiter clamari facias per totam baillivam tuam, quod sint apud Wigorniam in crastino St. Trinitatis, anno regni nostri septimo, omni dilatione & occasione postpositis, cum toto hujusmodi servitio quod nobis debent, paratis cum equis et armis, ad eundem in servitium nostrum, quo eis præceperimus. T. H. &c. apud Westmon. 25 die Maii, eodem modo scribitur omnibus vicecomitibus Angliæ. Cl. 7. H. 3. m. 10. dorso.*

of certain districts, with an intent to see they had their proper armour and weapons; and also in some measure to instruct them in the use of arms. Divers commissions of array occur in Rymer's *Fœdera*, two will be given in the appendix. The form of these commissions was settled in parliament the 5th of Henry IV.

UNDER the article of summoning the defensible men of the realm, may be placed some very extraordinary writs, issued in the reigns of King Edward III. and Richard II. directed to the archbishops and bishops, directing them to arm, array, and regiment all the abbots, priors, monks, and other ecclesiastical persons, of what diocese soever, between the ages of sixteen and sixty. As this appears a matter of great curiosity, a literal translation of one of these writs is here given.

“ THE King to the Venerable Father in Christ, William, by the said grace Archbishop of Canterbury, Primate of all England, greeting. As in our last parliament, by your assent, and that of the other prelates, nobles, and commons of our realm, it hath been ordered that all the men of our said kingdom of England, as well clergy as laity, to wit, every one of them according to their state, possessions, and abilities, should be armed and arrayed, to go forth, for the safety of holy church and the said kingdom, against our enemies, if any shall presume to enter the said kingdom.

“ WHEREFORE, by divers of our commissions, we have assigned certain of our trusty persons in every county of our kingdom, for arraying, and causing to be arrayed and armed, all defensible men there found, between the ages of sixteen and sixty years, and to cause them to be divided into thousands, hundreds, and twenties, so that the said men so armed and arrayed, and well furnished with competent arms, may be ready and prepared to resist the said enemy, for the safety and defence of the said church and kingdom.

“ AND because our enemies, the French, having broken the peace between France and England, last entered into at Calais, have in an hostile manner taken our cities, castles, towns, and many other places, slaying our faithful subjects residing therein, and taking them

into their own hands, thus detaining and occupying them. And not content with this alone, they have assembled and are diligently preparing with the utmost expedition, in divers parts of the sea coasts, a large fleet of ships, with a multitude of forces and armed men, in order shortly to invade our said kingdom, and us, our said kingdom and people, to conquer by force, and to subvert our realm and the church of England.

“ WE willing, in the most convenient manner, to provide for the safety and defence of the church and our said kingdom with all our power: and adverting that you and all the other prelates, and all the clergy of the said kingdom, with our other faithful subjects, are bound to lend an assisting hand to resist our said enemies, for the safety of holy church and the said kingdom:

“ WE therefore firmly enjoin and command you by the fealty and love by which you are bound unto us, and considering the imminent perils and heavy damages threatened by the invasion of our aforesaid enemies, that you cause all abbots, priors, religious, and other ecclesiastical persons (every delay being laid aside), to be armed, arrayed, and furnished with competent arms, (to wit) every one between the said ages, according to their said state, possessions, and abilities, and these to be arranged into thousands, hundreds, and twenties, so that they may be ready and prepared to set forth together with our other faithful subjects, against our said enemies, within our kingdom, in order, with God's assistance, to conquer, repel, and destroy them, and to punish their audacity.

“ AND this, as you esteem us and our honour, your own and the safety of holy church and our kingdom, you will by no manner omit.

“ WITNESS the King at Westminster, the 6th day of July,  
A.D. 1369, clau4f. 4 Ed. III. M. 13.”

LIKE writs were sent directed to the archbishop of York, and every other bishop in England (a).

---

(a) Two other writs of this kind, and in the same reign, occur in Rymer; the 1st in the 46th year, and the other in the 47th: another the 1st of Richard II.

NOTWITHSTANDING these writs were at least three or four times issued, history does not inform us that these reverend battalions were ever actually called forth under arms. Indeed many seemingly insuperable obstacles militated against it. First, the immunities of the church, which would have been highly violated by making private soldiers of its members; next, many councils and canons, as well as the determinations of different popes, all concurred in prohibiting ecclesiastics to use any other sword than that of the spirit, or by any means to spill human blood. Besides, the very order directed an impossibility: how could a monk, who had no private property, purchase armour or weapons, had it even been lawful for him to make use of them? Besides, supposing them assembled, armed and regimented, it would have required a much greater time to render them in any degree fit for service, than the exigency of the cause for which they were assembled would admit. Perhaps after all, these summonses were issued rather with an intent to draw a commutation from their treasury, than to call them to the field.

It seems extremely difficult to reconcile the practice of the ecclesiastics of ancient times with their principles and laws. We everywhere read of bishops serving in, and sometimes commanding armies; and frequently of their fighting, like private troopers, in the ranks of a squadron, and that not in crusades or religious wars: at the same time, canons, councils, and popes, unanimously forbid ecclesiastics of all degrees to use the sword, or engage in any military operations. An instance of this is shewn in the case of Philip de Dreux, bishop of Beavais; who, as Matthew Paris relates, being taken prisoner by King Richard I. in complete armour, was confined in prison; the pope, interfering in his behalf, solicited his release, under the title of his son and the son of the church: in answer to which, the king sent him the coat of mail, wherein the bishop was taken, with the following question, "Is this thy son's coat or not?" to which the pope ingenuously answered, it was neither his son's coat, nor the coat of the son of the church; thereby disavowing him, and declining to interest himself for an ecclesiastic so improperly employed.



THIS bishop, in order to avoid offending the letter of the canon and other regulations, did not use a sword, but fought with a mace, of which he made so powerful an use, that at the battle of Bovines, he beat down Long-Sword earl of Salisbury ; how he contrived to avoid the spilling of blood, is not so evident, since it would be next to impossible, to beat out a man's brains, without causing the prohibited effusion.

IN the ancient poem of the siege of Caerlaverok, Anthony Beck bishop of Durham is complimented on his courage, and is there said to be the most valiant clerk in the kingdom or indeed in Christendome, but absent from that service, on account of a wound he had received. Henry Spencer bishop of Norwich, in the reign of King Richard II. not only raised, but also commanded, an army in France ; and at Ickingham near Newmarket, leaped his horse over some barricados and a trench, with which some rebels had fortified themselves, and Godwin says, " rode into the very midst of them, and bestirred himself so manfully, as, if it had been an action agreeable to his calling, had deserved great commendations." Among the persons indenting to raise soldiers for King Henry V. are several bishops : and at the battle of Floddon Field, there were slain of the Scots, one archbishop, two bishops, and four abbots.

FATHER DANIEL suggests a motive, which perhaps, besides the love of glory, caused the bishops and other great ecclesiastics to follow the armies ; which was, that by their being accustomed to the use of arms, they were the better able to defend themselves against the encroachments of the great barons, who frequently, particularly in France, seized on their revenues, under pretence of reimbursing themselves the expences they had been at in fighting for the defence of the church and state.

IN France the abbots frequently impoverished their abbies, by fitting out their equipages for war, although forbidden by the council of Soissons, an. 774 (b). Perhaps likewise they were, by some clause

---

(b) PERE DANIEL, tom. I. p. 15.

unknown to us, obliged by their tenures, on certain occasions, to attend personally. Indeed, one instance has already been quoted in this work, wherein it is commanded (c), but at the same time it is probable, the prelates and great abbots did not entirely dislike it; otherwise, considering the many arguments to be adduced against it, and the high power of the church, it would easily have been overruled.

THE methods of raising the stipendiary, or mercenary troops, were either by commissions, in substance much like our present beating orders, authorising persons to enlist volunteers; or by indenture, a practice that began about the latter end of the reign of King Edward III. (d) and in that of Henry V. became general. By these indentures, different persons engaged themselves to provide a certain number of able men, properly armed, to serve the king for a stated time, at a stipulated pay and bounty, then styled wages and regards; both the wages and regards were calculated according to the nature of the service, and place in which it was to be performed: besides settling the quantum of the pay and bounty, with the time and manner of payment, these indentures contained divers covenants respecting the sharing of prisoners of war, or booty that might happen to be taken by the contractor or his men, ransom being at that time one of the principal emoluments arising from military service, and considered by the soldiers of those days as an expectancy, similar to that of prize money in our present navy. Not only soldiers of fortune indentured for this service, but also bishops and other ecclesiastical and civil persons. Specimens of these indentures (e) are given in the

---

(c) NOTE, (f) page 5.

(d) ALTHOUGH indentures with the king's subjects were not common before this period, Rymer contains several records of agreements with foreigners to find soldiers for our earlier kings.

(e) INDENTURE of war. John Haytely, Esquire, Dame Beatrice Shirley, Bundel 8. This indenture, made between the king our sovereign lord of the one part, and John Haytely, Esquire, of the other part, witnesseth, that the said John is bound to our said lord the king  
to

notes and appendix: the originals are still extant at the Paper Office, Whitehall. In these agreements it was usual for the king to advance part of the pay beforehand, afterwards called *imprest money*, and also to give security for the regular payment of the remainder; for

---

to do him service of war, in the parts beyond sea, for three quarters of a year, and the said John to have continually remaining with him during the said time, three archers mounted and arrayed as appertains to their estate, and the said John shall take for wages for himself twelve pence a day, with accustomed regards, and for each of his said archers sixpence the day, during the time above mentioned, which wages and regards shall be paid to him for himself and his said archers, immediately in hand for two months, and for the third month at his muster; and for the second and third quarter above mentioned, the said John shall be paid from month to month, at the beginning of each month, in English gold, or in some other money then current in France, of the value of the said gold in England above said, by the hands of the treasurer of war of the king our said sovereign lord, for the time being. And the said John shall be bound to be with the people of his said retinue at the port of Southampton, the 1st day of April next coming, to make a full muster of himself and his said retinue, and the said term shall commence on the day of the said muster; and our said lord the king shall have as well the third part of the gains of war of the aforesaid John, as the third part of the thirds for which the people of his retinue shall be answerable to him out of their gains of war, be they prisoners, booty or other things taken, and all the other accustomed droits; for which thirds of thirds and droits the said John shall be bound to answer to our said sovereign lord the king, at his exchequer, in England, upon oath, to be taken by the said John, or the executor or executors of his will, in his name and not otherwise, and the said John shall have all the prisoners during the said time by him or any of his said people taken, except kings and princes, and the sons of kings, and in particular Charles called the Dauphin of Vienne and other great captains of the blood royal, also chieftains and lieutenants having power from the said Charles, and excepting also those who killed and slew John late Duke of Bourgundy, or were knowing and consenting, or counselling and aiding thereunto, of whom all and every one shall remain the prisoners of our said lord the king, for whom he shall make a reasonable agreement to him or them who shall have taken them; and the said John shall perform watch and ward, and also muster himself and his retinue when and as often as it shall be by our said lord the king duly warned and required during the time aforesaid; and the said John shall have the transportation of himself, his men, and horses, to France and back at the expence of our lord the king before named. In witness whereof the said John has affixed his seal to part of this indenture, before our said lord the king. Given at Westminster the 7th day of February, in the 9th year of the reign of our said sovereign lord.

ON the back.—The indenture of John Hayteley, Esquire, for and in the name of Dame Beatrice Shirley.

this purpose King Henry V. pledged all his jewels, which were not redeemed till after his death.

AN expedient sometimes practised by our kings to procure troops for foreign service, was to pardon criminals, on condition of their serving in the king's army abroad, and finding security to answer any prosecution if called upon at their return (f). Some of the king's justices were occasionally empowered to issue these pardons, and to receive the obligations of the criminals (g), after which they were allowed a small time to prepare for their voyage; they were then assembled by writs issued to the sheriffs of the different counties of England, directing them to cause it to be cried throughout their districts, that all such as had charters of pardon should repair towards the sea, to enter into the pay and service of the king; those in the west at Dartmouth; those in the counties of Kent, Surry, and Suffex, at Winchelsea; in Cambridge, Huntingdon, Norfolk, Suffolk, Lincoln, Northampton, or Rutland, and the neighbouring counties, at Yarmouth and St. Botolf's; so that they were there by a stated time, under penalty of losing their charters of pardon (h).

THESE were the regular and constitutional modes of assembling our armies in former times, besides which several of our sovereigns under the authority of the royal prerogative, obliged districts, cities, towns, corporations, and even particular persons, to find men, horses, and arms, or to pay contributions for that purpose, not always according to any regular proportion or assessment, but allotted solely by their will and pleasure. This being contrary to the statute of the 1st of King Edward I. was complained of by the commons in the reign of King Edward III. when although a more strict observation was promised, and also directed by a statute, yet both in that and the succeeding reigns, particularly those of Henry VIII. and Elizabeth, the same was frequently practised.

THE following curious abstract of the different kings who have

---

(f) SEE Hal. Pl. Cr. vol. ii. p. 145, and Barrington on the Statutes.

(g) Rot. Vascn, anno Ed. M. 8. N. 11. MS. Yelver

(h) Rot. Parl. anno 13 Ed. III.

exercised this prerogative, was drawn up by Sir Robert Cotton, as it appears, by the order of the king, and laid before the lords of the privy council, it is now in the Cotton library, in the British Museum. Julius, F. 6.

*Raising Forces at the Counties' Charge.*

KING John ordered in council, that every nine men should find the tenth at their own charges.—Pat. 6 Johs.

HENRY III. of every two ploughlands commanded one man to attende his service for 40 daies, at the publique charge of the villadge. Dorf. Clauf. 14. Hen. III. Scutage he assessed several times, for his services, and for such service unto Gascoigne, William de Umfreville made fine 100 marks, many others at the same time. Rot. Fin. 26 H. III. & clauf. 15 H. III.

IN the 14th he caused his subjects, jurare ad arma, proportionable from a knite fee to 20s. to be ready at the Whitfuntide following (i). These men the year following were reminded to furnish themselves at the country's charge with munition and victualls for 40 daies (k), making fine of such as held in capite, and attended not, and levied victualls upon his people for supplie of his army. And 27 the like services were commanded in Gascoigne, the names of the attendants entered upon the roll (l).

THE nobles by Ed. I. were enjoined services into Gascoigne in the 22d, and their names entered upon the roll (m). The like the same year to go against Wales (n).

EDWARD II. imposed sea service twelve several times upon the porte towns at their owne coste, sometimes for a month, as 11mo. some for four, as 12mo. sometimes for seven, as 4to (o).

IN his 17th year Southampton is charged with sixteen shippes, and

(i) THIS was only ad defensionem nri & sua regni. Dorf. clauf. 14 H. III. m. 6.

(k) DORS. clauf. 15 H. III. m. 8.

(l) ROT. Vasc. 27 H. III.

(m) ROT. Vasc. 22 Ed. I. in Dorf.

(n) ROT. Wall. 22 E. I. Dorf.

(o) ROT. Cl. et Pat. de Ans. infra.

one hundred and eighteen sea townes more ratably. And he caused some of them to build gallies at their own charges, as he did Southampton of one hundred and twenty oares, in the 23d of his reign.

By Ed. II. in his first yeare, men at armes, the countrey victuals and the port towns shippes. The charges of men and munition for them for seven weeks, in his 4th yeare, and one out of every towne for sixty daies, and to seize their goods, and imprison their persons that refused (p).

THE D. of Lancaster is commanded out of his land to levy two thousand foot, and bring them to Newcastle; the like to other noblemen. The cities and villages to find for forty daies men and furniture at their coste; the number in this roll is expressed, and there an ordinance of the K. and Cls. to furnish the armes of every degree is entered. Five hundred men are assessed on London sumptibus proprijs in his 12th year (q).

IN the 13th those of 40s. land that attended not upon the king's summons, were fined for the first default, at a third of their goods, and the reste for their second, and their bodies to be at the king's pleasure for the third; and of every knight's fee twenty pounds were taken of him that fayled (r). In the 15th one of every town sumptibus proprijs for 40 daies and the shire of Bucks redeemed their service of their men with 600 marks fine, all that had 40l. land, were commanded at their own charges to serve the king, at the forfeiture of their lande and chattels (s). The nobility with horse and armes are commanded in the 18th year, and their numbers entered on the roll (t).

EDWARD III. in his first yeare, charged upon the sea towns, all their shippes from 60 tonne upwards, and the year following 76 poort townes are commanded to furnish all their barks above 40 tonn (u). The

(p) Rot. Scac. I. Ed. II. dorf.

(r) Claus. et Pat. in 13 Ed. II.

(t) Vasc. 18 Ed. II.

(q) Claus et Pat. 12 Ed. II.

(s) Rot Claus. 15 Ed. II.

(u) Pat. and Claus. de ann. 1 and 2 Ed. III.

nobility are summoned in his eighth year to attend att Rokesburgh with armed men (x).

THE like in the 10th, upon the cite of London, he imposed a levy of men (y), and assessed upon the shires of England certaine horsfeman, as eighty out of Suffolke, he dispenfeth with their service, so they send him money after the rate they should be at (z), and the fee towns are enjoyned to build barges to attend the king's fleete at their own chardge (a).

IN the 11th yeare the towns and borrowghs are commanded to furnish men (b). All men enjoyned to find men according to their tenures. The clergie furnish the king with armed men, and all from sixteen to sixty, to be ready to serve, the impotente and aged to contribute to the chardge, and power given to arrest goods of such as should refuse, *tanquam de inimicis* (c). The cinque ports maintained thirty shipps, during the time of war, and when the subjects complained in parliament of these chardges, they received no farther answer than this, "it shall be as before (d)."

IN the 16th diverse men expressed by name in the record, do furnish the king with men at armes, and archers (e); and pardon is granted to all felons, that shall be ready to serve the king in his warres (f), the year following at the chardge of the nobility, divers armed men are set forth. Every man that had lande to the value of five pound, was ordered to find the king one archer for his warres: in the 20th yeare (g), the cities and towns find the king for his warres armed men; in anno 24th, and the yeare followinge, the cite of London furnished three hundred archers for the king's chardge. And that these chardges were legally assessed, though not by parliament, it

---

(x) ROT. SCOC. 8 Ed. III.

(z) ROT. SCOC. 10 Ed. III. 10. Aug.

(b) VASC. 11 Ed. III.

(d) CLAUS. et. Pat. 13 Ed. III.

(f) ROT. FRANC. 17 Ed. III.

(y) ROT. SCOC. 10 Ed. III. dor.

(a) CLAUS. 10 Ed. III.

(c) ROT. .... 13 Ed. III.

(e) ROT. FRANC. 16 Ed. III.

(g) ROT. FRANC. 20 Ed. III.

appeareth, because diverse men procure themselves patents of discharge out of speciall favour (h).

AFTER this year, these forms and courses were changed totally, and this king and so all following for the most parte furnished their occasions of warre, by contracting with their nobility and gentrie, to finde them a proportion of men at certain wages: the indentures from this king, unto Edward IV. remaine for the most part with the clerk of the Pells at Westminster, and the kings had les reason to chardge their people, in this king's time and followinge, because they were supplied by parliament that was annuall.

RICHARD II. in anno 22d, levied horses, and cartes, and victuallers of his people, for their voyadge into Ireland (i).

HENRY VI. in his 20th year enjoned the persons to attend him in his warres, and dispenseth with as many as would contribute to his occasions. The chardge of two daies' expence if they served in person (k).

HENRY VII. mustered his army, partly by benevolence, and partly at his subjects' chardge, the distinction is entered on the list (l).

HENRY VIII. imposed on his people the finding of archers for his warres, assesseing some one knight at forty pound, as Sir Adrian Forrestcue, and the like in the 16th, but at a higher cefs, some one knight finding a hundred men (m), the lords and chief men of every county, commanded to attend the king in his warres, some one with fifty men for the defence of Calais in the 14th yeare (n), a leavy of six hundred archers sessed upon the nobility, clergie, and good townes; in the 20th, every knight furnishing ten foot at the least. A like leavy of men in the 25th, some one person being charged with fifty foot, and three launces. A proportion I have, at that time drawn (whether

(h) ROT. Franc. 21 Ed. III.

(i) CHRON. Walsingham.

(k) ORIGINAL Instructions A. 20 Hen. VI. ap. Rob. Cotton.

(l) FRAGMENT Instruction ap. Rob. Cotton.

(m) LITTERA Orig. manu Regis. 13 Hen. VIII. ap. Rob. Cotton.

(n) ORIG. ap. Rob. Cotton.



acted or not uncertaine) for an army royall to attend Henry VIII. into Fraunce, in which, on all his subjects from 4000l. land or fees, to 20l. in goodes, a proportion is set to find for the king's service, proportions of men (o).

THE late queen to withstand the Spanish invasion in Ireland, imposed a chardge of horse and furniture, upon the nobility, gentrie, and her ablest subjects, which was willingly performed accordingly by all (p).

HAVING thus far in obedience to his majesty's command, with a light touch presented to your honour the many chardges, occasions of state have lead the foregoing princes, to lay upon their people by supreme power, and not by parliament; in all humility I offer up unto your lordships these two considerations: First, that many of these though entered upon record, may never be produced to effect; the rolls of the said receipts, perused to see what levies of men and money have been retourned, in pursuite of any of these intentes, will relieve that doubt; the other, that the successe of these may be examined by search of stories of those times, wherein they were soe put in practice, of which I have most remayning with me.

THE smooth and usual cure of all defects and maladyes of state, hath beene by parliament, except some few in Hen. III. Ed. II. Rich. II. and Hen. VI. tymes when such remedy proved more dangerous than the disease, malignant spirits wearinge more power, than well composed tempers.

IN the year 1585, by the queen's order, a letter was written, from the privy council, to William Chalderton, bishop of Chester, signifying her intent of sending a thousand launces, well mounted and furnished, to the assistance of the Hollanders, but to prevent her kingdom being drained of war horses, she thought it best to purchase them abroad, estimating each horse and furniture, at twenty-five pounds. She therefore required him and his clergy to pay for so many horses as were settled in an annexed schedule.

---

(o) ORIG. ap. Robtum Cotton.

(p) LETTERS of Council.

The Bishop, - 3	Edward Fleetwood, Parson of Wigan,	1
The Dean, - 1	John Caldwell, Parson of Wynwicke,	2
The Chapter, 2	Edward Aughton, Parson of Middleton.	1
John Nutter, Prebendary, Parson of Sesson, of Anghton and Babbington	- - -	} 2
Richard Gerrard, Prebendary in Southwell, and Parson of Stopport in Cheshire	- - -	

THIS money to be paid to Robert Freak, Esq. teller of the Exchequer (q).

ABOUT the reign of King Henry VIII. lieutenants were appointed to the different countries throughout the realm, as standing representatives of the crown, and to them, and their deputies all military arrangements within their respective districts were entrusted.

A CONSTANT apprehension of an invasion from Spain, during the first part of the reign of Queen Elizabeth, caused that queen to be very attentive to her internal forces, and was the cause of the following commission, and the regulations therein contained, enacted solely by her own authority, with the advice of her privy council: the original is preserved in the Harleian library, No. 6,844.

“INSTRUCTIONS for the executyon of the commission directed to all the justices of the peace in the countie of . . . . . for generall musters, and trayning, of all manner of persons, hable for the warrs, to serve as well on horseback as on foote.

---

(q) PECK'S *Desiderata Curiosa*, Vol. 1. During the reign of this queen, the livings of the clergy were assessed for providing armour, according to the act of Philip and Mary. Any clergymen possessing one, or more benefices, of 30l. per annum or upwards, was charged according to such proportion as the temporality were charged by that statute, on account of their moveable goods; clergymen having temporal lands and spiritual preferment might be charged according to the greatest rate for either, but not for both. The bishops, deans, and prebendaries, were rated among the temporality, the bishops for lands, the deans and prebendaries for goods, from 30l. and upwards. Contributions were also levied on them by order of the privy council, to provide horse for quelling the rebellion in Ireland. The bishop of London was charged sixty pounds, the dean of St. Paul's, 30l. See Wilkins, *Concil.* Vol. 4. p. 256. 341. and 358.

“THE principal intent of the queen’s majestie, as may appear by the exprefs wordes of her majestie’s commiffion, is to have perfect knowledge of the numbers, qualities, habilities and fufficiencie of all her fubjects in that countie, as by the like commiffion fent into all other fhires of the realme; the like is intended from the age of fixteen yeares upwarde, that may be founde hable to beare armoure, or to ufe weapon on horfebacke, or on foote, and out of that totall and univerfall number being viewed, muftered and regiftered to have a convenient and fufficient number of the moft hable, to be chofen and collected, to be by the reasonable chardge of the inhabitants in everie fhire tryed, armed and weaponed, and fo confequentlie taughte and trayned, for to ufe, handle and exercife their horfes, armure, fhott and other weapons, both on horfebacke, and on foote, for the fervice and defence of her majestie, her crown and realme, againft all attempts, both inward and outward: for which purpofe althoughe her majestie doubte not, but that according to the fpeciall truft repofed in you, and for that the kynde of fervice at this tyme, tendeth onlie for continuance of the publick peace, whiche by Godd’s goodnefs, the realme now enjoyethe more than any other in Chriftendome dothe; you will carefullie and fpedilie ympleie your whole underftandinges, labours, and powers, without any refpect of chardges, or paynes, to execute the commiffion in all poyntes tending univerfally to fo good an ende. Yet to thentent you may the more redely, effectuellie and uniformly proceed herein, her majestie hath, with the advice of us, of her counfaill, ordeyned that thefe articles followinge fhould be conceived in writing, and fent unto you, and others authorifed by like commiffion, in other partes of the realme, as intruccyons or memorialls to direct you the more orderlie in the executyon of the faid commiffion; not therebie fecludinge you from fuche other manner of proceedings as maye beft tend alfo to the more fpedie or more effectuell execution of the faide commiffion, fo as the fame be not manifeftalie repugnant to thefe intructyons. And furdernore confidering that this kind of fervice requireth the attendance and labour of verie manie perfons according to the quantitie of the fhire, and as the ufual divifions of the

fame mai seme to require severall assemblies, in sonderie places, and yet the direction of the whole service to be uniformly ordered, oughte properly for avoiding of confusion to apperteyne to the care of some fewer in number, beinge partlie for their degrees and callinge of more reputacyon, and partlie for their knowledge in suche kynde of marshall services most hable to direct the same, therefore her majestie

*A choise of speciall men to take the chief care of the commission.*

hath ordeyned A, B, C, D, E, &c. shoulde take the principall care of the executyon of this commission, and of the contents of these instructyons; and that you and the rest of the justices of the peace of that sheire doe, notwithstanding your best endeavours as nede shall require, and as you shalbe appoynted to farder the sayde service in your severall divisions, and be in all reasonable thinges aidinge and assistinge the rest, to whome this speciall care is comyted. And for that you, that be afore speciallie named to have this speciall care, may, perchance not be resident within that countie at all times requisite, for the executyon of this commission; therefore it is our intent, (notwithstanding the absence of some few of you, so the most parte be not absent out of the sheire, that you the rest beinge within the sheire shall proceede in the sayde commission according to these instructyons, in like case as if you were

*The greatest part of the special commission to proceed in absence of others.*

all there present as you are named. And in case the more parte of you, so above speciallie named, shall be absent out of that sheire, at the tymes requisite to execute this commission, then you the reste, shall so certifie us with your opynions who were mete to supplie the rooms of the persons absent, whereupon directions shalbe given accordingle, for supplie of those defects. And considering it may seme inconvenient, to call men to suche generall musters, before the season of the yere shalbe more apte thereto, for fayrenesse of weather, and yet the benefit of this service requireth all good expedition, consideringe the state of matters in other countries, neare to this realme; therefore it is left

*Beginning the musters, referred to the commissioners direction.*

to the discrecyon of you the commissioners, speciallie named, to begyn with these musters, at suche tyme as you shall finde mete, and to contynewe your travells therein as you

shall finde mete, for feasonablenes of weather and ease of the people to be mustered ; and yet nevertheless you maie assemble your selves and consider your commission and these instructyons, and devise upon the manner of the execution, and by your precepte cause all persons *To assemble and prepare things ready for the muster.* to be warned to prepare themselves, and their armour and weapons in readynes to be mustered, whensoever theie shalbe called ; and generallie to cause all things to be don that maie convenientlie be don without any notable trouble to the people, by reason of the season of the yeare ; so as when tyme shall come to mete for the musters to be made openlie in the fieldes, you may finde all thinges in the better redynes to hasten the service.

### *The Articles of the Instructyons.*

*Precepts of summons to all persons to appere.* It is necessarie that by your precepte to the constable of the hundreds, or other officers thereto requisite and usuall, all hable persons from sixteen upwards, which are within the lymetts of this your commission in any parish, hamlett or village, be summoned to appere at daies and places, certain and mete for the musters, so none beinge hable of any degree be forborne, to be warned and called to the same general musters, otherwise than in some speciall cases hereafter shalbe remembred. And therefore, it shalbe well don, to commande in your precepte that the names and surnames of all persons in everie parishe, aperte hable to bear armour or to use weapons, as above is saide, be ymmediatelie collected and put in writing, by the saide constables of the hundreds or other like officers, used in such cases ; namyne in the saide writinge or note, everie householder by himself, with his sonnes, servants, prentices, journey-men or any other sojourners or indwellers remayninge in their houses, being hable to weare armure or use weapons mete for the warres. And that the saide householders be charged to bringe all the saide persons by name, with their armour and weapons at fuche several tymes and places, as shalbe thereto lymited. And so after the returne

to the commissioners of the said writinge, conteyning their names, the said commissioners shall call for the persons, and proceed to the musters of them, and register the names of such as shall appear, with notes of their armour and weapons; and when some shall not have armour or weapons mete there, it shalbe noted to what kinde of service for the warres, everie of the saide persons shall seme mete, wherein is meant, not to omytte to note what number of them maie serve for laborers or pioners, and who are also carpenters, smythes, or such like artificers, so as there maye be some use had of their habilities for service of their countrie, as cause shall require, though theie shall nott have armor. And of suche as shall not appere, having ben warned, to make a speciall note and cheke, and to examyne dylie the causes of their absence, and according to reason to allowe or punyshe, and redresse the defaultes, that no forberinge be had of any without verie evident necessarie and lawfull cause, but that the parties being absent at one tyme, upon reasonable cause maie yet at some other tyme appere, to be viewed, mustered, and registered as others of the like condycion shalbe; and because it maie seme mete, that the householders in all places shoulde not be compelled to bring all their fervants, or indwellers and hable persons, at one tyme from their dwelling houses, it shalbe well therefore, that in the warrants to the foresaid constables or other officers, it maie be expressed, that theie conferre with the householders, upon the makinge of their first bookes of names, to bringe as manye as maie reasonable be spared at the first daie, and thereafter to appoint their appearance; wherein the commissioners maie also, as theie see cause, direct the order how many shall come at the first tyme, and howe manye at other tyme; and yet that the writing contayne trulie the names and surnames bothe of them that shall appeare at the first daie, and of them that shall remayne at home, and the householders to be charged by the commissioners or otherwise to bring or sende the rest of the persons at some other daie, to be by them lymited, to be viewed, mustered and used, as hereafter shall appere theie oughte to be, so as all the numbers of the persons hable maie at severall tymes be viewed and

mustered; or if continuance of sickness shall deteyne any person from access to the musters, during this commission, yet the name of such person shall be certified and registered with a note of his habilitie to serve, when his sickness shall cease, and of his furniture to serve according to his degree.

ITEM, it is to be understood, that no householder of any degree, except the prelates and lordes of parliament, and others of the

*Prelates, lords of parliament, privie counsellors exempted from personal appearance.*

privie counsaile (the certain number whereof is already well knownen), shall be forborne, if he be habile for helthe or strengthe to come himself to those musters;

and as for all other inferior persons ecclesiasticall, beinge not lordes of parliament, whose vocation is to attend personallie upon their ministerie and cures, and for the justices of the one bench or other, or such other head officers of any of her majesties courtes of record, occupieng judiciall places; it is ment that as well the saide ecclesiasticall persons, as the saide justices and other judiciall officers, shall not be compelled to appere at those musters, but shall sende them habile

*Household servants, ecclesiastical persons and judges.*

servants and household men, at some convenient and severall tymes and places, to be viewed, mustered and registered as others are or shall be, with their armour and weapons, so as there maie be nevertheless a severall muster book made of all the household servants of the saide clergie aparte. And as for the servants of the saide judges and judiciall officers, with all their furniture of armour and weapons to be added to the musters of the laytie, according to their severall dwellinge places. And as for any household servants of any of the prelates and lordes of parliament, or of any of the privie counsaile, because the said prelates for their persons are to be spared, and the personal services of the saide lordes temporall, or counsaillors are to be directed by speciall commandment of her majestie, about her person, or otherwise accordinge to their callings; there is another speciall order appoynted aparte from her majestie to the said prelates, lordes and counsaillors, to certifie in writinge to her majestie, the numbers and names of their household servants mete to serve with them, being their lordes and masters,

with the furnytüre also of their horses, geldinges, armour and weapons, which they have or oughte to have in readynes, or will encrease for her majesties service, and for all others that are not household servauntes, or dalie attendauntes, to anie of the saide temporall lordes of parliament or counsaillors, and yet havinge their dwellinge and proper householdes in that shire, pretending that they doe belonge to any of the saide lordes temporall or counsaillors as retaynors, suche shalbe summoned in like case as others shalbe at their dwelling houses to appeare, and shalbe mustered and charged accordinge to their habilities to be furnished with armour and weapons, and shalbe chargeable to repair therewith to all musters, and to resort to any service within the shire, as any other of the same shire shalbe charged, upon calling for to the defence of the sea coaste or invasion of the realme. And yet there shalbe a particular note and register kept of the persons beinge so retayned, and their dwellinge places, and in what sorte they do pretend to be retayned by their lordes and masters. And the commissiõs shall forbear to make entrie of anie suche, so knowen to be lawfullye reteyned by their lordes and masters, into any speciall companyes and bands of the rest of the soldiẽrs to be appoynted for that country. But to be chargeable as is abovesaid onlie to resort with the rest of their neighbours and parishioners in warlike manner to the defence of their cuntrye at all tymes, when they shall not be called out of the saide cuntrye by commandment of their lorde or masters; in which case in respect of the services to be done personallie to their lordes and masters as cause shall requier, the saide persons, so lawfullye reteyned, shalbe excused duringe the tyme that they shalbe absent upon the commandment of the lordes and masters.

ITEM, the commissiõners shall upon the first musters consider particularlie all the imperfeccyons in the persons appearing, and in the armures, weapons and such like, and shall give particular instruccyons and chardge how to remedie the same by some tymes therunto to be spedalie lymitted, and shall appointe certaine persons in the mean tyme within everie

*Imperfeccyons of men  
and their furniture to  
be reformed in the first  
musters.*



hundred or other division, to see to, and give order for the reformation thereof against the tyme of the nexte musters.

ITEM, where alwaies of verie ancyent tyme there hath been and still are a number certain of soldiers furnished of armure and weapons, to be founde of the comon chardge of everie towne or parishe, over and besides suche particular persons as are by the late statutes chargeable, by reason of their own private possessions or goods to finde soldyers, armure and weapons.

THE commissioners shall do well upon the registringe of the faide generall musters to cause speciall entries to be made aparte of the faide numbers found by the parishes in the muster books distincte from the others, that therbie it maie appeare how manye are of one sorte, and howe many of the other. And for the more encrease of hable men to be furnished with armour and weapon, the commissioners shall cause the meaner sorte of freeholders, franklyns, fermors or merchants, beinge not of sufficient valewe of freeholde or of goods to have one whole furniture of armour or weapons, to be treated withall by good perswasion, and for the love of their countrie to be induced to joyne together by two or three or more, in the provision of a furniture, either of a pikeman, archer, or harquebusier, to serve as occasion shall requier. And furdernore they shall perswade all manner of riche ffarmours and freeholders to keep in their house persons mete for archerie and shott, lest when the said farmours and freeholders shall for their owne expence offer to finde other to serve in their steade as soldiers, by hiringe them against the daie of musters, theie doe nott seeke for suche persons dwellinge out of their houses, for suche borrowinge of men to sarve must not be suffered, but that either these kepe suche hable men in their houses to be alwaies ready, or els that theie be compelled to serve in their owne proper persons when necessitie shall requier.

ITEM, that after the commissioners shall have don their uttermoste in procuringe of these generall musters in suche sorte as none be suffered to be absent, that is hable to carrie armure or weapon, otherwise than afore is lymitted; and that the full numbers shalbe knownen

of all hable persons and their qualities, and that the quantities of armure and weapons shalbe also seene and considered in everie division; the saide commissioners with good deliberacyon shall make choice of persons metest to be captaynes and petty-captaynes, not forbearinge any under the degree of a lorde of parliament, to tacked chardge of certaine numbers according to their qualities, so as concyderation be had, that persons of moste worshippe, credit and valewe, be appoynted to take chardge of more or lesse numbere, accordinge to their degrees, that is to saie, some of the best worshipp to have chardge of 200 or 300, and that others of meaner degrees and values in livinge, doe take chardge under them, of everie of the saide hundrede aparte; and that there be also, with consent of the captaynes, a charge made of the skilfull and experte persons, to be lieutenants of everie hundred, and necessarie officers to governe and lead the saide bandes. In choice whereof, speciall regarde also shalbe had, that no persons being knownen, or havinge given manifest cause to be suspected as unwilling to serve the queen's majestie and the realme, have any trust of chardge or leadinge of men comytted to them.

ITEM, because the trayninge and exercise of a multitude of people, in their armour and weapons, and namely archers and harquebusiers, may seme costlie and chardgeable, and that it shall not seme necessarie in many places, to have the whole numbers of the hable people, to be armed and weaponed. Therefore the said A, B, C, D, &c. with the assistance aforesaid, shall therein use their discrecyons, after they shall have made a generall muster of the numbers of the whole shire, and shall consider and determyne, what were, or maie be a convenient number in everie parte of the shire, to be collected out of the totall number, mete to be sorted in bandes, and to be trayned and exercised in such sorte, as maye reasonable be borne by a common chardge of the whole countie, and thereof, and also of the rest of the whole nombre, they shall spedilie certifie the queens majesties privie counsaile in a brieve manner, notynge holie the nombres, whereby to have their opynions concerninge the lymitation of the said numbers to be selected, so as the same beinge so allowed, or other-

wife altered, there may thereupon be a direction to the commissioners to putt the same in executyon, and the chardges also, for the trayninge of the said number, ys to be considered, that being reasonable allotted by the divisions of the schire through all the parishes, it may be as easie a chardge as reasonable maie be borne, and yet so necessarie a thinge it is to be procured, as without that helpe, the rest will serve to small purpose; wherein it is to be remembered, that it is not ment to have a contynuanee of any suche chardge, but *Chardges for trayninge.* now at the begynninge, some reasonable allotment wolde be made to beare the chardges of them that shalbe occupied under the commissioners in the musteringe and trayninge of the saide bandes of soldiers that shalbe so selected out of the toatal number mustered, and also to paye for the powder that necessarie shalbe spent in the saide exercise, beside other necessarie chardges, to be imploied by some allowance upon the soldiers themselves, that shalbe trayned, for some helpe and reliefe to them, in respect of the tyme theie shall spende, in resortinge to their musters, attendinge upon their exercises, to be used; and in taxatyon of any such somes of money regarde would be had to spare as much as maie be, the poor husbandman, the cotager and artisan, and to chardge such chieflie as be riche and not mete to serve in their own persons, and where any strangers shalbe resident, beinge not naturall borne subjects, it shalbe reasonable to chardge them accordinge to their powers, consideringe theie are nott personallie to be used in service as others are.

ITEM, there shalbe regarde had howe to divide and distribute the use of the weapons, in the sortinge of the bands, that there maie be in everie hundred footmen, at the least, fortye harquebusiers and twenty archers, if so it mai be convenientlie procured; and to that end, the said commissioners shall use all good perswasions, and shall give some good example in the countrie, by exercise in games and matches, to encrease those two weapons, foresseyenge, that the archers maie be men of strengthe, and so the more hable to shoote in the longe bowes; and because it is not lafull for any person, but such as by the statute are thereto licensed, to shoot in any handgonne, or

harquebush, her majestie is pleased, that all such as shalbe appoynted by the commiſſioners to be harquebushiers, to use their saide weapons without daunger of the lawes, so as theie do nott use the same otherwise than others may do that are by the statute licensed; and for the manner of the trayninge and exercise of the saide selected number, the said commiſſioners also shall use their discrecyone, for choice of tyme and places mete and convenient for such assemblies, in everie severall division of the shire, for the more ease of the people, and that the assemblies be nott greater, in any one place and tyme, than is convenient; and speciallie to foresee that no publique assemblies, nor exercise of weapons, be had for this purpose, but that there be at the saide place and tyme, two justices of the peace, at the least, ly-mitted to be present, or else one of the speciall commiſſioners here before named, so as bothe good order may be used for the said exercise, and that no other unnecessarie numbers of people resorte thereto, but such as are to be exercised and trayned, or other necessarilie attendinge upon them, or thereto licensed by the commiſſioners; and speciallie to see that the peace be duly kept, or otherwise that the sharpest and speediest punishment be used without delaye, that can lesfullie be upon the breakers of the peace at any such assemblies; and it be also ordered that no soldier do come to any such assembly, but such as shalbe appoynted by their captayns or officers, or with the knowledge and permission of the commiſſioners.

*Peace to be kept in the assemblies.*

*Everie band to be mustered.* ITEM, when the numbers of the selected hable men shall be knownen, and howe many shall be furnished with armor and weapon, and the same distributed to the captaynes and leaders, everie captayne shall have a speciall roll made in writinge, of the names and surnames of the persons, and their dwellinge place, ly-mitted to his charge and leading, subscribed by the speciall commiſſioners, or one of them; and as any of the soldiers or officers shall either dye, or shall upon just cause, remove to some other dwellinge, out of the shire or the ly-mitt of the division where his muster place ys appoynted, which he shall nott do before knowledge given to the

captayne ; then the captaine shall give notice thereof, to his superior captayne, if he have any, or else to one of the speciall commissioners, so as the roome may, by warrant from one of the commissioners, be speedilie supplied, and an hable man armed and weaponed may be provided, and his name entered into the place of the former roll.

*Preservation of armour and weapons.*

ITEM, the commissioners shall also appoynte some good order, how the armour and weapons lymitted to serve, shalbe kept to contynue serviceable, and shall appoynte speciall men in every hundred or wapentake, to be named surveiors of the armour and weapons that shall belonge in commune to the parishes and towneshippes, both for the safe kepinge of the same, in the custodie of honest persons, and for the kepinge thereof alwaies furnyshed, cleane and readie for service ; and it may also be appoynted, that the same surveior in everie hundred, may from tyme to tyme in good reasonable sorte repayer to the houses of all other persons chargeable to have armour and weapons, to see that the same be dulle and clean kept, so as at the tyme of the musters, theie maie be perfectlie redie and without defecte : and if the said surveiors shall herein fynde any default, theie shall from tyme to tyme advertise some of the speciall commissioners to provide remedie for the same.

*The rest beinge not selected to be perfectlie trayned.*

ITEM, the rest of the totall numbers, not being, as above ys saide selected, and putt into such bands to be trayned, shall nevertheless be reduced into certen bandes of hundreds, under mete captaynes and officers, so as they maie be in readines also for a generall service, when of necessitie theie shalbe called, with armour and weapon for defence of the countrie, and to be also mustered and arrayed before their captaynes, in presence of two of the justices of peace at the least, fower severall tymes in the yeare, at places thereto appoynted, without any chardge to be bourne of any common collection, for the exercising of them; otherwise then voluntarilie themselves or their captaynes shall assent unto, or shall procure. And because in the choice of the numbers to be trayned and exercised, diverse of the soldiers inhabiting in many townes, shalbe forborne and not appoynted to be of the trayned

number, and yet the service of the persons chosen and trayned doth appertayne to the weale of the hole shier, there shalbe consideracion had in the collection of the chardges, to mayntayne the said trayninge and exercise; that everye towne and parishe of the sheire, and inha-

*Chardges for trayning  
to be borne by the most  
able.*

bitants thereof be ratablye chardged, without bourdonynge some more than other, otherwise than their habilities shall requier. And thus farre ys sufficient for so much as concernethe the musteringe, trayninge and exercisinge of the footmen, within that countie. And if there shalbe any towne corporate, or other place priviledged, that shall pretend to have by especiall grante, avaylable in law, exemption from appearaunce to muster before any other commissioners, then suche as be justices or officers of the saide townes or places; in such cases upon the shewinge to you the speciall commissioners of such grauntes, and of the usage thereof, if it shall appere that their claymes of such exemptions are good and reasonable, you shall forbere to entermeddle with the inhabitants thereof, and shall chardge them that spedilie theie do make suite to the lords of the privie counsaill, for a speciall commission to take the like musters of the said inhabitants as of others, within the bodie of the countie; and if you shall understand, that theie shall make delaye so to do, you, the speciall commissioners, shall thereto certifie her majesties counsaill, that in such case you shall enter and take musters of them.

FINALLYE, where in the beginninge of these instruccyons it is ordeyned, that you A, B, C, D, E, F, shall take especiall care of the executynge of the commission; yet for your more ease in devydinge of yourselves accordinge to the places of your residence, you shall do well to order, that in everie such division, the rest of the justices of peace, accordinge to their habilities and understandings, maie be so appoynted to assist you, and, as cause shall requier, to join with you, and in meaner poyntes of services, to supplie also your roomes; for otherwise the burden of the service will prove too great and troublesome.

*Articles for Furniture of Horsemen.*

ITEM, because one of the best strengthes to be required for defence of the realme, and that which is thoughte to be moste decayed and ymperfecte, and most necessarilie to be increased, is the furniture of horses and horsemen within the realme, it shalbe well considered by the saide A, B, C, D, &c. presentlie upon the receipte of the commission, and without delay, by good and advised conferences amongst themselves upon their first metynge, howe manye persons within the shire, in every hundred and division, in respect of their true, just, and reasonable clere yerelie valours of their landes and possessions or fees, or of the clere value of their goods, are by the lawes and statutes of the realme, chargeable to fynde and have in readynes, horses or geldinges bothe for launces and for light horsemen, with armour and weapons mete for the same; wherein is to be remembered, that the lawes do expresselie prescribe the chardge and nomber of the saide horses, or geldinges, to be accordinge to the just value of everie persons landes and fees, and of their goodes; and nott (as a common supposytion is made) that the said values of landes, fees and goods, should be accompted accordinge to the common and easie taxacyons used for the payment of subsidies. And therefore, though the said taxations for the payment of subsidies, it is sene by experience of her majesties clemencye and goodnes, that their hath not byn used any better inquyscion of the furder values of any persons for their landes or goods, to encrease her majesties subsidie, as in reason might be, speciallie where there appeareth great partialities in the said taxacyons; yet, in this speciall case, wherein consisteth a matter of suche weighte for the service, suretie and defence of the whole realme, yea, the particular defence of every speciall person, her majesty fyndeth it most necessarie and juste, to have a furder regarde, and not to suffer the intencyons of so necessarie and reasonable lawes to be in that wise frustrated, to the weaknes and danger of the realme, as it is like it shoulde be, if everie person chargeable to fynde horses ser-

vifable ſhoulde be no furdre charged, than accordinge to the common eafie values aſſeſſed by the ſeſſions of the ſubſidies, whiche her majeſtie verilie ſuppoſeth, no good ſubjects being hereof duly warned will thinke reaſonable, where theſe are in dede well knowne otherwiſe more hable by their landes, fees and goods to anſwer a greater number of horſes and geldinges; for ſo alſo by experience of former muſters of horſemen in ſondrie partes of the realme it hathe bin well ſene, that a great number of worſhipfull and honeſt well diſpoſed gentlemen, for love of their country, have had in readines more horſes or geldinges for ſervice furniſhed, than the rate of the valews of their lands or goods certified for ſubſidies, have preſcribed, and yet none of them have therebie byn the more chardged towards the payment of any ſubſidies, neither in reaſon oughte to be, but doe rather deſerve to be favored in all other manner of chardges, and to be eſteemed the better and more naturall ſubjects. And therefore, the ſaide A, B, C, D, &c. &c. after that they have amongſt themſelves conſidered, and well peruſed the number and ſtate of the poſſeſſioners reſident within that ſheire, whom they ſhall thinke to be indede hable in land, fees or goods, accordinge to the rates as by the laws ys ordeyned, ſhall make a book thereof, and conſequentlie ſhall ſend particular precepts to every of them, to prepare and put in readynes, ſuch number of horſes and geldings for ſervice, as they oughte to have by the ſtatutes and

*Precepts to warn all men chargeable to fynde horſes.*

lawes of the realme; with ſpeciall requeſt in the ſaide precept, to encreaſe the ſaide number as farre forth, as their habilites may reaſonable extend, without regarde to their values as theie be aſſeſſed in any ſubſidie books; and of the number that willinglie they will offer to find and have in readynes, to commande them to make anſwere by a day to be lymitted, which woulde be ſpedie as may be; and upon receipte of the ſame anſwers, if the ſaide A, B, C, D, &c. ſhall thinke that any of the ſaide parties have not yelded to ſuch a number as they ſhall thinke reaſonable they oughte to do, they ſhall commande them to appeare before them, and there ſhall uſe all the beſt perſwaſions that they can, to induce them to increaſe the number and furniture, whereunto if thei ſhall not agree, they ſhall immediatlie

*Certificates of thoſe unwilling to fynde horſes.*



certifie their names with their own offers, and the numbers whiche the saide commiffioners fhall have lymited to them, with a note of their values in fubfidies, and what the commiffioners fhall conceive them to be more in value.

AND as to the reft that fhallbe conformable to the mocyons of the commiffioners, it fhallbe ordered, that they may be lymited a reasonable tyme to have the faide horfes and geldinges in readynes to be fene and muftered. And the faide commiffioners fhall at fome convenient place and tyme, as foon as the fame maye be, take the mufters of all the faide horfes and geldinges, and of fuch mete perfons as fhallbe ap-  
 poynted to ferve uppon them, with their whole furniture of armour and weapons, accordinge to their feveral degrees and habilities: and in treatinge with any perfons for encrease of the numbers of horfes and their furniture, the faid commiffioners fhall let them knowe, that their fhallbe a feverall register booke made of the horfes or geldinges, which theie fhall kepe, accordinge to their values taxed in the fubfidie bookes, and another book aparte contaynyng the reft, which theie fhallbe content to furnifhe as an encrease of their good will which theie beare to the fervice of their countrie, speciallie as this tyme nowe requireth; and for the further probacyon of them to this encrease, they maie be perfuaded, that it fhallbe ordered, that the numbers of horfes and geldinges fo encreased above the value rated by the fubfidie books, fhall not be used or fent abroad to fervice, but when the owners thereof themfelves fhallbe fent to ferve, or any other by their confent and agreement, upon great, urgent and generall caufe for the neceffarie defence of the whole realme. And of the conformities of fuch as fhall in this forte agree to an encrease, the fame

*Certificates of perfons  
 conformable to faide  
 horfes.*

fhallbe certified to her majestie and her counsaill, to the intent their good difpofitions may be knownen and thankfully allowed. And as to the recusants, besides that certificates fhallbe made as above is expreffed, it fhallbe declared to them, that thereupon the quenes majestie must be forced to caufe a due inquisition and extent to be made, accordinge to the order of her lawes, of their full values both of landes and goods; and thereupon if their trewe valews fhallbe found by inquisityon, it is likely

that their burden shalbe far greater by order of the lawes, than by the commissioners ys lymitted, besides the forfeiture of the penalties incurred for the tyme passed, and beside the evill accompte and estimation to be made of their backwardnes ; and if uppon such motion theie shall not be made conformable to suche reasonable conditions as the commissioners shall thinke mete, then the said commissioners shall in dede without delaye make certificate as is above said, whereupon

*Inquisition shall be made of the values of the recusants.*

present order shalbe taken to proceed to due inquisition accordinge to thorder of the law, without any other favour than lawe shall permytte.

And because there is no one thinge at this tyme more necessarie to be regarded than the encrease to the strength of the realm by havinge of horses and geldinges mete for service, the saide commissioners shall furthermore cause an inquisition to be dulye made throughe that shaire of the statute made in the 27th yeare of the reigne of King Henrie theighth for breeding and encrease of horses, geldinges and mares ; and that after these have don their endeavours in this service by encreasing the numbers, and in musterynge and remedyng the defects of furnitures, they shall there of aparte make a full certificate in writinge, contayninge the particular name of everie person, with their dwellinge place, that shalbe lymeted, and shall assent to keepe any horse or geldinge, with the number of the saide horses and geldinges, and with the kinde of weapons, be it launce, or lighthorsemens staffe, or cases of dagges, accordinge to the qualities of the persons, and how manye of the same are already in readynes, and have ben viewed and mustered, and by what tyme the rest shall or may be so, as her majesty maye understand the strengthe of her good subjects in this kynd of service, and theie therefore receive thancks accordinge to their good willes for the same ; and likewise theie shall make certificate of the numbers of mares that are, or ought to be kept by the saide statute of the 27th of Hen. VIII. and what tyme ys lymeted for the supplie of those that do want. And confiderynge it is likely that many shalbe found willinge either of themselves, or by perswasion, to finde and kepe horses and geldinges for the service of the realme, and yet cannot presentlie provide the

*27th Hen. VIII. for encrease of horses.*

fame for any reasonable pryce, or that many shalbe both willing and hable to kepe, or have in convenient readynes, more horses or geldinges in the fomer tyme, than theie can in the wynter, the commiffioners shall use theire discretyons to lymitte reasonable tymes for them, whiche can nott presentlie provide horses or geldinges, to provide the fame ; and also shall lymett, as cause shall requier, a diverfitie of numbers to be in readynes, in respect of the tymes of fomer and wynter, so as by all good meanes, the number of the horses and geldinges serviceable, maie be made as greate in both tymes as reasonably may be, and that in the registeringe of the said numbers, it maie appeare how many of encrease to be had in the fomer, with the qualities of the horses or geldinges, how the fame shalbe serviceable.

AND where percase it may be, that fondrie merchaunts and others of greate wealthe in goods, dwellinge in corporate, or markett townes, beinge of fuche values, as in good reason, theie oughte to be chardgeable with findinge of horses or geldings, and yet by reason of theire dwellinge in such corporate or markett townes, and havinge nott lands in other places, wherebye to susteine the chardges of the saide horses, theie can nott without greater chardge than shalbe by them reasonable borne, fynde the fame in the saide towne, the saide commiffioners shall confer with them into what other reasonable chardge, the fame may be converted, that is, either to have in readynes, some harquebusiers, or to contrybute reasonable some porcyons of money towards the chardges of the musters in the saide towne, or near the fame ; and yet before these shall conclude so with the saide marchauntes or townsmen, for the alteracyon or conversion thereof, theie shall certifie their opynions to the counsaill, to thend the fame may be either allowed or altered.

W. Burghley,  
R. Leycester,  
F. Knollys,

E. Lyncoln,  
W. Mildmay,  
T. Smith,

T. Suffex.

*N. B.* This was subscribed by the council the last day of February, 15th of Eliz. 1572, the returns and musters in consequence thereof are given in the appendix.

THE present mode of recruiting our armies, is by engaging volunteers, who are enlisted to serve for an indefinite time, that is, till they shall be discharged. Sometimes, particularly towards the end of a war, soldiers are engaged for a certain time, commonly three years, to which is frequently annexed the additional clause of, "or during the war." Much might be said for enlisting soldiers for a stated time (r), but then it should be, at least, six or seven years. This mode of enlisting men for a limited time, was practised at a period when the British army was in the zenith of its glory, under the command of the victorious duke of Marlborough, and was authorised by several of the mutiny acts passed in the reign of Queen Anne: the clause from one of them, whereby this mode of enlisting is directed, may be seen in the note below (s).

PRESSING for soldiers was practised much in its present form in the time of Queen Elizabeth, as we may learn from the admirable portrait of its abuses exhibited by Shakspear: it has since been several times occasionally authorised by acts of parliament; but is in itself but a

(r) THE idea of engaging in a profession for life, has prevented many young men from enlisting, who would have ventured an essay of five or even seven years, and there is little danger of a good soldier requiring his discharge at the expiration of that time; the charms of a fresh bounty on one hand, and an unwillingness to leave his old comrades and connections on the other, would scarcely fail to procure a fresh engagement, particularly if some little douceur or honorary distinction was granted to soldiers on their second engagement.

(s) PROVIDED always, and it is hereby enacted, that every person now being in her majesty's service in the land forces, and who has been so for the space of three years, shall be at liberty, if he think fit, to demand his discharge from the colonel of the regiment to which he shall belong; as also, that every person who shall enter himself as a volunteer, or be listed in her majesty's service, after he shall have continued therein during the space of three years, shall be at liberty, if he think fit, to demand his discharge, in the like manner, such soldier giving to such colonel three months' notice at the least of his desiring such discharge; and such discharge shall be granted, gratis, in writing, under the hand of such colonel, who is impowered and required to give the same accordingly. Any thing herein contained to the contrary notwithstanding. Mutiny act, 12 Anne, 1714.

bad expedient, and in general timidly, partially, and improperly executed (t).

THE army, as it stands at present, may date its origin from the restoration ; though some of the establishment, formed by Charles II. was taken from corps raised during the civil wars ; for instance, the first regiment of foot, and the Coldstream regiment of guards, which last came with General Monk from Scotland.

THE royal regiment of horse-guards, commonly called the Oxford blues, is among the first on this establishment. It does not derive its name from the city of Oxford ; but from Aubrey, Earl of Oxford, who was its first colonel, in 1661. The two troops of horse-guards, which Charles embodied about the same time, and of which the privates were all gentlemen, have been some years abolished, and in their stead have been substituted two fine regiments of cavalry, subject to military discipline, like the rest of the army, which are called the 1st and 2d regiments of life-guards.

THE regular army, established by Charles II. consisted at first of very little more than 5000 men, including garrisons abroad. It is curious to trace the large military force now on foot from such small

---

(t) AN act for impressing foldiers took place in 1779, when all the thieves, pickpockets and vagabonds in the environs of London, too lame to run away, or too poor to bribe the parish officers, were apprehended and delivered over as foldiers to the regiments quartered in the very towns and villages where these banditti had lived and been taken. These men being thus set at large in the midst of their old companions and connections, immediately deserted, whereby the whole expence, by no means an inconsiderable one, was thrown away : nor did the foldiers of the regiments on which they were imposed, take the least pains to prevent their escape, or to retake them ; as they justly considered being thus made the companions of thieves and robbers, a most grievous and cruel insult, and loudly complained of it as such, to their officers. Indeed it seems to have been a very ill judged measure, tending to destroy that professional pride, that esprit du corps which ought most assiduously to be cultivated in every regiment. The profession of a foldier has long ceased to be lucrative, if it ever was so. If it is likewise made dishonorable, where shall we get foldiers on whom we may depend ? when the exigencies of the times make it necessary to take such men into the service, they should at least be sent to regiments quartered in a distant part of the kingdom, where they and their characters are equally unknown, or divided among the regiments on foreign service.

beginnings. In 1684 the standing army amounted to 8000 men ; that on the Irish establishment had been by the same time augmented to 7000. During the two succeeding reigns the army was much increased, the nation being then engaged in continental wars. Under George I. in 1717 the forces voted by parliament amounted to 16,000 men. The foreign wars and the internal disturbances during the following reign caused a considerable augmentation of the standing army. In 1746, the troops on the British establishment consisted of two royal troops of horse-guards, two of horse-grenadier-guards, one royal regiment of horse-guards, four regiments of cavalry, ten of dragoons, three regiments of foot-guards, and thirty regiments of foot.

EVERY successive war has increased the establishment of the army, in proportion to our acquisition of territory abroad. At the conclusion of the American contest, the forces were reduced to about 40,000 men for Great Britain and Ireland, consisting of two troops of royal horse-guards, two of grenadier-guards, one royal regiment of horse-guards, four regiments of cavalry, nineteen of dragoons, three regiments of foot-guards, and seventy-three marching regiments of foot ; besides the royal regiment of artillery, and thirty-six independent companies of invalids (\*).

---

\* THE present establishment of the army for Great Britain and Ireland is (November, 1799) as follows :

Two regiments of life-guards.  
 One regiment of royal horse-guards (blues).  
 Seven regiments of dragoon-guards.  
 Twenty-nine regiments of dragoons.  
 Three regiments of foot-guards, } one having 4, one  
 Ninety-two regular } 3, and several 2  
 regiments of foot, } battalions.  
 Five battalions of artillery in England.  
 One invalid ditto.  
 One battalion of Irish artillery.  
 A corps of royal engineers.  
 Thirty-six independent companies of invalids.

Twelve West-India regiments.  
 One regiment of mounted riflemen.  
 Six troops of horse-artillery.  
 A corps of infantry for New South-Wales.  
 Ditto for Jamaica.  
 Ditto for Upper Canada.  
 Ditto for Minorca  
 Ditto for Jersey.  
 A Scotch brigade in the East-Indies.  
 Thirty-one regiments of fencible cavalry.  
 Forty-four regiments of fencible infantry,  
 and  
 Six corps of provisional cavalry (embodied).

## CHAPTER V.

*Of the different Kinds of Troops, their Arms offensive and defensive, their Organization and Appointments.*

THE cavalry of our ancient English armies soon after the conquest, consisted of the knights, or men at arms, and hobilers; the infantry of spear and bill men, cross-bow men and archers (u).

THE men at arms derived that appellation from being completely armed de cap-à-pied, or from head to foot; they were chiefly composed of the tenants in capite, holding by military service, or their substitutes, sometimes called servientes.

THE defensive armour of a man at arms, was a hauberk of double mail, composed of ringlets of iron linked together like a net (x), this covered the body, and to it were joined a hood, breeches, stockings and sabatons or shoes of the same construction; the hands and arms were also defended by gauntlets and sleeves of mail.

IN France the hauberk was armour peculiarly appropriated to persons possessed of certain estates or fiefneuries called fiefs d'haubert, and might not be worn by persons of an inferior degree (y).

(u) IN garrisons the men at arms occasionally served on foot. Anno 1442, Thomas Hoo was retained by K. Henry VI. for the defence of the city of Mante, for which purpose he was to keep constantly fifty men at arms on horseback, twenty men at arms on foot, and two hundred and ten archers sufficiently armed, mounted, arrayed, and clothed. P. Daniel, tom. 1. p. 226.

(x) SOMETIMES, but not commonly, men at arms wore habergeons made of plate mail, formed of small round plates of iron, laid one over the other like scales of fish.

(y) THE hauberk was the proper armour of a knight; an esquire might wear a shirt of mail over his gambeson, but might not use the hood, breeches, hose, nor sleeves of mail. See Father Daniel's Hist. de la Mill. Franc. tom. 1. p. 393 and 394. An extract from an old







*N. C. Goodnight sculp*

**NORMAN SOLDIERS.**

COMMONLY under the hauberk, though sometimes over it, was worn a loose garment called a gambeson, which descended as low as the knees; it was stuffed with wool or cotton, and quilted; the use of it was to deaden the strokes of the sword or lance, which, though they did not divide the mail, might, without the interposition of the gambeson, severely bruise the body; under or between the hauberk and gambeson, a breast plate of forged iron, called a *plastron*, was occasionally put on; over which all men of family wore fur-coats of satin, velvet, or cloth of gold or silver, richly embroidered with their armorial bearings (z).

By a strap, hung over the neck, the men at arms carried a shield made of wood, covered with leather, bound or strengthened with iron or brass, having handles on the inside for bracing it, which was the term then in use, to express the putting it over the left arm (a). These shields were for at least a century after the conquest of a triangular form, pointed at the bottom, and a little convex in the direction of their breadth.

THE helmets worn by the men at arms were of different forms (b),

old regulation for tournaments, quoted by Du Cange in his seventh dissertation on the history of St. Louis, thus describes the armour of an esquire; Item, the harness of an esquire shall be similar to that of a knight, except that he shall not have the hose of mail, nor coif of mail over his basinet, but a hat of Mont Alban; nor ought he to have sleeves of mail: in all other points he may arm himself like a knight.

(z) ONE may judge by all this how our knights were loaded, when they had all their arms, for they had besides their ordinary clothes, the gambeson, which of itself must in summer have been very hot, being stuffed with wool or cotton, above this was their coat of double mail, and consequently of an extraordinary weight. Princes and certain great lords had over all their coats of arms, which held the place of the *paludamentum* of the ancient Roman captains, and was in figure like a dalmatick without sleeves, and descending to the knees; it was charged with the escutcheons, or armorial bearings of the wearer, and often was of cloth of gold or silver, rich furs, or cut velvets. But Fauchet has forgot in his description, another species of defensive armour which was worn under the gambeson; this was a *plastron* of iron. P. Daniel, tom. i. p. 388.

(a) FROM the French word *Bras*. Arm.

(b) SPECIMENS of every sort here mentioned may be seen in the great seals of our kings and ancient barons.

some conical or pyramidical, with a small projection called a nasal, to defend the face from a transverse stroke; some cylindrical, covering the whole head down below the chin, with apertures for sight and breath; and others in which the face was totally uncovered. Helmets with bevers and vizors do not seem to have been in use till the middle of the 14th century, about which time, the hauberk was exchanged by many of our men at arms for plate armour, so called from being formed of plates of iron (c).

ON the crests of their helmets, kings (d) frequently wore their crowns, earls and dukes their coronets, generals or other officers of rank either their armorial cognisances, or any other device they thought proper; this was done to make them look larger and more terrible to their enemies, and to render themselves conspicuous to their officers and soldiers.

To this list of defensive armour may also be added the war saddle, whose arcon of bows of steel, covered the rider as high as the navel.

THE knights of the three or four reigns next succeeding the conquest, commonly wore the pryck spur, which had only a single point, after which the rouelle, or wheel spur, came in fashion; some of these rouelles were near six inches in diameter.

THUS enveloped and loaded with such a number of weighty incumbrances, it is by no means wonderful, that in the midst of summer, in the heat, dust and press of an engagement, men at arms should be suffocated in their armour, an event which we learn from history has sometimes happened; besides the inconveniency arising from the

(c) P. Daniel, vol. 1. p. 396.

(d) IN Bab. Cott. Tiberius, E. VIII. is a manuscript, written about the time of Henry VIII. wherein among divers military arrangements, is one entitled the Order of a Kyng, if he entered to fyghte. The kyng, arrayed in his own coat of armes, must be on horseback, on a good horse, covered also with his armes: the kyng must also wear a crown upon his headpiece. Henry V. wore his crown at the battle of Agincourt, part of it was cut off by the duke of Alençon, with a stroke of his sword. King Richard III. wore his crown at the battle of Bosworth, which was, according to Rapin and others, after his death, found in the field of battle by a soldier, who brought it to the Lord Stanley.

heat, a man thus swathed up like an Ægyptian mummey could have but small powers of action. Indeed in a charge of cavalry very little exertion is required on the part of the rider, the success chiefly depending on the strength of the horse. All that the ancient knights had to do, was to keep their seats, and direct their lances; but how they were able to use the sword or mace to any effect, seems incomprehensible (e), though indeed, this in some measure accounts for the small number of knights slain in many engagements between cavalry only, in some of which we read not one knight was killed; probably, as ransom was so great an object with soldiers of those days, they rather wished to capture than to kill their adversaries; for this purpose therefore they endeavoured to unhorse them, as a knight when overthrown was immovable, and lay on the spot till remounted by his friends, or seized by his enemies.

THE offensive arms of a horseman, or man at arms, were a sword, or swords (f), a lance and a small dagger, called a misericorde, either from its being mercifully used in putting out of their misery persons desperately wounded, or from the sight of it, being apt to cause those against whom it was drawn (commonly knights unhorsed and lying on the ground) to cry, misericorde, mercy or quarter. Men at arms also frequently carried iron maces, suspended at their saddle-bow.

THE horses of the men at arms, were scarcely less encumbered with armour than their riders; their faces, heads and ears were covered over with a sort of mask, so contrived as to prevent their seeing

(e) KING James I. observed in praise of armour, that it not only protected the wearer, but also prevented him from injuring any other person.

(f) THE ancient knights frequently carried two swords, one in a belt by their side and the other fixed to their saddle-bow. In the *Speculum Regale*, written about the 12th century, among other directions for the arming of a horseman, are those: "let him have two swords, one in his belt and the other hanging to his saddle-bow, with a war-knife." P. 406. In a military treatise attributed to Guillaume de Bellay, it is said, men at arms should have their sword of arms at their side, the *estoc* (a long sharp-pointed sword) at one bow of their saddle, and a mace at the other.

right before them, in order that they might not be terrified from charging or flocking with vigour: this mask was called a chafron or shafront. Frequently from the centre of the forehead projected an iron spike, resembling the horn given to that fabulous animal an unicorn; their necks were defended by a number of small plates connected together, called a criniere, or manefaire; they had poytrinals for their breasts, croupieres and flancois for covering their buttocks and flanks, reaching down to the hocks; all these pieces were generally of iron or brass, though sometimes of cuir-bouillié, i. e. jacked leather. Occasionally they were covered all over with mail, or linen stuffed and quilted like the gambeson and adorned with rich embroidery. Horses thus covered, were called barded, and corruptly barbed horses: they were also frequently stiled covered horses (g).

To prevent their horses from being fatigued under all their own incumbrances, and the enormous weight of their riders, and to preserve their vigour for the charge, the men at arms had commonly hackneys for riding on a march, and did not mount their war horses till they were certain of coming to action; a circumstance which has frequently occasioned them to be surprized and defeated, before they could mount their chargers and form. Barded horses were in use in our armies, at the time of King Edward VI.

WHEN plate armour came into general use, which, as has been before observed, was about the middle of the fourteenth century (h), the different pieces for a man at arms, were these; a close helmet, having a visor to lift up and let down, or one with a visor and bever, both revolving on the same pivots (i). When these were closed the air was admitted through apertures made also for sight, and other

---

(g) BARDE', in old French, signifies covered.

(h) IT is not to be supposed that before that time plate armour was unknown; history affords us plenty of instances to the contrary; but probably, it was in the earlier periods too dear to be generally worn: there are still many specimens of Roman plate armour in the museums of the curious.

(i) THE visor was opened to obtain a less obstructed sight, and the bever, to enable the wearer to converse more freely, and to eat or drink; their use is pointed out by their names.





A HORSEMAN'S ARMS ARMOUR, & ACCOUTREMENTS.

smaller perforations opposite the mouth and nostrils. The neck and throat were defended by a gorget, or hallercet; the body by a cuirass, formed of two pieces hooked together, denominated backs and breast pieces, from the parts they covered; to the back was joined, a *gard de reines*, or *culet*; the arms were covered with *brassarts*, called also *avant bras*, and corruptly *vambraces*, the hands by gauntlets, the shoulders by *pouldrons*, the thighs by *cuissarts*, and the legs by iron boots, called *greaves*, and sometimes by boots of jacked leather. Under all these, was worn a jacket of thick fustian or buff leather; shields seem to have been left off by the cavalry before this alteration.

PLATE armour was, some time after its introduction, made of a prodigious thickness; Monsieur de la Noue, in his fifth military discourse, says, that to guard against the violence of *harquebusses* and pikes, the men at arms loaded themselves with anvils, instead of covering themselves with armour; it was also so closely fitted as to make it difficult to penetrate the joints with the *misericorde*, or dagger. Father Daniel quotes from Philip de Comines, an instance of this at the battle of Fornoue, under Charles VIII. where a number of Italian knights who were overthrown, could not be slain on account of the strength of their armour, till broke up like huge lobsters, by the servants and followers of the army, with large wood-cutters' axes; each man at arms having three or four men employed about him (k).

ABOUT the time of Queen Mary, the appellation of men at arms, signifying the heavy-armed cavalry, seems to have been changed to that of spears and lances, and afterwards to *cuirassiers*.

THE armour of a lancer was much the same as last described; their offensive weapons were, a lance of sixteen or eighteen feet long, a sword and *petrenels* (l); the last were somewhat longer than the pistols then in use.

(k) HIST. de la Mil. Fr. vol. i. p. 396.

(l) THE president Fauchet, the French antiquary, who lived at the time of Francis I. and died in the reign of Henry IV. says, within these twenty or thirty years, the name of  
VOL. I. P petrenel



THE cuirasier was also armed cap-à-pie, and had under his armour a good buff coat; his offensive arms were a spit sword, with a sharp point, pistols, or petrenels, his saddle and bit strong, and the reins of his bridle strengthened with an iron chain to prevent their being cut.

HOBILERS, were a species of light horsemen chiefly calculated for the purposes of reconnoitring, carrying intelligence, harassing troops on a march, intercepting convoys, and pursuing a routed army; the smallness of their horses rendering them unfit to stand the shock of a charge: they seem also to have been occasionally like the original dragoons of the French (from whom we borrowed both the name and establishment of those troops), who, Father Daniel says, were rather considered as infantry mounted on horseback for the sake of moving with celerity, than cavalry fit to charge in the line.

petrenel has been given to a weapon between the harquebuses and pistols, having a stronger and more sudden wheel; it is thought this weapon was the invention of the bandouliers of the Pyrenean mountains. Nicot, who was his contemporary, in his dictionary thus described the petrinel; it is, says he, a sort of harquebuse, shorter than the musquet, but of a greater caliber; which, on account of its weight, is carried in a large shoulder belt, and when fired, is rested on the breast of the person who discharges it; whence it is called the petrinel, or poitrinal. The pistol was of more ancient date, it derives its name from having been made at Pistoya in Spain; Sir James Turner says, the pistol was invented first by Camillo Vitelli, an Italian, when Ferdinand of Arragon reigned in Spain, Charles VIII. and Lewis XII. in France, Henry VIII. in England, and James V. in Scotland, not above one hundred and fifty years ago, and consequently more than two hundred years after the German monk had found out gunpowder. The harquebuse is of older date. The bore of the pistol long ago was made for twenty bullets in one pound of lead, but it being found that the ball entered not easily, generally they cast one pound of lead into four and twenty pistol balls; the half of the weight of the powder serves, if it be good, if not, they take two thirds; as for one pound and a half of lead, one pound of powder; but if it be fine, half will serve, as for two pounds of lead, one pound of powder: the barrel of the pistol may be two foot for the longest, sixteen inches for the shortest. The French use locks with half bends; and so do for the most part the English and the Scots; the Germans, rore or wheel works; the Hollander makes use of both. If the chamber of a pistol be loaden three times the diameter of her bore with powder (which is easily measured by her rammer), she hath her due charge, but all horsemen should always have the charges of their pistols ready in patrons, the powder made up compactly in paper, and the ball tied to it with a piece of packthread.

SOME, among whom is Bailey (m) derive the term *hobiler* from a Danish word, signifying a mare, not considering that any considerable number of mares, could not have been suffered in an army where the men at arms were chiefly mounted on stoned horses, and that besides in the days of chivalry it was considered as a degradation for any knight, or man at arms, to be seen mounted on a mare (n): most probably they borrowed their name from the hobbies, or small horses on which they rode: hobbies are defined by Johnson and others to be small Irish horses.

---

(m) SEE his dictionary, *hoblers*, or *hobilers* (*hobelarii*) erant milites gregarii levi armatura & mediocri equo, ad omnem motum agili. Sub Edwardo III. in Gallia moventes dicti (ut reor) vel ab istius modi equo, an hobby appellato, vel potius a Gal. *bobille tunica*. Tabulæ classes describentes in exercitu ejusdem Edwardi Caletam obsidentes, anno 1350, sic habent. Sub Comite Kildaræ banerets 1, knights 1, esquires 28, *hobilers* 27, &c. These were light horsemen, or certain tenants, who by their tenure were bound to maintain a little light nag, for certifying an invasion, or such-like peril, towards the sea side, as Portsmouth, &c. of which you may read, 18th Ed. III. stat. 1. c. 7 and 25. ejusdem stat. 5. cap. 8. and Camden's Brit. fol. 272. Duravit vocabulum usque ad ætatem Hen. VIII. says Spelman, Gentz d'armes & *hobelours*. See Prin's Animadv. on the 4th inst. f. 307. *Hobeleries*. Rot. Parl. 21. Ed. III. Sometimes the word signifies those who used bows and arrows, viz. pro warda maris tempore guerræ pro *hoberariis sagittariis* inveniendis, &c. Thorn, anno 1364. So in the Monasticon. Pro munitione & apparatibus hominum ad arma, *hobeliorum sagittariorum*, Cowel, edit. 127. Cunningham's Law Dictionary. Camden says, in the passage above quoted, p. 273, "In old times there were set horsemen at parts, in many places, whom our ancestors called *hobelers*, who, in the day should give notice of the enemies approach."

(n) IN a writ to the bishop of Durham, A.D. 1324, 18 Ed. II. directing him to raise within his diocese, the greatest number, and most valiant men at arms, *hobilers* and footmen he can possibly, there is the following exception to mares: Des *hobelours* convenablement appareillez montez a chivaux autre qe jumentz. Rymer.

COLEMBIERE says, if any one presented himself at a tournament, under false proofs of nobility, he was then condemned to ride upon the rail of the barrier bare headed, his shield and casque were reversed and trodden under feet, his horse confiscated and given to the officers of arms, and he was sent back upon a mare, which was deemed a great shame, for a true knight would anciently have been equally dishonoured by mounting a mare, whether in time of war or peace; even geldings, so much esteemed at present, were banished from among them.

It is commonly supposed that the establishment of hobilers did not take place, till the reign of Edward III. This is evidently a mistake, for they are mentioned as part of the British army that attended King Edward II. into Scotland, in the year 1322 (o): the name seems totally lost, about the latter end of the reign of Henry VIII. or Queen Mary, these troops being then distinguished by the appellation of demy launces and light horse.

THE arms and appointments of a hobiler as directed by King Edward III. were, a horse, a haqueton, or armour of plate, a bacinnet, iron gauntlets, a sword, knife and a lance (p). Sometimes archers were mounted on light horses, whence they were stiled hobiler archers: these frequently occur in history.

THE arms, both offensive and defensive, of a demi lance or light horseman, are thus described by Markham (q).

“ THE second troop of horse were launciers, or demy launciers, they were armed at all pieces, from the head to the knee, like the gentlemen at arms, and their offensive weapons were a lance, a case of short pistols, a battle axe, sword and dagger, strong horses, well ridden for the field, armed with a steel saddle, headstall, raines, bitt, breastplate, crooper, trappings, girtes, stirrups and leathers.

“ THE third sort of ancient horsemen, were called light horse, and they were armed for defence with burgenets or steel caps, gorgets, curats, or plate coats, gauntlets or gloves of mail: for offensive arms they had a slender chasing staffe, a single pistol, and sometimes a case, a sword, and dagger. Their horses were nimble light geldings, fair trotting and well ridden: the furniture for the horse was a headstall and raines, a bitt, a morocco saddle, pettrel, crop-

---

(o) *TITULUS de Denariis solutis diversis comitibus, baronibus et aliis pro vadiis suis & hominum suorum ad arma & hobelariorum tam in guerra Scotie quam in munitionibus castro- rum in marchia Scotie & Anglie a primo die Maii, anno quintodecimo, usque septimum diem Julii anno Regni ejusdem sexto, decimo finiente tempore Rogeri de Waltham tunc custodis et Roberti de Baldok tunc contrarotulatoris garderohe MS. in Bib. Tho. Astle Ar.*

(p) *YELVERTON MS. in the same library.*

(q) P. 34. *IN the Souldiers Accidence, published A.D. 1645.*

per, light trappings, and other necessaries suitable; the men to be handsome yeomen or serving men, light timbred and of a comely shape, where it skills not much for the tallnesse or greatnesse of body, but for the height of spirit, and the goodnesse of the inclination; in which little David (many times) puts downe the greatest Goliah."

THE same author then proceeds to describe the cavalry of his time: "Thus (says he) for your knowledge, not your example, I have shewed you the severall compositions and armings of horsemen, according to the ancient times, when the bow and the hargobus had the first place, and the musket, and other fiery weapons, lay obscured. But to come to these our present times, wherein the uttermost strength of the fire is found out and explained, and to shew you that which you must only imitate and follow, you shall know that all our horse-troopes are reduced to one of these three formes.

"THE first and principall troop of horsemen, for the generality, are now called cuirassiers, or pistoliers, and these men ought to be of the best degree, because, the meanest in one of those troops, is ever by his place a gentleman, and so esteemed. They have for defensive armes, gorgets, curats, cutases, which some call culets, others the guard de reine, because it armeth the hinder parts, from the waste to the saddle crotch, then pouldrons, vambraces, a lefthand gauntlet, taces, cuisses, a caske, a sword, girdle and hangers. For offensive armes, they shall have a case of long pistols, firelocks (if it may be), but snaphaunces where they are wanting; the barrels of the pistols would be twenty-six inches long, and the bore of thirty-six bullets in the pound, flask, priming box, key and mouldes; their horses should be stoned and of the best races, faire trotting and well ridden for the wars, that is to say, being able to passe a strong and swift carriere, to stop close, to retire at pleasure, and to turne readily on both hands, either in large rings or in strait, especially the turn called terra, terra; the horse shall have a saddle, bridle, bitt, pettrel, crooper, with leathers to fasten his pistols and his necessary packe of carriage, with other necessary things according to the forme of good horsemanship; the second sort (of which many troopes of horse are com-

pounded) are called hargobuifiers or carbines, these men ought to be the best of the first inferior degree, that is to say, of the best yeomen or best serving men, having active and nimble bodies, joyned with good spirits, and ripe understandings; these men shall have for defensive armes, gorgets, curats, cutases, pouldrons, vambraces, and a light head-piece, wide fought, and the bevers to let downe upon bars of iron; for offensive armes, he shall have an hargobus of three foote three inches long, and the bore of twenty bullets in the pound, with flaske, priming box and moulds, or instead of these, cartalages, which will serve either for this, or any other piece on horsebacke; also a good sword, and other accoutrements according to his place. His horse shall be either a faire stoned trotting horse, or a lusty strong guelding well ridden; he shall be armed with a morocco saddle, bridle, bitt, pettrel, and crooper, with the rest before shewed necessary to his place.

“THE last sort of which our horse troops are composed are called dragoons (r), which are a kind of footmen on horsebacke, and do now indeed succeed the light horsemen, and are of singular use in

---

(r) ACCORDING to P. Daniel, tom. 2. p. 498, dragoons are of French origin, and were invented by Charles de Coffé, Marechal de Brillac, when he commanded the army of that nation, in Piedmont, sometime about the year 1600: he supposes they were called dragoons, from the celerity of their motions, and the rapidity with which they ravaged a country, thereby resembling the fabulous monster of that denomination. Sir James Turner seems much of the same opinion: “For what they got the denomination of dragoons (says he), is not so easy to be told, but because in all languages they are called so, we may suppose, they may borrow their name from dragon, because a musketeer on horseback with his burning match, riding a gallop, as many times he doth, may something resemble that beast, which naturalists call a fiery dragon.” The oldest regiment of dragoons in the English army is the Scotch greys, who were raised 19th Nov. 1683.

CAPT. CRUSO, in his Military Instructions for the Cavalry, published A.D. 1632, says there are two sorts of dragoons, the pikeman and the musketeers; the pikeman is to have a thong of leather about the middle of his pike, for the more commodious carrying it. The musketeer is to have a strap or belt fastened to the stock of his musket almost from one end to the other, by which (being on horseback) he hangeth it at his back, his burning match and the bridle in the left hand.



ANCIENT DRAGOON.

N. Goodnight sculp



all actions of warre; their armes defensive, are an open head-piece with cheeks, and a good buffe coat, with deepe skirts; and for offensive armes, they have a faire dragon, fitted with an iron worke to be caryed in a belt of leather, which is buckled over the right shoulder, and under the left arme, having a turnill of iron with a ring, through which the piece runnes up and downe; and these dragons are short pieces of sixteen inches the barrell, and full musket bore, with firelocks or snaphaunces (s); also a belt, with a flaske, prying box, key and bullet bag, and a good sword: the horse shall be armed with a saddle, bridle, bitt, petterell, crooper, with straps for his sack of necessaries; and the horse himself shall be either a good lusty gelding, or a nimble stoned horse. These dragoons in their marches are allowed to be eleven in a rank or file, because when they serve, it is many times on foote, for the maintenance or surprizing of strait wayes, bridges or foords, so that when ten men alight to serve, the eleventh man holdeth their horses: so that to every troope of an hundred, there is an hundred and ten men allowed."

A MANUSCRIPT in the Harleian library, marked No. 6008, and entitled, A Brief Treatise of War, &c. &c. by W. T. in the year of our redemption 1649, on the subject of dragoons, has the following passages: "As for dragooniers they are to be as lightly armed as may be, and therefore they are onlie to have as followeth, calivers and powder flasks. I would also have each dragoonier constantly to car-

---

(s) THE piece here mentioned seems to have been a kind of carabine, or blunderbuss, which is thus described by Sir James Turner, p. 137. "The carabiners carry their carabines in bandileers of leather about their neck, a far easier way than long ago, when they hung them at their saddles; some instead of carabines carry blunderbusses, which are short hand guns of a great bore, wherein they may put several pistol or carabine balls, or small flugs of iron. I do believe the word is corrupted, for I guess it is a German term, and should be *donnerbucks*, and that is thundering guns, *donner* signifying thunder, and *bucks* a gun." Lord Orrery in his Treatise on the Art of War, proposes that every regiment of cavalry should consist of seven troops, six of heavy-armed horse, and one of dragoons; an idea that was afterwards adopted, by the attaching a light troop to every regiment of dragoons.



rye at his girdle, two fwyn feathers, or foot pallifados, of four feet length and a half, headed with sharp forked iron heads of six inches length, and a sharp iron foot, to stick into the ground for their defence, whereas they may come to be forced to make resistance against horse."

WHEN the bayonet was first introduced, the use of it was chiefly confined to the dragoons and grenadiers (t).

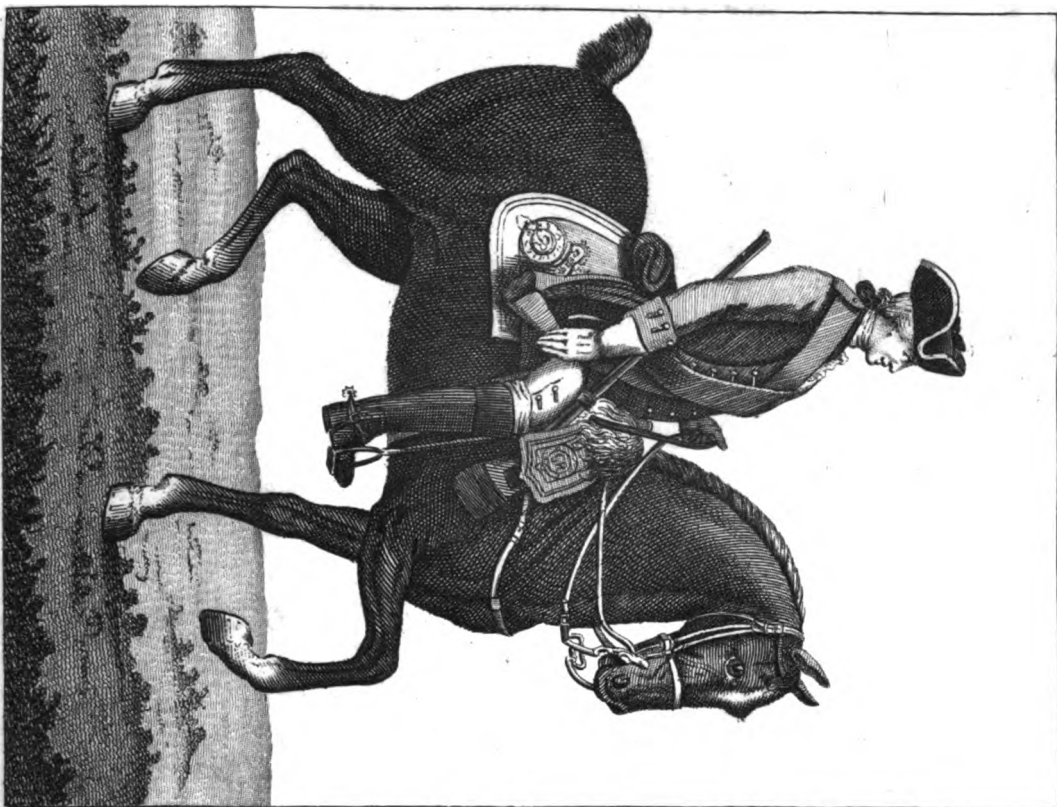
AFTER the revolution and disbanding of the army in 1698, the English cavalry consisted of the life-guards, horse-grenadier-guards (u), horse, and dragoons, till the year 1746, when a regiment of light dragoons was raised, chiefly in the county of Nottingham, and the duke of Cumberland appointed colonel of it (x); the same year the third and fourth troops of horse-guards were disbanded, and three regiments of horse reduced to the pay and service of dragoons, but as some compensation, they were gratified with the honorary title of dragoon-guards, and precedence of all other dragoons."

IN the year 1755 a light troop was added to each regiment of dragoons, and several regiments of light dragoons have been since

(t) THE bayonet is much of the same length as the poniard; it hath neither guard nor handle, but only the haft of wood eight or nine inches long; the blade is sharp-pointed and two-edged, a foot in length, and a large inch in breadth. The bayonet is very useful to dragoons, fusileers and soldiers, that are often commanded out on parties; because that when they have fired their discharges, and want powder and shot, they put the haft of it into the mouth of the barrel of their pieces, and defend themselves therewith as well as with a partizan. English Military Discipline, &c. printed for Robert Harford, 1680, p. 13. As late as the year 1750, dragoons were armed with iron scull caps, which they carried at their saddle bow.

(u) THE grenadier-guards were first raised as grenadiers to the troops of horse-guards, in imitation of the grenadier companies annexed to the regiments of infantry.

(x) THE warrant for raising this regiment was dated 8th Sept. 1746; it was disbanded in 1748 or 1749. Upon the raising of this regiment, the printer of the London Evening Post observed, that formerly our cavalry resembled giants mounted on elephants, but this regiment was like monkies upon lean cats. For this and some other unhandsome reflections on the corps, they deputed one of their officers to give him some proper correction, which he most faithfully and ably administered: the expences of the prosecution were paid by a regimental contribution.



*HORSE GUARD.*



*LIGHT DRAGOON.*



raised. The gallant behaviour of one of them in Germany (y), their general utility, and the smartness of their appearance, has of late brought them into such estimation, that several old regiments of dragoons have obtained leave to change their heavy black horses, for others of a lighter breed, not considering that as they now occupy the place of cavalry, there being but one regiment of horse on the English establishment, they should not risque that superiority the strength, size and weight of their horses have hitherto given them over the cavalry of every other nation. Light troops are extremely useful on divers occasions, but it is the heavy horse only that are fit to charge in the line.

THE band of gentlemen pensioners was a corps of cavalry instituted by King Henry VIII. for an honourable body guard, and to form a nursery for officers of his army and governors of his castles and fortified places. The orders and regulations in the note below for raising and governing it, approved of, and signed by that king, will best describe what he intended it should be (z).

(y) THE 15th regiment of light dragoons. This corps when first completed, is said to have consisted chiefly of tailors; if so, they demonstrated that Sir John Hawkwood was not the only instance in which the vulgar joke on their profession has proved a falsity.

(z) THIS curious manuscript is preserved in the Cottonian library, it is written on five small quarto leaves of indented vellum, marked Titus, A xiii. N. 24.

CERTAIN ordinances and statutes devised and signed by the king's majestie for a retinewe of speres or men of arms, to be chosen of gentlemen that be comen and extracte of noble blood. With a forme of their othe.

HENRY R.

FORASMUCH as the king oure souveraine lorde, of his greatt noblenesse, wisdom and prudence, considreth that in this his reame of England be many yong gentlemen of noble blod, whiche have non exercise in the feate of armes, in handling and renyng the spere and other faits of werre on horsebacke, like as in other reames and cuntreys be dailey practised and used, to the greate honor and laude of theim that soo dothe, his highnes hath ordeyned and appointed to have a retynue dailey of certaine speres called men of armes, to be chosen of gentlemen that be comen and extracte of noble blod, to thentent that they

VOL. I.

Q

shall

As there is no date to those regulations, it is uncertain when they were made, but from divers concurrent circumstances, there are good

shall exercise the said feate of armes, and be the more mete and able to serve their prince, as well in tyme of werre as otherwise, and to have good wages to leve upon accordingly.

AND to thentent alsoo, that every of them shall knowe howe to order and demean themselves, his highnes hath made, ordeyned and established certayne ordenances and statutes followinge.

FURST, Evry of the said gentlemen shall have his harneys complete and all other habiliments mete and necessary for him, with twoo double horses at the leeste for himself and his page, convenient and necessary for a man of arms; also his coustrell, with a javelyn or demy-launce, well armed and horsed as it apperteyneth. And they shall obeye, in everye condicon, the captaine that shall be ordeyned and deputed by the king's highnes, or his deputie lieutenante, to have the rule, conduite, and gov'nance of themm, in all things that thei shall be commanded to doo on the king's behalf.

ITM. That they shall make their abode in suche places as the king's grace shall appoint them, or the said captaine, or the deputy lieutenante in the king's name, whedder it be in places nigh his person, or elsewhere, upon pain for every such defaulte to lose six dayes wages.

ITM. Evry of the said speres and coustrells shall, at every time, cary with them thire horses, harnys, and other habiliments of werre as thei have, and shall muster with, not lacking, at any time, pece or parcel of their said habilyments of werre, nor horses, upon payne of losing six dayes wages for every suche daye and tyme as he shall be founden in defaulte, being afore commaunded by the king, captaine, or lieutenante.

ITM. In likewise that non of the said speres nor coustrells shall in no wise departe oute of the place, where they be assigned to make their said abode, withoute the special licence of the king our souveraine lorde, or of their said captaine, or deputie lieutenante: and to suche as licence shall be granted unto by the king's grace, or the said captaine or lieutenante, and the daye appointed them for their returne not to faille, withoute lawfull excuse of sicknesse or otherwise duely proved, upon paine of the losse of double their wages for every daye, as thei shall faille in comyng after the said daye to them lymited and assigned.

ITM. That evry of the aforefaid men of armes shall furnyshe and make redy twoo good archers, well horsed and harnessed, and to bring them to muster before the king's grace, or suche persones as his grace shall appointe, within a moneth at the farthest after the daye that they shall be commanded soo to doo by the king's grace, or their captaine or lieutenante, and not to faille soo to doo, upon paine of losing their romes, and their bodies to be ponyshed atte the king's pleasure.

ITM. If any of the said archers after they be admitted, fortune to dye, the said speres shall not admitte any other in their place, but shall name oon mete person for that roome of

reasons to suppose they were compiled, and the corps formed in the year 1509, the first of that king's reign; what was the original

of archer unto the king's highnes, and bring him to his presens, to be admitted at his pleasure, or els to the said captaine or lieutenant.

ITM. For the wages and ent'teyning of the said speres and archers, the king's highnes hath ordeyned and appointed, that every spere shall have and receive for himself, his coustrell, his page, and his two archers, thre shillings and foure pens strlings by the daye, to be paid by hands of the tresourer of the king's chambre, whiche is appointed by the king's highnes to paye them the same. And futhermore the said speres shall receive their said wages for them and for their archers at thend of every moneth.

ITM. The king's pleasure is, that the said lieutenant shall have for the wages and entertaining of himself, his custrell, page, and six archers, six shillings by the daye, to be payed in like manner as the said speres shall be.

ITM. The king's grace wolle that the said captaine or lieutenant, with suche other psones as his grace shall appointe, shall evry quarter of the yere, as it shal be the king's pleasure, see the musters of the said men of armes and their company, if any of them lakke horse, harneys, or if any of their said horses and harneys be not sufficient as they should be: if thei be not, that they be commanded by the foresaid captaine or lieutenant, to provide for suche as shal be good and sufficient, upon raisonable daye, by the said captaine or lieutenant to be appointed. And suche as soo be founden in defaulte, that the said captaine or lieutenant, shall restrain his wages in the hands of the said tresourer of the chambre, till he be sufficiently appparelled of suche thinges as he soo shall lakke, and thus the said captaine or lieutenant to doo upon payne of the king's displeasure, and losing of his rome.

ITM. To thentent that the said speres shall alwayes be in the more arredynes (readiness), with their retynue, and suche horse and harneys, and other things as shal be necessarye in that behalf, the king's pleasure is, that the said speres shal be redy alwayes to muster before the said captaine or lieutenant at suche tyme or tymes as they shal be by them commaunded soo to doo.

ITM. It is the king's commaundement, that the said speres and their companye shall observe and kepe good rule and gov'nance, and nothyng attempte againste the king's subiects, contrarye to his lawes; and that thei duely and truly content and paye in redy money for vittals and all other necessaries, that thei shal take for themselves, their said servants and horses, upon payne to be punished after the king's pleasure. And if any of them shall be founde three times culpable in any such defaults, then he or thei to be deprived of his rome, and his body to be punished at the king's pleasure.

ITM. It is the king's pleasure and commaundement, that none of the said speres shall presume to take his lodging by his owne auctoritie, but be ordered therein, and take such lodging,

number is not there mentioned; most of the chronicles fix it at fifty.

---

lodging, as by the king's herbergiers (harbingers) for that purpose deputed, shall be appointed unto them, upon ponyshement aforaid.

ITEM. It is the king's pleasure and commaundement, that non of the said speres shall geve wages unto any archer, coustrell, or page of any other spere, nor to reteigne him as his frvante, excepte he be put to him by his own master, being oon of the said speres.

#### The O T H E.

I SHAL be true and faithfull subiecte and servante unto oure Sovereine Lord King Henry VIII. and to his heirs, kings of England, and diligently and truly give myn attendance in the room of one of his speres; and I shall be reteyned to no man, pson, ne psones of what degree or condicon soever he be, by othe, lyvree, bagge [badge], promise or otherwise, but oonly to his grace, without his especiall licence. And I shall not hereafter knowe or here of any thing that shal be hurtfull or prejudiciall to his most royal pson, specially in treason, but I shal withstand it to th' utermost of my power, and the same, with all diligence to me possible, disclose to the king's highnes, or to the captaine of the said speres, or his deputie lieutenant, or such others of his counsaile as I shall know woll discover the same unto his grace. I shall not leye to pledge, ne putte awaye suche horse and harneys, as I now have mustered with before the king, to any pson or psones, ne put oute of service any archer, coustrell or page, that I have nowe with me, onles I have before shewed cause reasonable soo to doo, to the king, or the said captaine or his deputie lieutenant in his absence: nor I shall knowe of any of my company in likewise to leye to pledge or put away any horse, harneys, or archers, but that I shall shewe the same to the king's grace, his said captaine, or deputie lieutenant, in as brief tyme as I conveniently maye. I shall also truly and faithfully to my power observe and kepe from this daye forwards, all and evry article comprized in a booke assigned with the king's hand, and all manner of statutes and ordinances in the same and in evry of them contened. On this I shall be obeysaunte unto my captaine or deputie lieutenant, and the commaundements I shall observe and kepe at all tymes, soo the same be or concerne the service of the king's grace. And all such causes secrete as shall be shewed unto me by the king's grace, the faide captaine, or deputie lieutenant, I shall keep counsaill, without discov'ring of the same to any pson or psones till I be commaunded. I shall diligently give my attendaunce with my retynue upon the king's grace, in such wise as I shall be commaunded and appointed by the said captaine, or his said deputie lieutenant; and not absente or departe from the courte without licence of the king or of the said captaine or his deputie lieutenant, in his absence, by the space of foure dayes. And also all suche horse, harneys, and other habiliments of werre, as I nowe have mustered with before the king's grace, the said captaine or deputie lieutenant, be my own proper

THIS establishment being, it is said, found too expensive, the corps was disbanded, a short time after its institution, and before the year 1526 revived on a smaller pay; it is mentioned that year in the household statutes made at Eltham, under the description of the band of gentlemen pensioners, their present title; when the corps stood thus:

A captain with the salary of	- - -	200 marks
A lieutenant	- - - - -	100 pounds
A standard bearer (a)	- - - - -	100 marks
Fifty gentlemen pensioners, each (b)	-	46l. 13s. 4d.
A clerk of the cheque	- - - - -	40 pounds
A harbinger (c)	- - - - -	18 pounds

ABOUT this time they appear to have done duty on foot in the court, probably armed with their battle-axes. Towards the latter end of his reign, King Henry indulged them with permission to do their duty by quarterly attendance, half the band waiting at one time; for which favour each of them was to furnish an additional great horse (d); they were nevertheless all obliged to attend at the

---

proper goods and non other man's: nor also I shall not muster at any tyme before the king's grace, the said captaine or deputie lieutenante, with any archer, coustrell or page, but oonly with suche as I have reteyned with me to serve the king's highnes for the same entent. And thus I shall well and truly observe and kepe, and serve the king in the said rome of oon of his spers: so help me God and theis holy Evangelies.

(a) ACCORDING to Doctor Chamberlayne's *Angliæ Notitia* of the year 1672, the band had two standards, one St. George's cross, the other, four bends; but in the latter the colours of the field and charge are not mentioned.

(b) THIS seems a singular sum; but as it is the amount of 70 marks, the common mode of reckoning at that time when wages did not often run per diem, probably on account of this diminution in their wages, a less retinue might be required of them. Hollinghead says, fol. 1574, they were only bound to supply two horses, or, optionally, one horse and a gelding of service.

(c) NEITHER the standard bearer, clerk of the cheque, nor harbinger, are mentioned in the original ordinance.

(d) ITEM, in consideration whereof, whereas now they are bounden to the findinge of  
two



four principal feasts of the year, Christmas, Easter, Whitsuntide, and Allhallowtide. King Henry VIII. was attended by the band at the siege of Boulogne, and after its surrender, they made part of the cavalcade at his triumphal entry into that place. In the succeeding reigns of Edward VI. Mary and Elizabeth (e), they were occasionally mustered with the other forces of the kingdom, and frequently performed their military exercises before the court.

DURING Cromwell's protectorship, this corps was suspended, but was embodied again soon after the restoration.

KING JAMES II. in the first year of his reign gave a new set of orders to the band, differing much from those of Queen Elizabeth and King Charles I. Some of the most remarkable may be seen in the note underneath: the band at that time consisted of forty gentlemen in ordinary, and eighty extraordinary (f).

two greate horses only, they shall each one from henceforthe, keepe three horses furnished accordingly. These orders were issued, when Sir Anthony Brown was captain of the band. See *Curialia*, No. 2, p. 25.

(e) FROM some articles made for the government of the band, it appears, that in this reign there was a table allowed to the gentlemen in waiting, as well as to the officers; this was relinquished in the reign of King Charles II. on their pay being raised to its present amount, which took place, A.D. 1670: part of the fund for that augmentation arose from the reduction of the band from fifty to forty.

(f) ART. 3. If we or the captain of the said band shall think fit to remove any or all of the forty gentlemen pensioners in ordinary now of the band, those who have bought their places, that shall be so removed, shall receive half pay during their lives respectively, and those that succeed in their places the other half, and after their death the whole.

ART. 11. The said gentlemen pensioners in ordinary being required by their institution every of them to be well and sufficiently provided and furnished with three great horses for himself and his servants, with arms and all other habiliments to the same appertaining, the performance whereof our late brother King Charles II. was pleased to dispense with till he should think fit to require the same; it is our pleasure, that from henceforth the forty gentlemen pensioners in ordinary, and the eighty gentlemen pensioners extraordinary, shall each of them be sufficiently furnished with a case of pistols, a broad sword, an iron back, breast, and head piece, with proper furniture and accoutrements to the same appertaining, to be ready therewith, within two days warning, to be given to them by their captain, lieutenant, or standard bearer, on failure whereof the gentlemen pensioners in ordinary to forfeit ten days

DURING the rebellion in 1745, when the king signified his intention of setting up his standard on Finchley common, the gentlemen of the band had notice to hold themselves in readiness to take the field, with their servants, horses, and arms.

THE captain of this corps carries an ebony staff, with a gold head, which, on his appointment, he receives from the king, without any

---

days wages, for the first default, and for the second default to forfeit a month's wages, and for the third default to be clearly expelled and put out of the room of a gentleman pensioner in ordinary, and to lose his whole quarter's wages. And every gentleman pensioner extraordinary, who shall fail to be furnished and provided with horse and arms as aforesaid, and to be ready therewith, within two days notice, to be given him by his captain, lieutenant, or standard bearer, shall be clearly expelled, and put out of the room of a gentleman pensioner extraordinary.

ART. 12. Every gentleman pensioner in ordinary shall also sufficiently furnish and provide himself with three great horses, with pistols, swords, iron backs, breasts, and head-pieces, with proper furniture and accoutrements to the same appertaining, for himself and two servants, whenever we shall think fit to require the same, to be ready therewith within fourteen days notice, to be given unto them by their captain, lieutenant, or standard bearer, under the penalty for every default to be chequed, or expelled clearly, and put out of the room of a gentleman pensioner as aforementioned.

ART. 15. The captain of the band shall have a due regard that such gentlemen pensioners in ordinary, and gentlemen pensioners extraordinary, whom he shall appoint to do the duty of corporals, sub-corporals, file-leaders, and adjutants to the band, shall henceforth always be such of the gentlemen as shall have the most knowledge and experience in military discipline, without having regard to the seniority of admission into the band.

ART. 16. The habits, arms and cloathing of the gentlemen pensioners in ordinary, and of the gentlemen at arms, or pensioners extraordinary, shall be such as we or their captain shall appoint.

ART. 18. The trumpeters of our household attending on the said band, when they are under arms, shall, on every such attendance, henceforth be mounted upon white horses.

ART. 21. The gentlemen pensioners in ordinary, and the gentlemen at arms, or pensioners extraordinary of the said band, shall be advanced to be commissioned officers in our army, preferably to all other persons whatsoever.

THE idea of providing for the gentlemen pensioners in the army was resumed by the earl of Lichfield, when captain of the band, in the present reign; he proposed giving companies to a certain number of them, but some difficulties arising concerning rank, the matter dropped. An idea was lately suggested of filling up the vacancies in the band, from the half pay of the army and navy.

other commission, but is sworn into his post by the lord chamberlain in person, by virtue of the king's warrant; the lieutenant and standard bearer have similar staves of ebony with silver heads, which they likewise receive from the king, as investitures in office, after which they are sworn by the clerk of the cheque, who, since the year 1737, has also carried an ebony staff, with a head partly silver and partly ivory, but less ornamented than those of the other officers. The uniform of this corps is scarlet, richly laced; the clerk of the cheque wears an officer's uniform. The gentlemen carry pole-axes, an elongated kind of battle-ax. Five of them, who are on the quarterly rota, now appear every levé day and drawing-room day, in the presence chamber, and stand to their arms when any of the royal family pass through. When the king goes to chapel and other like times of ceremony, the whole quarterly guard of twenty, appear under arms. By a petition presented to the house of commons in the year 1782, it appears that the office of gentleman pensioner has been generally purchased at the price of a thousand guineas, in confidence of being permitted to sell it again with the approbation of the captain. The salary, after the various deductions to which it is subjected, with the purchase of the uniform, is reduced to about seventy-six pounds per annum. These are the general outlines of the establishment of this corps, considered in their military capacity; a very particular account of them in every respect is given by Mr. Pegge in the second number of his curious and useful work, titled *Curialia*, from which the preceding account is chiefly collected (g).

THE infantry of this country, at, and some time after the conquest, not being the *posse comitatus*, were formed of the yeomanry, vassals, dependants of the feudal tenants, and afterwards of indented soldiers; most of these in the earlier periods were defensively armed, with a kind of iron scull-cap, named a *bacinet* from its similarity to a bason, and a coarse leathern or linen doublet, stuffed with cotton or wool,

---

(g) THE militia cavalry have been described under the article of the *posse comitatus*.

called an acketon, or hoqueton, and sometimes a jack (l); from the verses quoted below, it seems as if English jacks were not famous for the elegance of their make (m). Such men as wanted these appointments, were returned under the denomination of NAKED foot (n), and received an inferior pay. The weapons chiefly used by the infantry were the lance, sword, and dagger, the gifarme, battle-ax, pole-ax, black or brown bill, mallet, morris-pike, halbert, and pike. The archers had the long and cross bow, which after the introduction of fire arms were gradually superseded by the hand-gun, arquebuss, musket, caliver, and firelock, as was the pike by the bayonet. Of these the lance was the most ancient; it was used by the Anglo-Saxons, both horse and foot; those used by the latter, and by the English after the conquest, were shorter and stronger in the staff than those borne by the cavalry; indeed, Father Daniel tells us, that when the men of arms dismounted to fight on foot, they cut off part of the staves of their lances, to make them more manageable; if any dependance may be placed on illuminated manuscripts, the lances of the infantry were, according to their representations, about nine feet long. Sometimes the lance-men carried targets or bucklers.

---

(l) In the wardrobe account of the wages paid the army raised to go against the Scots, A. D. 1322, 15 Ed. II. the original of which is in the library of Thomas Astle, Esq; are the following entries. De Com. Norf. Ricardo Warin, Johanni Dacre, Henrico de Norton, & Johanni Plaice centenariis pro vadiis suis, 436 pedites, cum aketon & bacinnet, &c.—De Com. Suff. Witto de Ryhall & Henrico Poer centenariis pro vadiis suis, & 240 peditum cum akton & bacinnet, &c. This frequently occurs.

(m) Cetoit un purpoint de Chamois  
Farci de Boure sus et sous  
Un grand vilain Jaque d'Anglois  
Qui lui pendoit jusqu'aux genous.

*Coquillart, dans son livre des droits nouveaux, quoted by P. Daniel, tom. 1. p. 240, &c.*

(n) Com. Lincoln, Jordano de Blackeneye ductori peditum de Kesteven, in Comitatu Lincoln pro vadiis 100 peditum nudorum, &c. De Com. Norhpt. Edmundo de Lekenore, Stephano Scott, Thome de la Hulle, & Johanni Jewel, centenariis pro vadiis suis & 440 peditum nudorum de comitatu Northampton. &c. *Wardrobe Acct. 1322.*

THE gifarme is so variously described, that its form remains doubtful; it is, however, most probable, that it was somewhat of the bill kind (o). It is directed by the statute of Winchester to be provided and kept by persons possessed of less than forty shillings land, and is described among the inferior weapons.

OF the battle-ax there are various sorts and forms, some calculated for being used with one hand, and some with both; the latter were chiefly carried by the foot, and were commonly put into the hands of strong and active men.

THE battle-ax was also considered as a royal weapon, and was borne as such, at the funerals of Henry VII. and Queen Mary, and solemnly offered up at the altar, with the helmet, gauntlets, and crest.

THIS weapon is by the French called *hache d'arms*. Richelet, in his Dictionary, thus describes it: "an offensive arm, sometimes made like a common ax, except that it has a longer handle, and that the blade is broader, stronger, and sharper; it had formerly a great handle like

(o) THIS weapon is also called gifaring and by Fleta *sifarmes*. Du Cange in his Glossary renders it by *securis*, and derives it from the *geesum* of the Gauls; La Combe in the Supplement to his Dictionary of old French, defines the term gifarme, to signify a sort of lance or pike; Bailey calls it a military weapon with two points or pikes; Strutt, I know not from what authority, has, in his *Horda Angel-cynnam*, represented the gifarme as a battle-ax on a long staff, with a spike projecting from the back of the ax. This weapon is mentioned in the ancient poem of the battle of Flodden Field.

Some made a mell of maffey lead,  
Which iron all about did bind,  
Some made strong helmets for the head,  
And some their *grifly gifarings* grind.

THE Reverend Mr. Lamb, editor of that poem, has the following note on this passage: *Gifarings*, halberts, derived from the French *guifarme*, a kind of offensive long handled and long headed weapon; or, as the Spanish, *vifarma*, a staff that hath within it two long pikes, which, with a shoot or thrust forward, come forth. An ancient statute of William King of Scotland, "de venientibus ad guerram," ch. 23, saith, "Et qui minus quam quadraginta solidos terræ, habeat *gyfarum*, quod dicitur hand-bill, arcum et sagittam." And a statute of Edward I. "Et qui miens a de quarante sols de terre, soit jure a fauchions, *gifarmes*, &c."

Every knight

Two javelins spears, or than *gifarm* staves. *Gavin Douglas.*

that of a pertuifan, with a large iron at the end, in form like the cutting knife of a shoemaker, well sharpened, but much bigger and broader. The horse guards of the king's household have a scymeter, a battle-ax, a fufil, and a pouch filled with grenades. Battle-axes are used in forties, and in breaches to prevent an escalde."

IN a manuscript account of the armour and weapons in the different arsenals and armouries of this kingdom, taken in the first of Edward VI. (p) among those in the armoury at Westminster, are four battle-axes parcel gilt, with long small staves of brassell, garnished with velvet white and green and filke; these probably were intended for the king, or some great officer. Battle-axes are, as has been before observed, still carried by the gentlemen pensioners, the guards of the lord lieutenant of Ireland.

THE pole-ax differs very little from the battle-ax, except in name; some derive its appellation from that kind of ax being much used in Poland, and say, that its true name is the Polish-ax; some again deduce it from its supposed use, which was to strike at the head or poll; and others say it is called a pole-ax, from being fixed on a long pole or handle. In the manuscript just now quoted we meet with a variety of pole-axes, as shewn in the note (q).

IT seems likely, that both battle-axes and pole-axes were in later times more used for the state guards of princes and generals, than for the common purposes of war.

The black, or, as it is sometimes called, the brown bill was a kind of halbert; the cutting part hooked like a woodman's bill, from the back of which projected a spike, and another at the head. The denomination of black or brown arose from its colour; the one from a black varnish, with which this weapon was frequently covered, the

(p) This curious manuscript is the property of Gustavus Brander, Esq; of Christ Church, Hants.

(q) POLEAXES with gonnes in th' endes XXVI. Poleaxes without gonnes, II. Short poleaxes playne C. Two hand poleaxes IV. Hand poleaxes with a gonne and a case for the same oone. Poleaxes gylte, the staves covered with creimysyne velvet, fringed with filke of golde IV.

other, from its being often brown with rust. Bills were not only borne by foldiers, but also by sheriffs' officers, attending executions, and watchmen; with these it was no uncommon practice to chalk the edges, which gave them the appearance of having been newly ground.

IN a manuscript written during the reign of Queen Elizabeth (r), the duty of captaines of halbartes or bill men is thus defined: "Captaines of halbartes or blacke billes, cheifleye those halbartes bearinge corfeletts gardinge the enignes, wearinge swordes and daggers, meryteth more wages then others bearinge blacke bills, usuallye called the slaughter or execution of the battaile, alwaies readie and attentive to their enignes, as well by secrett commandements as by founde of the dromme, never to departe from the fame till it bee brought into y<sup>e</sup> place of good safetie."

IN the armies of King Henry VIII. Mary and Elizabeth, there were a great number of bill-men, as may be seen in different accounts of the musters of those times. In an extract from the certificate of musters for the county of Stafford, made A.D. 1569, 11 Eliz. (s) the parish of Yoxhall was thus divided: "Pikemen 3, bilmen 5, harquebuz 9, unable men 29." And of two hundred men raised in Lancashire, 1584, for the Irish service, eighty are, by the queen's letter to the sheriff, directed to be furnished with calivers, forty with corslets, forty with bows, and forty with halberts, or good black bills (t): besides the arms here specified, it was ordered that all the foldiers should be furnished with swords and daggers (u). Bills were also much used at sea, as is shewn by the account of the navy of that reign, where, under

(r) TREATISE of martial Discipline by Ralphe Smithe, dedicated to the Lord Burrowes and Sir Christopher Hatton, in my possession.

(s) IN the Lib. Tho. Astle, Esq.

(t) PECK's *Defiderata Curiosa*, vol. i.

(u) *IBID.*

the article of furniture, the different kinds of arms and weapons are specified (x).

(x) *The names of her Majesty's Shippes, with the Number of Men and Furniture requisite for the setting forth of the same.*

E. Codice Antiq. MS. Penes Sam. Knight, 8. T. P.

### I. *TRYUMPH.*

#### 1. MENN 780 : whereof

Marriners	-	-	-	450
Gonners	-	-	-	50
Souldiers	-	-	-	200

#### 2. FURNITURE.

Harquebus	-	-	-	50
Bowes	-	-	-	50
Arrowes, sheeves of,	-	-	-	100
Pikes	-	-	-	200
Corflets	-	-	-	100
Marriners	-	-	-	200

#### 3. BURTHEN - - - 1000

### II. *ELIZABETH.*

#### 1. MENN 600 : whereof

Marriners	-	-	-	300
Gonners	-	-	-	50
Souldiers	-	-	-	200

#### 2. FURNITURE :

Harquebus	-	-	-	200
Bowes	-	-	-	50
Arrowes, sheeves of,	-	-	-	100
Pikes	-	-	-	280
Bills	-	-	-	170
Marriners	-	-	-	200

#### 3. BURTHEN - - - 900

### III. *WHITE BEAR.*

#### 1. Men, Furniture, and Burthen, as the last.

### IV. *VICTORY.*

#### 1. MENN 500 : whereof

Marriners	-	-	-	330
-----------	---	---	---	-----

Gonners	-	-	-	40
Souldiers	-	-	-	160

#### 2. FURNITURE :

Harquebus	-	-	-	200
Bowes	-	-	-	40
Arrowes, sheeves of,	-	-	-	80
Corflets	-	-	-	80
Marriners	-	-	-	160

#### 3. BURTHEN - - - 800

### V. *PRIMROSE.*

Men, Furniture, and Burthen, as the last.

### VI. *MARY ROSE.*

#### 1. MENN 350 : whereof

Marriners	-	-	-	200
Gonners	-	-	-	50
Souldiers	-	-	-	120

#### 2. FURNITURE :

Harquebus	-	-	-	125
Bowes	-	-	-	30
Arrowes, sheeves of,	-	-	-	60
Pikes	-	-	-	100
Bills	-	-	-	120
Corflets	-	-	-	50
Marriners	-	-	-	160

#### 3. BURTHEN - - - 600

### VII. *HOPE.*

Men, Furniture, and Burthen, as the last.

### VIII. *BONAVENTURE.*

#### 1. MENN 300 : whereof

Marriners	-	-	-	160
Gonners	-	-	-	30
Souldiers	-	-	-	110

#### 2. FURNI-



The mell, maule, or mallet of arms, was a weapon formerly used by both the English and Scots. In the memorable combat fought in

## 2. FURNITURE.

Harquebus	-	-	-	-	110
Bowes	-	-	-	-	30
Arrowes, sheeves of,	-	-	-	-	60
Pikes	-	-	-	-	90
Bills	-	-	-	-	100
Corflets	-	-	-	-	50
Marriners	-	-	-	-	100

3. BURTHEN - - - 600

## IX. PHILIP AND MARYE.

Men, Furniture, and Burthen, as the last.

## X. LYON.

## 1. MENN 290 : whereof

Marriners	-	-	-	-	150
Gonners	-	-	-	-	30
Souldiers	-	-	-	-	110

2. Furniture and Burthen as the two last.

## XI. DREADNOUGHT.

## 1. MENN 250 : whereof

Marriners	-	-	-	-	140
Gonners	-	-	-	-	20
Souldiers	-	-	-	-	80

## 2. FURNITURE:

Harquebus	-	-	-	-	80
Bowes	-	-	-	-	25
Arrowes, sheeves of,	-	-	-	-	50
Pikes	-	-	-	-	50
Bills	-	-	-	-	60
Corflets	-	-	-	-	40
Marriners	-	-	-	-	80

3. BURTHEN - - - 400

## XII. SWIFTSURE.

Men, Furniture, and Burthen, as the last.

## XIII. SWALLOWE.

## 1. MENN 200 : whereof

Marriners	-	-	-	-	120
Gonners	-	-	-	-	20
Souldiers	-	-	-	-	60

## 2. FURNITURE.

Harquebus	-	-	-	-	75
Bowes	-	-	-	-	25
Arrowes, sheeves of.	-	-	-	-	50
Bills	-	-	-	-	60
Corflets	-	-	-	-	30
Marriners	-	-	-	-	70

3. BURTHEN - - - 350

## XIV. ANTHLOPE.

Men, Furniture, and Burthen, as the last.

## XV. JENNETT.

Men, Furniture, and Burthen, as the two last.

## XVI. FORESIGHT.

Men and Furniture as the three last.

BURTHEN - - - 300

## XVII. AIDE.

## 1. MENN 160 : whereof

Marriners	-	-	-	-	90
Gonners	-	-	-	-	20
Souldiers	-	-	-	-	50

## 2. FURNITURE.

Harquebus	-	-	-	-	50
Bowes	-	-	-	-	20
Arrowes, sheeves of,	-	-	-	-	40
Pikes	-	-	-	-	40
Bills	-	-	-	-	50
Corflets	-	-	-	-	20
Marriners	-	-	-	-	50

3 BURTHEN - - - 240

## XVIII.

Bretagne, in the year 1315, between thirty champions on the part of the English and the like number on that of the French, one of the

XVIII. *BULL.*

1. MENN 120: whereof

Marriners	-	-	-	-	10
Gonners	-	-	-	-	10
Souldiers	-	-	-	-	40

2. FURNITURE.

Harquebus	-	-	-	-	35
Bowes	-	-	-	-	15
Arrowes, sheeves of,	-	-	-	-	30
Pikes	-	-	-	-	30
Bills	-	-	-	-	40
Corflets	-	-	-	-	20
Marriners	-	-	-	-	40

BURTHEN	-	-	-	-	160
---------	---	---	---	---	-----

XIX. *TIGER.*

Men, Furniture, and Burthen, as the last.

XX. *FAULCON.*

1. MENN 80: whereof

Marriners	-	-	-	-	60
Gonners	-	-	-	-	10
Souldiers	-	-	-	-	20

2. FURNITURE:

Harquebus	-	-	-	-	24
Bowes	-	-	-	-	10
Arrowes, sheeves of,	-	-	-	-	20
Pikes	-	-	-	-	20
Bills	-	-	-	-	30
Corflets	-	-	-	-	12
Marriners	-	-	-	-	24

3. BURTHEN.

XXI. *AIBATES.*

1. MENN 60: whereof

Marriners	-	-	-	-	30
Gonners	-	-	-	-	10
Souldiers	-	-	-	-	10

2. FURNITURE:

Harquebus	-	-	-	-	16
Bowes	-	-	-	-	10
Arrowes, sheeves of,	-	-	-	-	20
Pikes	-	-	-	-	20
Bills	-	-	-	-	30
Corflets	-	-	-	-	12
Marriners	-	-	-	-	24

3. BURTHEN	-	-	-	-	80
------------	---	---	---	---	----

XXII. *HANDMAYD.*

Men, Furniture, and Burthen, as the last.

XXIII. *BARKE OF BULLEN.*

1. MENN 50: whereof

Marriners	-	-	-	-	30
Gonners	-	-	-	-	10
Souldiers	-	-	-	-	none

2. FURNITURE:

Harquebus	-	-	-	-	12
Bowes	-	-	-	-	10
Arrowes, sheeves of,	-	-	-	-	20
Pikes	-	-	-	-	15
Bills	-	-	-	-	20
Marriners	-	-	-	-	30

3. BURTHEN	-	-	-	-	60
------------	---	---	---	---	----

XXIV. *GEORGE.*

1. MENN 50: whereof

Marriners	-	-	-	-	40
Gonners	-	-	-	-	10
Souldiers	-	-	-	-	none

2. FURNITURE.

Harquebus	-	-	-	-	12
Bowes	-	-	-	-	10
Arrowes, sheeves of,	-	-	-	-	20
Pikes	-	-	-	-	15
Bills	-	-	-	-	20
Marriners	-	-	-	-	30

THE

English champions, named Billefort, was armed with a leaden mallet weighing twenty-five pounds(y). Father Daniel, in his History of the French Army, quotes the manuscript Memoirs of the Marquis de Fleurance, in the library of the King of France, to prove that the English archers still used mallets in the time of Louis XII. who began his reign in the year 1515, and died in 1524. In the ancient poem of the Battle of Flodden, leaden mallets are several times mentioned; from the following description there given, it seems as if the head of the melle was entirely of lead, hooped round at the ends with iron:

Some made a melle of maffey lead,  
Which iron all about did bind.

RALPH SMITH, in his directions for equipping an archer, gives him a mawle of lead, of five feet long, and a pike with the same, hanging by a girdle with a hook: this description, though somewhat obscure, seems as if he meant that the handle of the melle should be five feet long, the end armed with a pike or spike; but how such a weapon could be worn hanging at a girdle, is not easily conceived, as, if carried obliquely, it would be likely to wound the legs of the soldiers in the rear of it; probably it was worn at the back, hung by a hook fixed in the centre of its handle, with a loop or some other contrivance to keep it nearly perpendicular.

FATHER DANIEL has engraved one of these mallets, which, in form, exactly resembles the present wooden instrument of that name, except that its handle is somewhat longer. In Mr. Brander's MSS. among

THE sum of all others, as well merchant  
shippes as others, in all places of Eng-  
land of an hundred tunns and up-  
wards - - - - 135

The sum of all barkes and shippes of 40  
tunne and upwards to an 100  
tunne - - - - 656

THERE are besides, by estimation, 100  
saile of hoes: also of small barkes and  
fishermen, an infinite number of —  
through the realme cannot be lesse than  
600 besides London.

*Peck's Desiderata Curiosa*, lib. ii. p. 22.

(y) HIST. de Bretagne par Dargentré, Liv. vi. p. 393.

the different store-houses at Calais, there named, one of them is called the malle chamber : in it were then eight hundred and eighty leaden mallets. There is also an entry of two hundred mallets in a store-house at Berwick. This weapon seems to have been of French extraction : it was once in such esteem in that kingdom, that in an insurrection which happened in Paris, on account of some new taxes in the beginning of the reign of Charles VI. when the populace forced open the arsenal, they armed themselves chiefly with mallets, whence they were stiled mailliotins. Perhaps their choice was guided by the consideration, that the use of the mallet requires very little more than strength and resolution, not considering that in the *melée* which sometimes attended the ancient method of fighting hand to hand, an awkward man would be as likely to knock down his friend as his enemy.

MALLETS were however tremendous weapons in the hands of strong active men, such as are described in this poem to have wielded them :

Two Scotch earls of an ancient race,  
One Crawford called, the other Montros,  
Who led twelve thousand Scotchmen strong,  
Who manfully met with their foes  
With leaden mells and lances long (z).

THE mells seem at this battle to have been mixed with the bill and morris pike men, for so these lines import :

Then on the English part with speed  
The bills stept forth, and bows went back ;  
The Moorish pikes and mells of lead  
Did deal there many a dreadful thwack.

THE morris or Moorish pike was a weapon much in use in the sixteenth century, both by sea and land : some derive its name from Maurice, Prince of Nassau, whom they suppose the inventor of it ; but this is certainly an error, as that weapon frequently occurs in descrip-

tions of battles fought in the reign of King Henry VIII. particularly that of Flodden, which happened in the year 1513, fifty-four years before Prince Maurice was born. Indeed in the poem on that engagement, it is called the Moorish pike, which seems to be its true name.

It is besides mentioned by Sir Ralph Smith, in his *Military Treatise* before quoted; he says, the men bearing it should be completely armed, their situation and service being peculiarly dangerous, wherefore, as well as on account of the extraordinary price of their armour, they ought to have extraordinary pay.

THE halbert differs very little from the bill, being like it constructed both for cutting and thrusting. The blade of a halbert consists of three parts, the spear, the hatchet, and the flook or hook. The first is intended for thrusting or charging in battle; the second for cutting; and the third for pulling down works made of fascines, in an attack on trenches, or other temporary fortifications. Some halberts are called sword-blade halberts, from the part designed for pushing being formed like the blade of a sword. This weapon is said to have been invented by the Switzers; the pope's guard of that country still carry it. Monsieur de Belay, a French military writer, speaks of it as a very late invention. I have been told by a Switzer, that the ancient manner of using this weapon was to tell off the front rank of halberdiers alternately into pushers and strikers; so that while one half charged with their spears, the others struck and cut with the hatchets of their halberts.

HALBERTS were commonly borne by the guards of the great officers of the army, and also by a set of chosen men, appointed to protect the colours; at present they are only carried by serjeants of the battalion companies in the infantry (a).

---

(a) YOUR halbardier should be armed in all points like your pike, onely instead of the pike, he shall carry a faire halberd, that is, strong, sharpe, and well armed with plates of iron, from the blade at the least two feet downeward upon the staffe, and fringed or adorned according to pleasure; and these halberds doe properly belong unto serjeants of companies, who by reason of their much employment are excused from armes: otherwise in the day of battaile, or in the battaile, they are for guard of the ensigne, or matter of execution; and then to be armed as aforesaid. *Markham's Souldier's Accidence*, p. 4.

THE pike was a species of spear or lance, solely appropriated to the infantry. In the form as last used it was of no great antiquity. Father Daniel says, that pikes are not mentioned in the histories of France before the reign of Louis XI. Pikes were introduced into France by the Switzers (b).

---

(b) IN a military treatise, translated by Paule Ive, gent. and published A.D. 1589, from the French of Monsieur William de Bellay; there is, p. 26, this account of the pike: "But let us passe further to speake of the pike, of which although the Switzers have not been the inventors, yet have they at the least brought it again into use, for that they being poore, and desirous to live at libertie, were constrained to fight against the princes of Germany, who being rich, and of great power, did maintaine many horsemen, which the said Switzers could not do; and therefore making their warres afoote, they were constrained to runne unto the ancient manner, and out of it to choose some armes, wherewith they might defend themselves from the enemies horsemen, which necessitie had made them either to maintaine, or to find out againe the orders of times past, without which pikes, footmen are wholly unprofitable; they tooke therefore pikes as weapons not only fit for to withstand horsemen, but also to vanquish them: by the help of which weapon, and through the trust they have in their own good order, they have taken such a boldnesse, that fiftene or twenty thousand of their men dare enterprize upon a whole world of horsemen, as they have made prooffe at Navare and at Marignan, although the one battaile fell out better on their side than the other. The examples of the vertue that these people have shewed to be in them for their feates of arms afoote, have caused since the voyage of King Charles VIII. other nations to imitate them, specially the Germaines and Spanyards, who are mounted unto the reputation that we do hould them of at this day, by imitating the orders that the sayd Switzers do keepe, and the manner of armes they do carry. The Italians afterward have given themselves unto it, and we lastly: but we are so farre off, that we shall never be like unto them for order, except we do make the use of these weapons to be of more estimation amongst us, then it hath bin hitherto, so much there is also, that they can learne us no other point; we must therefore take paines to get this order, or if it be possible, to find or frame a more sure, by the meanes whereof we might defend ourselves, and excell other nations. And to do this, we must arm our soldiers well, to the intent that they may be lesse in daunger of blowes, and the harder to be overthrowne: principally those that should serve in the first fronts of the battailes; and also all others, if it were possible, every man according unto the weapon that he doth carry. The armes that we must carry must be these: first of all, the corslet complete with the tassels downe to the knee, hose of male, a codpeece of yron, good vambraces, and gauntlets or gloves of male, and a good head peece, with the sight almost covered. The other harnesse for the body must be a shirt or jerkin, with sleeves and gloves

MARKHAM, in the Souldier's Accidence, gives a description of the manner in which a pikeman should be armed : " Next (says he) he (the captain) shall see that every man be well and sufficiently armed, with good and allowable armes ; that is to say, all his pikemen shall have good combe-caps for their heads, well lined with quilted caps, curaces for their bodies of nimble and good mould, being high pike proof ; large and well compact gordgetts for their neckes, fayre and close joyned taches, to arme to the mid-thigh ; as for the pouldron or the vantbrace, they may be spared, because they are but cumbersome. All this armour is to be rather of russet, sanguine, or blacke colour, than white or milled, for it will keepe the longer from rust.

THESE shall have strong, straight, yet nimble pikes of ash wood, well headed with steel, and armed with plates downward from the head, at least foure foote, and the full size or length of every pike shall be fiftene foote besides the head.

THESE pikemen shall also have good, sharpe, and broad swords (of which the Turkie and Bilboe are best), strong scabbards, chapt with iron, girdle, hangers, or bautricke of strong leather ; and lastly, if to the pikeman's head peece be fastened a small ring of iron, and to the right side of his back peece (below his girdle) an iron hooke, to hang his Steele cap upon, it will be a great ease to the souldier, and a nimble carriage in the time of long marches.

By the regulations in the act of the 13th of Charles II. a pikeman was to be armed with a pike of ash, not under sixteen feet in length (head and foot included) with a back, breast, head peece and

---

gloves of male, and a head peece with the face uncovered. The weapons must be these : a sword of meane length, neither wholly after the manner of the Frenchmen, nor altogether like unto the Almaines : for the wearing of it too lowe doth greatly trouble a souldier. The short dagger also is one of the most necessariest weapons, wherewith in a prease a man may better help himself than with a sword. The pike, a halberd, and amongst many halberds, some pertuisans are also called weapons. The target may not be called a weapon, notwithstanding it is a very good peece."



*An Officer of Pikemen.*





sword (c). The tallest and strongest men were generally selected for the pike, and in France their pay was somewhat greater than that of the musketeers.

THE general introduction of the bayonet superseded the pike, the use of which was abolished in France, by a royal ordonnance, issued in the year 1703, with the advice of the Marechal de Vauban, though contrary to the opinion of Monsieur d'Artagan, afterwards Marechal of France, under the name of Montesquieu. The exact period when pikes were laid aside in England, I have not been able to discover: it, however, certainly took place about the same time as in France; a book of the exercise of the foot, published by the royal command in 1690, has the exercise of the pike, which proves it was not then laid aside; and the Gentleman's Dictionary, published in 1705, describes it as a weapon formerly in use, but then changed for the musket, so that the alteration must have taken place some time between the years 1690 and 1705 (d).

(c) *The Prices of a Pikeman's Armour and Pike as established by the Council of War, 7th of CHARLES I.*

	l.	s.	d.			l.	s.	d.
The breast	-	-	-	0	5	6		
The back	-	-	-	0	4	6		
The tassets	-	-	-	0	5	0		
The comb'd head piece lyned				0	4	6		
The gorgett lyned	-	-	-	0	2	6		
Total	-	-	-	1	2	0		
If the breast, back and tassets be lyned with red leather, the price will be								
				1	4	0		
				<i>Price of the Pike.</i>				
				The staffe	-	-	-	0 2 6
				The head	-	-	-	0 1 8
				Socket and colouring	-	0	0	4
				Total	-	-	-	0 4 6

(d) PIKES are the arms carried by pikemen, who used formerly to be the third part of the company, but they are now turned to musketeers. The pike is made of a point of iron, in form of the leaf of an apricot tree, called the spear, about four inches long, and broad in the middle, from whence it runs to a point: the spear has two branches or plates of iron, to fix it to the staff, of about a foot long, and strong enough to resist the stroke of a broad sword. The staff or shaft of a pike is about thirteen or fourteen feet long, made of a slip of ash, very straight, about an inch and a quarter thick at the greatest end, which is shod with brass or iron, sharpened to a point, to stick in the ground. *Gentleman's Dictionary*, Part ii.

THE long bow was first introduced here, as a military weapon, by the Normans, who at the battle of Hastings too fully demonstrated its utility and excellence, as they are said to have been, in a great measure, indebted to it for the success of that day.

It is not to be supposed that the English were ignorant of the bow and its uses ; they undoubtedly knew and used it in the chase, but had not then admitted it into their armies.

It is probable that the Conqueror, sensible of the importance of archery, encouraged and commanded the practice of it ; for in a short time we find that art much cultivated, so that the English archers formed a very considerable part of the national infantry, and were universally considered as superior to those of most other countries.

To preserve this superiority by constant practice seems to have been the study of many of our kings, divers statutes enforcing it having been enacted, even long after the invention of fire-arms ; and a number of laws, ordonnances and regulations made, for procuring a constant supply of good bow staves, for furnishing the counties distant from London with bowyers, string makers, fletchers and arrow head makers, and for guarding against the frauds and neglects of those artificers.

To enforce the practice of archery, it was enacted by a statute of the 33d of Henry VIII. that every man under the age of sixty not labouring under some bodily incapacity, ecclesiastics and judges excepted, should use the exercise of shooting in the long bow, and keep in their possession, bows and arrows. The fathers, governors, and masters, should instruct and bring up their sons and youths under their charge in the knowledge of shooting ; that every man having a boy or boys in his house, should provide for each of them, of the age of seven years, and until he arrived to that of seventeen, a bow and two shafts, to induce him to learn and practise archery ; if a servant, the cost of the bow and arrows might be deducted out of his wages ; and that after such youth had arrived at his seventeenth year, he should then buy, and constantly keep a bow and four arrows. That if any parent or master, having a youth or youths under seventeen years of

age, should suffer any one of them to want a bow and two arrows for one month together, he should for every such neglect forfeit 6s. 8d. and every servant above seventeen years of age, and under sixty, who received wages, neglecting to furnish himself as here directed, for every default should forfeit 6s. 8d. Justices of assize of gaol delivery, justices of the peace and stewards of franchises, leets and law days, had power to enquire respecting the observance of this law, and to punish persons wanting bows and arrows, as here directed.

THAT the young archers might acquire an accurate eye, and a strength of arm, none under twenty-four years of age, might shoot at any standing mark, except it was for a rover, and then he was to change his mark at every shot, under the penalty of four pence, for every shot made contrary to this regulation. It was also enacted that no person above the said age should shoot at any mark that was not above eleven score yards distant, under pain of forfeiting for every shot six shillings and eight pence.

THE inhabitants of all towns and places were directed to make up their butts against a day assigned, and to maintain and keep them in repair under penalty of 20s. for every month they were wanting: they were also commanded to exercise themselves with shooting thereat on holydays, and all other convenient times (e).

To secure a proper supply of bow staves, merchants trading from places whence bow staves were commonly brought, were obliged to import four bow staves for every ton of merchandize, and that in the same ship, in which the goods were loaded (f); they were also bound to bring in ten bow staves of good and able stuff, with every ton of Malmsey or Tyre wine (g). To encourage the voluntary importation, bow staves of six feet and a half long or more, were excused the pay-

---

(e) So jealous were the English of other nations acquiring a skill in archery, that by the 33d of Henry VIII. aliens were forbidden to shoot with long bows, without the king's licence, under penalty of forfeiting their bows to any person who would seize them.

(f) 12th Edw. IV. under penalty of 6s. 8d. to the king for each bow staff deficient.

(g) 1st Rich. III. under penalty of 13s. 4d.

ment of any duty : and the chief magistrates of the different ports were authorised to appoint proper and skilful persons to examine the bow staves imported, and to see that they were good and sufficient (h).

To prevent a too great consumption of yew, which was the best wood for bows, bowyers were to make four bows of witch-hazel, ash, or elm, to one of yew, and no person under seventeen years of age, unless possessed of moveables worth forty marks, or the son of parents having an estate of ten pounds per annum, might shoot in a yew bow, under a penalty of six shillings and eight pence (i).

THAT every man might be able to furnish himself with those inferior bows on the shortest notice ; every bowyer dwelling in the cities of London or Westminster, or the borough of Southwark, was always to have in his custody fifty good bows of elm, witch-hazel, or ash, well and substantially made and wrought, upon pain that every of the said bowyers, who for the space of twenty days should not have the number of bows of those materials, ready made and fit to be sold and used, should for every bow wanting of that number, forfeit 10s. one half to the queen, and the other half to any armourer, fletcher, or maker of bow strings, that would sue for it.

THE prices of bows were occasionally regulated by acts of parliament, from whence we learn, that the price of bow staves had increased from 2l. to 12l. the hundred, between the reigns of Edward III. and the 8th of Elizabeth, though this is said to have been partly effected by the confederacy of the Lombards.

IN the reign of Edward III. the price of a painted bow was 1s. 6d.

(h) THIS seems to shew that our ancient bows were at least six feet long. A gentleman of the society of archers, who has made the properties of the long bow his particular study, says, that the best length for a bow is five feet eight inches from nock to nock ; and that of an arrow two feet three inches. We however in ancient poems read of arrows a cloth ell long.

(i) IT has been supposed that yew trees were originally planted in church-yards, in order to furnish bow staves ; but it is more probable, that they being evergreens, are planted there as an emblem of the immortality of the soul, which, though the body is dead, still exists. See *Bourn's Antiquities of the Common People*, ch. iii.

that of a white bow 1s. a sheaf of arrows if "acerata," or with steeled points, 1s. 2d. if non acerata, blunt or unsteeled, 1s.

IN the 24th of Edward IV. no bowyer might sell a yew bow to any of the king's subjects for more than 3s. 4d. and in the 38th of Henry VIII. the price of a yew bow, for any person between the ages of seven and fourteen years, was not to exceed 12d.

THE bowyers were besides to have by them inferior bows of all prices from 6d. to 12d. The price of a yew bow of the tax called elk, to any of the king's subjects, was limited to 3s. 4d. In the 8th of Elizabeth, bows of foreign yew were directed to be sold for 6s. 8d. the second sort at 3s. 4d. and the coarse sort, called livery bows, at a price, not exceeding two shillings each, and bows of English yew at the same. A clause of a former act, directing the bowyers of London and Westminster to make four bows of different wood for one of yew, was repealed, with respect to those artificers dwelling in those places, on their representation that the citizens of London would purchase none but yew bows.

ALIENS might not convey, sell, nor exchange any bows or arrows to parts out of the king's obedience, without his special licence, under pain of forfeiture of the same, or the value thereof, and imprisonment, till they had paid such fine as should be imposed on them, by two justices of the peace, or find surety for the payment (k). All bow-staves brought into the kingdom were to be sold open, and not in bundles, to the intent that the buyers might know their qualities (l).

ARROWS were made of different kinds of wood, but, according to Roger Ascham, ash was the best. Their heads were of the best iron, pointed with steel; for this purpose, the flocks of anchors were sometimes used (m). Arrows were armed with iron heads of different forms

(k) STAT. 33 Hen. VIII. chap. 9.

(l) *IBID.*

(m) THE sheriff of Norfolk being ordered, 42 Ed. III. to provide a certain number of garbs or sheaves of arrows headed with steel, for the king's use, is directed to seize all the flocks of anchors (omnes alas ancorum) necessary for making the heads. *Swinden's Hist. Great Yarmouth.*

and denominations; some were barbed, which rendered it impossible to draw them forth from the wound, without laceration; they were feathered with part of a goose's wing (n). Arrows were reckoned by sheaves; a sheaf consisted of twenty-four arrows. They were carried in a quiver, worn on the right side, or at the back. This served for the magazine; arrows for immediate use were often worn in the girdle.

By an act of parliament, made 7th of Henry IV. it was enacted, That for the future, all the heads of arrows and quarrels should be well boiled or braised, and hardened at the point with steel; and that every head of an arrow or quarrel should have the mark of the maker; workmen offending against this act, were liable to a fine and imprisonment, at the king's will; and the justices of the peace in every county in England, and also the mayors, sheriffs, and bailiffs of cities and boroughs, were authorized to enquire concerning all makers of arrow-heads, and to punish defaulters.

IN order that the distant counties might be furnished with the necessary artificers for making bows and arrows, bowyers, fletchers, string-makers, and arrow-head-makers, not being freemen of London, might be sent, by the appointment of the king's council, the lord chancellor, lord privy seal, or one of them, to inhabit any city, borough, or town within the realm, that was destitute of such artificers. Any of these workmen, being duly warned, neglecting to repair to the places directed, were liable to a penalty of 40s. for every day's neglect, and contrary abode (o). For the foreign garrisons of castles in the time of Edward II. one artificer, stiled artillator, was appointed (p).

(n) MANY instances occur in our ancient records, where the sheriffs of different counties are directed to find feathers from the wings of geese for arrows.

(o) 33d HEN. VIII. sec. 8.

(p) ITEM ordinatum est, quod sit unus artillator qui faciat ballistas, carellos, arcus, fagittas, lanceas, spiculas; & alia arma necessaria pro garrisonibus castrorum. *De Officio Senescalli Aquitani*, quoted by *F. Daniel*, vol. i. p. 196.

THE range of a bow, according to Neade, was from sixteen to twenty score yards; and so quick were the ancient archers, or so flow the musketeers, that he says, an archer could shoot six arrows in the time of charging and discharging one musket.

THE force with which an arrow struck an object at a moderate distance, may be conceived from an instance given by King Edward VI. in his journal, wherein he says, that an hundred archers of his guard shot before him, two arrows each, and afterwards all together, that they shot at an inch board, which some pierced quite through, and stuck into the other board, divers pierced it quite through with the heads of their arrows, the boards being well seasoned timber: their distance from the mark is not mentioned (q).

IN ancient times phials of combustible composition for burning houses or ships were fixed on the heads of arrows, and shot from long bows (r). Neade says he has known by experience, that an archer may shoot an ounce of fire-work upon an arrow, twelve score yards. Arrows with wild-fire, and arrows for fire works, are mentioned among the stores at Newhaven and Barwick, in the 1st of Edward VI (s).

CHAUCER, in his prologue to the Canterbury Tales, thus describes an archer of his time:

And he was cladde in cote and hode of grene  
 A shefe of peacock arwes bright and kene  
 Under his belt he bore ful thriftily,  
 Well coude he dresse his takel yewmanly,  
 His arwes drouped not with fetheres lowe,  
 And in his hand, he bare a mighty bowe,

---

(q) SEE K. Ed. VI. *Journal in Burnet's Hist. of the Reformation.*

(r) MISSIMUS igitur super eos spicula ignita. *Mat. Paris*, p. 1090. And, p. 1091, Et phialas plenas calce, arcubus per parva hastilia ad modum sagittarum super hostes jaculandas. Arrows of this kind were used by the Romans, and called falarica and mallioli.

(s) IN Mr. Brander's MSS. Where, in the armoury at Westminster, there is also an entry of "two longe bowes of ewghe to shote stones in, with cases of lether to them."



A not-hed hadde he, with broune visage,  
 Of wood crafte could he wel all usage ;  
 Upon his arme he had a gai bracer (t),  
 And by his side a sword and a bokeler,  
 And on the other side a gai daggere  
 Harneised wel, and sharp as pointe of spere :  
 A cristofre on his brest of silver shene,  
 An horn he bare, the baudrik was of grene,  
 A forester was he fothely as I gesse.

THE drefs of our ancient archers is given in several chronicles. Fabian (u) says the yomen hadde at those dayes their lymmes at lybertye, for theyr hofyn were then fastened with one point, and theyr jackes were longe and easy to shote in, so that they mighte drawe bowes of great strenght, and shote arrowes of a yerde longe ; and according to Caxton (x), the yeomanry hadde theyr hofen terven or bounden bynethe the knee having long jackys. But every man hadde a good bowe, a sheaf of arrowes and a sword.

THE following description of an archer, his bow and accoutrements, is given by Ralphe Smithe.

#### ARCHERS OF LONG BOWS.

CAPTAINS and officers should be skilfull of that most noble weapon, and to see that their foldiers according to their draught and strenght, have good bowes, well nocked, well strynged, everie stringe whippe in their nocke, and in the myddes rubbed with wax, brafer, and shuting

(t) A BRACER serveth for two causes ; one to save his arme from the strype of the stringe, and his doublet from wearing, and the other is, that the stringe gliding sharplye and quicklye off the bracer, may make the sharper shot. A shooting glove is chiefly to save a man's fingers from hurting, that he may be able to bear the sharp stringe to the uttermost of his strenght. *Roger Ascham.*

(u) VOL. ii. p. 172.

(x) POLYCHRON, book viii. chap. 13.

glove, some spare stringes trymed as aforesaid ; every man one shefe of arrowes, with a case of leather defensible against the rayne, and in the same fower and twentie arrowes, whereof eight of them should be lighter than the residue, to gall or astoyne the enemye with the hail shot of light arrowes, before they shall come within the danger of their harquebushs shot. Let every man have a brigandine, or a little cote of plate, a skull or hufkyn, a maule of leade, of five foote in lengthe, and a pike, and the same hanging by his girdle, with a hooke, and a dagger ; being thus furnished, teach them by musters to march, shoote and retire, keepinge their faces upon the enemys. Sumtyme put them into great nowmbers, as to battell apperteyneth, and thus use them often times practised, till they be perfecte ; ffor those men in battell, ne skirmish can not be spared ; none other weapon maye compare with the same noble weapon.

THE bow maintained its place in our armies long after the introduction of fire-arms, and many experienced soldiers have been advocates for its continuance, and even, in some cases, preferred it to the musket (y). King Charles I. granted two commissions under the great seal, for enforcing the use of the long bowe ; the first in the 4th year of his reign (z) ; but this was revoked by proclamation, four years afterwards, on account of divers extortions and abuses committed under sanction thereof. The second, an. 1633, in the 9th year of his

---

(y) THE long bow might on some occasions undoubtedly at this time be used with great advantage, particularly against cavalry : a few horses wounded by arrows left sticking in them would probably become so unruly as to disorder a whole squadron ; besides the sight and whizzing of the arrows before the heads of those horses they did not hit, would keep them in a constant state of terror and restiveness. Nor would a flight of arrows falling on a battalion of foot fail of a considerable effect, independent of the men they killed or wounded, as when shot with an elevation they would be visible almost from the time they left the bow, and it would require a more than ordinary exertion of courage to refrain from looking at them, and endeavouring by some movement to avoid them ; this, by engrossing the attention of the men, would prevent their acting with vigour against a battalion opposed to them ; archers could act in the rear of a battalion of infantry, and even of a squadron of cavalry.

(z) To Timothy Taylor, John Hubert, Henry Hubert, Gentlemen, and Jeffery Le Neve, Esq. *Rymer.*

reign, to William Neade and his son also named William, wherein the former is styled an ancient archer, who had presented to the king a warlike invention of the pike and bow, seen and approved of by him and his council of war; wherefore his majesty had granted them a commission to teach and exercise his loving subjects in the said invention, which he particularly recommended the chief officers of his trained bands to learn and practise; and the justices and the other chief magistrates throughout England, are therein enjoined to use every means in their power to assist Neade, his son, and all persons authorized by them, in the furtherance, propagation and practice of this useful invention. Both the commission and proclamation are printed at large in Rymer (a). At the breaking out of the civil war, the earl of Essex issued a precept, dated November, 1643, "for stirring up all well-affected people by benevolence, towards the raising of a company of archers for the service of the king and parliament." And in a pamphlet printed anno 1664, giving an account of the success of the Marquis of Montrose against the Scots, bow men are repeatedly mentioned.

To protect themselves against the attacks of cavalry, our archers carried each of them one or two long stakes, pointed at both ends; these they planted in the earth, sloping before them, the points presented to the height of a horse's breast. In the 1st of Edward VI. three hundred and fifty of these were in the stores of the town of Berwick, under the article of archers' stakes; there were also at the same time eight bundles of archers' stakes in Pontefract castle (b).

---

(a) THIS exercise was printed, A.D. 1625, under the title of the Double-armed Man, with figures representing the motions. From the preface it appears, that Nead caused a foldier to perform this exercise before the King, and petitioned him to give orders for its being practised in the artillerie gardens of London and Westminster; to which the King answered, "That it were meet for them to practise it of their own accord:" he nevertheless was afterwards prevailed on to issue the requested orders. This exercise, with the explanatory figures, will be given under the article of the exercise of the pike.

(b) MR. BRANDER'S MSS.

Stakes of this kind were ordered by the earl of Salisbury, in the wars of Henry V. in France (c).

To the many laws, ordinances and regulations issued for the support of archery, may be added the institution of the artillery company, which was incorporated by the patent of Henry VIII. in the year 1537, to Sir Christopher Morris, Knight, master of the ordnance, Anthony Knevett and Peter Mewtes, gentlemen of the privy chamber, overseers of the fraternity or guild of St. George, granting licence to them to be overseers of the science of artillery, videlicet, for long bows, cross bows, and hand guns; and the said Sir Christopher Morris, Cornelys Johnson, Anthony Anthony, and Henry Johnson to be masters and rulers of the said science of artillery, during their lives; and to them and their successors for ever, being Englishmen or Denisons and the king's servants, authority to establish a perpetual fraternity or guild, and to admit all honest persons whatsoever, as well strangers as others, into a body corporate, having perpetual succession, by the name of masters, rulers, and commonality of the fraternity or guild of artillery of long bows, cross bows and hand guns, with the usual powers granted to corporations of purchasing lands, and using a common seal. This society might elect four under masters, either English or strangers of good character, to oversee and govern the company, and to have the custody of their property, real and personal; these might be chosen annually. The fraternity were also authorised to exercise themselves in shooting in long bows, cross bows and hand guns, at all manner of marks and butts, and at the game of the popmaye (d), and other game or games, as at the fowle

---

(c) FOR to make stakes against a battayle or journey. Alsoe that every captayne doe compell their yeomen, every man in all haste to make him a good substantiall stake of a xi feete in lengthe for certain tieings (tidings) that lords have heard, and in payne to be punished as hereto belongeth." *MSS. of Mr. Pety's in the Inner Temple, entitled Collectanea*, vol. i., p. 509, & seq.

(d) So in the Charter: undoubtedly the popinjay. Maitland says the cross bow makers used to exercise themselves in shooting at the popinjay or artificial parrot, in a field called

Tassel

and fowles, as well in the city of London and suburbs, as in all other places wheresoever, within the realm of England, Ireland, Calais, and the Marches of Wales, and elsewhere within the king's dominions, his forests, chafes and parks, without his especial warrant reserved and excepted, as also game of heron and pheasant, within two miles of the royal manors, castles and other places, where the king should fortune to be or lie, for the time only.

THE masters of this corporation were authorized to keep long bows, cross bows, and hand guns in their houses, and their servants to carry the said weapons, when and where ordered by their masters, which servants carrying such cross bows or guns might not shoot at any sort of fowl, under penalty of paying the forfeiture according to the act. No other fraternity of this sort might be formed or kept in any part of England without the licence of these masters and rulers. The patent also permitted them to use any sort of embroidery, or any cognisance of silver they should think proper, on their gowns and jackets, coats or doublets, and to use in them any kind of silk or velvet, satin or damask (the colours of purple and scarlet only excepted), and also to have on their gowns or other garments all sorts of furs, not above that of Martyns, without incurring the penalty of any act or proclamation respecting apparel (e).

---

Tassel Close, in London, from the number of thistles growing there; this was afterwards hired by the Artillery company, and is called the Old Artillery Ground. The exercise of the popinjay was an ancient amusement in France, as is shewn by the following passage: L'exercice du papegay ou papegault, que l'on fait encore aujourd'hui dans quelques villes de France, ou il y a des prix proposez pour celui qui tirera le mieux, est un reste de l'ancien exercice, qu'on faisoit faire aux Bourgeois. Et je crois que cet exercice en quelques endroits est aussi ancien que l'institution de la milice des communes, & de la juridiction des maisons de ville, qui furent institutées sous le regne de Philippe I. quatrième Roi de la première race ainsi que je l'ai dit ailleurs. *P. Daniel Hist. de la Mil. Fr. tom. i. p. 379.*

(e) MANY sumptuary edicts were in former times published by proclamation, regulating the materials, colours and decorations of the garments to be worn by different ranks of people; among the trimmings, furs of different animals made a very distinguishing part, and were particularly appropriated.

THE masters and rulers of this fraternity were exempted from serving on any inquest within the city of London or any where else within the realm: and the king further granted, that if any of the fraternity shooting at a known and accustomed butt, having first pronounced or spoken the usual word FAST (f), should after that happen by mischance to kill any passenger, he should not suffer death, nor be impeached, troubled, or imprisoned for it. The patent was directed to be made out under the great seal, without the payment of any fees to the king, his heirs, or the hanaper, and was passed the 29th of Henry VIII (g).

ANOTHER patent was granted by King James I. in the 3d year of his reign, A.D. 1605, to the lord mayor of London, the lord Ellesmere, lord chancellor of England, Thomas earl of Dorset, high treasurer, Thomas earl of Suffolk, chamberlain of the household, Charles duke of Devonshire, master of the ordnance, Robert earl of Salisbury, principal secretary, with divers judges, knights and gentlemen for the encouragement of the artillery company, and the maintenance of archery and artillery within the realm of England.

IN this patent, after reciting the national utility of this company, it is stated that divers persons for their own gain and advantage have plucked up the ancient marks used in shooting, raised the banks and hedges, and deepened the ditches, thereby preventing the necessary communications in the fields, anciently appropriated to this exercise, contrary to the ancient customs of London, statutes, provisions and proclamations, whereby there is a danger that many persons being deprived of their usual amusements, might haunt and frequent unlawful games; wherefore the commissioners, or any six of them, were empowered to survey the grounds near the city of London, where the archers had been accustomed to shoot, and to cause them to be

---

(f) FAST, i. e. stand fast, a notice not to move till after the person giving such notice had made his shot.

(g) THIS charter is printed in a brief historical account of the artillery company, by Mr. Blackwell, adjutant and clerk to the company, anno 1726.

reduced to the state in which they were in the beginning of the reign of King Henry VIII. by calling before them the owners and occupiers of those lands, where any alterations had been made since that period, to be proved by oath, by such honest and lawful men as they should deem competent witnesses, and ordering the said owners and occupiers to do the necessary work, at their own cost and charges. Any persons resisting, refusing, or neglecting to obey those orders, were to be punished with fine and imprisonment to the king's use. In this patent the coat of arms they now bear was granted them.

A SIMILAR commission was granted by King Charles I. in the 8th year of his reign, A.D. 1633, wherein the grounds used for archery were directed to be reduced to the state in which they were in the beginning of the reign of King James I. (h).

IN the year 1638, the company performed an exercise of arms at Merchant Taylors Hall, before the lord mayor, court of aldermen, and many other eminent citizens, so much to their satisfaction, that in testimony thereof, they made a present to them of the ground they now enjoy, to serve them for a military field of exercise; it was then called the Artillery Garden. The company was also enriched by many gifts and legacies. Anno 1641, Charles prince of Wales (afterwards King Charles II.) the duke of Bavaria, and James duke of York (afterwards King James II.) entered themselves members of this company.

IT received some interruption during the civil wars, and had no exercise from 1643 to 1656, at which time it was again revived, many citizens entering themselves members of it.

IN 1644, the duke of York was appointed captain general of the company, and exercised it; the same year, the dukes of Monmouth,

---

(h) UNDER these clauses, a cow-keeper, named Pitfield, was, so late as 1746, obliged to renew one of the shooting marks which he had displaced, on which the artillery company cut the following inscription, viz. *Pitfield's Repentance*: and the Hon. Daines Barrington, in his ingenious treatise on archery, published in the 7th volume of the *Archæologia*, says, he is informed that Mr. Scott, the great brick-maker, hath been under the necessity of making his submission on a like occasion.

Albemarle, and Ormond, the earls of Sandwich, Manchester, Anglesea, and the Lord Craven, became members of it.

AFTER the revolution, King William, in the year 1689, restored the company to the right of annual elections of its officers, which in the two preceding reigns had been interrupted from political motives; he also declared himself captain general, appointing his grace the duke of Norfolk his deputy, during his absence abroad. On the accession of Queen Anne, she appointed her royal consort, Prince George of Denmark, to be captain general (i).

IN the year 1719, his majesty ordered that all the commission and staff officers of the city trained bands should become members of the artillery company, and exercise with them at all convenient times, in order to qualify themselves the better for their respective stations. It was also ordered, that the abovementioned officers should not fail to make their appearances at the three annual marches or exercises of the said company, unless hindered by some extraordinary business, and in such case, that they should provide some other person to appear in their stead: since which, no person can have a commission in the trained bands from the court of lieutenancy, unless he produces a certificate, that he is a member of the artillery company. On the 30th of May, 1722, his majesty caused the company to march in review before him in St. James's Park, and was pleased to make them a present of five hundred pounds\*.

ALTHOUGH both long and cross bows have for many years been laid aside, the company still continues to exercise in the artillery ground. His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales is captain general; there is also a president, vice president, treasurer, colonel, lieutenant

---

(i) ARCHERY seems at this time to have been totally laid aside by the company, who exercised themselves in the use of the musket and pike.

\* THE artillery company still subsists; but the city trained bands have been abolished. Instead of those irregular corps, the city of London now furnishes, for the defence of the country, two regiments of militia, on the same footing with the other militia corps of the several counties.



colonel, and major (usually chosen from the court of aldermen or other substantial citizens), with an adjutant, engineer, surgeon, chaplain, clerk, sergeant major, drum major, and messenger.

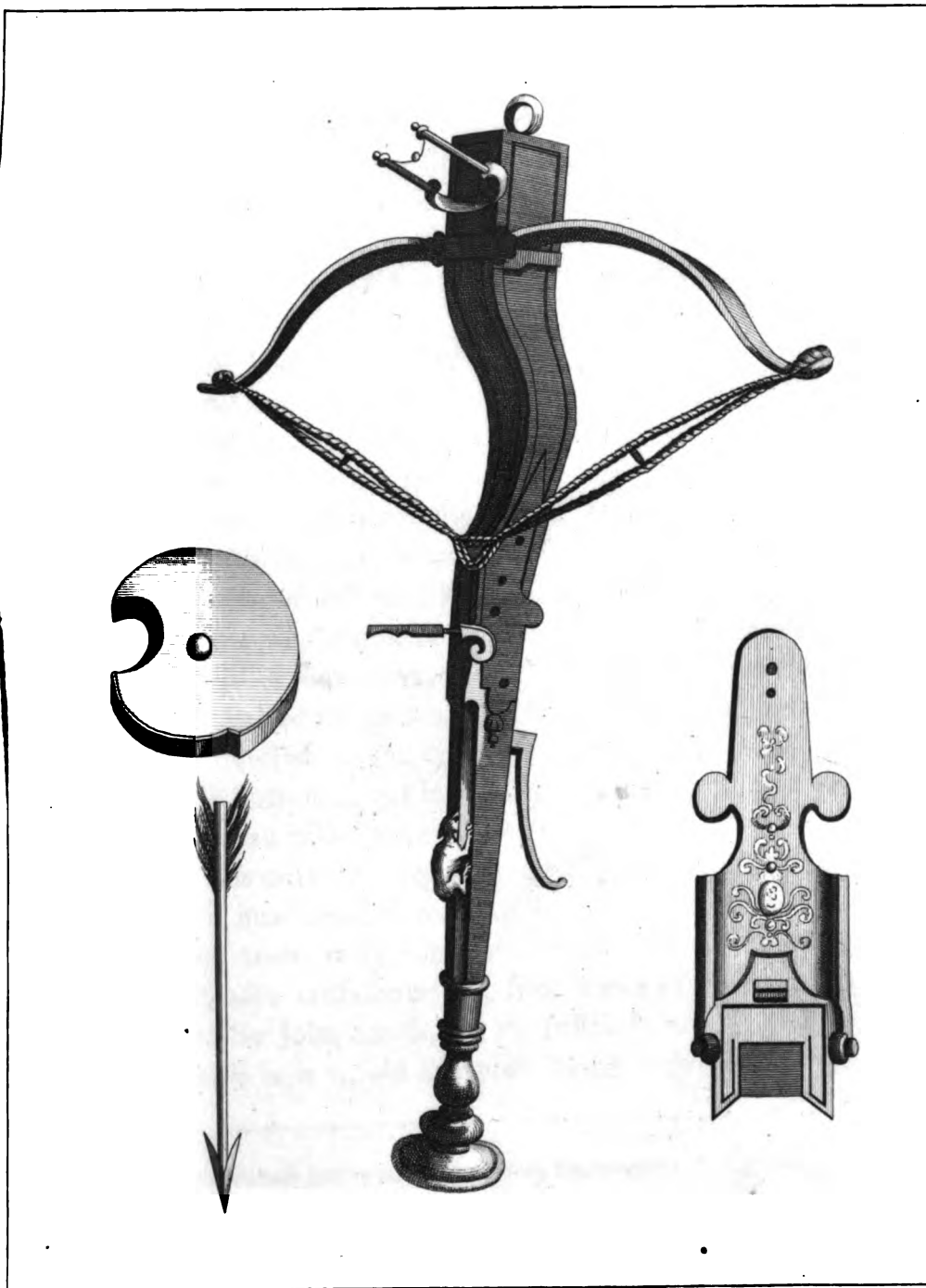
THE cross bow, or arbalist, called in Latin *arcus balistarius*, or *balista manualis*, and in French *arbalèt*, is said by some to be of Sicilian origin; others ascribe its invention to the Cretans. It is supposed to have been introduced into France by the first crusaders, and is mentioned by the abbé Suger in the life of Louis le Gros, as being used by that prince, in the beginning of his reign (k), which commenced in the year 1108.

VERSTIGAN seems to attribute the introduction of this weapon into England to the Saxons under Hengist and Horfa, but cites no authority in support of that supposition. In a print representing the landing of those generals, the foremost of them is delineated with a cross bow on his shoulder, and others are seen in the hands of the distant figures of their followers, landed and landing from their ships; of this print he says, "and because these noble gentlemen were the first bringers in and conductors of the ancestors of Englishmen into Britaine, from whence unto their posterity, the possession of their countrey hath ensued, I thought fit here in pourtraiture to sit down their first arrivall, therewithall to shewe the manner of the apparell which they wore, the weapons which they used, and the banner or ensign first by them spread in the field." Some writers say, William the Conqueror had cross bows in his army at the battle of Hastings. The Genoese were reckoned skilful in the use of this weapon; a great number of them were in the French service at the battle of Crecy.

THE effects of this weapon were deemed so fatal and cruel, that the use of it was forbidden by the second Lateran council, in 1139, under the penalty of an anathema, as hateful to God and unfit to be employed among Christians; which prohibition was confirmed by Pope Innocent III. It was nevertheless introduced into our armies by

---

(k) P. DANIEL Hist. de la Mil. Fr. tom. i. p. 425.



CROSSE BOWE.

*JNewton sculp*



King Richard I. who being slain by a dart shot from one of them, at the siege of the castle of Chaluz in Normandy, his death was considered as a judgment from Heaven, inflicted upon him for his impiety. Notwithstanding this example, the cross bow continued to be much used by the British troops, and in the list of the forces raised by King Edward II. against the Scots, the cross bow men make the second article in the enumeration of the different kinds of soldiers of which it consisted (1).

THE cross bow kept its footing in our armies even so late as the year 1572, when Queen Elizabeth, in a treaty with King Charles IX. of France, engaged to furnish him with six thousand men, part of them armed with long bows, and part with cross bows. And in the attack made by the English on the isle of Rhee in 1627, some cross bow men were, it is said, in that army.

CROSS bows were of different kinds, some called latches, and some prodds. The bow was commonly of steel, though sometimes of wood or horn; the smaller bows were bent with the hand by means of a small steel lever, called the goat's foot, from its being cloven or forked on that side that rested on the cross bow and cord; the larger were bent with one or both feet, put into a kind of stirrup: some were also bent with a machine called a moulinet.

CROSS bows not only discharged arrows, but also darts called quarreaux, from their heads, which were square pyramids of iron, corruptly named quarrels; these were sometimes feathered (as the term was) with wood or brags: cross bows also shot stones or leaden balls.

ACCORDING to Sir John Smith, in his Instructions and Observations, &c. p. 204, a cross bow would kill point blank between forty and sixty

---

(1) *TITULUS de vadiis tam peditum, balistariorum, lanceatorum, & sagittariorum Angliæ, Walliæ, & Vascon; quam quorundam hominum ad arma et hobelariorum, retentorum ad vadia domini regis Edwardi, filii regis Edwardi, in guerra Scotiæ et alibi, a primo die Maii, anno quinto decimo, usque septimum diem Julii, anno regni ejusdem sexto decimo, finiente tempore. Rogeri de Waltham tunc custodis, et Roberti de Baldok tunc contra rotulitoris garderobæ. MSS. in the Library of Tho. Astle, Esq.*

yards, and, if elevated, six, seven, and even eight score yards; the range indeed depended on the size and strength of the bow; but the distances here given are such as a common cross bow would carry.

MONSIEUR DE BELLAY, in the treatise before quoted, speaks highly of the cross bow, which he prefers to the harquebus, and says it would kill an hundred or two hundred paces (m); probably he here meant only military paces, of two feet, or two feet and a half.

Cross bow men were dressed, and otherwise armed, much in the same manner as the archers, and like them were frequently mounted on horseback.

THE invention of gunpowder and its application to artillery and small arms, did not produce that sudden change in the art of war, or weapons, that might, on a first consideration, be expected. Mankind, in general, have an almost superstitious reverence for old professional customs, which they ever relinquish unwillingly, and slowly, adopting improvements by degrees only. This arises, not only from a strong prepossession in favour of opinions they have been taught all their lives to consider as uncontrovertible, but because improvements tend to shew that the rising generation is wiser than their forefathers and seniors, a position old men will never willingly allow; this dislike to innovations is peculiarly found in old soldiers, because by adopting new weapons, and consequently a new exercise, the old and expert soldiers find themselves in a worse state than new recruits; as they have not only a new exercise to learn, which after a certain age is no easy matter, but also the old one to forget: for the truth of this observation, I appeal to every military man, who has seen any alteration made in the ordinary routine of duty or exercise.

THIS was the case, with respect to changing the long bow for the harquebuses; to prove it a number of instances might be produced, which must occur to every reader of ancient military books; it likewise is strongly marked by a letter written by Camden, transcribed in the

---

(m) Book i. p. 26.

note below (n). Indeed many of the ancient foldiers were much divided on that subject, nor does it appear that the government of those days had formed any decided opinion upon it, as the strongest statutes for enforcing the practice of archery were enacted after the introduction of fire arms: and so indifferent were our rulers under Queen Mary to the introduction of them, that in her ordonnance respecting armour and weapons, the alternative is left to the choice of the people, whether they would find a long bow and sheaf of arrows, or a harquebut, in every case where they were by law charged with the latter. This national backwardness to a general adoption of fire arms must strike every person, when it is shewn how long hand

---

(n) CAMDEN to Sir Ed. Cecil.—Honourable Sir. The proposition you make is oute of the reache of my profession, and not of antiquitie, but of late memorie; by reason of Sir Rob. Cott.'s absence I can imparte nothing from him as yet, and for my owne observation it is very slender, onely I remember, that after Captain Morgan in the yeare 1572 had first carried to Flushing 300 English, and had (persuaded) procured Sir Humphrey Gilbert to bring over more, and to be coronell of the English there, a new militarie discipline was shortly after brought in, and the new marche by some that had served the duke of Alva, and entertained especially by the important instance of Sir Roger Williams, although strong opposition was then against it, by Captaine Pykeman, and afterward by Captaine Reade, ancient leaders, and Sir William Pelham, who were scornfully tearmed by the contrary parte, Sainte George's fouldados; and Sir John Smith, who had served under the constable Momorancy twice in Hungary, att Penon de Veliz and Malta, yea, and under Dalva, encountered with his penne against the newe Discipline, and did writght much which was never published. This in hast, untill I may (cann) happen upon Sir Robert Cotton, I thought good to imparte to your lfp. to whom I wish all happye succeffe to the encrease and compliment of your honor.

THIS letter, which is in the Cott. Lib. Julius F. 6, fol. 441, is not signed, and by the corrections here marked, seems to have been a foul copy; probably the person who marked it as Cambden's knew his hand. One of the treatises written by Sir John Smith, and here mentioned by Camden, was printed in London, 1st May, 1590, in quarto; it is entitled, "Certain Discourses written by Sir John Smythe, knight, concerning the formes and effects of divers sorts of weapons, and other very important matters militarie, greatlie mistaken by divers of our men of warre, in these daies, and chiefly of the mosquet, the caliver, and the long bow, as also of the great sufficiencie, excellencie, and wonderful effects of archers, with many notable examples and other particularities, by him presented to the nobilitie of this realme, and published for the benefit of this his native countrie of England."

guns were known and introduced here, before the use of them became general.

FIRE-ARMS discharged by hand were first called hand canons, hand culverines, and hand guns; they afterwards acquired the appellations of hackbuts, harquebuffes, muskets, and calivers, and lastly their present name of firelocks. Various are the opinions and accounts, respecting their origin, and the time and place where they were first used. The chief of these are given in the note (o). Hand guns

(o) FATHER DANIEL has collected the following particulars respecting the different kinds of fire-arms. "The president Fauchet says, that the first of our historians who has spoken of these canons and hand culverines which I have before mentioned, is Monstrelet, whose history begins in 1400, and terminates in 1467, that is to say, a little beyond the time, in which that of Philip de Comines begins. Fauchet is right: but there are historians as ancient as Monstrelet, as for example, Juvenal des Ursins, who likewise mentions them.

It appears to me, that these culverines or hand canons, which were fired on little carriages, were what we now call the arquebus à croc (arquebus with a hook) or something very like it. They were since called the arquebus with a hook, upon account of a little hook, cast with the piece; they are placed on a kind of tripod, as may be seen in the representation; they are of different lengths, and for caliber, between the smallest canons and the musket; they are used in the lower flanks, and in towers pierced with loop-holes, called murderers.

A LONG time afterwards the name of arquebus was given to a fire-arm, the barrel of which was mounted on a stock, having a butt for presenting and taking aim: this was at the soonest about the end of the reign of Louis XII. It became in time the ordinary piece borne by the soldiers. This is the most ancient arm mounted on a stock. We have the epocha of that invention in the authors of the time in which I place it: for Fabricius Colonne, in Machiavel's Dialogues upon the Art of War, speaks of this arm as a new invention of his time: "The harquebus, says he, which is a weapon newly invented, as you know, and very necessary for the present time." The author of the Military Discipline attributed to the Seigneur de Langei, says the same. "The harquebus, says he, has been invented within these few years, and is very good:" he wrote under the reign of Francis I. This arm a good deal resembled our present musketoons in the stock and barrel, but they had wheel locks. If we believe Luigi-Collado, in his Treatise of Artillery, printed at Venice, in the year 1586, they only began in his time to use the wheel lock in Germany. *Nell' Alemagna etiandio fu ritrovata l'invention de gl' archibugi da ruota.* The best arquebuses were made at Milan, as Brantome says in his eulogy on M. de Strozzi.

MONSIEUR DE BELLAY says, that one of the first occasions where it was made use of, was in the year 1521, when Pope Leo X. and the Emperor Charles V. confederated against France,

were first introduced into this kingdom; in the year 1471, when King Edward IV. landing at Ravenspurgh in Yorkshire, brought

France, and their troops besieged Parma, which was defended by the marquis de Foix. At that time, says he, were invented harquebuses, which are fired on rests, those before carried by the harquebusiers, both horse and foot, were much lighter.

FROM harquebuses came pistols or pistolets, with wheel locks, the barrels of which were only one foot long, being the harquebuse in miniature. It is thought that these arms were called pistols or pistolets, because the first were made at Pitoye in Tuscany. I think I have remarked in our histories, that the Germans made use of them in France, before the French; and the horsemen who carried them in the time of Henry II. were called *pistoliers*. Monsieur de la Noue, in his eighteenth Military Discourse, confirms what I say: In the mean time, says he, we must give the honour to the Reitres, of having first brought pistols into use, which I think are very dangerous when properly used. They are mentioned as early as the year 1544, under the reign of Francis I. I have seen one at Chantilly, which is all iron except the ramrod.

ANOTHER arm was afterwards made, a medium between the harquebuse and pistol, it was called a petrinial or poitrinal, this we learn from the president Fauchet, who lived under Francis I. and died under Henry IV. "Within twenty or thirty years, says he, they call petrinials like instruments the mean between harquebuses and pistols, having a very strong and quick wheel; and it is believed that this arm is the invention of the bandouliers of the Pyrenean mountains."

NICOT, who was of the same time, thus describes a poitrinal in his Dictionary: "It is, says he, a species of harquebus, shorter than the musket, but of a greater calibre, and on account of its weight is carried in a broad baudrick worn over the shoulder, and rested on the breast of the person who carries it, when he fires it, wherefore it received its name. The poitrinalier is the soldier who carries and uses the poitrinal." This arm is mentioned in the relation of the siege of Rothen by Henry IV. in 1592.

AFTER the harquebuses came muskets; they were made in the time of Francis I. for in the same cabinet of arms at Chantilly, there is one marked with the arms of France, and the salamander, which was the device of that prince. Nevertheless, if we will believe Brantome, it was the duke d'Alva who first brought them into use in the armies, when during the reign of Philip II. he went to take upon him the government of the low countries in the year 1567; but that only means, he brought them more into fashion than they were till that time, and that till then they were rarely used, at least in the field. He says then in his elogy on Monsieur de Strozzi, colonel general of the French infantry under Charles IX. that it was that officer who introduced the use of the musket into France; by this is to be understood the common use of it.

PISTOLS with a simple spring, instead of the wheel formerly made use of, fusils and musketoons, all these are modern and well known; but I know not the inventors; it is



with him, among other forces, three hundred Flemings armed with "hange gunnes(p) : " this is fifty years before the date generally assigned for their introduction ; Mr. Anderfon and divers other writers placing that event in the year 1521, at the siege of Berwick(q).

THERE is reason to believe that this innovation in the ancient military system was not generally approved of by the English, or was not

the workmen themselves who have improved upon these arms, and rendered them more simple. I have been assured, that in 1658, the use of wheel locked pistols was not then abolished.

I SHALL remark likewise upon the article of muskets, that the Spaniards of the time of Philip II. caused them to be made of a very great calibre, and such that a strong and vigorous foot foldier might carry them, but that they were so heavy that they could not be presented, without the assistance of staves shod and pointed at the bottom, and which they fixed into the earth, and made use of a fork that was at the top, as a prop to sustain the end of the musket: they made use of them not only in sieges to fire over the walls, but also in battles: these large muskets carried to a great distance, and by the size of their balls made terrible wounds: but since, on account of their weight, they have left off using them in the field, and they are only used in sieges. Harquebuses and pistols with wheel locks are at this time very little known, and rarely to be found, except in arsenals and in the cabinets of arms, where some of them are preserved out of curiosity: I must therefore explain what this wheel was which gave movement to all the springs. It was a little solid wheel of steel, fixed against the plate of the lock of the harquebuse or pistol; it had an axis that pierced it in its centre; at the interior end of this axis which went into the lock, a chain was fastened, which twisted round it on the wheel being turned, and bent the spring by which it was held: to bend this spring a key was made use of, into which the exterior end of the axis was inserted. By turning this key from left to right, the wheel was made to revolve, and by this movement a little slider of copper, which covered the pan with the priming, retired from over it; and by the same movement the cock, armed with a flint like the cock of a fusil, was in a state to be discharged on pulling the trigger with the finger, as in ordinary pistols; the cock then falling on the wheel, produced fire, and communicated it to the priming.

(p) In the XLIX yere of King Henry VI. cam King Edward with the Lord Hastings, the Lord Say and IX.C. Englishe men, and III.C. Flemings with hange gunnes. *Leland's Collect.* vol. i. p. 721. Probably the word *hange* is an error of either the transcriber or printer, and should have been *hand*.

(q) ANDERSON'S Hist. of Commerce, vol. i. p. 351. The musket is mentioned as a weapon of the infantry in Poland in the year 1475. "Quilibet peditum habeat balistam vel bombardam." *Lit. Casmerii* III. an. 1475. Leg. Polon. tom. i. p. 228. These are generally assigned to the year 1520. Add. to vol. i. and ii. of Warton's Hist. of Poetry.

productive of any very striking effects, since we scarcely hear any mention made of fire-arms, till they occur in the statute of the 33d of Henry VIII. when it was enacted, that no hand guns should be used of less dimensions than one yard in length, gun and stock included, which shews that the early hand guns were of a much smaller length than those afterwards made ; probably their calibre was in proportion, in which case they would do but little execution on men mostly armed : this perhaps may, in some measure, account for their being so slowly adopted. The piece called the haquebut or hagbut was still shorter, for by the same statute, it might not be under three quarters of a yard long, gun and stock, as before, included. This piece is by some writers supposed to owe its name to its butt being hooked or bent, somewhat like those now used, the butts of the first hand guns being, it is said, nearly straight. There were likewise some pieces called demi haques, either from being less in size, or from having their butts less curved. A sort of pistol, called a dag, was also used about the same time as hand guns and haquebuts. Pistols were so called from being made at Pistoia, in Tuscany. After some time, the haquebut obtained the name of harquebus, which is by Fauchet derived from the Italian words "arca bouza," or the bow with a hole. It does not appear that the harquebuse was originally confined to any particular length or bore. All these pieces, namely, the hand gun, hackbut, harquebuse, and dag, were at first fired with a match, and some of them afterwards with a wheel lock ; the former, by means of a spring let down a burning match upon the priming in the pan ; and the latter was a contrivance for exciting sparks of fire, by the friction of a notched wheel of steel, at the bottom of the pan, which with a quick revolution grated against a flint ; the spring which turned this wheel was wound up, or, as the term was, spanned, with an instrument called a spanner, somewhat like the key of a clock.

THE machinery of the wheel lock is described by Father Daniel in the note, p. 154.

THE inconsiderable execution done by pieces of small calibre probably caused the introduction of the musket, which was a long, heavy

piece, carrying large balls, and on account of its size and weight fired on a kind of fork, called a rest ; the rest continued in use for a considerable time, but on certain occasions, being found unwieldy and inconvenient, a lighter kind of piece was introduced, generally known by the name of the caliver (r), which was fired without any such assistance. But before the entire dismission of the rest, divers attempts were made to convert it to a defence against cavalry, whilst the musketeer was loading, by arming it with a projecting spike from one of the prongs of the fork, serving for the head, or part on which the musket was laid : or by enclosing a tuck in the shaft of the rest, which

---

(r) THE caliver was a lighter kind of matchlock piece, between a harquebuse and a musket, and fired without a rest. The following explanation of its name is given by Edmund York, an officer who had served in the low countries, and was employed by Queen Elizabeth to regulate the militia of London, at the time the kingdom was threatened with a Spanish invasion. "I remember (says he) when I was first brought up in Piemont, in the countie of Brisacks regiment of old bandes, we had our particular calibre of harquebus to our regiment, both for that one bullet should serve all the harquebusses of our regiment, as for that our colonel should not be deceived of his arms ; of which word calibre, came first that unapt term, we use, to call a harquebus a caliver, which is the height of the bullet, and not of the piece. Before the battle of Mountgunter, the princes of the religion caused several thousand harquebusses to be made all of one calibre, which was called harquebuse du calibre de Monsieur le Prince ; so, I think some man, not understanding French, brought hither the name of the height of the bullet of the piece, which word calibre is yet continued with our good canoniers." See *Maitland's Hist. of London, in Art. Artillery.*

SIR JOHN SMITH, in his Confutation of Capt. Berwick, MS. Bib. Harl. No. 4685, thus explains the word Caliver : "It is supposed by many, that the weapon, called a caliver, is another thing than a harquebuse ; whereas in troth it is not, but only a harquebuse, savinge that it is of greater circuite or bullet, than the other is of ; wherefore the Frenchman doth call it a peece de calibre ; which is as much to saie, a peece of bigger circuite." Pecke, in his *Desiderata Curiosa*, has preserved the price of a caliver and its accoutrements, as paid by the sheriffs of Lancashire, in the reign of Queen Elizabeth, anno 1584, for the use of the recruits raised for the Irish service, which was, the caliver, furnished with flaske and touche boxe, laces and moulds, thirteen shillings and sixpence. In an estimate, made the 18th of James I. anno 1620, of the expences of a royal army of thirty thousand men, intended to be sent into the Palatinate, a caliver, with bandaleers, is valued at 14s. 10d. The price of a new musket, as settled the 7th of Charles I. was 15s. 6d., a rest 10d. For a new bandalier, carrying twelve charges, a primer, a priming wire, bullet bag, and a strap or belt, two inches broad, 2s. 6d.



N.C. Goodright sculp.

*A Soldier of the time of K. James I., armed with a Caliver.*





*A Musketeer with his Match-Lock, Bandoleers and Rest.* Goodright sculp.



on opening a small valve, sprung out; rests thus armed were called the swines or Swedish feathers, and were contrivances preceding the use of the bayonet (s).

THE harquebuses, or soldiers bearing harquebuses, were often armed with morions, or steel hats, called pots, cuirasses consisting of backs and breasts, and tassets covering their thighs. These suits are known in the tower by the name of harquebuse armour.

WHEN hand guns first came into use, not only balls, but also steel quarrels, and wooden arrows, called sprites, were discharged from them: of the effects of the last Sir Richard Hawkins gives a very wonderful account, which I own I do not comprehend any more than Lord Verulam's reasoning on it, and have therefore transcribed both passages verbatim et literatim, for the judgment of my readers. "In this discourse, Generall Michael Angell demanded for what purpose served the little short arrowes which we had in our shippe, and those in great quantitie: I satisfied him that they were for our muskets. They are not as yet in use among the Spaniards, yet of singular effect and execution, as our enemies confessed; for the upper worke of their shippes being musket prooffe, in all places they passed through both

---

(s) THE Swedish, or swine's feather, is mentioned by several ancient military writers, particularly Ward, Turner, and the duke of Albemarle. "Musket rests (says Turner) were used a long time, and in some places are yet, to ease the musketeers in discharging their guns, and when they stood centinel; but in the late expeditions in most places in Christendom, they have been found more troublesome than helpful; a musketeer in any sudden occasion, not being able to do his duty with musket, sword, and rest, especially if you give him a Swedish feather to manage with them. Bokeler, the engineer, speaks of an instrument that might serve for both rest and feather, and such, perhaps, would be very useful and convenient; he would have it at the top as all rests are, like a fork on the one side, whereof he would have an iron, of one foot and a half long, sticking out, sharply pointed; these planted in the van or flanks where you expect the charge, as the Swedish feathers used to be, will sufficiently palliade and defend musketeers from horse, and upon them they may lean their muskets when they give fire." *Turner's Pallas Armata*, p. 176. The duke of Albemarle, in his *Observations upon Military and Political Affairs*, printed anno 1671, recommends the arming musketeers and dragoons with muskets having swine's feathers, with the heads of rests fastened to them.



sides with facilitie, and wrought extraordinary difasters, which caused admiration to see themselves wounded with small shott, where they thought themselves secure, and by no means could find where they entered, nor come to any fight of any of the shott. Hereof they proved to profit themselves after ; but for that they wanted the tamp-kings, which are first to be driven home, before the arrow be put in, and as then understood not the secret, they rejected them as uncertaine, and therefore not to be used ; but of all the shot used now adayes, for the annoying of an enemie in fight by sea, few are of greater moment for many respects, which I hold not convenient to treat of in publique (t).” Thus far Sir Richard Hawkins. My Lord Verulam, taking the fact for granted, endeavours to account for it on philosophical principles. “ The Turkish bowe (says he) giveth a very forcible shoot, insomuch as it hath been known, that the arrow has pierced a steel target, or a piece of brasse, two inches thick : but that which is more strange, the arrow, if it be headed with wood, hath been known to pierce through a piece of wood of eight inches thick : and it is certain, that we had in use at one time for sea fight, short arrows which they call sprights, without any other heads save wood sharpened ; which were discharged out of muskets, and would pierce through the sides of ships, where a bullet would not pierce. But this dependeth upon one of the greatest secrets in all nature ; which is, that similitude of substance will cause attraction, where the body is wholly freed from the motion of gravity ; for if that were taken away, lead would draw lead, and gold would draw gold, and iron would draw iron, without the help of the loadstone. But this same motion of weight or gravity (which is a mere matter of motion, and hath no affinity with the form or kinde) doth kill the other motion, except itself be killed by a violent motion ; and, in these instances of arrows, the motion of attraction, by similitude of substance, beginneth to shew itself. For a particular description of the ancient musketeer, the reader is referred to Appendix, No. 1.

---

(t) *Voyage to the South Seas*, A.D. 1591, p. 164, sec. lxvi.

A SMALL anonymous military treatise (u) printed in the year 1680, says the fusil or fire-lock was then in use in our army, especially among the fusileers and grenadiers; in all likelihood the appellation of fusileers was given to those troops who were armed with fusils; in that case the date of the oldest regiment of that denomination will give some little direction toward finding their first introduction.

PERHAPS the fusileer regiments were originally a sort of grenadiers, as like them they wear caps, and have no ensigns (x).

THE use of cartridges, which seems to have taken place about the same time as the firelock, introduced the cartridge-box instead of the bandeleers. This was a very considerable improvement, as the ammunition was not only more commodiously and safely carried, but by using cartridges, a soldier was enabled to fire at least three times the number of shot he could discharge when loading from his bandeleers, which were besides subject to many inconveniences and objections. Their imperfections are fully stated by lord Orrery (y).

(u) ENGLISH Military Discipline, or the Way and Method of exercising Horse and Foot, printed for Richard Harford, p. 19.

(x) FUSILEERS are foot soldiers armed with fusces with slings to sling them. There are four regiments in our army, which have always been called fusileers, and go by the name of the English, Scotch, Irish, and Welsh fusileers; but now we have none but fusileers abroad, for the pikes are quite laid aside. The first design of fusileers was to guard the artillery, for which end the regiment of English fusileers, now commanded by Sir Charles O'Hara were first raised. To supply the want of pikes, and to secure themselves against horse, the fusileers used to carry turnpikes along with them, which in a camp were placed along the front of a battalion, and on a march were carried by the soldiers, each carrying one of the short pikes, and two, by turns, the sparr through which they are thrust, so that they were quickly put together. *Gentleman's Dictionary*. According to Millan's Succession of Colonels, the 7th regiment, or royal English fusileers, were raised, June 11th, 1685; the 21st regiment, or royal North British fusileers, 23d Sept. 1679; the 23d, or royal Welsh fusileers, 17th March, 1688; but there is no Irish regiment bearing the appellation of fusileers.

(y) "I AM also (says he) on long experience, an enemy to the use of bandeleers, but a great approver of boxes of cartridges; for then but by biting off the bottom of the cartridge, you charge your musket for service with one ramming.

" I WOULD

THE institution of grenadiers originated in France, from whence we borrowed it; they were, as their denomination imports, soldiers trained to the art of throwing hand grenades, in the attack of trenches or the covert way.

FATHER DANIEL says the first grenadiers in the French troops were placed in the king's regiment, in the year 1667, when there were four of them in each company, and that in the year 1670, the king united them into one company, the command of which he gave to M. de Riotor, who was the first captain of grenadiers.

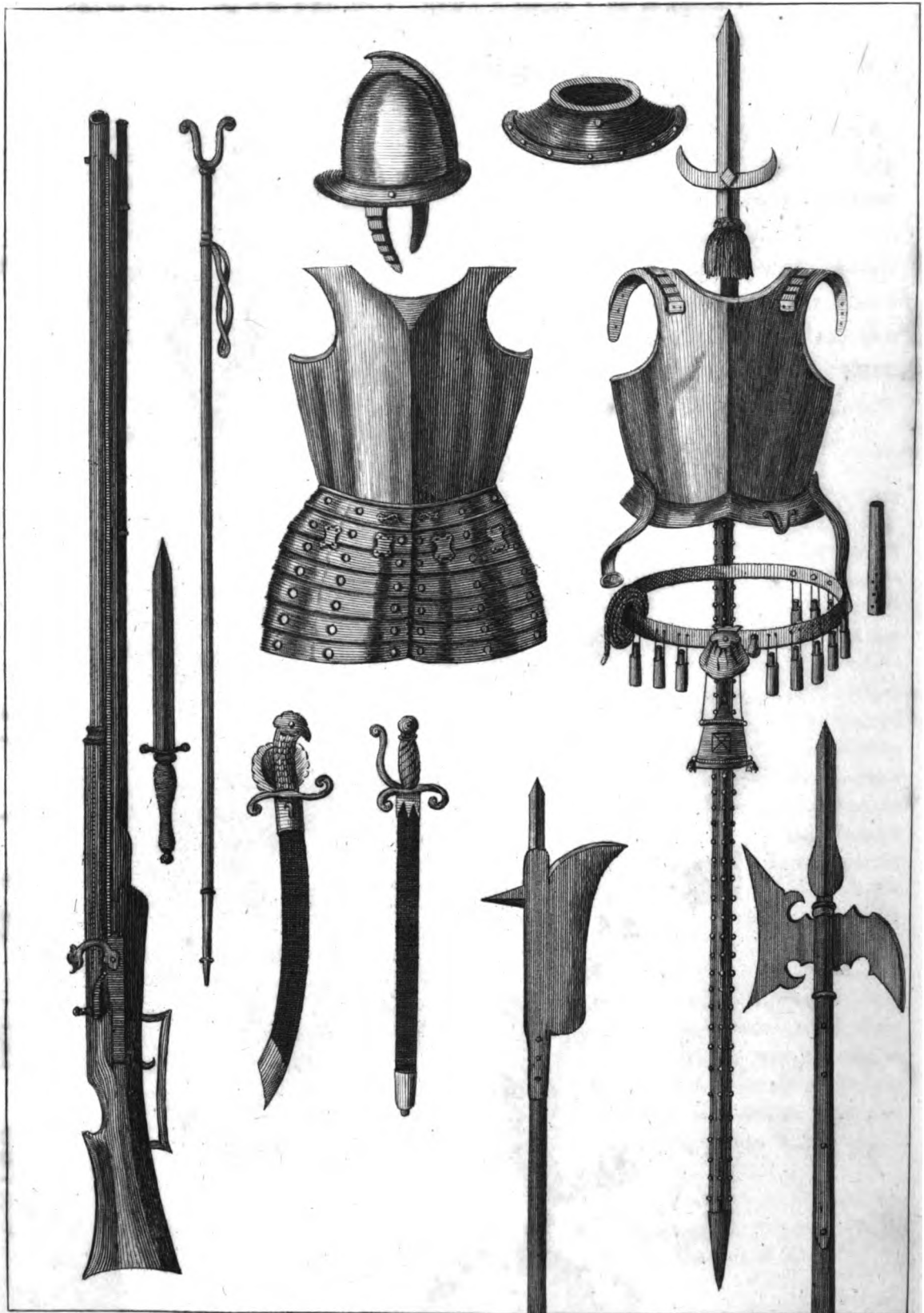
"I WOULD have these cartridge boxes of tin, as the carabines use them, because they are not so apt to break as the wooden ones are, and do not in wet weather, or lying in the tents, relax.

"BESIDES, I have often seen much prejudice in the use of bandoleers, which being worn in the belts for them, above the soldiers' coats, are often apt to take fire, especially if the match-lock musket be used; and when they take fire, they commonly wound and often kill him that wears them, and those near him: for likely if one bandoleer take fire, all the rest do in that collar: they often tangle those which use them on service, when they have fired, and are falling off by the flanks of the files of the intervals, to get into the rear to charge again. To which I shall add, that in secret attempts in the night, their rattling often discovers the design, and enables the enemy to prevent it; and in the day time on service, especially if the weather be windy, their rattling also too frequently hinders the soldiers from hearing, and consequently obeying, the officer's word of command, which must be fatal when it happens: whereas the cartridge boxes exempt those who use them from all these dangers and prejudices: they enable the soldiers on service to fire more expeditiously; they are also usually worn about the waist of the soldier, the skirts of whose doublet and his coat, doubly defend them from all rain that doth not pierce both; and being worn close to his body, the heat thereof keeps the powder dryer, and therefore more fit to be fired in service.

"BESIDES all this, whoever loads his musket with cartridges, is sure the bullet will not drop out, though he takes his aim under breast high, for the paper of the cartridge keeps it in; whereas those soldiers which on service take their bullets out of their mouths (which is the nimblest way) or out of their pouches, which is slow, seldom put any paper, tow, or grafs, to ram the bullet in; whereby if they fire above breast high, the bullet passes over the head of the enemy; and if they aim low, the bullet drops out ere the musket is fired; and 'tis to this that I attribute the little execution I have seen musketeers do in time of fight, though they fired at great battalions, and those also reasonable near.

"IT might also do well, if the soldiers tyed their links of match about their middle, and under their coat and doublets, instead of tying them to their bandoleer belt, or collar, for by that means the match would be kept dryer, and fitter for service in the time of action."





INFANTRY.

I HAVE not been able to discover the time, when grenadiers were first introduced into the English army: Smith, in his Military Dictionary, says they were first known here in the year 1685; but in this he is greatly mistaken; as in a list of the army, published in the year 1684(z), we meet with grenadier companies to most of the regiments of infantry; they were armed with muskets and bayonets, without swords, and wore caps.

GRENADIERS, at their first institution, were not confined to the infantry; for to each of the three troops of horse-guards, a corps of sixty-four grenadiers, with two drums, four hautbois, two corporals, two ferjeants, and two lieutenants, were attached. These corps were armed with harquebuses and bayonets, and distinguished by caps and looped clothes.(a), but had no captains, being then considered as parts of the troops of guards to which they were annexed: they appear to have been afterwards formed into two troops; the first, October 4th, 1693; the second on the 27th of May, 1702. The command of them were given to the earl of Cholmondeley, and W. Lord Forbes.

IN a book of exercise (b), published by authority in the year 1686, the grenadiers appear to have been armed with fire-lock, or snap-hance muskets, slings, swords, daggers, and pouches with grenades; they had also hatchets, with which, after firing and throwing their

(z) A GENERAL and complete List Military of every commission officer of horse and foot, now commanding his majesty's land forces of England (excepting the unregimented companies), as also the proper distinctions of their cloathings, badges of honour, and colours of each troop and regiment. The names of the chief officers of the ordnance, and other officers belonging to the army, &c. &c. as established at the time of the review upon Putney Heath, the 1st of October, 1684, &c.

(a) THIS distinction is mentioned in the old grenadier song:

Come let us fill a bumper, and drink a health to those,  
Who wear the caps and pouches, and eke the looped clothes.

(b) AN Abridgement of the English Military Discipline, printed by especial command, for the use of his majesty's forces, 1686.

grenades, they were on the word of command "fall on," to rush upon the enemy. The practice of screwing the dagger into the muzzle of the piece, is also there directed; it likewise appears that they then loaded with cartridges, and that the match-lock and fire-lock or snaphance, were both then in use, the exercise for both being laid down in that book.

In another book of exercise, published also by royal authority, in the year 1690 (c), the match-lock exercise and the use of the bandileers are still retained, but the grenadiers appear to have been armed with fire-locks, and to have used cartridges; their daggers are here stiled bayonets, but were still screwed into the muzzles of their pieces. Bayonets were solely appropriated to the grenadiers and dragoons. The hatchet is not mentioned in this book.

I HAVE in vain endeavoured to ascertain the precise time when the bayonets of the present form were first adopted here; that improvement, as well as the original invention, is of French (d) extraction.

(c) THE Exercise of the Foot, with the evolutions according to the words of command, as they are explained; as also the forming of battalions, with directions to be observed by all colonels, captains, and other officers in their majesties armies: by their majesties command, 1690.

(d) FATHER DANIEL says, the regular introduction of bayonets took place in France about the year 1671; the first corps armed with them was the regiment of fusileers raised that year, and since called the royal regiment of artillery, but although the adoption of the bayonet is so recent, the idea of it had long occurred to different officers, some of whom had occasionally put it in practice; among them was Monsieur de Puisegur, in the district in Flanders, where he commanded: "For my part (says he in his Memoirs) when I commanded in Bergue, in Ypres, Dixmude, and Quenoque, all the parties I sent out passed the canals in this fort; it is true that the soldiers had no swords, but they had bayonets with handles of a foot long; the blades of these bayonets were as long as the handles, the ends of which were fitted for being put into the barrels of the fusils, to defend themselves, if attacked after they had fired." The term bayonet was derived from these weapons being first made at Bayonne; they were called by the French bayonets a manche, or bayonets with handles, there are many of them in the small armory in the tower of London. The modern bayonets are called bayonets a douille, i. e. bayonets with sockets.

The following anecdote respecting that weapon was communicated to me by Lieutenant Colonel Maxwell, of the 30th regiment of foot, who had it from his grandfather, formerly lieutenant colonel of the 25th regiment of foot.

IN one of the campaigns of King William III. in Flanders, in an engagement, the name of which he had forgot, there were three French regiments, whose bayonets were made to fix after the present fashion, a contrivance then unknown in the British army; one of them advanced against the 25th regiment with fixed bayonets; Lieut. Col. Maxwell who commanded it, ordered his men to screw their bayonets into their muzzles to receive them; thinking they meant to decide the affair point to point; but to his great surprise, when they came within a proper distance, the French threw in a heavy fire, which for a moment staggered his people, who by no means expected such a greeting, not conceiving it possible they could fire with fixed bayonets; they nevertheless recovered themselves, charged, and drove the enemy out of the line.

NOTWITHSTANDING this instance of the superiority of the socket bayonet, it seems as if that invention was not immediately adopted, but that the old bayonets underwent a mutation or two, before they arrived at their present form; one of them was a couple of rings fixed into their handle, for the purpose of receiving the muzzle of the piece, like the socket of the present bayonet, by which means the soldier was enabled both to fire, and load his musket, without unfixing it. The late Reverend Mr. Gostling, of Canterbury, who was extremely inquisitive respecting military affairs, told me he remembered to have seen two horse grenadiers ride before the coach of Queen Anne, with their bayonets fixed by means of the rings here described.

THE 42d regiment of foot differs from all the others in his majesty's service in their dress and appointments, their uniform being the ancient habit of the Scottish Highlanders, consisting of the bonnet, plaid, red jacket faced with blue, the Philibeg and Tartan hose. Their arms, besides those borne by the other regiments or infantry, namely fire-



locks and bayonets, are large basket-hilted broad swords, and daggers of about eighteen inches long, called dirks (e).

THIS regiment was composed of independent companies raised for the protection of the country against robbers, thence called the high-land watch; they were regimented October 25th, 1739, when John earl of Crauford was appointed colonel (f). Some of the chiefs in raising these companies had given them promises they were not authorized by government to make; among other inducements to enlist, thus improperly held forth, it is said, the men were assured they should not go out of their own country; under the faith of this promise, many reputable farmers and yeomen's sons entered themselves as privates in the corps, who would not otherwise have thought of enlisting.

It being found necessary to send this regiment on foreign service, it was ordered up to the environs of London, in the beginning of May, 1743, and was the fourteenth reviewed on Finchley common by General Wade.

A REPORT having been circulated that it was destined to the West Indies, a great uneasiness arose among the private men, which was increased on account of some stoppages in their pay, probably only the usual arrears: these discontents were fomented by some evil-minded people, who magnified to them the unwholesomeness of the country, to which they were supposed to be ordered, and terrified them with the fate of the troops on the expedition under General Wentworth.

UNDER the influence of these notions a body of one hundred and fifty of them assembled, on the 17th, about Hampstead and Highgate, with their arms, fourteen cartridges each, and six days' provisions, and putting themselves under the command of a corporal of the name of

---

(e) I DOUBT whether the dirk is part of their regimental arms, but I remember in the year 1747, most of the private men had them, and many were also permitted to carry targets; the regiment was then on service in Flanders.

(f) SEE Milar's Succession of Colonels.



*An Officer & Sergeant of a Highland Regiment.*



M'Pherson, marched off with a resolution to return to Scotland ; the remainder of the regiment was ordered for immediate embarkation.

ON the news of this mutiny, a party of General Wade's horse, commanded by Captain Ball, was sent, by General Blakeney, after the fugitives, towards Stilton, on which they took shelter in Lady-Wood, four miles from Oundle in Northamptonshire ; of this Major Creed, one of the justices of the peace for that county, having information, on the 21st went to them, and endeavoured to persuade them to lay down their arms, to which, on condition of a pardon, they seemed somewhat inclined ; whereupon that gentleman engaged to write in their favour to the duke of Montague, and wrote at the same time to Major Otway, who then commanded the horse sent after them, to request that he would not proceed to extremities till he had received his grace's answer ; but the Highlanders having moved to another part of the wood, contrary to their promise, General Wade was applied to for further orders ; and a squadron of General Churchill's regiment was ordered to surround the wood, whilst Captain Ball endeavoured to bring them to a peaceable submission, which they at first rejected ; but on finding they were surrounded, they sent to desire Captain Ball might again come to them with conditions of capitulation ; but nothing less than an unconditional surrender being required of them, they absolutely refused it, and declared they would defend themselves to the last ; but the Captain conferring with them separately, M'Pherson was prevailed upon to lay down his arms ; his example was immediately followed by the rest, and they were conducted to the tower under a strong guard ; a court martial was immediately appointed, and three of their leaders, Samuel and Malcolm M'Pherson, corporals, and Farquhar Shaw, private, were sentenced to die, and on the 18th of July were shot on the parade in the tower, the rest of their comrades being drawn out to see the sentence executed. The unhappy men met their fate with great fortitude, and the remainder of the mutineers were in September disposed of to different foreign garrisons, thirty to Gibraltar, twenty to Minorca, twenty to the leeward islands, to Jamaica twenty-eight, and to Georgia thirty-eight ; the last were allowed

to take their wives with them ; these men marched for the places of their destination with the greatest shew of alacrity and satisfaction ; thus ended this unhappy affair ; and, it is but justice to observe, that this regiment, by its faithful and gallant behaviour, in a variety of instances, has much more than effaced any stigma that might have fallen on it, from the error of a few deceived, brave, but ill-judging men, who conceived themselves defrauded of their pay, and entrapped to serve in a foreign and unwholesome climate, contrary to the most solemn promises : like justice also requires it to be said, that government behaved in this instance with all possible lenity ; to have pardoned all the offenders would have been a dangerous precedent : in military transactions, strict justice, and even severity to a few, is frequently mercy to the whole (g).

---

(g) THIS transaction likewise shews the danger and even cruelty of making promises to recruits, under any thing less than the greatest certainty they will be faithfully observed ; the contrary has more than once produced the most dangerous mutinies, and that even among the Highland regiments, whose education tends to make them more regular and subordinate than either the English or Irish ; and if the causes of almost every mutiny that has happened, are diligently and dispassionately enquired into and weighed, it will be found that nine times out ten, the soldiers, however wrong and unjustifiable in that mode of seeking redress, have had great reason for complaint, generally of the breach of some positive promise made them at enlisting.

AMONG these breaches of promise may be reckoned draughting of regiments. A country lad frequently engages in a corps, because his brother, his cousin, or several of his townsmen belong to it ; or perhaps because the son of his father's landlord, or his nephew, is an officer in it ; this man perhaps would not have engaged in any other corps ; here probably, after some years' service, he acquires a good character, and the confidence of his officers, and consequently those little indulgences usually and with propriety granted to a good soldier ; and he, on his side, looks upon the regiment as his brothers, and the commanding officer as his father, in short, contracts that affection for the corps, which every officer and soldier feels for the regiment in which he first served ; how cruel, how impolitic is it then to tear him from it, and to send him to a regiment where his good qualities are unknown, and where he, for a long time, is no more regarded than the most worthless malingering. The legality of this measure I have besides heard disputed, at least according to the common form of our attestations. It has been pleaded, that an attestation contains a specific agreement to serve the king





HIGHLAND SOLDIERS.





THERE were during the last war and that of 1760 several other Highland corps, which have been reduced.

IT having been found necessary on many occasions to embark a number of soldiers on board our ships of war, and mere landsmen being at first extremely unhealthy, and for some time, until they had been accustomed to the sea, in a great measure unserviceable, it was at length judged expedient to appoint certain regiments for that service, who were trained to the different modes of sea fighting, and also made useful in some of those manoeuvres of a ship, where a great number of hands were required ; these, from the nature of their duty, were distinguished by the appellations of maritime soldiers and marines.

THE precise time when this institution first took place is, like many other pieces of military history, involved in obscurity. The oldest corps of this kind I have been able to discover, stands the third regiment of infantry in the List of the Army for the year 1684, before quoted ; it there appears under the description of " the Lord High Admiral of England, his Royal Highness the Duke of York and Albany's maritime regiment of foot, commanded by the Hon. Sir Charles Littleton, called also the Admiral Regiment." It then consisted of twelve companies, without grenadiers ; the men were clothed in yellow coats, lined with red, their colours were a red cross, with rays of the sun issuing from each of its angles. This was not the present third regiment now distinguished by the name of the old buffs ; that regiment then stood the fourth on the list, and was commanded

---

king in one particular corps and no other ; that an agreement to serve in the cavalry does not bind the contracting party to serve in the infantry or marines ; nor will an undertaking to serve as a private soldier in the 19th or any particular regiment of foot, compel the undertaker to serve in the 20th, or any other corps but that specified. It may be said that these distinctions are too like the quibbles of an attorney ; it is granted : but would it not be best to avoid every shadow of doubt, or means of quibble ? which may be done by inserting the power of draughting in the attestation. Should it be asked, how is any corps on foreign service to be otherwise recruited ? the answer is, by volunteers from the different regiments at home, a measure never known to fail, and by which a corps gets rid of those restless spirits, who are best when employed on active service.



by John Earl of Mulgrave(h). Probably the admiral regiment was reduced, by which the buffs gained a step in seniority. Nothing respecting it appears in Millan's List.

IN the reign of King William III. there were several marine regiments, particularly those of Colonel Mordaunt, Colonel Thomas Brundell, Colonel William Seymour, and Colonel William Dutton Colt. By a vote of parliament, 1st August, 1698, three of the above-mentioned corps, namely, Mordaunt's, Seymour's, and Colt's, were put on the establishment of the navy, and were afterwards disbanded(i).

IN the beginning of the reign of Queen Anne, six regiments of marines were raised: the following account of them is given in Burchet's Naval History(k): "Here let me take up a little of your time by acquainting you, that her majesty was pleased to establish six marine regiments; but they were put on a different foot than those which were thought necessary at the beginning, but discontinued before the close of the last war; for as the soldiers were formerly discharged from the regiments, and entered on the ship's books as foremast men, when they had qualified themselves to serve as such, and no money allowed to the officer to procure others in their room; so now when any of the marine soldiers died, or were otherwise missing, the companies were only made full by levy money to the officers, without

(h) THIS agrees with Millan's List of the Succession of Colonels, according to which, this regiment was raised 31st of March, 1665, and J. Earl of Mulgrave, the second of that name and title appears colonel, 26th January, 1684. This regiment is said, by Major Dunkin, in his Military Collections and Remarks, published at New York, A.D. 1777, "to have the privilege of marching through the city of London, with drums beating, and colours flying, which the city disputes not only with all other marching corps, but even with the king's guards, going on duty to the tower." It was called the Holland regiment, from having been, with divers others, in the service of the states. The same privilege of marching through the city, is, it is said, claimed by the marines.

(i) THE Journals also mention the Marquis of Caermarthen's, Sir Cloudfly Shovel's, and Lord Torrington's, regiments of marines, disbanded about the year 1698.

(k) BOOK 5. chap. 9. p. 615.



*A Piper of a Highland Regiment.*



any regard to their being a nurfery for feamen, which was one of the principal motives for the firft raifing fuch a body of men. The charge of thefe regiments was defrayed by the navy, as being part of the men voted by parliament for fea fervice, and money was iffued out from time to time, by the treafurer thereof, by warrants from the lord high treafurer, to a perfon particularly appointed to receive and pay the fame; fo that the navy board, who as well as the admiralty, were, in the former war, put to a confiderable trouble on this account, had no other now, than the ordering the payment of money, from time to time, in grofs fums; and that the reader may be informed what the annual charge of thefe regiments was, I have hereafter inferted the eftablifhment (1); and in the next place, the rules eftablifhed by her majefty for their government.

EXPERIENCE hath fhewn that thefe regiments have been very ufeful, but more efpecially upon fitting out fquadrons of fhips for an immediate expedition; for as they are constantly quartered, when not at fea, as near the principal ports as poffible, namely, Plymouth, Portsmouth, and Chatham, fo were they with great facility put on board fuch fhips as had moft occafion for them; for they were under the immediate direktion of the admiralty; and the rules and inftructions for the better government of them, fettled by her majefty in council, the 1ft of July, 1702, were as follows, viz.

I. THEY were to be employed on board her majefty's fhips, as there fhould be occafion, and quartered (as I have already faid) at or as near as might be to the dock-yards, when on fhore, to guard them from embezzlements, or any attempt of the enemy.

II. In all matters relating to their fubfiftence and clearings, when on board or on fhore, they were to be paid in like manner as the land forces, and the fame deductions to be made from them for clothing, and one day's pay once a year from each foldier for the hofpital.

III. THEY were to be allowed an equal proportion of provifions with the feamen, without deductions from their pay for the fame.

---

(1) THE eftablifhment will be given under the article of pay.

IV. AND to have the same allowance for short provisions as the seamen, to be paid to them or their assigns.

V. SUCH part of the regiments as should be on shore were to be mustered by a commissary or commissaries, in the same manner as the land forces, excepting in this case that they, the said commissaries, were obliged to allow at each muster on his or their rolls, all such officers and soldiers as should appear to him or them, by authentic vouchers and certificates, to be put on board any of her majesty's ships or vessels: and that such part of the aforesaid regiment as should be at sea, might be paid whilst they were so, it was directed, that the commanding marine officer with them should, every two months, return to the commissary-general of the musters, a perfect list of all the officers and soldiers on board each ship, signed by himself and all the marine officers, expressing the times of entry, death, and discharge of each man, so that the commissary might compare the said lists with the monthly books sent to the Navy Office, and allow such of the said officers as should appear to him fit to be allowed.

VI. To prevent confusion, not less than fifteen marine soldiers, and with them an officer, were to be put on board a ship, at any one time, unless in cases of necessity.

VII. AND for the ease of the whole, a particular paymaster was appointed, with power to solicit the arrears of the regiments, and to receive all sums of money from the treasurer of the navy, and immediately upon the receipt thereof to issue the same to the respective colonels or their agents; he was also required diligently and carefully to adjust all accounts relating to the regiments, according to such muster rolls as should be delivered to him by the commissary, or commissaries, and those muster rolls were to be allowed of, as sufficient vouchers for the charges in the accounts, and for making out debentures and warrants.

VIII. To enable the aforesaid paymaster to keep an office, and to defray the charge thereof, and of clerks and other contingencies, he was allowed sixpence in the pound, pursuant to the subscription of the respective colonels, which he had power to deduct out of all monies

issued to him, in the same manner as the poundage is deducted from the land forces.

IX. For rendering such part of the regiments as should be on shore the more useful, her majesty declared it should be left to herself or the high admiral, to dispose of them at such places nearest to the several dock-yards, as might be judged most convenient : and since there might be occasion for labourers to dispatch necessary works, her majesty empowered her high admiral, or commissioners for executing that office, to cause to be employed in the aforesaid dock-yards, so many of the marine soldiers as should be judged fitting, and to make them such daily allowance for the same, besides their ordinary pay, as to him or them should seem reasonable.

AND for the better regulating of these regiments, his royal highness, as lord high admiral, empowered Colonel William Seymour (brigadier, and since lieutenant general of his majesty's forces) to take upon him the command of them, and not only to see that they were well quartered, but that the respective officers diligently attend their duty, and that, when ordered on board her majesty's ships, the soldiers were supplied with proper sea clothes, chests, and other necessaries.

IN the war preceding the peace of 1748, there were ten regiments of marines, which were disbanded about the year 1749 ; these were under the direction of the lords of the admiralty, and when ashore were quartered in the neighbourhood of the docks and sea ports.

IN the year 1755 a number of companies of marines were raised, under the direction of the secretary of war : they were afterwards formed into three divisions, and stationed at the towns of Plymouth, Portsmouth, and Chatham ; and at each of these places have now convenient barracks. These companies, A.D. 1761, being 130 in number, were, from the time of their establishment, put under the immediate direction of the lords of the admiralty. At the peace many of them were reduced, and in 1770 there remained only seventy companies ; but in the year 1782, they were increased to one hundred and fifty.

THE marines are clothed and armed in the same manner as his



majesty's other corps of infantry ; their uniform is scarlet, faced with white, white linings, waistcoats, and breeches ; they also wear caps, like those of the fusileer regiments ; this caused them when serving on shore, at the siege of Bellisle (where they gained great honour) to be called by the French *les petits grenadiers*.

THE invalids form another department of the British forces. These consist of soldiers partly disabled by their wounds, and veterans, who from old age and length of service are rendered incapable of the duties of an active campaign, but are still judged fit for garrison duty. Of these the 41st regiment was composed (m), and there were likewise, in 1782, thirty-six independent companies, forming the garrisons of Jersey, Guernsey, Scilly, Portsmouth, Plymouth, Chester, Hull, and other forts and castles. Invalids have been known in this kingdom ever since the restoration of Charles II. The invalids are armed like other regiments of infantry ; their uniform red, faced with blue, and plain button holes.

THE fencible corps were a species of militia, raised for the defence of particular districts, from which several of them could not by the conditions of their institution be detached. The first of these corps were the fencible men of Argyleshire, who were raised the 21st of July, 1759 ; their service was restricted to the county in which they were raised. The adjutant and quarter master of this corps were the only officers entitled to half pay.

SEVERAL of these fencible corps, and others called provincial regiments, both foot and dragoons, were raised in the years 1778 and 1779, when by a clause in an act of parliament, their officers were declared to rank with those of militia, according to the dates of their commissions (n) ; consequently they ranked with the army as youngest of each degree.

(m) THE 41st regiment was regimented 11th March, 1719 : in 1782, there were ten independent companies of invalids in Ireland. The 41st has since been put upon the same footing with the other regiments of the line.

(n) AND whereas it is necessary to ascertain the rank to be held by the officers of certain corps

ABOUT the same time many new regiments were raised, several of whose colonels, field officers, and captains, having never served before, or having no military rank, it was stipulated by the secretary of war with them, that they should not be entitled to either rank or half pay after the reduction of their corps, but the ensigns, or those officers who came from the half pay or out of established regiments, and gained only one step, were permitted to retain their acquired rank, with the half pay belonging to it (o).

THESE are the different species of troops, of which the British armies have at different times been formed (p); two only remain to be described, who, though originally deemed military bodies, have long since been considered as part of the suite of the king's household; they are the serjeants at arms, and the yeomen of the guards.

THE serjeants at arms were first instituted by King Richard I. in imitation of a corps of the same name, formed by Philip Augustus,

corps raised or to be raised, within that part of Great Britain, called Scotland, called sensible men, or of any other corps of men, which may be raised within Great Britain, wherein such officers shall not be entitled to rank or half pay, except during the time of the actual service of such corps, with respect to the officers of the militia of that part of Great Britain called England, during the time that the officers of such corps and of the militia shall serve together; be it therefore enacted by the authority aforesaid, that the officers of such corps and of the militia, of equal degree, shall rank according to the date of their respective commissions. Stat. 18 Geo. III. cap. 59.

(o) DIVERS independent companies were also raised towards the close of this war and that of 1762, some of which were afterwards regimented. These were mostly raised by subalterns, who undertook to complete them against a stated time, and at their own expence, on condition of being appointed to the command of them. The best idea of these companies may be gathered from the definition given of them by a private soldier at Bellisle, during the siege of Palais. A number of these independent companies being regimented were sent out to that place; one night in the trenches an officer overheard several of the men in high dispute concerning the meaning of the term *independent*, in which they could by no means agree, till one of them, an old grenadier, raising his voice, called his comrades a pack of stupid fellows, for puzzling at so obvious a term: "You see what stuff they are (said he), now it is plain they are called independents because they are not to be depended upon."

(p) THE royal regiment of artillery and corps of engineers will be considered under the article of artillery.



King of France, when on a crusade, to guard him against the subjects of the old man of the mountain, famous for their daring assassinations.

THE duty of those serjeants originally was to watch round the king's tent in complete armour, with a mace, a bow, arrows, and a sword, and occasionally to arrest traitors and other offenders about the court, for which the mace was deemed a sufficient authority. They were called the valorous force of the king's errand, in the execution of justice; they held their places for life; their number was originally twenty-four, all persons of approved worth, and not under the degree of the son of a knight: and afterwards the sons of gentlemen were admitted into the body.

IN the reign of Edward I. the serjeants at arms were allowed two marks for winter, and the same for summer robes. Their pay in that of Edward II. was twelve pence per diem, when they attended on horseback, and eight pence when they attended without a horse.

In a MS. of the expences of Ed. III. in the 21st year of his reign, there is the following entry of the "Sergeauntes at armes, with their retinew. Standard-bearers 4, sergeauntes 67, men at armes 3, archers of horse 7, archers on foote 9 (q)."

THEIR allowance, when absent from court on the king's affairs, was 12d. each by the day; and under another head (r) they appear charged at 26s. 8d. each for winter, and 20s. for summer. They were besides entitled to certain fees from persons arrested; these were in proportion to their rank and degree.

(q) THE title of this MS. runs thus: "Here ensue the rates of wages, of peace and warre, expences, necessaryes of officers, and other charges concerning the household of the prince of noble memory, Edward III. as well in tyme of peace as warre; and also the number of soldiers, as well by land as sea, and shippes retayned in the warres of the saide kinge, as by the parcells of the accompte of Walter Wentwayt, treasurer of the said household, from the 21st day of Aprill, in the 18th year of the raigne of the same kinge, unto the 24th day of December, in the 21st year of the same kinge's raigne."

(r) "RATES of wages in time of peace, fees of banneretts, and bachelors of the king's house, robes, and all other places, officers, ministers, and servauntes of the same, and lyveries of mens servauntes, intituled Calciatura, besides all wages in manner as followeth."

ACCORDING to the orders given by Thomas of Lancaster, constable at the siege of Caen, Sept. 3d, 1417, a ferjeant at arms was to appear in the king's prefence, with his head bare, his body armed to the feet with the arms of a knight riding, wearing a gold chain with a medal, bearing all the king's coats, with a peon royal, or mace of silver in his right-hand, and in his left hand a truncheon (s).

IN the 7th of Hen. VII. they were ordered to attend the army (t).

THE number of this corps has varied exceedingly. In the reign of Edward IV. they were reduced to four; in that of Edward VI. they were increased to twenty-two; and in the succeeding reign to twenty-three; but by King James I. retrenched to sixteen; at present there are only eight (u).

THE yeomen of the guard were raised by King Henry VII. in the year 1485. Rapin, who calls them archers, says they were instituted on the day of his coronation, which was the 30th of October, and that they then consisted of fifty men, to attend him and his successors for ever; a precaution which, in all appearance, he thought necessary at that juncture.

By the first regulation, every yeoman of this band was to be of the best quality under gentry, well made, and full six feet high.

THEIR numbers have varied in almost every reign, and formerly consisted of a certain number in ordinary, and an indefinite number extraordinary; and in case of a vacancy in the former, it was supplied out of the latter number (x).

THEIR dress is that which was worn in the reign of King Henry VIII. and which on many occasions was put on by that king: it consists of a scarlet coat reaching down to the knees, garded with garter blue velvet, and rich badges of the rose and crown on their breasts

---

(s) Bib. Harl. No. 297, fol. 254.

(t) VIDE Raftall, chap. 3.

(u) MOST of the writers against standing armies commence that establishment with the ferjeants at arms.

(x) MIEGE's New State of England, A.D. 1703, and Chamberlain.

and backs; their breeches are also scarlet garded with blue velvet; their caps are of black velvet, with broad round crowns, adorned with ribbons of the royal colours, viz. red, white, and blue; one half of them formerly carried bows and arrows, the other half harquebuses; both had large swords by their sides. Chamberlain says, the harquebuses have been disused ever since the reign of King William (y).

IN the reign of King Edward VI. this corps was very numerous, for in his journal, published in Burnet's History of the Reformation, he says, "there mustered before me, an hundred archers, two arrows apiece, all of the guard;" and afterwards, "so it was appointed there should be ordinarily one hundred archers, and one hundred halbertiers, either good wrestlers, or casters of the bar, or leapers or runners, all tall men of personage."

IN the reign of Queen Elizabeth, the yeomen attending her in her different progresses were occasionally mounted; a print of one of them on horseback is given in the work (z)

IN the reign of Queen Anne half this band were armed with harquebuses (a), the other half with partizans, and both with swords; they had then wages and diet allowed them (b), their duty was to wait upon the queen in her standing houses, forty by day, and twenty by night. At St. James's they waited in the first room above stairs, called the guard chamber. It is also their duty to attend the sovereign abroad by land or water.

(y) PRESENT State, A.D. 1735. In Rymer there is a grant made by King Charles I. June 3d, 1642, to Thomas Clarke, of the office of taylor for the making and fitting of the clothes for all and singular the yeomen of the guard, during life.

(z) THIS print is copied from a work entitled *Diversarum Gentium Armatura Equestris. Ubi fere Europæ, Asiæ, atq; Africæ equitandi ratio propria expressa, et Amstelodami impressa in ædibus Nicolai Johanni Vischeri, 1617.* This yeoman is called *Reginæ Angliæ fatelles ferentarius*, probably from being without defensive armour.

(a) CHAMBERLAIN says, A.D. 1705, "one half of them of late bear in their hands harquebuses:" how to reconcile this with the assertion in note (y) I know not.

(b) IN a MS. of the expences of the royal establishment for the year 1727, the charges of the table of the yeomen of the guard was 273l. 15s.



N.C. Goodnight sculp.

*A Yeoman of the Guard, attending Queen Elizabeth on a Palfrey.*



AT present this corps consists of a captain, lieutenant, and ensign, four exons, a clerk of the checque, two messengers, and an hundred yeomen, eight of whom are called ushers. Six are called yeomen hangers, and two yeomen bed goers. The pay of the captain is 1000l. per annum, the lieutenant 500l. and the ensign 300l. The exons 150l. each, the clerk of the checque the same. Each of the ushers 49l. 11s. 3d. each hanger and bed goer the like pay as the ushers, and every other yeoman 39l. 11s. 3d.

## CHAPTER VI.

*Of the Method of arranging and mustering the Troops.*

**I**N ancient times, when an army was to be raised, either for foreign service, or to guard against invasions or domestic insurrections, the feudal tenants and the posse comitatus being assembled in their proper districts, they were inspected by certain provincial officers, termed arraitores, in English arrayers. Two or more were commonly appointed by the king's commission for each county. It was the duty of these arrayers not only to inspect the foldiers, and see that they were able-bodied and fit for service, but also that they were properly armed, accoutred, and otherwise appointed, according to the station and nature of their service. They were likewise to arrange both the cavalry and the infantry into their proper bodies, equivalent to the present divisions of troops, squadrons, companies, and battalions\*.

---

\* The British army, when it takes the field, is still divided into brigades, and those brigades into battalions, squadrons, companies, and troops (respectively in the infantry and the cavalry). The French have lately made a different distribution. Their infantry is divided into half brigades, each half brigade consisting of three battalions, and each battalion of nine companies. A company of artillery is attached to each half brigade, for the management of its field-pieces. The half brigades are either of the line, or light infantry; each battalion of those in the line has its company of grenadiers, and each battalion of light infantry one of carabineers.

Each company is composed of :

Captain	-	-	-	-	-	1		Brought over	8		
Lieutenant	-	-	-	-	-	1	Corporal or Fourier	-	-	-	1
Under-Lieutenant	-	-	-	-	-	1	Corporals	-	-	-	8
Serjeant Major	-	-	-	-	-	1	Grenadiers, fusileers, or carabineers				96
Serjeants	-	-	-	-	-	4	Drummers	-	-	-	2
						<u>8</u>					<u>115</u>

A battalion consists (including officers) of - - 1036 men.

A half brigade, with its staff and company of artillery, of 3225



THE ancient cavalry was divided into small bodies called constabularies, from their being commanded by officers stiled constables; this we learn from a writ of the 18th of Edward III. 1324 (c); how many men a constabularie consisted of, is not there said; but in a similar order of John king of France for dividing the French foot, a constabularie is stated at twenty-five or thirty men (d).

IN a MS. account of the pay of the army of K. Edward I. in the library of the Antiquarian Society, as well as in one printed by Brady respecting the reign of Edward III. it appears that these constables received the same pay as esquires, ranked with them in the army (e), and probably had in common with them, under certain circumstances, the right of displaying a pennon of their arms (f). The title of constable applied to the commanders of small bodies of men, occurs as early as the reign of King John. It was also given to naval officers (g).

THE next division seems to have been that arranged under a banner, and commanded by a banneret, a rank originally conferred on such only as by their estates were enabled to bring a certain num-

(c) "ITA quod omnes armis sufficientibus muniti, videlicet equites in constabulariis & pedites in centenis & vintenens arraiati prompti sint & parati." *Rymer*, tom. 4. p. 78.

(d) "DISCRIBITUR statutum Johannis Regis Franc. quo statuitur ut in posterum, tous pietons soient mis par connestablies ou compagnies de 25 ou 30 hommes, & que chaque connestable prenne double gages, & que les mareschaux pour les gens d'armes, & les maitres des Arbalestriers pour pietons assisteront aux monstres deux fois le mois." *Du Cange*.

(e) DOMINO Roberto de Barton clerico assignato ad vadia peditum veniencium de com. Northumbr. usq; Berwic super Twedam ad proficiend. cum rege in exercitu suo versus Strvelin pro recessu castris ibidem, pro vadijs III<sup>or</sup>. constabular. cum equis coopertis, et 392 sagittar. peditum de eodem com. per unum diem, videl<sup>t</sup>. 15 diem Decembr. quo die visus factus fuit, de eisdem apud Twedemuth, cuilibet constabular. per diem 12d. cuilibet vintenar. per diem 4d. et cuilibet alii pediti per diem 2d.

(f) THE pennon was the proper ensign of a bachelor or simple knight. Du Fresne shews that even esquires might bear pennons, provided they could bring a sufficient suite of vassals into the field.

(g) ET LXXVII. Walensibus peditibus & VII. constabulariis eorum, et 4 archeris equitibus, qui missi fuerunt in Norweiam XXVII. l. & 14 d. de liberatione sua de 1 mense per breve regis. Mag. Rot. 3. I. Rot. 11. b. Ducores et constabularii navigii regis. Hoved. P. 2. p. 666. n. 10. temp. R. I.



ber of vassals into the field ; for in the petition for that rank, such ability was always premised (h), and the usual mode of conferring that promotion was cutting or tearing off the point of the pennon of the candidate, and thereby rendering it square, perhaps in allusion to the command it conferred, which was that of a squadron, so denominated from being a square body, consisting of as many rank as files. Father Daniel quotes two different regulations, respecting the number of vassals necessary to be brought into the field by a petitioner for the rank of banneret: the first was twenty-five men at arms, each attended by two horsemen, in all amounting to seventy-five men ; the second at least fifty men at arms, accompanied as before, making together one hundred and fifty men ; taking then an hundred for the medium, that number forms a square of ten in each face, and is the lowest estimation of our present squadrons. Ancient writers describing the strength of the cavalry in different armies, estimate them according to the number of pennons and banners.

ALTHOUGH the bands of cavalry were only divided into constabularies, knights might act as intermediate officers, between the constable and banneret, commanding two constabularies under their pennon.

(h) FROISSART thus recites the petition of John Chaundos to the black prince and Don Pedro, king of Castile, for the dignity of banneret, just before the battle of Nasars. “ Monseigneur. Veez cy ma banniere je la vous baille par telle maniere qu’il vous plaist la d’evelopper, & que aujourduy je la puisse lever, car (Dieu mercy) Jay bien de quoy en terre & heritage pour tenir estate ainsi come appartient á ce.”

A BANNERET was originally one entitled to display his standard in the field. “ When a bachelor (says the Ceremonial) has long followed the wars, and has land sufficient to have gentlemen for his vassals, and to accompany his standard, he may lawfully raise his banner, and not otherwise ; for no man ought to display his banner in battle, if he has not at least fifty men at arms, with all the men, archers and cross bow men appertaining to them ; and if he has them, he ought at the first battle at which he is present, to bring a pennon of his arms to the constable or marshal, or the king’s lieutenant in the army, requesting to bear a banner, which if granted, he must call the heralds for witnesses, when the general or chief officer will cut off the tail of the pennon. Bannerets are mentioned in our histories as early as the time of King Edward I.

Father Daniel says, that in France the bannerets formerly commanded the different bodies of cavalry (i) under the counts and dukes.

THE denomination of captain and lieutenant, applied to officers commanding small bodies of men, equivalent to our troops and companies, was scarcely introduced into our armies before the reign of Henry VII. and VIII. where we find them borne by the officers commanding the yeomen of the guard and the band of gentlemen pensioners, and their occasional representatives. We likewise read of captains and petty captains in acts of the 4th and 5th of Philip and Mary against desertion: probably the former meant a colonel, or one commanding a corps, band, or regiment; the latter the captain of a company (k).

IN the list of the army employed at St. Quintin's, A.D. 1557, the cavalry was divided into troops of an hundred private men, commanded by a captain, lieutenant, and standard bearer, having each a surgeon, a harbinger (similar to a quarter master), a chaplain, a trumpeter, and a smith. This list is among the first where a body of cavalry is distinguished by the appellation of a troop (l).

IN an estimate for a royal army, made anno 1623, when it was intended by King James I. to recover the palatinate, the cavalry were

(i) Le titre de capitaine a l'égard des Officiers de l'armée, excepté le general, ne fut gueres en usage dans les temps les plus reculez de notre ancien milice Francoise ceux qui commandoit sous les comtes & les ducs aux temps de la premiere & de la seconde race, étoient les viguiers, les centeniers, &c. depuis l'institution de la chevalerie un peu avant Philippe Auguste, c'étoient les chevaliers bannerets avec ce titre de banneret, qui commandoit les diverses brigades de gendarmerie. Le titre de capitaine commence a etre en usage dans le signification qu'on y donne aujourd'hui, quand nos rois outre les troupes de leur vassaux, donnerent des commissions a quelque seigneurs pour lever des compagnies de gendarmes. Ces seigneurs prirent le titre de capitaine de ces compagnies comme on le voit par un ordonnance du Roi Charles V. de laquelle j'ai parlé ailleurs. *P. Daniel*, tom. 2. p. 58.

(k) THE term regiment was not then in use, being in all likelihood borrowed from the French, whose bands were, according to Father Daniel, first formed into regiments in the year 1562. Sir James Turner, whose book titled *Pallas Armata* was published A. D. 1683, says, the term regiment was not then an hundred years old.

(l) No. 6848. Harl. MS.

to consist of independent troops of an hundred men each, commanded by a captain, lieutenant, cornet, and quarter master, three corporals, and two trumpets(m).

THE English infantry, from the time of Edward I. and probably from that of the conquest, to the reign of Henry VII. was divided into thousands, hundreds, and twenties; answering to our regiments, companies, and squads; this appears from a variety of writs and commissions for assembling the national forces on different occasions, wherein they are constantly directed to be arranged in those numbers.

THE squads of twenty were commanded by officers thence stiled vingtners; the companies or hundreds by centenaries, but the title of the officer presiding over thousands, is not mentioned in any list I have seen.

In a list of the St. Quintin's army before mentioned, the companies of infantry then consisted of an hundred private men; their officers were a captain, lieutenant, and ensign, a serjeant, a harbinger, and drummer to each company.

In the army designed for the palatinate, the infantry was computed by regiments; each regiment to consist of thirteen companies; the colonel's company to have 192 private men, four (n) gentlemen, four corporals, two serjeants, and two drummers; the other companies only one hundred and forty-four privates, three gentlemen, three corporals, two serjeants, and two drummers. The commissioned officers to each company, a captain, lieutenant, and ensign. But more of the officers in the next chapter.

THE different bodies, both cavalry and infantry, being assembled and thus arranged, were then to march to the place of general rendezvous, usually appointed as near the place of embarkation, or part

(m) No. 5109, Harl. MS.

(n) GENTLEMAN of a company is he who is something more than an ordinary soldier, hath a little more pay and doth not stand centinel; in French he is called Appointé, and with the Germans, he is called Gefreuter, they march and watch with arms, they go common rounds and patrouilles, and near an enemy they are to be the forlorn centinels whom the French call perdus. *Sir J. Turner, Pallas Armata*, p. 218.

of the kingdom likely to become the scene of action, where on their arrival they were to be mustered (o).

It is needless to enquire into the antiquity of musters, since they must have existed from the first time an army was assembled; without a muster it could not be known whether the feudal tenants or others liable to furnish soldiers, had provided their due number, nor could a general otherwise know the true strength of his army, the ground they would occupy, the quantity of provision and forage necessary for their subsistence, and that of their horses, nor the money required for paying them.

THE object of a muster was not only to ascertain the number of men and horses, but likewise to examine their armour and weapons. In the ordinances of war made by K. Henry V. the office of a commissary of musters is mentioned, and his power and duty thus described: "It is our will, that every captain of our army, without any fraud or reserve whatsoever, shall make a muster or shew of all his soldiers, as well men of arms as archers, fully and perfectly, according to their assigned number, before us or our commissaries, as often as the said captain shall by us or our said commissaries, be duly and legally required. Also that the captains shall shew only their own soldiers, with whom they have agreed for the expedition, and no others, under pain of perpetual reprobation (p) and the loss of their wages for the said expedition. We also prohibit any one from retaining in his service any soldier, servant, or boy (q), who was lately in

(o) THE term muster is derived from the barbarous Latin *mustrum* & *monstrum*, or the old French *monstre*, a shew or exhibition.

(p) PERPETUAL reprobation was a perpetual disqualification to serve, or what in modern terms is expressed by "rendered incapable of serving in any military office." Captain here meant the commanding officer of a body of men, and not the regimental officer of that denomination.

(q) THE boys following an army were in the Latin of those days called *Garciones*, they were the servants of the soldiers. In father De Aquino's *Military Dictionary*, *Garcio* is explained to be a camp servant, one who fetched water for the soldiers: these boys were by the French termed *goujats*, and according to Richelet were the servants of foot soldiers; but Boyer calls them, the servants of horse or foot soldiers.

the service of another, without the consent and permission of his prior captain or master. We moreover direct and command, that all our commissaries in the aforesaid musters do diligently enquire after, and see that the foldiers shew their proper arms, without fraud, and this we would have more especially observed respecting the bowes and arrows; and, if necessary, it is our will, that on this article our commissaries may compel the captain or master to answer upon oath."

IN Rymer we meet with many more ancient directions for musters, some of them as old as Edward III. but none of them so fully describe the duty of the commissary as that here cited; it was therefore selected in preference to the others, some of which are given in the note (r).

CERTIFICATES of these musters were frequently ordered to be sent to the king and council, and sometimes to the great wardrobe, under the seals of the commissioners or commissaries.

THE method of mustering the troops in the reign of Queen Elizabeth differed very little from that directed by King Henry V. The duty of a muster master is thus defined by Ralph Smith. "The muster master, takinge the muster, must have a speciall eye and regarde unto those officers appointed the leading of men, that they bee

(r) A. D. 1343, 16 Ed. III. a commission was granted by that king to Oliver de Ingham, seneschal of Gascony, and Master Walter de Weston, the king's treasurer for the army in that duchy, whereby on account of divers mismanagements of the king's money, they are directed that before the wages of the men at arms are paid, they do make diligent scrutiny, that they have their due appointments of horses and armour according to ancient usage; and that there might be no deceit in the article of numbers, they are commanded with the constable and marshal of the army to cause frequent muster to be made, one at least in every month; and at the same time to inspect the number and equipment of the armed men: That payment should be made for the effective only, without favour; and to avoid the frauds which frequently happen in the restoration of horses, all those which, according to the custom of war, were to be appreciated, should immediately on their arrival be valued, and marked with some particular mark, by which they might again be known. *Rymer.*

IN the year 1415, Richard Redman and John Strange were appointed to take the muster of the forces of Thomas Duke of Clarence, going abroad with the King, and to certify the numbers of the men at arms, armed men, and archers, under their seals." *Ibid.*

men of service, and not chosen without great experience, also sober and of good counsaile; and to see that the souldiers be furnished with armour and weapons as followethe, commandinge them to bee obediente and truely to keepe all such lawes and ordenances, as by the said lord lieutenante and his counsaile shalbe commanded, sette downe and appointed bye his authoritie; likewise he is to see howe everye captaines bande is furnished, and thereof to make a booke to the treasurer, that paymente bee made to the coronalls and captaines, according to the nomber of souldiers under every of their bandes."

THE following method of calling the roll at a muster is the same as now practised. "At every musteringe or assemblinge, the captaines bill shalbe called by the clarke, every man answearinge to his own name, marchinge foorth as he is called, that noe man unto twoe names make answere; yf any souldier bee sicke or hurte, being not serviceable, paye him his wages, give him his pasporte, send him home, furnishe his roome with an hable souldier; yf any helthfull souldier absente himself at such tymes, let him be punished as in the statutes is mentioned, to the example of the rest."

THE following regulations were laid down for the muster master, in the lawes and ordinances of warre, established by the earl of Northumberland, lord general of the armie and fleet of K. Charles I. 1640.

"I. No muster master shall wittingly let any passe in the musters, but such as are really of the troop or company presented, upon pain of death.

"II. ALL captaines shall cause their troops and companies to be full compleat; and two dayes after the generall mustering, they shall send to the lord generall a perfect list or roll of all the officers of their troops and companies, and likewise of all the troopers and souldiers that are in actuall service, putting down distinctly on the head of each man his monethly pay.

"III. THE like roll or list shall the captains send to the lord generall, and to the treasurer of the armie upon every pay day, during the service, with a punctuall expreession at the bottome of the said roll,

what new troopers or fouldiers have been entertained since the last pay day, in lieu of such as are either deceased or casseer'd(s), and likewise the day whereon they were so casseer'd and entertained.

" IV. WHICH said list or roll shall be subscribed not onely by the captain, his lieutenant, and cornet, or enseign, but also by the sergeants and corporals respectively ; who shall declare upon their oaths, that the troopers and fouldiers inrolled in the said list, are reall and actuall troopers and fouldiers, of the respective troops and companies ; and whosoever shall be convicted of falsehood in any of the premises, shall be punished with death.

" V. No muster master shall presume to receive or accept of any roll to make the musters by, but the forementioned rolls, upon paine of the losse of his place, and other punishment at discretion.

" VI. No man shall presume to present himself to the muster, or to be enrolled in the muster rolls by a counterfeit name, or surname, or place of birth, upon paine of death \*."

(s) CASSEER'D, from the French word *cassé*, disbanded, discharged ; this word did not originally mean discharged with ignominy, as it now generally does. " Casser. En parlant de soldat, c'est défarmer un soldat à la tête de la campagne, ou du regiment, et le remercier de son service, mais en parlant d'officier c'est le faire remercier de la part du Roi, par un commissaire des services qu'il a rendus et le renvoyer." *Richlet*. This word is now written *cassier'd*, which has caused an opinion that it had some relation to cash or money.

\* GREAT abuses having crept into the practice of mustering the troops half-yearly, so that the real effective strength of the army could never be exactly ascertained, a new regulation has taken place, in virtue of which the several regiments and corps are mustered every month by the regimental paymaster, and detachments of regiments in the respective districts in which they are stationed by an officer called paymaster of the district. These have superseded the commissaries of musters ; and the pay-lists and muster-rolls of the army are thus made to tally with each other. The following is the affidavit made by the district paymaster, when detachments are mustered by him.

I ——— do swear, that on the ——— of ——— I mustered the staff of the ——— district and the recruiting parties of his majesty's regiments hereafter specified, viz.

Party of the ——— regiment of ———, stationed at ———, under the command of ———

ditto	ditto	ditto	ditto
ditto	ditto	ditto	ditto
ditto	ditto	ditto	ditto
ditto	ditto	ditto	ditto, &c.

at

At or immediately after the muster, another important business took place: this was the appreciation of the horses of the cavalry; in which the marshal and some other officers appointed for that purpose set a certain price upon each horse, which the king was to pay to the owner, in case such horse was either slain or incurably lamed in service; this payment appears in our ancient records under the Latin title of *Restauratio* (t), or the French one of *Restour*. In order to make this valuation with the greatest exactness and impartiality, the clerk of the marshal was to act the part of an appraiser in behalf of the proprietor, in opposition to an officer called the king's clerk: the marshal sat as judge or umpire between them; this particular we learn from a manuscript respecting the rights of that office, as claimed by Thomas de Brotherton(u). Sometimes this appreciation was

at which time I saw such commissioned and non-commissioned officers, privates and recruits, as are borne on the foregoing muster-rolls and pay-lists of the said detachments, excepting such of them as are therein stated to be absent; and that to the best of my knowledge and belief, after the most careful investigation, the reason of absence specified opposite to the respective names on the said muster-rolls and pay-lists are the true and actual reasons thereof.

I do further swear, that all the names set down in the foregoing rolls and pay-lists have been paid by me, to the respective persons, and for the respective services therein specified, in strict conformity to the king's regulations.

(t) OF this word Du Cange gives the following explanation and instance, in the treaty made between Philip the Fair, king of France, and William, earl of Hainault, 28th October, 1314. "Li dui mareschal de France, ou li un d'aus, ou aucuns prudhoms a ce commis, priferont et estimeront loialement per leurs sermens les chivals morts, et les chivals de nos gens; et nous en fera nos dis Sires plain retour selonc leur prise. Et le dit mareschal ou cil qui le prisé devoit fere, entendent tant que aucun cheval feusse mort ou perdu, si rendroit nos sires devant dit, de valeur des chevaux par prise de bon Gent. Et infra Afsquex li Roi nos Sires priera gages et retors. Occurrit passim in compatos *Theaurariorum* *Guerram*. Huc etiam pertinet vetus charta, apud Ughellum in *Episcopis Teatinis*. Quod si miles dextrarium aut loricam in obsequio illo perdiderit, mihi Goffridus vel suus hæres reddere debet, et tamdiu ei nullam debeo facere servitium.

(u) Et enfi doit le mareschal, estre presier des chivaux q ferront apresiez, et son clerk doit estre contreplaidour encontra le clerk nre, Se le Roy. Brotherton's Claims. Nero, D. vi. Bib. Cott.



made by special commissioners appointed for that purpose, and in France by a sort of jury upon oath. None but the war horses or charges were appreciated. Baggage horses were not included in that regulation. Blount mentions a tenant in capite, who held lands on the condition of serving King Edward II. in his wars, with a horse not to be appreciated (x). The accounts of these appreciations were frequently ordered to be given in at the great wardrobe.

RYMER, in his *Fœdera*, has a variety of instances of this appreciation; some as old as the reign of Henry I. where, in several agreements between that king and the Earl of Flanders, for furnishing troops, it is stipulated, that restoration of horses shall be made to the earl in the same manner as is done by the king to his own subjects (y).

IN the account of Roger de Waltham before cited, we meet with the particulars of a restoration made the 15th of Ed. II. as follows: "Nicholas Despensay had restour for two of his horses, viz. one forrell killed in the king's service at York, in the month of May, in the 15th of the said reign, and one bay killed as aforesaid, at Fellerham, on the 15th of September, 41." A number of similar entries follow, which seem to shew that 40s. was the sum generally allowed for an ordinary troop horse (z).

"To Edward, Earl of Arundel, on account of two of his horses appreciated in the said war, one for his knight, Robert de Swinburn, and another for the Lord John, extraneous another of his knight's, which died in harness, in the king's wars, on the said day, 16l. 14s. 4d.

(x) PASCH. 14. Edw. II. Dorf. Blount, 31.

(y) SEE other agreements in the same Collection, tom. 2. p. 265, A.D. 1284, et A.D. 1295. The last was an agreement made 23 Edw. I. with the Duke of Brabant for two thousand horsemen, armed with iron, to serve for half a year, for which 160,000 livres Tournois was to be paid for all demands, except the horses of arms, which were to be replaced as usual, and the king of England to cause them to be valued.

(z) A SORT of restoration of horses is still made in our armies, there being, as I am informed, an allowance to the regimental stock purse, and officers of the cavalry, of 15l. for each officer's charger, or private troop horse slain in battle; the like allowance is made to the contractors

## THE ENGLISH ARMY.

189

“AYMER DE VALLANCE, Earl of Pembroke, for restoration of two of his horses appreciated in the Scottish wars the present year; the one a sorrel, for John de Freville, his retainer or servant, and the other a brown bay, for John de Berné, his servant, dead in the king's service, in the month of August; by a valuation made of them by Thomas de Chester and Godrick his clerk, at Newcastle upon Tyne, the 19th September, when these men appreciated them at 10l.”

contractors for furnishing horses to draw the artillery, for every horse that actually dies in harness.

ACCORDING to recent regulations, the following indemnifications are allowed to officers, whose horses have been killed or taken by the enemy, or shot for the glanders.

### CAVALRY.

Heavy dragoons, or horse, 1st charger	-	-	-	47	5	0
Light dragoons, - - - 1st ditto	-	-	-	36	15	0
Heavy or light ditto, - - 2d ditto	-	-	-	31	10	0
Quarter-master's horse	-	-	-	29	8	0

### INFANTRY.

Field officer's charger	-	-	-	31	10	0
Adjutant's ditto	-	-	-	31	10	0
Captain and subaltern's horses, each	-	-	-	18	18	0
Battalion horses, both cavalry and infantry, each	-	-	-	18	18	0
General officer's 1st charger	-	-	-	47	5	0
Ditto ditto 2d ditto	-	-	-	31	10	0
Staff officers' horses, each	-	-	-	18	18	0

AID-du-camps, brigade-majors, and other staff officers, whose situation requires their keeping good horses, receive as the light dragoons.

## CHAPTER VII.

*Of the Staff, Field, and Regimental Officers of different Ranks ; with the successive Alterations to the present Time.*

FIRST among the staff officers of our ancient armies stood the high constable, who was the supreme commander of the army next the king ; and his authority, in some cases, even seemed to clash with that of royalty, inasmuch that it was deemed too great to be entrusted to any subject, and was therefore by Henry VIII. laid aside.

THE title of constable is by some etymologists derived from Comes Stabuli, the earl or chief officer of the king's stables ; others deduce it from the Saxon terms koning-stable, the king's stay or hold. If it was at first a civil office, it soon became a military one, signifying the commander of an army.

THE first constable of England is said to have been created by the Conqueror (a), and the office was afterwards held by the Bohuns, earls of Hereford and Essex, in consequence of their being possessed of certain manors (b), whence it came to the Staffords and dukes of Buckingham as heirs general ; but Edward, Duke of Buckingham, being attainted of high treason, anno 13th of Henry VIII. the office became forfeited to the crown, and since that time has been only granted occasionally (pro hac vice) to be exercised at a coronation, or some other great public solemnity.

By statute the high constable of England had cognizance of all things appertaining to war and arms, and abroad sat as supreme

---

(a) JACOBS'S Law Dictionary.

(b) THE manors of Harlefield, Newmarket, and Whithurst.

judge on all trials, as well for military offences as other matters of litigation, between soldiers or the followers of the army, in which he was assisted by the earl marshal, three or more doctors of the civil law, and a clerk, whose duty it was, like the present judge advocate, to prosecute all military delinquents.

HE was also at home a supreme judge in all matters of honour and disputes respecting armorial bearings, taking precedence of the earl marshal, even in what was denominated his own court.

IN a return made by the officers of the exchequer to King Edward I. on being ordered by him to search their records for the fees usually received by the high constables, they state, that having consulted a book of the constitutions of Henry II. and other authorities, they find, that the constables of England ought and were accustomed to receive, by virtue of their office, two pence out of every pound paid by the king to his stipendiary troops, with the army, or elsewhere, on his service; and also that he was entitled to the same deliveries for his subsistence as the chancellor and seneschall; which was, when they eat abroad, five shillings a-day, with one dominical (c), and two salted fennels (d), two quarts of claret (e), and one of ordinary or household wine (f), with wax and other candles but if they eat in the palace, they were to receive only 3s. 6d. a-day, two salt fennels, one quart of household wine, and a sufficiency of candles (g).

OVER and above these allowances, the high constable had divers other privileges and emoluments; the latter shall be mentioned under the head of pay.

BESIDES the high constable of England, other constables were some-

(c) DOMINICAL fennel, a better sort of biscuit made for Sundays and holidays.

(d) AN inferior kind of fennel, mixed with salt; this, by mistake, is printed in Rymer, ii folios, instead of ii salata.

(e) VINO claro, claret.

(f) ET unum sextarium de vino expensali; which is thus explained by Du Cange, vinum expensabile, quotidiana potus in usus domesticorum; vin de depense, nostris vulgo boite, vel bouvande.

(g) FOR this return, see Rymer, Foed. tom. 2. p. 191. Madox's Hist. of Exchequer.

times appointed to command the king's armies, perhaps when particular circumstances prevented the high constable from attending ; or, they might be his deputies, when more armies than one were raised and employed. An instance of this is found in Rymer, in the 26th year of the reign of King Henry III. when William de Cantilupe, the younger, John de Gray, Philip Basset, and Paul Peyvur, were appointed by that king to command his army in Poictou (h).

THE rights, privileges, and power of a high constable of France are stated at large by Father Daniel, and will be found in No. 2 of the Appendix.

THE mareschal, or marshal, was the officer next in command to the constable\*.

THIS office is as old as the conquest ; there were two marshals created by William the Conqueror, Roger de Montgomery and William Fitzosborne. It was conferred, for several generations, on the family of the Clares, earls of Pembroke ; after which, reverting to the crown, it was held by different great personages, till the 25th Henry VIII. when it was granted to Thomas Howard, Duke of Norfolk, and his heirs male for ever, with power to execute it by deputy ; since which it has with some interruptions arising from attainders, and other consequences of civil dissensions, continued in that family.

BESIDES the earl marshal, it appears that other marshals have occasionally been appointed to command our armies, perhaps for the same reasons as were suggested respecting the constable †.

(h) RYMER's Fœd. tom. I. p. 410. tom. I. p. 173.

\* SOME derive the term mareschal from the two Saxon words, mar, march, or marach, *equus*, and *scalch*, *prefectus* ; that is to say, that the office of marshal was formerly the superintendency of the king's horses, like that of the constable, but subordinate to it.

† KING Henry VII. albeit there was an earl marshal of England in being, appointed Sir Robert Willoughby, Lord Brooke, to be marshal of his army or host, in the eighth year of his reign ; and gave authority to Sir John Digby, knight, marshal, and Sir Robert Clifford, to use marshal law against rebelles, in the twelfth year of his reign. Historical Anecdotes of the Howard Family, p. 171.

THE following list of droits and fees claimed and enjoyed by Thomas de Brotherton, son of King Edward I. in virtue of his office of marshal of England, is preserved in the British Museum, written in the old French (i).

---

(i) COTTON, MS. Nerv. D. VI. An English copy is printed in the Historical Anecdotes of the Howard Family, p. 151. said there to be truly copied out of a book, written in the time of King Henry VIII. also in the Cotton collection; as this copy is, in some articles, fuller than the French, and differs in others, it is here given.

“ FIRST, The mareshall, by authority and power of his office, ought to have the foreward in every field, and to have it by the king’s assignment.

*Of the number of soldiers.* THE mareshall ought to appoint the number of the noblemen, of what arms, and of all the chiefest in battaile, and other routs, and of all archers.

*Of the appointment of lodgings.* THE mareshall, with his officers, and lawful deputies, when they ride out, to appoint lodgings for every estate after their degrees.

*Of the mareball’s watch.* THE mareshall ought to be abroad in the field, untill the other be lodged, for many considerations; and ought not to come to his own lodging, untill the carriages be come into the said field.

*Of the watchinge banner.* THE mareshall to have borne before him a watchinge banner, whereby every captain shall know him by the same.

*Of the mareball’s courts.* THE mareshall ought to have all the courts and leetes holden under him, and in the name of the mareshall of England.

*Of such castles as be taken in time of warre, within the roade.* THE mareshall ought to have, when he maketh any roade, all manner of beasts that have no horns, and all the horses unshodd, and all hoggs, and other gelded beasts.

*What he should have of every buyer and seller; and of such as set up lodgings.* THE mareshall ought to have of every merchant, buyer, or seller of any thing amongst the host, every week, foure pence; and of every one that setteth up lodgings, foure pence.

*How he ought to have all forfeitures.* THE mareshall ought to have all forfeitures of harnys, of such as be misdoers, either by day or night.

*How he ought to sett price, and have affize of ale and beer.* THE mareshall ought to sett price of all wyne and ale, and have affize thereof; and also to sett price of all other victuals that are sold in the host; also, he ought to have, of every barrel of ale or beere sold in the host, one penny.

*How he shall have all new pelfrey.* THE mareshall ought to have all such towns as are taken and given up without composition, all the harneys, hole clothes that be new, all manner of vessels, coats, sheets, coverletts, feather bedds, table clothes, towells, with all other things of pelfrey to his advantage.

*How the constable and mareball shall watch.* THE constable and mareshall shall ordeyne and devise the manner of watching, and the mareshall to sett the watch, and the constable to

THESE are the ufages that Thomas de Brotherton claimed to use, by his office of marshalsey.

---

visit them, and to give them the watch word ; and all these things must be observed at the siege of a town, or a castle, or when they remove, whither soever it be.

*How they ought to watch in the king's campe or hofte.* THE constable one night, and the mareshall another night, shall make certain watch, to ride out for to scoure, and assure the host ; also to take all strangers out of the host ; and as for the constable and mareshall, they ought not to watch nightly, but in default of others.

*How the mareball admitteth all the king's servants in warres.* THE mareshall, and the clerke of the king's wardrobe, ought to receive all the servants that shall come to serve the king, by XL daies : and after they have served out that terme, they ought not, nor may not depart from the host, until he or they have a letter of testification from the constable or marehall, witnessing that they have done their service.

*For prizing of horses.* THE mareshall, or his deputies and officers, shall prize the horses that shall be sold. Also, the marehall's clerke, when any plea ought to be pleaded, ought to make plea against the king's clerke.

*The ordering of the king's battaile.* THE marehall ought to be with the constable before the king, at the ordering of the battailes ; and he ought to have in his companie, all manner of men of warre, as well footmen as horsemen, as the constable hath ; and thereby he may the better devise to lodge all the host, and the scouts to the safeguard of the host.

*How the pleas belong to the constable and mareball.* ALSO, when the battailes be ordeyned, the steward ought not in any thing to inter-meddle with the pleas that be in the host, but only the constable and marehall ; of which the constable shall have the fines, and the marshal the amerciements and forfeitures of them that have deserved justice, and the profits of them that be commanded to prison.

*What the mareball shall have of every artificer.* THE marehall should have of every merchant, armorer, taylor, barber, and of every man that buyeth and selleth in the field, every Saturday, in and for assigning of them their places for keeping of their shopps, four pence ; and in likewise he shall have, if the said persons sojourne but only two or three daies in one place.

*For the mareball's court.* ALSO, no order ought to be made without the constable and marehall, and in every company ought to be a knight, or an esquire, under the high constable and marehall, to appoint their lodgings, and to clayme their fees, and the marehall shall have, as is aforesaid, all the gelded beasts, horses, and such other beasts as have no horns ; and the constable hath been accustomed to have all the shorne beasts, or such as have used to be shorne ; and all colts and other beasts, as mares, sheep, and goats, and hoggs, except such as have been gelded, to be free and common to all them that may get them ; and likewise, be all manner of beasts, when they be brought into the field and cried haveke, then every man to take

ALSO, It is right, that the constable and marehall shall have the number of the armed men, and the names of every one embodied, and under arms, as also of the archers; and when they ride forth, the constable and marshall shall assign their quarters; first, as is reasonable, to the van guard, and every other battaile to remain in the field till the preceding one is quartered; when they are lodged in tents or pavilions, the white banner shall be the rear guard of the whole; and no carriage to remain behind it.

WHEN an inroad takes place, the constable shall have, out of the plunder taken, all the beasts without horns, all the unshod horses, and hogs; the marshall shall have all the castrated beasts.

ITEM, The constable shall have of every merchant or sutler, buying or felling in the army, 4d. and for a barrel 1d. and shall have the assize of all things sold, wine or beer.

ITEM, He shall take of every prostitute, 4d. a week; and from those who erect lodges or stalls, the marshall shall have four pence.

ITEM, The constable shall have all the forfeitures of armour, of those who misbehave, day or night; and also in towns taken and surrendered at discretion, he shall have the armour, and all the entire or uncut cloth.

ITEM, The marshall shall have all the vessels of silver, cotes, feathers, sheets, coverlets, table cloths, towels, and other kinds of pelf.

ITEM, The constable and marshall shall order the maner of those

take his part, if the time therefore be convenient, and that the same may be done without prejudice of the host.

*For prisoners that escape and be taken againe.* ALSO, if it fortune any prisoner to be taken in warre, and the said prisoner escape out of the hold of him that took him, and if he fortune to be taken by the watch, they shall bring him to the marehall, and the marehall ought to have the profit of his ransome, for he is taken as an estraye.

*Of every homager armed.* IF any do homage armed, or on horsebacke, the marehall shall have the horse, with all the harneys.

*Of the marehall's court.* AND at such times as the king is in warre, then ought the constable and marehall to hold the courts, and the marehall to have the americiaments and forfeitures of them that break the commandements of the constable and the marehall."



who watch, and the marshall shall cause them to make themselves ready at the hour of eating. The marshall shall post them, and the constable visit them, and give them the watch word ; and these things shall be done at the siege of town or castle ; and when the army is in tents or pavilions, the constable one night, and the marshall another, shall cause certain persons to ride abroad, to protect the army from marauders belonging to it ; and the constable and marshall shall not watch, but on default of others.

ITEM, The constable ought to have from the army, horses for himself and suite ; and the marshall, and a clerk of the king's wardrobe, ought to receive all the persons who come to serve the king for forty days, who, when they have performed their services, cannot depart from the army, untill they have letters from the constable and marshall, testifying, that they have duly performed them : and the marshall ought to appreciate the horses, which are to be prized ; and his clerk ought to act as counter pleader, against the clerks of our lord the king.

ITEM, The marshall should be at the ordaining of the battailes before the king and council, respecting their arrangement into constablers ; and he ought, as well as the constable, to have a roll of all the men of arms in the army, and of all the infantry, to be the more able to appoint the watches, sentinels, and scouts, for the safety of the army ; and when the battailes are arranged, the seneschal ought not to meddle with the pleas in the army, which belong only to the constable and marshall, of which the constable is to have the fines, and the marshall, the amercements and forfeitures of all those condemned, and the profit of all those committed to prison.

THE marshall shall have of every merchant that follows the army, of every armourer, taylor, futler, barber, or cook ; and from every man that buys and sells in the army ; and from every prostitute, every Saturday they sojourn there ; and of every one keeping a shop, 4d. ; and in the same manner at every removal of the army, after their sojourning two or three days ; and the marshall shall have all the gelded beasts taken by the soldiers of the army in any inroad,

and no parties to go forth on any enterprife, without the permission of the constable and marshall; each party should have a knight, or in his place, an esquire, to quarter them, that is to say, the marshall shall have all the castrated beasts and the constable all the colts, these are the fees of the constable and marshall; the mares belong to those that can take them, and the shod horses to the constable.

ITEM, All the sheep and hogs belong to such private foldiers of the army as can take them; and when they come into the army, and havock is cried, every one may take his part.

ITEM, If a prisoner is taken in the seat of war, and shall escape from the custody of him who took him, and is retaken by the guard, they shall take him to the marshalsea, when the marshall shall have the advantage of his ranfome, he being a kind of estray.

THESE are the principal rights and privileges of the marshal, considered as a military officer; he had divers others in virtue of his duty about the king's court, which are also specified in the anecdotes before mentioned; and as some of them are of a very singular nature, and strongly mark the barbarity of the manners of those times, they are transcribed in the note (k).

AT present the earl marshal is not considered as a military officer.

(k) THE marshalsey is a serjeantry granted to the Earl of Norfolk in fee, who when he cannot personally execute the office, may appoint a knight, but with the king's consent. If the knight marshall so appointed, do make any default, the earle marshall shall not be amerced as earle, but only as servitor.

HE hath a vierge to be carried before the king, when upon the space about the king, wherefoever he be in England, containing twelve miles (leucarum) is called the vierge.

IN warre he is not bound to keep watch, but every night shall place the watch, and discharge them in the morning; he shall go out with the forragers, with banners displayed for their protection.

HE shall see execution done upon the judgments of the king's stewards within the vierge.

HE shall have the charge of the prisoners.

HE shall have all spotted beasts, or of divers colours; and of every pound of that fee, he shall pay two pence to the king.

THERE is assigned unto him one clerk, and one serjeant, for keeping of them that are attached.

It

NEXT in order to the marshal, was the master of the ordnance, but this was no farther back than the first year of the reign of King Richard III. when "Rauf Bigod was appointed to the mastership of the ordnance, during life, with an hundred marks fee for himself, and the wages of 6d. per diem for a clerk, and 6d. for a yeoman, to be paid out of the issues of the manors of Kyrton and Lyndefay in Lincolnshire, with the knight livery of household (l). This is the first master of the ordnance I have been able to find on record; the clerk of the ordnance is mentioned in Rymer as early as the 5th of Henry V. (m).

It does not appear that the English had any particular officer presiding over their projectile machines or artillery, previous to the invention of gunpowder and cannon (n), although in France they were under the direction of an officer titled the grand master of the crois

It is their charge to keep the vierge from harletts.

THE marshall shall have of every common harlett, within the limits of the house, four pence the first daie.

If she be found againe, she shall be forbidden, before the steward, not to enter into the king's house, nor the queene's, nor their children.

If the third time she be found, she shall be imprisoned or abjured the court.

If she be found the fourth time, her private parts shall be shaven.

If the fifth time, her upper lip shall be cut off.

AND it was wont, that the marshall had belonging to the court, seventeen single women, that should sweere to the knight marshall, that they knew no more common women but themselves following the court, no thief, no mefell, but they should utter it to the marshall, and they ought to serve the court, and no other.

(l) No. 433. Harl. MS. p. 105.

(m) WHERE a writ is directed to John Louth clerke of the ordnance, and John Benet of Maidstone, mason, reciting that a sufficient number of masons and labourers had been assigned for making seven thousand stone shot for guns of different sorts, with a sufficiency of stone for the same, as well in the quarries of Maidstone or elsewhere, as should be most for the benefit of the service.

THE workmen to be kept till the whole war completed, and men to be impressed for the carting, boating, or other carriage of the said stones.

(n) MACHINES for shooting stones and darts, used in sieges before the invention of fire arms, were called artillery.

bowes, an office of great antiquity in that kingdom, at least as old as the reign of St. Louis, who died anno 1270. From this and the little mentioned in our public records respecting these machines, it seems they were not very numerous in our armies, but that they had and used them in sieges, we learn from a variety of historians.

BESIDES the grant to Rauf Bigod before mentioned, there occur in the same reign and manuscript divers others respecting the ordnance, which though not immediately in point to our present subject, yet as they serve to shew the very low state of that establishment in its infancy, I shall here transcribe in the note below (o).

FROM this slender beginning, the office of master of the ordnance soon grew into great importance, as may be seen by the

(o) To Richard Warmyngton th' office of the artillerie within the town of Calais, with the wages of 12d. by the day, and 6d. for a yeoman under him for life.

JOHN STROKE th' office of clerk of th' ordonnance within England or elsewhere, for tyme of his life, with the wages of 6d. by the day, to be received of the lordships of Wrytell, Havering, Boyton, Hadleighe, Rayleighe, and Rochford in Essex, and of the manors of Tunbrugge, Penshurst, Middleton, and Marden in Kent.

WILLIAM TEMPILL th' office of yeoman of th' ordonnance for life, with wages of 6d. by the day, to be received out of the lordships as above.

To Richard Garnet the office of serjeant of the king's tents for life, with wages of 12d. per diem for himself, and 4d. per diem for a yeoman under him, and 100s. for a house to lay the tents in; 46s. 8d. for his robes; 13s. 4d. for his yeoman's robes, to be taken from the the issues of the lordships of Wrytell, Havering, Boyton, Hadleighe, Rayleighe, and Rochford, in co. Essex, and the lordship of Tunbrugge, Penshurst, Middleton, and Marden, in co. Kent, by the hands of the receyvoirs.

JOHN ATKYNSON kep. of the armour, in the tower, or elsewhere, within England for life, with fee of 6d. per diem, to be received as above.

To Henry Grey the younger squier, the king hath confirmed unto him th' office of the keeping of the armoury within the tower of London for term of his life, with the wages and fees accustomed to be received by fee farm of Norwiche.

VINCENT TENTLER, armourer; the king hath confirmed unto him to be his armourer during his life, with 20l. fee by the hands of the treasurer and chamberlain of the exchequer.

SIR John Donne, knight; th' office of serjeant or master of the armoury within the tower of London, during his life, with wages of 12d. for himself, 6d. for a yeoman, and 3d. for a gowne, by the hands of the sheriff of London and Midd. of the issues, &c. this last grant was in the 3d, all the rest in the 1st, of K. Richard III.

establishment for the expedition to St. Quintin's, in the year 1557, given in note (p) from a manuscript in the British Museum.

AN ancient manuscript in the Harleian Collection, marked No. 4685, entitled "The Order of a Campe or Army Royall, with the Dutie of every Officer belonging to the same, per B. Con Milit. 1518," describes the duty of the master of the ordnance in the field, in these words:

FIRST, it is the office of the Mr. of th' ordonnance, after that he hath receyved his charge at the councelles handes, he must firste of all, in anie wise before he shall goe fowrthe to the campe, se that they lacke no kynde of municion or such other necessaries whiche apperteine to the said Mr. of th' ordonnance.

AND there are apperteyninge to the Mr. of th' ordonnance, a leyvetenant and certaine clerkes, which are all in wages.

ALSO the sayd Mr. of th' ordonnance must also firste of all receyve the ordonnance, shotte, corne powder, serpentine powder, match and all other municions, as fire-workes, bowes, arrowes, strings, pikes, billes, halbertes, harquebuffes, qualivres, launces, light horsemen's staves, javelins, and bore speares.

AND further the said Mr. of th' ordonnance must receyve all kinds of necessaries, that is to saie, ladders, ladles, and spunges, for artillerie,

(p)	<i>Per Diem.</i>				<i>Per Diem.</i>		
	l.	s.	d.		l.	s.	d.
THE master of th' ordynance	1	6	8		Three smythes - - -	0	3 0
His lieutenant - - -	0	13	4		Three guyders of th' ordonnance	0	4 0
Master of the carriages - - -	0	10	0		Twelve carriages - - -	3	0 0
The trenche master - - -	0	5	0		A drumme - - -	0	1 0
A chaplain - - -	0	1	0		A phife - - -	0	1 0
A clerke of th' ordynance - - -	0	2	0		A hundreth and twentie fymyres	1	5 0
Two clerkes - - -	0	2	0		Ten halberdyers - - -	0	10 0
A surgeon - - -	0	1	0		Hacquebutter on horseback - }	0	6 0
Six boweyers - - -	0	6	0		for the lieutenant - - -		
Six fletchers - - -	0	6	0		Mr. gonner - - -	0	3 4
Three carpenters - - -	0	3	0		Twelve gonners - - -	0	16 0

See No. 6844, Harl. MS.

mattocks, spades, shovells, pick-axes, crowes of iron, cart wheelles for ordonnances, carriages for ordonnance, axeltrees, hand-axes, axeltrees for ordonnances, windoses for the defence of ordonnance, cart traces, with all kind of cart wares, as ropes, creffed and creffettes, lights, lanthorns, candell and linkes, with all other necessaries, whiche muste be foresene, that there be no lack before their goinge on.

FURTHER yt is the office of the Mr. of th' ordonnance, after he comes into campe, and the provost marshall hathe appointed the grownde most mete and necessarie for the artillerie, then must the aforesaide Mr. of th' ordonnance cause the faide ordonnance to be brought to the faide place appointed, there to be placed to the most advantage.

ITEM, the said Mr. of th' ordonnance must cause the said municion to be brought to the place appointed and mete therefore, which must be trenched about, for the danger of fyre; and the aforesaid Mr. of th' ordonnance must charge some discreet man withe watch, yf it stande in neede.

Also the said Mr. of th' ordonnance must se that there be attendinge on the office of ordonnance, certaine artificers, as carpenters, wheele wrights, smithes, bowyers, fletchers, masons, and suche other necessarie men, mete and convenient therefore.

THE said Mr. of th' ordonnance his office is, that yf there be any capteine that lacketh municion for his foldiers, the said capteine shall come to the Mr. of th' ordonnance, and he must commande the clerke of th' ordonnance to deliver suche municion as he lacketh; providinge alwaies that the clerke of th' ordonnance do take a bill of the captaine's hand, or of his lyvetennent, for the faide municion, and at the paye daye the clerke shall deliver the faide bille unto the treasurer, that he maye staye so much monye in his handes as shall answer the queen for the municion so delivered.

FURTHERMORE yt is the office of the Mr. of th' ordonnance that if the enemye and yowe joyne battaile, the grownde beinge appointed by th' officer of the field, where the battaile shall be pyched, to repaire to the field, there to see th' ordonnance planted to the most

advantage; and yf occasion shal be given, to remove the said artillerie, as shall seme good to the Mr. of th' ordonnance, and in anye wise to be circumspect that the Mr. gonners do their duties belonging thereto."

ANOTHER, and seemingly a more ancient manuscript, late the property of Mr. Anstis, has several curious particulars respecting the power and perquisites of the master of the ordnance, intermixed with the duty of the provost marshal of the artillery, under the following head:

"THESE be the AUTHORITIES and POWER that the PROVOSTE MARSHALL and his LIEFTENANT have in the Jurisdiction of the Artillerie.

FIRSTE, the provost marshal hath none authoritie to bear his staffe nor his lieftenant within the jurisdiction of the artillerie, withoute licence of the provost of the artillerie, but to lett his staffe before the artillerie gate, as the antient custome is in the realms of France, Spayne, Portingale, Naples, &c. &c. Cicellie and Levant.

ITEM, if there be anie person found in the artillerie, charged with a cryme, foe must the provost of the artillerie deliver him out of the artillerie unto the provost marshal or his lieftennents, reservinge allwayes that the said provost of the artillerie shall keepe for himselfe all those goods and clothinges belonging to the foresaid "crymeneux dedely patient (q)."

ITEM, all those of the small artillerie, as serpentines, courtoux, bombardes, are bounden and must forth with eache of their master gunners and other gunners, at the commandement of the originall master gunner, uppon the payne and correctinge of the chief master of the artillerie and his counsell.

ITEM, that all the carpenters are bounden to be by their (r) mantells and workes in the artillerie, as well in the fields as els wheare, that is, in anie busines to doe, upon payne to abide the correctinge of the said master and his counsell.

---

(q) So in the original.

(r) PROBABLY mantlets.

ITEM, the master of the artillerie shall doe crie with found of trumpet, within his jurisdictione of the artillerie, with his provoste, that all master gunners, courtoux, serpentines and all other beinge of the same offices, that each man shall keepe the ordinances made by the great master of the artillerie, every man severlie keepinge his place, his peece, and their fire and powder; and their servants and boies shall diligentlie watch upon their masters, and abide by them, to see what they have need of, or anye thinge shoulde lacke, as is powder, stones, pellets, necessarie unto them where they lie, uppon the paine to abide the correction of the master of the artillerie, lieftennent, or provoste.

ITEM, the provoste shall goe with the lieftennent of the kinge or prince of the armie, with the consent and licence of the great master of the artillerie, to make place, as is accustomed to be done of olde, and that they shall take footemen enough to make a place to shote, and diche it as apparteyneth, within the which they may bring in their waynes and cartes with powder and other necessarie thinges, and soe thereuppon to depute and ordeigne VI. or VII. men deputed or assigned by the master of the artillerie to the defence of the same, upon the payne to be corrected as is aforesaid.

AND wheareas the master of the ordinance is committed and made by anie kinge, prince, or captaine generall, and by their counsell, is admitted and charged with the gunners in towne or in field, their ought no man without commandement of the said prince, lieftennent, captaine generall, and the faide counselle, to put noe gunner, in or out the ordinance, without the licence of the said master, or the lieftennent, for his discharge.

ITEM, all other waynes and cartes that bee laden shalbe sett in good ordinance, as it hathe been of olde and antient custome to be, on paine as is aforesaid.

ITEM, that all the mantells and timber worke, basilisques, water milles, and other instruments belonginge to the sieged towne or castell, the which shalbe brought soe secretlie by night and darknes as is possible to be done.



ITEM, the gentlemen deputed to give attendance upon the master of the artillerie, to govern any bombards or cannon, shall not doe nothings, otherwise then is ordeyned by the said master of the artillerie, uppon payne to abide the correction of the saide master.

ITEM, that all servants and officers that have to doe under the authoritie of the master of the artillerie, and in his absence, his lieftennent and officers, as his chappeleyne, receivor, comptroller, provostes, and clerkes, master gunners of cortolles or serpentines, and all other servants, as waggoners, carters, their servants, with other, shall keepe and fulfil all such statutes as are ordained by the great master of the artillerie and his counsell, lieftennent, and provoste, upon payne to be corrected to the example of all other.

ITEM, as a towne is wonne, whether it is by assalt, per force, subtile practise, or by anie other manner given up, be it towne, castell, pyle, church, or bastile, or fortresse, the chief master of the artillerie, or his lieftennent, shall ordayne, that the master gunners and their companie shall have the best bell within that place soe wonne, or the churchwardens shall appoynt or compound with the great master of the artillerie and his counsell; and that to be reported by the provoste of the artillerie, and given knowledge to the lords and rulers of that place soe wonne, with the comons of the same, what that the master of the artillerie, his counsell and master gunners, and their companie have determined and ordeyned, by a convenable and reasonable estimation, to see and knowe if the lordes and commons will hold the ordinance and appoyntment made (s).

(s) IN France this perquisite belongs to the grand master of the artillery, "Le grand maître a encore une privilege dont il n'est point fait mention dans ses provisions; c'est que quand une ville ou forteresse a laissé tirer le canon, les cloches des églises, les utensils de cuivre & autre metal lui appartiennent, & doivent être rachetées d'une somme d'argent par les habitants, à moins que dans la capitulation on ne convienne du contraire.

Ce droit pourroit bien avoir été accordé au grand maître de l'artillerie en de dommagement d'un autre qu'avoit le grand maître des arbalétriers, auquel a succédé le grand maître de l'artillerie, & qui est ainsi exprimé dans un ancien registre que j'ai cité ailleurs. " *Que se ville,*

ITEM, that all the butchers of the artillerie shall flea their beasts without the precinct of the artillerie, and that they grave and burie the filth of those beasts in the yearth, without the artillerie, upon payne to be, &c. &c.

ITEM, that all the horses and other beastes that be killed, or die one their own death, being carrion, the provost of the artillerie must convey them out of the parke of artillerie, for because of infection, uppon the payne to be corrected by the master and his counsell, or his lieftennent.

ITEM, the provost of the artillerie shall have his right of the victualers within his jurisdictione, in likewise as the provoste marshall hath in the greate armye by estimatione."

HAVING here given the general outlines of the duties and privileges

*ville, fortreffe ou chateau est pris, a lui appartient toute l'artillerie quelle que soit qui trouvée y est."*  
*P. Daniel Hist. de la Mil. Franc. tom. 2. p. 526.* Something like this perquisite to the grand master of the cross bowes, was allowed by King William III. to the commanding officer of artillery in Ireland, as is shewn by the following warrant: William R. Whereas by our royal warrant bearing date the 25th day of February, in the 4th year of our reign; we did authorize and empower the lieut. general and principal officers of our ordnance, to pay to our trusty and well beloved colonel, John Whynant Goor, the sum of five hundred pounds, in consideration of several broken and unserviceable brass ordnance, &c. found in the towns reduced during the war in our kingdom in Ireland, being a perquisite belonging and appertaining to the said colonel Goor, and were by him delivered into our magazines for our future service; and whereas the said coll. Goor hath not yet received any part of the said five hundred pounds, by reason it was to be paid out of such moneys as should be appointed for payment of the arrears of the train in Ireland, which payment we have not yet thought fit to direct; we are therefore out of our Royal favour to the said colonel Goor, graciously pleased to direct you to cause the said sum of five hundred pounds, to be paid out of the moneys appropriated to the office of our ordnance on account of land service, and for so doing, this shall be as well to you as to the auditor of our inquest a sufficient warrant. Given at our court at Whitehall, this 14th day of February 1693, in the sixth year of our reign.

By his majesty's command,

J. TRENCHARD.

To our right trusty and well-beloved cousin and counsellor Henry Viscount Sidney, master general of our ordnance, &c. Memorandum. The master general of the ordnance, his signification upon the above said warrant, dated the 19th day of February, 1693-4.

of the ancient masters general of the ordnance, I shall conclude the article with a list of the masters general of the ordnance from its first institution to the present time, reserving the modern regulations respecting this office for the article of artillery.

#### SUCCESSION OF MASTERS GENERAL of the ORDNANCE.

Rauf Bigod	- - - - -	2 June, 1483, for life
Sir Richard Gyleford	- - - - -	— 1485,
Sir Chrystopher Morres, Knt. was	} 29 H.VIII. 1537,	
master		
Sir Francis Flemynge, Knt.	- -	— 1547,
Sir Philip Oby, Knt.	- - - - -	— 1548,
Sir Edward Brag	- - - - -	— 1553,
Sir William Pelham	- - - - -	— 1558,
Ambrose Dudley, Earl of Warwick		— 1587,
Robert Devereux, Earl of Essex	-	29 Mar. 1596,
Charles Blount, Earl of Devon, styled	} 10 Sept. 1603, during pleasure	
general of the ordnance		
George Carew, Earl of Totness	-	27 June, 1609, ditto
Horatio, Lord Vere	- - - - -	5 May, 1617, for life
Sir Richard Morrison	- - - - -	26 Aug. 1623, ditto
Sir Thomas Stafford	- - - - -	— 1628, ditto
Mountjoy Blount, Earl of Newport		2 Sept. 1634, ditto
Sir William Compton	- - - - -	22 Jan. 1660, ditto
John, Lord Berkely	- - - - -	21 Oct. 1664, during pleasure
Sir John Duncomb, Knt.	- - -	ditto, ditto
Sir Thomas Chicheley, Knt. first call-	} ditto, ditto	
ed master general of the ordnance		
Thomas Chichely	- - - - -	4 June, 1670, ditto
Sir John Chicheley	- - - - -	} 23 Jan. 1679, ditto
Sir William Hickman	- - - - -	
Sir Charles Musgrave	- - - - -	
George Legge, Lord Dartmouth	-	28 Jan. 1681, ditto
Frederick, Duke Schomberg	- -	28 Apr. 1689, ditto

Henry Sidnéy, Viscount Sidney, afterwards Earl of Romney - -	} 28 July, 1693, during pleasure
John Churchill, Earl of, and afterwards Duke of Marlborough - -	} 29 June, 1702, ditto
Richard Savage, Earl of Rivers -	10 Sept. 1711, ditto
James, Duke of Hamilton - - -	5 Sept. 1712, ditto
John Churchill, Duke of Marlborough	4 Oct. 1714, ditto
William Cadogan, Earl of Cadogan	22 June, 1722, ditto
John Campbell, Duke of Argyle and Greenwich - - - - -	} 3 June, 1725, ditto
John Montagu, Duke of Montagu	30 May, 1740, ditto
Charles Spencer, Duke of Marlborough	— 1755, ditto
John Ligonier, Viscount, afterwards Earl Ligonier - - - - -	} 30 Nov. 1757, ditto
John Manners, Marquis of Granby	— 1763, ditto
George Townshend, Viscount Townshend - - - - -	} — 1772, ditto
Charles, Duke of Richmond - -	— 1782, ditto
Charles, Marquis Cornwallis - -	13 Feb. 1795, ditto

IN small armies, and after the disuse of the office of high constable, the officer commanding in chief was stiled captain general. This was the case in the list of the army sent to St. Quintins, before quoted; where next in succession to the captain general, stands the lieutenant general, and the high marshall occupies only the third place in order and command.

THE staffe and suite, &c. of the capitaine general were, a secretary, another for the French tongue, two surgeons, a trounce man (t), ten carriages, for transporting his baggage, two trumpeters, a drum, a pipe, and thirty halberdiers for his guard.

THE staffe and suite of the lieutenant general, were a chaplain, a

---

(t) PROBABLY a truncheon man, or tipstaff, commonly attendant on persons of high rank, as well military as civil in order to clear the way, in processions, &c.

furgeon, a troucheman, three carriages, a trumpetter, and fifteen halberdiers.

THE highe marischall had a master of the campe, a chaplain, a surgeon, three carriages, a trumpetter, a drum, and fifteen halberdiers.

THE next officer in rank in this army, was the generall of the horsemen, his staff, a lieutenant, a chaplain, a surgeon, four commissaries, his trumpetter, and fifteen halberdiers.

THE infantry was commanded by an officer stiled captain general of the footmen, and had a lieutenant, a serjeant major (u), six wyfflers (x), a chaplain, a surgeon, three carriages, a drum, a phife, and fifteen halberdiers.

THE duties and powers of the master of the ordnance having been described, and those of the captain and lieutenant general differing

(u) SERJEANT major here seems to mean a general officer, afterwards called serjeant major general; serjeant major commonly meant, in the language of those times, the office now stiled major.

(x) WYFFLERS are commonly understood to mean a sort of fers, yet from the following passage in an ancient MS. late in the collection of Mr. Anstis, they seem to have been concerned in drilling of the men; this manuscript is anonymous, but from the hand writing, seems of the time of Queen Elizabeth, "*A charge for every wyffler*" fyrste, that they instructe the souldyers how they shall carry there weapons.

SECONDLY, to show what space betwixte rancke and rancke, 1 betwixte every gunner, twise the length of his gunne, and betwixte every rancke of archers, as moche space as he may goe his bowe by thend and to reche to his foer goer. Betwixte every rancke of pykes, half the pyke length, that thende of his pyke may be within a foote of his fellowe, he that goeth before hym. And betwixt every bill man, the lengthe of hys weapon; and they shall not tomtotche, neither stay to drinke, and that when any rancke is last behynd to hast the follower; and yf the followers cannot conveniently overtake the foregoers, that one whyffler call to another before hym, to stay the whole armye, that all may goe together; and in any wyffe, when they ringe be a makeinge, which beginneth as sone as the fyrst rancke ys entered the fylde, that then every whyffler doo greate diligence to keepe men together in order, and that one rancke doe not lagge behynde another at the entry of the ringe, and likewise within the ringe, that every rancke follow instantly and directly his foregoer, and that the shoullder of one man to be from another, that they may easily handell there weapons for to fight; and when they stand to stay, that every man stayeth, a pyke, to set up his pyke on hys shoulder, and that the hand that holdeth the pyke sett the bought of his elbow out warlycke, and the other hand to be sett under his fyde; elles upon the hyte of his sworde, and likewise the bill.

very little from those of the constable and marshal ; we come next to general of the horsemen.

THE offices of generals of the horsemen and footmen require no particular explanation, except that their duties were generally restricted to their different services ; the generals of cavalry rarely interfering with those of the infantry, or those of the infantry with the cavalry(y). Nor did officers of the same rank always command according to their seniority(z). In some instances the command between the officers of the same denomination was thus settled. In the field the officers of cavalry commanded those of the infantry of the same rank, and vice versa in garrison, the infantry commanded their equals in the cavalry, without any respect to the dates of their appointments.

IN the reign of King James II. the officers of the cavalry took rank on detachment according to the dates of their commissions, but those

(y) THE title of general is not of very ancient date in the English armies, as we do not find it till about the reign of Henry VIII. after which we meet with the term captain general of the horsemen, and captain general of the footmen, in armies commanded by persons bearing only the title of general. The same army sometimes had a captain and lieutenant general, and also a captain general of the horsemen or foot. An instance of this occurs in the army sent to St. Quintins.

(z) SEE an instance in Rymer, 34th of Eliz. A.D. 1592. In some regulations respecting two thousand footmen, and one hundred horse, to be sent from the Low Countries into France, wherein is the following passage : " And because it standeth with some good order, that all the severall captains with their bands, may orderlie take their voyage, with one consent, and agree amongst themselves, considering, as they are captains, they will everie of them accompt themselves equal one with another ; Sir Robert Sidney and you shall let them know, that it is thought convenient that Sir John Pooley, Knt. should take the charge of the shipping of all their forces, and that they shall for their passage, and during the time untill they should land, be advised by him, as we doubt not but he will perform the same discreetly to their contentation ; and at their landing, Sir John Pooley shall have knowledge of her majesty's pleasure from hence, under whose commandement both he himself and all the rest shall there serve in France." From this it is evident, that it was not then the practice for the oldest officer to command on detachments, where there were several of equal rank ; had it been so, there would not have been any occasion for the regulation here cited, in favour of Capt. Pooley.

of the infantry on like occasion commanded according to the seniority of the corps to which they belonged; so that a captain or any other officer of the first regiment, though but just appointed, would have commanded a captain, or other officer of like rank with himself, of ten years standing, in the second or any other corps. For this regulation, see the note below (a).

THE serjeant major general, sometimes denominated serjeant major of the camp or field, was what is now called major general, as serjeant major of a regiment formerly signified the officer now stiled major. The duty of this officer is thus laid down in the same manuscript with that of the master of the ordnance.

“ The OFFICE of the SERJEANT MAJOR in the field or campe, with the DUTIES thereunto belonging, viz.

FFIRST of all the serjeant major of the campe ys to receive at the handes of the high marshall the whole number of footmen, that be in the armye, and beinge so receyved he must divide the weapons severallie, that he may perfectlie knowe what number he hathe of everie kinde of weapon, and so to set the order of the battaills accordinglie.

ITEM, the said serjeant major must receyve commandement from the leyvetenent generall, and he must put in order of battaile all the battaile aforesaid, as he is appointed to do, by the said leyvetenent, his commandement, in use.

FFURTHER yt ys the office of the serjeant major, that yf the enemye drawe so near unto yower armye, that the battaile is appointed, then is it most mete and convenyent, that the said serjeant major repaire to the highe marshall, to attend on him when he goeth to viewe the field,

---

(a) UPON detachments or parties, all officers of horse are to command according to the dates of their commissions, and all officers of foot according to the ranks of their regiments, and not according to their commissions; but all lieutenants and ensigns of the same regiments, upon such detachments or parties are to command among themselves, according to their commissions, and not to the rank of their companies. *Abridgment of the English Military Discipline*, published by authority, 1680.

where he intendeth the battayle shalbe pytched, and he to take viewe of the grownde of advantage for settinge the battayle, and that beinge done, to return and make reporte to the lord leyvetenent generall, howe he hathe surveyed the grownde, and the most advantage thereof; and to make declaration what order he thinketh moste mete and convenient to set the battaile in. And if it be the aforesaid leyvetenent's pleasure, the said lord generall being therewith well content that it shalbe so don.

THE serjeant major must then repare also unto the said field, there to set the order of the battaile to the most advantage according to the ground. And ffirst of all, he must divide his weapons, and appoint everie ranke with the weapons most convenient according to order; that being done, and the battailes beinge set, and everie weapon placed in everie rank most convenient, then must the said serjeant major se that the kinge's standard be placed in the middest of the mayne battaile, and the marishall's ensigne in the right hand of the kinge's standard, and the treasurer's ensigne on the left, and to appoint three or foure other ensignes, as the serjeant major shall thinke goode, for the furnyshinge out of the said rank. Also the said serjeant major must appoint certaine drummes and phifes to attend on the aforesaid ensignes.

ALSO the said serjeant major must appoint six ranks of halbertes, that is to saie, three rankes to be placed before the kinge's majestie's standarde, and other three rankes behinde the standard, of the most tallest, and best armed, that can be found in the whole battaile, for the garde of the kinge's majestie's standard:

THE aforesaid serjeant major must also appoint the residewe of the ensignes, everie of them in the places, as the said serjeant major shall thinke most mete. That beinge done, and all the battailes in good order, the weapons with their drummes, ensignes and phyffes accordinglie, then must the said serjeant major appoint unto everie capteine their speciall places within everie battaile; some in the fore part of the battaile, some in the myddest, some in the fydes of the said battaile, and other some in the hindermost part of the said battaile, as he shall think metest.



ITEM, the said serjeant major must also see that the shotte be placed within the wynges of every battaile, for the impalement and garde of the aforesaid battailes; and the said serjeant major must also appoint certaine capteins to have the charge of the said shotte, and leadinge of them.

Also the said serjeant major must appoint the forlorn hope in his order before the front of the battaile, and to charge certain capteynes with the leadinge of them.

It is also the office of the said serjeant major to serve with his own person in the fore front of the battail, and to lead the battail."

THE treasurer, sometimes called the high treasurer of the army, was an officer of great trust as well as authority, somewhat like that of the paymaster general of the present time, but invested with more power. The duties of this office as described by Ralphe Smith are: "Alfoe you oughte to chuse unto you a highe treasurer, which is an office of great reputation, and therefore he oughte to be a man of greate wisdom, experte in martiall affaires, for that hee is to speake his opinion in all offices, as well concerninge other offices as his owne, otherwise committed to his chardge; the payment of all highe officers, namelye, captaines and corronells: likewise he shall receive from the generall the true number of horsemen and footmen within the army, and to make a perfitte booke every moneth, how much is due unto everye officer and souldier; hee is to conferre with the master of the ordnance, for the storing of munition of all forts; and likewise with the master of the victualls; and to see that he be well furnished thereof at all tymes. All other thinges which oughte duly to be observed and performed by him, the which I do not make relation hereof, butt refer it to wiser heads." Another military treatise (b) says of this officer, "He is still the king's counsell, especially that you tearme martiall, and is to give his opinion in all proceedings of the army, and sometimes may deny disbursements though the generall command the same. His office extends to take account of the musters, and to booke the

---

(b) THE Military Art of Trayning, &c. London, 1620.

companies ; whereby the prince or generall may still know the strength of the camp, and he himself know how to discharge the souldier. He is also to conferre with the master of the ordnance about the spending of powder and provision of munition ; yea, all inferior officers, as the provost master, muster master, commissaries, undertakers for victuall and apparell, pay masters, captaine of the pioners, carriage masters, and such like, are all subject to his particular examination, by way of placing and displacing as he seeth just occasion."

THE high harbinger was the quarter master generall of former times ; his office is very minutely described in the manuscript before quoted(c).

" The OFFICE of the HARBINGER in the field or campe, with the DUTIES thereunto belonging, videlicet.

FIRST, the harbinger, after that he is appointed unto his charge, ought to resort to the lord lieutenant general, to enquire of him the names of all the officers of honor and counsellors, belonging to the armye, and also all other meane officers apperteyning to the same, that he may appoint lodgings for them accordinglie. Also, he must know of the said lord lieutenant generall, the place where the armye shall assemble to be mustered ; and thither must he repaire, callinge before him the cheefe rulers of the towne, declaringe unto them that he is come to provide lodgings for the lord lieutenant generall and the armye ; and to charge the said rulers, that they send some of their officers, to bringe him to everie house in the towne that is hable to make any lodgings, that he may take a note what beddes they make within the towne, or subberbs of the same, and to command them to provide victualls sufficient for suche souldiers as they do lodge, upon prices reasonable ; and after that he has divided his lodgings, and made his booke of them, he must first appoint for the lord generall, the cheefe lodgings, and next after him his two lordes lieutenants of the fore and rear wards ; the master of the ordinnance, and all other meane officers,

to be lodged as near to the counsaile as he convenientlie maie, that they may be readie to attend uppon the lord lieutenant generall, when they shall be called for: and after he hath lodged the lord lieutenant generall and the counsaile, he must reserve certain of the best lodgings for the captaines and men of worship that serve in the field, deliveringe to every man's servant that cometh for a lodginge for his master, one billet, naminge therein the lodginge for him, and what number of beddes are appointed for him, whiche billet he must enter into a booke for his remembrance.

THE said harbinger oughte to have also some under him, and he should deliver to everie of them a booke, devidinge the lodgings in the towne in four partes appointinge to everie clerke one part of the towne to make lodgings in, whiche clerkes must appoint no lodgings but such as the harbinger appointeth by billet.

AND their office ys to se that no man take any lodginge in their quarter, but where they be assigned; and yf they do, and will not be avoyded, then muste they resort to the highe marischall, who may remove them; the harbinger must also make streight commaundement, that no householder, upon paine of imprisonment, doe take into his house anie man to lodge without billet from him, upon paine of answeringe to the same.

FFARTHER the said harbinger and his servants must give their attendance upon the high marischall, when he goeth to viewe the ground where the camp shalbe pitched. And after that the highe marischall hath appointed the ground for the camp, then the provost marischall makethe devision of the quarters of the camp, assigning a place for the market, or place of assemblie, and the streetes for the same; and the harbinger being made privie thereunto must remaine upon the same ground, readie to answer all suche as come before, to knowe where they shall pitche their tentes and discharge the carriages.

Also for that every man shall knowe where to pitche their tentes, and to be lodged in such place as they marche in; that is, he that marcheth in the waward to be placed there; and in the battailes, the harbinger ought to have one of his clerkes to give attendance, to

assign the places appointed, and one other being the fourth clerke shall attend on and upon the ground appointed for the horsemen likewise, to set them in order for their lodgings. And the cheefe harbinger shall have ynough to doe, to see all these thinges done accordinge to his direction : and his office is to amende suche faultes as he shall finde done contrarie to his order ; and if he be letted so to doe, then must he complaine to the highe marischall, which ought to reforme the same."

THE provost marshall or chief provost of the army, seems to have been formerly an office of much greater rank and authority than it is at present. This we learn from the manuscript quoted in the preceding article, and according to the detail of the duties of that office, there laid down, in several instances bordered on those of the quarter master general ; a transcript of that article is here given.

" The OFFICE of the PROVOST MARSHALL in the fiede or campe, with the DEWTIES thereunto belonginge.

FIRST, yt is the office of the provost marshall to receyve at the handes of the highe marischall the whole number bothe of horsemen and footemen that are in the armye, to the ende, the said provost marischall maie bothe order and appointe the campes accordinge to the numbers.

ITEM, the said provost marischall, after that the highe marischall hath appointed the ground where the campe shalbe, then must the provost marshall divide the ground into severall quarters, appointinge to everie battaile their quarter, and to everie capten their several growndes within the quarters of the said battaile.

THE provost marshall must also when he maketh the campe, appoint within the said campe, a large market place of assemblie, and to appoint certaine streetes in the said campe, between the quarters of everie battaile, and to appoint the leyvetenent generall's place, giving him the place of honor in the fiede.

FFURTHER, that the said provost marischall must give straight commandement, that no man pitch anie tente near unto the ryng of the

faid campe by some score foote at the least; and everie capitaine, after they be encamped, shall command that their carriages shall go to the impalement of the faide campe.

Also the faid provost marshall must give commandement to the capitaine of the pyoners, to appointe certain of his labourers to entrench the faide campe or place of assemble.

AND further the faid provost marshall must appoint in the ringe of the campe, grownd of advantage for th' artillerie mete and convenient.

AND further the faid provost marshall must se all watches to be set himselfe, and also give to everie watche their charge, with the watche worde, then must he twise or thrise in the night himself goe to searche them, that goode watche be kepte, and that everie man doe his dutie accordinglie.

Also the faid provost marshall must appoint within the market place or place of assemble, within the aforefaid campe, a place for the munition, not neare the danger of fire.

AND the aforefaid provost marshall must cause it to be trenched about, and to give charge and commandement unto the Mr. of th' ordonnance, and he shall command and appoint some discreet honest man to have the charge of the watch thereof.

ITEM the faid provost marshall must appoint near unto the place where the munition is set, a place convenient for the master of th' ordonnance, with the office of th' ordonnance.

If it chance that the enemy and you joyne in battaile together, then is the office of the provost marshall to serve in his owne person with the footmen, in the rank with the serjeant major.

THE provost marshall also ought to see all proclamations to be proclaimed with the harrald at armes, and the trompeter, in the lorde keyvetennente generall his name.

ITEM, the faid provost marshall must likewise gyve streighte commandement that after the watch be set, and the watche piece fhotten off, there be no maner of noyse in the campe, but that all men be at quiet.

MOREOVER, the tipstaves of the faid provost marshall ought to se

that g  
brawl  
tipstave  
to be p  
Ar p  
the kee  
offences  
beyond  
deputies  
rear, an  
causing t  
horses, a  
to preven  
vost mart  
occasional  
besides w  
fees for

that good order be kept within the aforefaid campe, that there be no brawlinge nor fightinge within the faid campe, but forthwith the faid tipstaves to bringe them that so offend unto the marishallie, and there to be punished at the direction of the faid provost marischall."

At present the chief duties of the provost marshall of an army are : the keeping of all prisoners, particularly those confined for great offences, apprehending deserters, marauders, or soldiers straggling beyond the limits of the camp : at night, by his rounds or those of his deputies, preventing any disturbances among the petty fustlers in the rear, and apprehending all soldiers out of camp after gun-firing ; causing the butchers to bury all their offal ; also to kill all glandered horses, and to bury them, and all others dying in the camp, in order to prevent infection. To enable him to perform those duties, the provost martial has a serjeant's, and sometimes a subaltern's guard ; and occasionally to give him the more authority, has the rank of captain ; besides which, he is permitted to make out a contingent bill, for his fees for executions, and other expences attending his office. A very curious one of Assarias Van Velthoven, a Dutchman, provost general in Ireland, under King William III. is preserved in the Museum, which in one campaign amounted 307l. 10s. (d). This being thought an enormous charge, some persons were authorised to enquire into it ; what was their report does not appear, but there is the king's order for paying the bill. As a matter of curiosity, several specimens of his charges are given in the note (e), with some of the evidences

---

(d) No. 6844, Harl. MS.

(e) ACCOUNT of the CHARGES and DISBURSEMENTS done by the Provost General Velthoven, concerning the prisoners, who by order of his Excellency and by the High Counsel of Warr are acquitted, as also of those that are executed in order of the sentence.

Kilkenny, 9th of June, (1691.) Hane bene send in arest by order of his excellency the Lord of Sgravemore, two persons, named Thomas Traffi and Philip Wodli, being both raperies, and remained in the arest until the 11th of Feb. when the same in pursuance of the sentence and approbation of the Lord of Sgravemore in Kilkenny, hane bene punished with the rope to death,

VOL. I.

F F

amounts

brought to invalidate them. His establishment was a lieutenant, a sub-lieutenant, a scrivener or clerk, an executioner, eight horsemen for his

amounts for 33 daies diet, from the 9th of January untill the 11th of Feb.	l.	s.	d.
at 6d. a day, is for both of them	1	13	0
For extraordinary treats, after the sentence of death of the patients as otherwise, each one six shillings, is together	0	12	0
Paid unto the three servants that have fit up with and served the patients, after the sentence of death, according to custome, half-a-crowne a day, is for two days and a night	0	15	0
For the reading of the sentences	0	2	6
Unto the executioner, for hanging and takeing downe, as otherwise, ten shillings apiece, is together	1	0	0
For the ladder, ropes, and bolts	0	3	0
For the locking and unlocking of each, 2s. 6d.	0	5	0
For assisting in the execution according to custom for me	0	10	0
For the listenant	0	4	0
Paid for burying unto the servant, 2s. 6d. each	0	5	0
Dec. 19th. Have bene fend in arest by the Collonel Floid, John Gerritse, drummer, and John Wright, souldier, under do. regiment, under the company of Capt. Person, deserters, and remained until the 13th of Feb. when the same by the sentence of the high counsell of warr and the approbation of the General Ginkel should have bene punished to death, but John Gerritse has got his freedom with diceing under the gallows, but John Wright has punished with the rope unto death: for 57 daies diet, from the 19th of December to the 13th of February, at 6d. a day, amounts to	2	7	0
N. B. Charges of execution as before.			
Feb. 25th. Brought in arrest William Waters for a repery, and do. remained to the 5th of March, after he had severely bene whipped with rods, without Kilkenny, according to his sentence, upon the 28th day of February.			
For 9 daies diet, from the 25th of February to the 5th of March, at 6d. a day, is	0	4	6
For reading of the sentence	0	2	6
For whipping	0	5	0
For locking and unlocking	0	2	6
Feb. 26. Made by order of the Lord of Sgravemore, a new gallows without Kilkenny.			
Paid for wood for the same	1	15	0
For making and erecting the same	0	15	0
For			

guard, a prison, a prison keeper, with four servants; he was likewise allowed two waggons with eight horses, for the carriage of sick

	l.	s.	d.
For the ladders and bringing	0	3	0
For	0	2	0

March 20. By order of the Lord General ordered to be brought into a room, and there given them notice of their death, the following soldiers of the regiment of the Earl of Nassau, having bene abroad upon parties, and not done their duties, namely Abraham de Vlioger, Peter de Moy, Hery Cornraed, Casper Willem Hager, Pieter Etterfon, Jacus Slim, Benedictus Moet, and have accordingly to the sentence the next day plaid at dice, and the lot for to dye is fallen upon Casper Willem Hager, but have afterwards bene pardoned, and on the 23d acquitted.

Their ordinary diet was sent to them from their regiment, but for their extraordinary after their condemnation to death, 2s. 6d. each is

For five servants that waited on them after their condemnation to death, at 2s. 6d. a day, for two days and one night is	1	5	0
For locking and unlocking, 1s. each, is	0	7	6

List of the servants of the executioner concerning the houses in the late camp, as also by the head quarters and the particular regiment are buried, as also some dead bodies in Athlone, and before Limerick buried.

Jan. 4th, Buried horses, 7.

In all buried horses 102, at 2s. 6d. each.

January 24. Buried before Athlone, 7 men.

For each 2s. 6d.

July 31. Buried before Athlone, 30 men.

These are particular articles extracted from the bill, and often occur in it: the objections against it were these.

OBJECTIONS against Affarias Velthoven's ACCOUNT of DISBURSEMENTS hereto annexed.

	l.	s.	d.
That he gives no particulars how he laid out the 60l. he owns by his first article to have received, yet charges the same again in fol. 32.	60	0	0
Overcharged the 9th of June	47	0	0
From 3d June, 1691, to 2d November following, charges 6d. apiece, 1669 days, 41l. 14s. 6d. when he allowed them but one ammunition loaf for 2 days, which (when he pays Mr. Perrara for) will cost him 3½d. apiece, overcharged	27	13	9
	That		



prisoners, with carters to drive them. As Velthoven was a foreigner, it will account for the extraordinary bad English in which his bill is written.

	l.	s.	d.
That he chargeth for extraordinary treats to 26 persons after sentence of death passed upon them, 7l. 16s. whereas he gave some only one pot of beer, some had a pot of beer, and two pounds of meat and bread, and some nothing at all, at 1s. a head, which is far more than they cost him, is 1l. 6s.—overcharged	6	10	0
Feb. 25th. He chargeth for 3 days diet of 68 officers, 30l. 12s. whereas all the meat cost him but	0	3	6
The beer at 3d. a pint	0	17	0
The cheese at 6d. per lb.	0	8	6
The biscuit at 1d. per piece	2	11	0
	4	0	0
overcharged	26	12	0

He charges for watching condemned persons, but inasmuch as where one watched, he sets down two, and where two he chargeth four or five, and when one night, sometimes a night and a day, or two nights; if he pays the men (which as yet he hath not) it will cost him 3l. 10s.—overcharged 7 0 0

7thly. He charges for executing 24 men, as paid by him 12l. when he pays the executioner, it will cost him but 6l.—overcharged 6 0 0

8thly. He chargeth for whipping 3 men, paid by him 15s. if he pays the executioner, it will cost him but 7s. 6d.—overcharged 0 7 6

9thly. When one or more are executed, he is allowed to charge 10s. for himself, for his day's attendance, and no more, as appears by his own account, fol. 14, where he chargeth but 10s. for executing 5 persons.

On the 13th of February, 1691, John Langton and John White were both hanged, fol. 3, he chargeth

	l.	s.	d.
For himself	0	10	0
For his lieutenant	0	4	0
For watching	0	10	0
For reading the sentence	0	2	6
For ladder	0	1	0
	1	7	6

Fol.

THE scowt master was another ancient staff officer, whose duties are described in this manuscript, in the following words.

Fol. 4. He chargeth them all over again for John White, saving that he says,	l.	s.	d.
15s. for watching, whereby he puts clear into his pocket - - -	1	12	0
11th. For the new gallows he bought for 1l. 5s. he overcharged my Lord Sgravemore 1l. and received of him for the same 2l. 5s. yet now chargeth 2l. 5s. to the king's account for them, whereby the king is wronged -	3	5	0
For burying men and horses, he chargeth 12l. 15s. but did not pay it.			
He chargeth for burying a man, who according to his sentence was left hanging on the gallows. N.B. Another paper respecting these charges, says, the men charged as buried were thrown into the river. He is there also charged 6l. for a lined tent, given to a lady of pleasure.			
He chargeth for extraordinary treats of seven foldiers of the Earl of Nassaw's regiment, after condemnation, 17s. 6d. he only gave them 7 quarts of beer, which cost him - - -	l.	s.	d.
Small beer - - - - -	0	0	6
More strong beer, a pint apiece - - - - -	0	0	7
More strong drink - - - - -	0	0	6
			<hr/>
	0	2	9
Besides what is undiscovered, there is overcharged - - - - -	217	18	9

J. HOFFELINGH,  
JOHN GOEDART.

JOHANNES HOFFELINGH, native of the Hague in Holland, aged 34 years, or thereabouts, maketh oath, that about the beginning of the month of October, Ao. Dni, 1691, Affarias Van Velthoven, the Dutch Provoe being in the camp before Limerick, in Ireland, gave one of the best horses in his troop to his son John Christian Van Velthoven, cadet in another company, making his trooper serve on foot. That in the month of November following, the said Van Velthoven gave Mrs. Mary Valentine (his lady of pleasure) one tent lyned with blew, and four very good harnesses for waggon horses belonging to their majesties. That the said Van Velthoven bought very bad horses for his troopers, one whereof cost him but three pounds, another two guineys, and another but two cobbys, or nine shillings and sixpence, in-somuch, that if they had occasion to ride five or six miles in one day (least they should founder) said Velthoven would often cause them to lide and walk on foot in their jack boots, to their no small fatigue.

THAT whilst the army was before Limmerick, and many died for want of bread, the said Velthoven, under pretence he had many prisoners in his custody, sent for great quantitys of bread

“ The OFFICE of the SCOWT MASTER in the fielde or camp, with the DUTIES belonging to the same.

FFIRST, the office of the scout master is, that he attend upon the highe marishall when he goeth to viewe the ground, where he intendeth to campe. Then must the said scowte master both view and see in what fort he may set the scowte, that when the trumpet foundeth to the watche at night, then must the said scowt master

---

bread from the king's stores, wherewith (to save charges) he caused his whole troop of horses to be fed, yet at the same time brought their majesties a Dutch guilder a day to account, for the keeping of each horse in his troop, giving as a reason for his knowledge, that he the deponent was under lieutenant to said Affarias Van Velthoven, and privie to the premises.

J. HOFFELINGH.

Sworne before the Commissioners of accompts, the 27th day of September, 1692.

ZYRACH GOUT, one of the troopers in his troop, also swears, that although the said Velthoven received money from their majesties in 1690, for the purchase of new boots and pistols for his troop, he bought such old ones, that the pistols were unserviceable, and the boots obliged to be new footed on their arrival in Ireland, for which he obliged his troopers to pay.

JOHN GOEDART also confirmed the former evidence, and further accused Velthoven of swapping away one of the best horses of his troop with one Capt. Young, for one so very old, that he was left behind in Ireland, as unserviceable, and also that before the said Van Velthoven went to Ireland, he kept three men for several months, ready for a false muster; that he received pay for a clerk, and an allowance for his horse, 37 guilders ten stivers for the first, and a guilder a day for the horse, and kept neither. This deponent was his upper lieutenant. His servant John, borne a Polander, also on oath, confirmed these accusations, and added several instances of his changing and selling the horses, furniture, &c. and also accused him of leaving in Dublin, with a cousin of Mrs. Valentine, a large portmanteau full of iron bars, chains, fetters, and other things useful for securing of prisoners, one other tent lined with blue, and the harness for four waggon horses, all which belonged to their majesties.

In Van Velthoven's answer to these charges many he denies, for several he pleads custom in Holland, and respecting Mrs. Valentine, he says the irons in question were sent to Holland by mistake, but that he has more irons with him than he received from the king, out of which he will make them good; with respect to false musters, he never was mustered himself, nor his company.

repaire to the tent of the generall of the horfemen, there the faid generall or his lieutenant fhall appoint certaine horfemen that attend on the fcowt, to be in the fcowt that night. Ffurthemore, the faid generall muft in anie wife gyve ftraight commandement unto the faid fcowt mafter after the relief be founded, that they fhall not, upon paine of deathe, ftirre from their charge before the fcurriers be come into the field to take their places, and then they may depart.

Also the faid fcowt mafter, when the trumpet foundeth the relief of the watch in the morninge, muft repair unto the lieutenant of the horfemen, there to receive at his hands fuche horfemen as the faid lieutenant fhall appoint to be in the fcurrage that daie.

ITEM, it is the office of the fcowt mafter, when he cometh into the field to fet and appoint the fcowrage, he muft appoint fome to the high hilles, that are thereabouts, to viewe and fe if they can difcover any thinge.

Also the faid fcowte mafter muft appointe one other companie of fcuragers, to fearch and viewe every valley thereabouts, that there be no enemies laid privlie for the anoyange of the faid campe, and if they do difcover anie, they are to advertife the fcowt mafter; and he muft either bring, or fend worde to the high marifhall of their advertifement, with fpeed.

THE faid fcowt mafter muft alfo contynuallie, bothe daie and night, be in the fiede himfelf, or appoint fome difcrete honeft man, whom he may truft in his abfence, to forefee that bothe the fcowte in the night feafon, and fcurriers in the daie, may do their duties that appertene to their charge; for there lieth a great charge of yt, as much as the life of the fcowt mafter is wurthe, if any thinge happen amiffe: and the faid fcowte mafter muft contynuallie bringe advertifement of all thinges that the fcowriers here or fe."

"THE Trench Mafter (fays Markham) hath command over all the pyoners, in all their works, and by his directions (i. e. the mafter general of the ordnance) feeth all manner of trenches caft up, whether it be for guard and inclofing of the campe, or for other particular annoyance to the enemye, or for the building of fconces, or other

defence or offence, as directions shall be given (f). This officer seems sometimes to have been stiled 'Devifour of the fortifications to be made.' In the list of the staff of the Duke of Somerset's army, employed against the Scots, at the battle of Muffelborough, Sir Richard Lee, Knight, held an office so denominated (g).

"THE Carriage Master-general or waggon master, amongst the Romans, was called impedimentorum magister, the master of the impediments or hinderances in the warres; for it is true, that from nicenesse and curiosity, first grew the foundation of this office; he hath the supream authority over all waggons, carriages, sledds and the like, and foreseeth that they march orderly, without cloying up the high waies, or doing foule annoyances one to the other in their marches, with a world of other observations which are too long to recite in that place (h)."

SIR James Turner (i), under the head of the waggon master, has the following curious particulars respecting that office.

EVERY regiment, whether of horse or foot, should have a waggon or a baggage master, and where the establishment of the prince doth allow him no pay, the colonel should order a sufficient serjeant or corporal to exercise that office by turns; these are to see, that every officer's baggage, from the highest to the lowest, march accordingly to the dignity and precedency of him to whom it belongs, whether it be carried on waggons, carts, or horses; but these regiment baggage masters are not to suffer the baggage of the regiments to march, till they have received their directions from the waggon master general, when and in what manner it shall be done. The waggon master general's charge is extremely toylsome, when an army marcheth, every night after the army comes to quarter, and every morning before it march, he must attend the major generals of the cavalry and

(f) SOLDIERS' Grammar, p. 128.

(g) SEE Patten's Account of the Expedition, printed by Richard Grafton, 1548.

(h) SEE Markham's Soldiers' Grammar, p. 128.

(i) PALLAS Armata, p. 276.

infantry, and receive his orders from them, if the whole army march together ; but if the cavalry march apart, then the major general of the foot gives the waggon master his instructions, particularly a list in what order the army is to march ; for ordinarily, regiments and brigades charge by turns, and their baggage must march in the same order that themselves do : the waggon master having got his list, he accordingly orders the regiment baggage masters (who are obliged to wait on him every morning) to cause their luggage march, wherein they may not fail ; for (unless some extraordinary occasion alters it) the prince, or in his absence, the commander in chief, his coach or coaches, with his waggons, go first ; then the whole train of artillery behind it ; the coaches and waggons of all the general officers, according to their dignity ; after them the waggons of that brigade that hath the van for that day, and so all the rest in order, according as the regiments or brigades march. If any waggons or baggage horses press to be before these, behind whom the waggon master general has ordered them to march, he may safely make prize of them, owne them who will. When the waggons come to a heath, or a champaign field, the waggon master should order the waggons to draw up, two, four, or five in rank, and to drive in that order so long as the ground permits them to do so, and this saves time, and makes dispatch ; and when they come to strait ground, they are to fall off, by the right hand, in that order wherein they were before ; the same course he is take with baggage horses.

THIS baggage master general is allowed to have two lieutenants ; so that if the army march three several ways (as sometimes it doth), himself and his two deputies serve to marshall the baggage of all the three. If the army is divided into two, or the cavalry march alone, one of his lieutenants goes along with the horse, the other stays with himself, and he is constantly to be there where the general of the army and train of artillery either marcheth or quartereth.

MANY times waggons are commanded to be burnt and destroyed ; sometimes all the women and most of the baggage are left behind at some garrison, and fortified place, or with the body of the infantry

and artillery, when expedition calls away all the horse, dragoons, and as many foot as are able to march lustily. In some of these occasions officers go fair to lose their waggons and some of their moveables.

WOMEN who follow an army may be ordered (if they can be ordered) in three ranks, or rather in classes, one below another; the first shall be of those who are ladies, and are the wives of the general and other principal commanders of the army, who for the most part are carried in coaches; but those coaches must drive according to the quality of them to whom the ladies belong, and as the baggage of their husbands is appointed to march by the waggon master general. The second class is of those who ride on horseback, and these must ride in no other place than where the baggage of the regiment to whom they belong marcheth, but they are very oft extravagant, gadding here and there, and therefore in some places they are put in companies, and have one or more to command and oversee them, called in Germany HUREWEIBLES, rulers or marshals of the whores; I have seen them ride, keep troop, rank and file, very well, after that captain of theirs who led them, and a banner with them which one of the women carried. The third class is of those who walk on foot, and are the wives of inferior officers and souldiers; these must walk beside the baggage of the several regiments to whom they belong, and over them the several regiment marshals have inspection. As woman was created to be a helper to man, so women are great helpers in armies, to their husbands, especially those of the lower condition, neither should they be rashly banisht out of armies; sent away they may be sometimes for weighty considerations; they provide, buy and dress their husband's meat, when their husbands are on duty, or newly come from it; they bring in fuel for fire, and wash their linens; and in such manner of employment, a souldier's wife may be helpful to others, and gain money to her husband and herself; especially they are useful in camp and leaguers, being permitted (which should not be refused them) to go some miles from the camp to buy victuals and other necessaries (k).

---

(k) FORMERLY the soldiers had boys to attend them, to provide fuel, fetch water, &c. these were

AT the long siege of Breda, made by Spinola, it was observed that the married souldiers fared better, looked more vigorously, and were able to do more duty, than the bachelors; and all the spite was done the poor women was to be called their husbands' mules, by those who would be glad to have had such mules for themselves. Among all these kinds of women in well ordered armies, there are none but those who are married; if there be any else upon examination made by the minister, priest, or consistory, they are put away with ignominy, at least should be, conformably to all articles of war.

BUT a strange story is writ by good authors of that famous duke of Alva, whose name is yet so hateful to most of the Netherlands; they say, at that time that he marched from Italy to the Lowe Countries, to reduce them to the obedience of his master, the king of Spain, a permission was given to courtezans to follow his army, but they were to ride in troops with banners; they had their several captainesses, and alfieras or the cornets, and other officers, who kept amongst them an exact discipline in all points that concerned their profession; they were divided into several squadrons, according to their quality; and that was distinguished no otherwise but by the difference of their beauties, faces, and features. Those of the best sort were permitted only to traffick with men of the highest quality; those of the second rank with commanders of great note; those of the third with officers of a lower condition; and those of the fourth degree with officers who were of the meanest quality, and souldiers, whom those of the other three ranks rejected. An excellent commonwealth! where it was prohibited under all grievous pains, not to suffer themselves to be courted by any either above or below the rank wherein they were placed, and that was impartially done, according to the talent nature had bestowed upon them; so that every common souldier, inferior person, or low officer, ensign, captain, colonel, or general commander, knew to whom

---

were called, garçions and goudjats, and in the French army so late as the beginning of the 16th century, one of these goudjats was allowed to every two souldiers: the English troops under Henry V. had a number of these boys.



they might address themselves, and from whom they might buy repentance ; a practice which, I suppose, never had a precedent in either Christian or Pagan army, and which, with an impudent face, loudly cried defiance to both religion and moral honesty.

“ The OFFICE of the CAPTEINE of the PIONERS in the field or campe, with the DUTIES thereto belonging.

FIRST the office of the captaine of the pioners ys, that after he hath knowledge of the lord lieutenant what number of pyoners he shall have under his charge, he ought to take a viewe of them, and to se that they be hable and strong men, to endure anie laboure (1).

ALSO he must appoint certaine capteines under him to hane the leading and government of them, whiche capteines ought to be readie at all tymes to bringe the pioners to worke where they shalbe appointed, and then to tarrye themselves to se them worke accordinglie.

(1) PIONEERS were not formerly taken from the troops, as has been the practice of late years, but were sturdy labourers, pressed and equipped for the service they were to perform. Several instances occur in Rymer of writs to the sheriffs of different counties, directing them to furnish miners, or other labourers, from their respective districts.

ABOUT the time of Queen Elizabeth, soldiers guilty of certain offences were degraded to pioneers; this is alluded to by Shakspeare, in the following speech of Othello:

I had been happy, if the general camp,  
Pioners and all, had tasted her sweet body,  
So I had nothing known.

In the ordinances of war of the earl of Northumberland, A. D. 1640, the following offences are liable to this punishment. “ If any trooper shall lose his horse or hackney ; or a footman any part of his armes by negligence or lewdnesse, by dice or cards : he or they shall remain in qualitie of pioners and scavengers, till they be furnish'd with as good as were lost, at their own charge.

“ If a trooper shall spoil his horse willingly, of purpose to be rid of the service ; he shall lose his horse, and remain in camp for a pioner.

“ A REGIMENT or company of horse or foot, that chargeth the enemy, and retreats before they come to handy strokes, shall answer it before a council of warr: and if the fault be found in the officers, they shall be banished the camp ; if in the souldiers, then every tenth-man shall be punished at discretion, and the rest serve for pioners and scavengers, till a worthy exploit take off the blot.”

ITEM, he must hane to every hundred pioners one clarke, who must everie morninge call them by their names, to se whether he want anie of his nomber or no, and if he want anie, he must make good enquirie whether these that are wantinge be sicke, deade, or ronne awaie ; and as he findethe the truth, so to make report to the chiefe capteine thereof.

ALSO he must appoint certaine victuallers to provide victualls for them, and to bringe yt to them where they worke, which victualls must brought to them at such hours as are appointed them to take their rest in ; and their victuallers shall receive victualles, and they shall have them brought to them when they do not worke, at suche place as they be commanded to bring them unto, for that they must alweies be kept together, to be redie at commandement.

THE said capteine of the pioners ought to goe withe the marishall when he goethe to viewe the grownd, where the campe shalbe pitched, that he may se whether the waie be easie and good for the great artillerie and other carriages, to passe or no ; and if he do perceive that the waie is not good, he must cause the pioners to mend it, against the artillerie and carriages do come, so as they maye hane readie passage without anie stoppe.

FFURTHER the said capteine of the pioners must attende upon the highe marischall to know whether the campe shall be entrenced about or not, and all tymes the said capteine and his pioners ought to be at the commandement of the highe marischall bothe daie and night, to do such thinges as he shall think most convenient to command them."

THE proviant master general was a commissary of provisions ; his office is described by Sir James Turner.

" SINCE money (says he) is generally scarce in the wars, infomuch that soldiars cannot receive their wages duly, let us see what allowance of meat and drink (ordinarily called proviant) princes allow their soldiery ; to furnish which every army should have a general proviant master ; and truly I conceive him to be an officer as necessary and usefull, if not more, in the fields, where mostly our modern armies are entertained with proviant, as either a general, commissary, or a treasurer : his charge is to provide victuals, corn, flesh, wine, bread,

and beer; he hath the inspection of them, and should see them equally and proportionably divided to the regiments, according to their several strengths; for which purpose he should have all the rolls and lists by him, which his secretaries should carefully keep. He hath no power to sell any proviant under what pretence soever, without the general's express warrant. All mills where the army comes are under his protection, and he is obliged to protect them. He hath the ordering of all the magazines for victuals, and to him belongs the care of seeing the garrisons and fortified places sufficiently provided with such meats and drinks as are most fit to preserve; these are, corn, grain and meal of several kinds, stock fish, herrings, and all other salted fishes; salted and hung fleshes, especially beef and bacon, cheese, butter, almonds, chestnuts, and hazel nuts, wine, beer, malt, honey, vinegar, oyl, tobacco, wood and coal for firing, and as many living oxen, cows, sheep and swine, hens and turkies, as can be conveniently fed; for which purpose, as also for horses, he is to provide straw, hay, and oats. This general proviant master hath under him a lieutenant, a secretary, a clerk, a smith, a waggon master, and a waggon maker, a quarter master, and some officers who are called directors.

“THERE are few princes who have not their particular establishment for their proviant, both in field and garrison, as well as for money; the order whereof commonly is this: they allow so much bread, flesh, wine or beer to every trooper and foot soldier, which ordinarily is alike to both; then they allow to the officers, according to their dignities and charges, double, triple, and quadruple portions; as to an ensign four times more than to a common souldier, a colonel commonly having twelve portions allowed him. The ordinary allowance for a soldier in the field is daily, two pound of bread, one pound of flesh, or in lieu of it, one pound of cheese, one pottle of wine, or in lieu of it, two pottles of beer. It is enough, cry the souldiers, we desire no more, it is enough in conscience. But this allowance will not last very long, they must be contented to march sometimes one whole week, and scarce get two pounds of bread all the while, and their officers as little as they; who, if they have no provisions of their own, carried about with them,

must be satisfied with commis-bread and cold water, as well as the common soldier, unless they have money to buy better entertainment from futlers. I have known captains give a very great demonstration of their patience, and their affection to their master's service, by satisfying their appetites with water, and very coarse bread, one whole summer, and part of the next winter."

THE custom of paying by provand is highly reprobated by Sir John Smythe, who says it was first introduced in the reign of Queen Elizabeth, among the English troops sent to the assistance of the States of Holland, his words are :

"AND now in the same later time, when all things should by all reason have been reduced into order and discipline, because the nature of the war was altered from mercenary and voluntary, to princely authority ; I mean the sommer before the earl of Leicester went over, our such men of war that had served divers yeares before in those parts devised a newe invention, never heard nor read of before amongst men of warre, but onely upon some great lackes and extremities, and that was that their foldiers insteade of pay with money, should be paid in provand, which was bread and cheefe, and other such victuall of the best cheape and basest sort, and that taxed by measure, saying, that it was not convenient that their fouldiours should receive their own payes, because they knew not how to lay out their money, but that they would spend it idly : which simplicity and ignorance, if it had been in them (as it was not) they and their officers by good instruction, should have reformed the same. But such covetous men of warre, under the pretence (as though their fouldiours had beene either naturall fooles or children) did, contrarie to all militarie order, put the greatest part of their fouldiours pay into their own purses, allowing them great scarcity of provand. By which means it come to passe, that diverse thousands of their fouldiours in those plentiful countries, partly by hunger and partly by evil lodging, and altogether by the small care and misuse of our such men of warre did perish. Besides that, great numbers of such their sicke and starved foldiers, by order of the earle of Leicester, were in those partes embarked and transported into Essex and Kent, and

other partes of England, to recover health ; of which foresaid great numbers of miserable and pitiful ghosts, or rather shaddowes of men, the Essex and Kentish carts and carters (that carried them) can testifie; of which scarce the fortieth man escaped with life.

“ ALSO, when any of their soldiers, through the naughtiness or scarcitie of their victuall, or by their evill lodging, or by the pestering, or lying of two or three hundred of them together in some one church, and so in divers churches, upon the bare pavements, or upon diverse other disorders and misusages of some of our such men of warre, fell sicke, our such men of warre did casse, and discharge them out of their bands for dead men, turning their provand money, with all overplusses into their own purses, procuring newe supplies of well apparelled and lusty young men out of Eugland, to the intent to serve their own turns, and to consume people after people. All which marveillous disorders of some of our such men of warre against their souldiers, contrary to all discipline militarie by them practised and used, with infinite others (which to rehearse would make a huge volume) were the occasion that manie thousands of the lustiest and disposst sort of our English people, were in those warres (as it were) wittingly and willingly cast away, besides great numbers, that at divers times did choosse rather to flie to the enemy, than to serve under such cruell and disordered chieftaines. And these wonderful disorders, with innumerable others, did continue and increase, untill such time as diverse young noblemen lately comming to take principall charges in those warres, as also divers knights and gentlemen of noble and of worshipful houses, and themselves of great valour and woorthines, did complaine of, and discover those most strange and wonderful abuses, unto the queene and to her counsell, who understanding thereof, did very nobly reforme and redresse diverse of those disorders, taking further orders that the foresaid newe devised provand should be abolished, and that in steade thereof, the souldiours should receive their own payes in money: which with the wise and worthie proceedings and courses of the foresaid noblemen, knights and gentlemen, that began with great order and discipline, to serve in those warres, some at, and others since, the going over of the earle of Leicester hath

of late greatly prevailed, and redounded to the reformation of diverse of those strange inventions and abuses, invented and brought into those warres by the aforefaide newe fantasied men of warre (m).

THE corporals of the field seem, by the description of their duties laid down in the treatise entitled the Military Art of Trayning, to have been something like our present majors of brigade; they rarely occur before the time of the Queens Mary or Elizabeth. "The corporal of the field," says the writer of that anonymous work, "is an office of good reputation, tho' of great paines, labour and industry: there are commonly four of them, of which two are alwayes attending on the marshall or generall, as their right hands, discharging by their endurances the governours of the campe of many travailes, cares and watchings: they ought either to be ancient captaines, casheer'd as we say in the altering and charging the list of the army; or experienced souldiers that know how to bestowe the companies, and where to order the regiments and ambuscadoes; but in no case they must be chosen either for favour or affection, because their service consists in knowledge and understanding the secrets of the warre, as having the overlooking of the colonels and captaines companies, that they march in order; the informing of the quarter masters what squadrons shall goe to the watch or other employments, the giving the alarums to the campe, as taking notice of the scowt master's direction; the acquainting the colonel of the regiment volantem, with any danger or busines; the overseeing of skirmishes, and so to certifie the marshall and serjeant major, where is any defect or neede of supply: and a continuall attending both night and day, as never out of employment when the enemy lodgeth neare, or any towne or place is besieged."

MARKHAM, in his Souldiers Grammar(n), says, "the forrage master

(m) SEE Sir John Smythe Proeme Dedicatorie, &c. to his booke entitled Certain Discourses, written by Sir John Smythe, Knight, anno 1590. See some account of this writer, in Wood's Athenæ Oxonienses; also Strype's Annals, vol. iv. p. 46; more of him idem, p. 296, 297, 298, 299.

(n) PAGE 128.

general is a principall dependant upon the lord marshall: to this officer's charge is delivered the disposing of all manner of horse provisions, as haye, corne, straw, grasse, forrage, and the like, and hee foreseeeth that all inferiour officers which have charge herein, do their duties truely, and that equal distribution be made, and no souldier be hindered of his true allowance, and where fault is, to see due punishment executed on the offenders." The work last cited likewise (o) gives the following detail of the function of this officer. " You have likewise belonging to the campe, a forage master, an office of great use and expectation, as attending on the lieutenant of the horse, who puts him in trust with a convoy and a trumpet, to fetch in necessaries, both of grasse and stuffer; so that when all thinges are ready, as the sound of the trumpet troopt them together, they must likewise returne by the sound of trumpet, without straggling, placing their forage horses in the midst; but if every horse carry the provision behinde him, then is he to foresee that no mischief happen by negligence or retardance."

THE judge marshal, by some stiled auditor general, and since called judge advocate, was an officer skilled in the civil, municipal, and martial laws: his office was to assist the marshall or general, in doubtful cases; he had a clerk who took down the proceedings. In the army sent to St. Quintins, there were two judges, each having a clerk. A judge marshal is also mentioned in the estimate of the army intended for the recovery of the palatinate.

SIR James Turner describes the qualifications and duty of a judge marshal in the following words. " He ought to be a grave and judicious person, who fears God, and hates vice, especially bribery. A lawyer he should be, in regard most articles of war have their rise from law, and many cases chance to be avoided in courts of war, where no military article is clear, but must be determined by the civil law, or by the municipal law of the prince, to whom the army belongs; and the judge marshal's duty is to inform the court what either of these laws provides in such cases; some princes remit the whole

---

(o) P. 25.

justice of the army so absolutely to the judge marshal, that they give him power to punish soldiers who transgress publick proclamations of himself, without the colonel's consent, yea, whether he will or not. The provost marshal general, and all the officers of justice of the army, whatever name they bear, are to obey the judge marshal's directions and orders. He may cause delinquents to be apprehended, and send them to the regiments to which they belong, with direction to the colonels to call regiment courts of war, at which he may appoint the provost marshal or his deputy to be present, and to appeal from it in case any unjust or partial sentence be pronounced. All complaints, whether in matters civil or criminal, are to be brought before him; and in many of them he hath power to give judgment himself, without any court, and in others he hath authority to oblige colonels to do justice, wherein if they fail, he may bring them before a general court, to answer for their partiality. All differences that are among merchants, tradesmen, mark tenters, and sutlers, who are permitted to frequent the army, or that happen between any of them and the officers and soldiers, are brought before him, and in them all (after due examination of the whole fact and witnesses) he hath power to judge and give sentence. He hath power to call together a general court of war, and to call such colonels to it as he thinks fit, but herein he seldom acts till the general or field marshal advise the matter with him. Such colonels as he cites to be assessors, and do not appear, he may fine, and by the fiscal exact the fines he hath imposed. He is bound to examine all prisoners of war, as also all such as frequent the army, and may be suspected to be spies. All testaments, contracts, and obligations between party and party, are judged to be in force, when they are signed and attested by him. He hath power of the measures and weights within the army, and may order the marshals to set fitting prices on all vendible things that are for back or belly. And he is to have a care that the provost marshals neither wrong the soldiers, nor the merchants, victuallers, or sutlers, and he is judge in any difference that may arise between them.

AMONG the Harleian manuscripts in the British Museum, there



is a copy of the form of a commission granted A.D. 1661, by Henry earl of Peterborough, to the judge advocate of the army employed in Africa, which, as it describes the duties of that office, I have transcribed in the note below (p). No name is mentioned, so that probably it was a rough draught of the commission for that appointment.

THE military surgeons of ancient times are very little mentioned in history; perhaps they were not in very great estimation (q); the superstitious abhorrence of what was deemed a violation of the dead, prevented their having an accurate knowledge of the human frame, which is only to be acquired by frequent dissections: the practice of those times seems to have been confined to the composition of certain oils, balms, and balsams, prepared with the grossest superstition, and administered under the rules of astrology. The low state of the art of surgery in France, even so late as the time of Francis I. contemporary

---

(p) HENRY, earl of Peterburgh, peer of England, lord Mordaunt, lord baron of Turvey, captain general, and commander in chief of all his majesty's forces raised or hereafter to be raised for his majesty's service, in the kingdoms of Suez, Fez, and Morocco, and governor of the city of Tanjer, and of all other cities, townes, castles, or villages which are or shall at any time hereafter be reduced to his majesty's obedience in the above mentioned dominions.

To . . . . . advocate to the army. By virtue of the power and authority to me given by his most excellent majesty Charles II. by the grace of God king of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland, defender of the faith, &c. I do hereby constitute and appoint you advocate as well in causes civil as criminall, in the army, raised or to be raised for his majesties service in the kingdoms of Suez, Fez, and Morocco, requiring and authorising you by all lawful means and by oaths of parties, to enquire of and examine all persons accused, delated, suspected, or defamed, for any crime or offence committed, or duties omitted, which are against the laws civil and ordinances of warre received or established, and after all such enquirey and examination, you are to pursue all such offenders to a condigne punishment, before myself or a counsell of warre, appointed in pursuance of the truth (trust) in you reposed, and your duty to his majesty. Given under my hand and seale att armes, the 12th day of October, 1661, in the 13th yeere of his majesties reigne.

Signed, PETERBURGH.

No. 6844, Bib. Harl.

(q) THIS seems probable from the persons with whom they are classed in the military code made at Mans, by Henry V. where under the head of the persons subject to the constable and marshal the medici are introduced in the following company: "Whether soldiers, shoemakers, taylors, barbers, physicians, or washerwomen. See Upton de Re Militari.

with Henry VIII. may be gathered from the following note (r). How terrible must have been the state of the military hospitals, and what numbers of men must have fallen a sacrifice to ignorance, who under proper management might have been recovered to the service of their country ; but bad as the surgeons were, some were nevertheless necessary in our armies ; and although the general mode of raising

---

(r) IN the year of our Lord, 1536, the victorious King Fraunces sent a great army into Piedmont to vitale Thurin, &c.—I was at that time but a young chirurgion, and but little experienced in the art, because I never had (as yet) seen the curation of wounds made by gun shot. True it is, I had read John de Vigo, his firste booke of wounds in generall, chap. 8. where he saith, that those wounds made by fiery engines do participate of venenosity, because of the powder, and for their curation he commands to cauterize them with the oile of elders, mixed with a little treacle. Yet neverthelesse because I would not be deceived, before I made use of the said boyling oile, knowing that it brought extreme paine to the patient, I observed the method of other chirurgions in the first dressing of such wounds, which was by the application and infusion of the aforesaid oile, as hot as possibly they could suffer it, with tents and setons : wherefore I became emboldened to do as they did. But in the end my oile failed me, so that I was constrained to use instead thereof, a digestive made of the yolk of an egge, oil of roses and terebinth. The night following I could hardly sleep at mine ease, fearing lest that for want of cauterizing, I should find my patients, on whom I had not used the aforesaid oyle, dead and empoysoned ; which made me rise early in the morning to visit them, where beyond my expectation, I found them on whom I had used the digestive medicine, to feele but little paine, and their wounds without inflammation or tumour, having rested well all that night : the rest, on whom the aforesaid oile was applied, I found them inclining to feavers, with greate paine, tumour and inflammation about their wounds : then I resolved with my selfe, never to burne so cruelly the wounded patients by gun-shot any more. A famous chirurgion at Turin, proposed a balm for gun-shot wounds as follows : two young whelps, one pound of earth worms, two pounds of the oil of lilies, six ounces of the terebinth of Venice, and one ounce of aqua vitæ ; in my presence he boiled the whelps alive in the said oil, untill the flesh deserted from the bones ; afterwards he took the worms, having before killed and purified them in white wine, to purge themselves of the earth, which they have always in their bodies ; being so prepared, he boiled them also in the said oil, till they became dry ; this he strained thorow a napkin without any great expression ; that doone hee added thereto the terebinth ; and lastly the aqua vitæ, and called God to witnesse that this was his balme, which he used in all wounds made by gun-shott, and in others which required suppuration ; withall praying me not to divulge his secret. Treasure of antient and modern times, being collections from Messrs. Francis Sanfovino, Anthony de Verdier, Loys Guyon, &c. London, 1619.

and paying them is not handed down, certainly some regular form of doing it must have existed.

IN the wardrobe account of the pay of the army raised against the Scots, by Edward II. in the 15th year of his reign, many of the Welch corps have an officer stiled Medicus; but whether by that term, a physician or a surgeon is meant, seems doubtful, as the word medicus is sometimes used for both a surgeon and an apothecary. None of these physicians or surgeons are charged to the English levies. And to the Welch they seem to bear no regular proportion to the number of private men; a corps of one thousand nine hundred and seven men having only one, and another of nine hundred and sixty-eight having two; the wages of all, except the two last named, was 6d. per diem each; those which were raised on the king's land in Cardiganshire had only 4d. each per diem.

IN the list of the troops that attended King Edward III. to the siege of Calais, only one surgeon is mentioned, who seems to have been part of the retinue of the prince of Wales; and in the military establishment of the 18th of the said reign, as given in the accounts of Walter Wentwayt, treasurer of the household (s), there is one surgeon for the king's household troops; four doctors, and one surgeon for the army of North Wales; two doctors and one surgeon for that of South Wales; a number by no means competent to the number of men to which they were appointed, supposing the inferior surgeons to have been stiled barbers; like the field shaver of the Germans, it seems reasonable to expect they would somewhere appear on the muster roll.

HENRY V. A.D. 1415, engaged Master Nicholas Colnet, a physician, to serve him for one whole year, in the voyage then to be made either to the dutchy of Guyenne or France. Colnet was to bring with him three archers. If the expedition went to Guyenne, he was to have for his own wages forty marks, and twenty marks for each of his archers, for the whole year. If to France, for his own wages 1s. and for each of his archers 6d. a day, with regards.

---

(s) MSS. in my possession.

IN the same year the king engaged Thomas de Morestede, a surgeon, who contracted to bring with him twelve other surgeons and three archers. Morestede was to be paid as a man at arms, 12d. by the day, and his twelve assistants and three archers each 6d. with the usual regard. The same conditions were covenanted in case the campaign lay in Guyenne, that were made with Colnet. Upon a petition, the king granted Morestede one waggon and two sumpter horses, for the carriage of the baggage and necessaries for himself and the twelve other surgeons. He likewise petitioned for money to buy necessaries for his office, but it was not granted.

THE next year the king employed Morestede, joining with him William Bredewardyn, with the title of his surgeons, in a commission to impress as many surgeons as they thought necessary for the expedition, with a sufficient number of artificers for making their instruments, to be taken wherever they could be found (t).

AMONG the different persons who indented in the 14th of Edward IV. to serve that king in Normandy and France, for one year, are the following physicians and surgeons (u).

Master Jacobus Fryle, king's physician, 2s. per diem, with two servants at 6d. per diem.

Master William Hobbis, physician and surgeon of the king's body, 18d. per diem.

Richard Felde	-	-	} Surgeons every one at XIIId. per diem.
Richard Elstie	-	-	
John Smith	-	-	
Richard Brightmore	-	-	
Thomas Colard	-	-	
Richard Clambre	-	-	
Symon Coll	-	-	

(t) RYMER, tom. 9. p. 362.

(u) MS. in the library of Thomas Astle, Esq; being an Abridgement of the Indentures for raising Soldiers for different kings, by Peter Le Neve Norrington; the original indentures are now remaining in the Paper Office.

William Coke	-	-	} Other furgeons, every one at Vld. per diem, for their attendance in the said service beyond sea.
Richard Smythys	-	-	
John Stanley	-	-	
John Denyfe	-	-	
Alexander Ledell	-	-	

It is remarkable, that here are just twelve furgeons, the same number that appears to have been employed on the expedition under Henry V.

In the expedition to St. Quintin's, in the reign of Philip and Mary, 1557, to an army consisting of five hundred heavy armed horse, five hundred light horse, four thousand foot, and two hundred pioneers, with officers and a train of artillery proportionable, there were fifty-seven furgeons, two of them belonging to the suite of the general, one to the lieutenant general, one to the high marischal, one to the general of the horsemen, one to the general of the infantry, and one to the master of the ordnance; all these at the daily pay of 1s. each. The remainder belonged to the corps of horse, light horse, and infantry, in the proportion of one surgeon to an hundred men; the daily pay of a surgeon of heavy horse was 2s. of light horse 1s. 6d. and of infantry 1s. No surgeon is charged for either the ordnance or pioneers (x).

BESIDES the king's pay, it seems as if the furgeons of former times, as well as those of late, received a weekly stoppage from the private men. This may be gathered from the following description of the duties of a military surgeon, written in the reign of Queen Elizabeth(y).

"SURGEONS shoulde be men of sobrietie, of good conscience, and skillfull in that science, able to heal all soares and woundes, specially to take oute a pellett of the same. All capitaines must have suche furgeons, and ought to see them to have all their oyles, balmes, salves, and instruments, and necessary stuffe to them belonging, allowinge and sparinge carriage for the same. That every souldier, at the paye

---

(x) No. 6844, Harleian MS.

(y) RALPH SMITH's MS. before quoted.

daye, doe give unto the furgeon 2d. "as in tymes past hathe beene accustomed," to the augmentation of his wages; in consideration whereof, the furgeon oughte readilie to employ his industrie uppon the foare and wounded souldiers, not intermedlinge with any other cures to them noysome. Regarde that the furgeon bee truelye paid his wages, and all money due to hym for cures, that bye the same hee maye bee able to provide all suche stufte as to him is needfull. Such furgeons muste weare their baldricke, whereby they may be knowen in the tyme of slaughter, it is their charter in the field (z)."

In an estimate made anno 1620, for an army of twenty-five thousand foot, five thousand horse, and twenty pieces of artillery, proposed by King James to be sent to the Palatinate, a number of furgeons are appointed, but no allowance or provision whatever appears in the estimate, for medicines or an hospital, although there is a very minute detail of almost every other necessary store; and this seems the more extraordinary, as many of the most experienced officers of that time were called in to assist in forming the estimate.

THE medicinal list appointed for this expedition were:

"In the general's trayne two phyicians, at 6s. 8d. per diem each; two apothecarys at 3s. 4d. and two furgeons, each at 6s. 8d.

"EVERY regiment of foot consisted of twelve companies of one hundred and fifty men each, and had one chief furgeon, at 4s. per diem, and another furgeon to each company at 1s. per diem.

"AMONG the general officers of horse is one chief furgeon at 4s. a day, probably to superintend the furgeons of troops.

"TO every troop, which was to consist of an hundred men, one furgeon was allotted, his daily pay 3s. 6d.

"TO the ordnance, pioneers, &c. there was allowed one barber

(z) FROM this passage it should seem that furgeons formerly wore a distinguishing belt over their shoulders, like that now used by the itinerant farriers, vulgarly stiled sow-gelders, in order to protect their persons whilst administering to the wounded in the field of battle, a circumstance now rendered unnecessary by the apparatus of bandages, &c. carried by furgeons attending a party where service is expected, or in a field of battle.

surgeon, at 2s. per diem, and two under barber surgeons, at 6d. a day each."

ONE reason may be assigned for our ancient armies being able to do with so small a number of surgeons, which is, that immediately after a battle such of the meaner sort of soldiers whose wounds seemed to require a considerable time for cure were by the general dismissed, with a small pecuniary provision to carry them home: this, according to Barnes's History of Edward III. was done immediately after the battle of Poitiers.

PERHAPS likewise the inferior surgeons, styled barbers, were taken from the ranks, and therefore paid and mustered as private men.

So much for the general and staff officers of our ancient armies. We now proceed to the enumeration and description of the duties of the officers attached to the several regiments and corps.

It seems uncertain at what time our armies were first divided into regiments, or rather, at what time that term was first introduced into our service; and the same difficulty occurs with respect to the rank and title of colonel(a). Sir James Turner, who appears to be the best informed military writer of his time, cannot solve that question; speaking of a regiment he says, "I shall define it to be a certain number of companies joined in one body under one head. This definition agrees with all regiments of whatsoever strength they be. There is not a definite number of companies ordained for each regiment; some consisting of six, some eight, some twelve, and some of twenty; but ten is now most ordinary, and formerly it was so when regiments were three thousand strong, and each company three hundred; yet I find, that in every French legion (which consisted of eighteen companies) there were about three hundred three and thirty men in each company, for every legion was six thousand strong. Nor is this word (regiment) one hundred years old, nor do I know of what language it is; in the

---

(a) SMITH, in his Military Dictionary, says, regiments were first instituted in England A.D. 1660, but cites no authority for his assertion.

French and Italian tongues it was called a legion, and so it was in Latin, and he who commanded in chief over it was called colonel and colonello (b); in Spanish it was called a *terzo* (c), and its commander *maestro del campo*; in High Dutch it was called *faulein*, and he who commanded it, *oberster*, which signifies superior or supreme. But colonel is now understood in all languages, and the word (regiment) however barbarous it be in itself, hath suppressed all other names and titles, and is now only used in all European tongues." From this assertion, and divers other concurrent circumstances, we may, without being very much mistaken, place the introduction of regiments and colonels about the reign of King Henry VIII. The ranks of lieutenant colonel, and serjeant major, as the office now styled major was originally called, do not seem to have been so soon adopted, for we find both the terms regiments and colonels in Fynes Morrison's Account of Queen Elizabeth's army in Ireland, A.D. 1600; but do not meet with those of lieutenant colonel, nor serjeant major, as regimental officers. Nor do they appear to have been generally established in the year 1591, for though a colonel general and a serjeant major are both mentioned in a military treatise, published that year by Gyles Clayton, the detail of their duties shew them to have been considered rather as general than regimental officers. We however find both these officers, with a description of their duties, in Ward's Animadversions of Warre, published A.D. 1639, from which it appears, there was little or no difference between the duty of those officers then and at the present time. "The office of a colonell (says he) is very honourable, and a place of great consequence in the army, wherefore he ought to bee a grave experienced souldier, religious, wise, temperate, and valiant; his

---

(b) THE term *tertio* was used to signify a corps or regiment, so late as the civil war under King Charles I.

(c) SOME derive the term colonel from the French word *colonne* or column, because the colonel marches at the head of the column. This officer is by some of our ancient military writers called *coronell*, *crownell*, and by Kelly (in his book entitled *Pallas Armata*, published 1627) *crowner*; the ensign he calls *handfigne*.



command is not of so high an extent as the serjeant major generall's is; for his command extends no further than tenne or twelve companies, which he is to see well ordered, and strictly governed; hee that hath his commission first is to be accounted the eldest, and is to take place both in quarters, and in the march, and so every one successively, according to the date of their commission. He hath under his command two special officers; his lieutenant colonell and serjeant major: his office is, in time of warre, to see his regiment compleate, and to order his divisions, and draw them into forme of battell; his place in the battell is various, according as he shall be commanded by the generall, but most usuall, he takes his place before the right wing of his owne regiment, ordering his officers, as he shall have directions from his superiors in authority; hee is to be forward in shewing good examples to his officers, that his worth and valour may not be blemished; his eye is to be duly upon his owne officers and souldiers, to rebuke them that are negligent and cowardly, and to animate those that are forward; hee ought to have all the colours of his regiment to be alike, both in colour and fashion, to avoide confusion, so that the souldiers may discern their owne regiment from the other troopes; likewise every particular captain of his regiment may have some small distinction in their colours, as their armes, or some embleme, or the like, so that one company may be discerned from another (d). Hee oughte in time of skirmishing in battell, to pry and take serious notice of the enemies battalias, how they are ordered, and what advantages are to be gained, which suddenly he is to encounter and atchieve; hee must be as cautelous and circumspect in taking notice how the enemye playes his game, as himselfe is to be wary and cunning in playing and managing his owne; hee is not to be put upon any desperate service, unlesse he hath the command of five hundred or a thousand souldiers; hee ought to be very expert in raising of fortifications, and in all kind of stratagems, in as ample a manner as the generall; because many times he hath the sole command in beleaguered towns, and in certain

---

(d) FORMERLY and till the reign of Queen Anne, each company had a colour.

quarters in the trenches against a fort beleaguered ; also many times hee is to command divers troopes as generall in some kind of services ; hee is to have a well-governed and religious preacher to his regiment, so that by his life and doctrine the souldiers may be drawne to goodnesse ; hee is to cause so many of his regiment as are to releve the watch, morning and evening, to be drawne in parado before the head of the quarters, where divine duties are to bee performed by the preacher amongst them : every sabbath day he is to have a sermon in his tent forenoon and afternoone, and every officer of his regiment is to compell his souldiers that are freed from the guard to repaire thither ; and that no futler shall drawe any beere in the time of divine service and sermon : hee is to have a special care to see such duties performed by his officers as are given them in charge : there is no impunity or remissnesse to be used in the warres, to any one that shall neglect or slight any duty or command : hee is to see that all guards, passages, and fortifications, wherein any of his regiment are to guard or maintaine, that it be sufficiently guarded with souldiers ; he seldome watcheth himselfe in person in the campe, only in beleaguered townes hee passeth upon his duty : hee is to cause his owne drumme to beate, to prepare for the relief of the watch, morning and evening ; likewise all the drums of the regiment are at the same time to beate ; hee is to appoint the captaine of the watch in his regiment ; the eldest captaine first beginneth, and successively one after another, according to their antiquity ; he hath only a lieutenant and ensigne, his lieutenant is titularly called captaine ; hee is to have a sufficient quarter master to his regiment ; hee is also to have an under marshall, whose office is to lay irons upon such delinquents as shall be committed to his charge ; hee is likewise to looke to all futlers, that no abuse be in their excessive prices or ill measures ; there are able and sufficient futlers to bee provided for his regiment. The colonell is to sit in counsell with the generall, and to advise accordinge to his wisedome and experience, about all state affaires : hee is to sit in the marshal's court, and to give his voyce for the punishing of delinquents ; hee is to be a man free from all vices ; hee is to be religious, grave, wise, and truly valiant.

“ A LIEUTENANT colonel of a regiment is a place of high consequence and great dignitie, being the second person in the regiment ; hee is not to be deficient in all kindes of literature, but to bee as able both in valour and experience as the colonel ; in regard in the colonel's absence, hee hath the sole ordering of the regiment, and upon all occasions as his colonel shall command, hee is to bee ready and dutifull to performe : there is much toyle and paines belonging to his office, in regard he frees the colonel's execution of his duties ; hee ought, in time and causes of present perill, to give his best advice to his colonel, and to give him notice of every particular passage in the regiment ; hee is not of his owne authority to act any thinge without his colonel's command ; all the captaines and officers of the regiment ought to respect and obey his commands ; hee is to see the regiment well ordered ; the watches set, and the guards duly relieved ; in time of battell, he is in many times commanded to draw up divisions to charge the enemy : in besieges hee relieves his colonel, taking his command by turnes : it is his charge to see to the regiment that all things are orderly performed, and that all necessaries be provided both for food and ammunition ; hee is to see every captaine demean himselfe faire to their companies, that their pay be duly distributed amongst the souldiers ; hee is to see their armes fixed and fitting for service : every captaine is to have two powder bougets, with powder, bullet and match ; hee is to command the captaines to drawe out their companies into the field, and to see them exercise them ; hee is to exercise every company in the regiment himselfe at his pleasure ; hee is to observe how every captaine clothes his souldiers, and to have his eare open to the complaints of poore distressed souldiers, and see them righted ; hee is to take notice of all quarrels and disputes among the officers, and endeavour to reconcile them, otherwise to lay his command on them, and to confine them to their lodgings untill his colonel understands of it ; hee is to release no delinquent from prison, that is laid in by the consent of his colonel ; hee is to sit in the marshall's court in the absence of his colonel ; hee is to see the serjeant major order the regiment for the march, and hee is to assist

him in ordering and drawing up the divisions into battalia; and to conclude, hee ought to be discreet, wise, valiant and religious, so that hee should be a patterne to all the officers of his regiment to steere their courses by.

“ A SERJEANT major is the third and principall officer of the field; hee ought to participate of all the perfections that officers of higher authority should have; his place and office doth somewhat correspond with the major general's, onely his duty is tending to officiate betweene the colonel and the officers of the regiment; he is to be learned in all the liberal sciences, he ought to have both speculative and practicke knowledge in all things belonging to his profession, he must be very civill, wise and discreet in his carriage and actions, in regard he is to manage a world of affaires of high consequence, which may serve to the conserving or ruining of the army; he is duly to attend his colonel's pleasure, and morning, noone, and night, he is to watch upon the major generall, and to receive such orders, as are by the generall of the army delivered unto him; hee is speedily to certifie his colonel what the orders are, and what the general's pleasure is, and also, with all celerity, to execute such things as his colonel shall give him in charge; he is not onely to be a good scholler and witty, but he must be quick in apprehension, and furnisht with an able memory; he must have a paper book, with pen and incke, to set down all orders and commands, that he may not erre nor vary one tittle from what was delivered him in charge: at drums-beat he is to repair to the general's tent, and take the word of the major general, and orders for that night's proceedings; then he is to repaire to his colonel's tent, where he is to deliver him the word, and to his lieutenant colonel, with such orders as he has received.

“ THE serjeants of every company of his regiment are to repaire to him, to take the word from him, with such orders as he shall give them, and they are speedily to acquaint their captaine and other officers with it; all the inferior serjeants are to stand round about him, and he is to deliver the word very privately in the ear of the serjeant which stands at his right hand, and he is secretly to whisper it in the eare of

the next, and so from one to another round, and the last man is to give it to the serjeant major againe, if the last man give it him wrong, then he must give it over again. He is to have them draw billets for their guards, in regard much disputes may arise, because many guards are more subject to the danger of the enemy, than some others are ; and also to prevent treason, so that no officer know his guard beforehand : hee is also to provide powder, match and bullets, and distribute it among the officers of his regiment ; he ought to have able officers to his owne company, because hee cannot tend unto them, his employments are so great ; hee ought to have a swift nagge, to carrye him about the quarters, and to visit his guards, for his businesse lyes very confusedly in the army ; hee is likewise to view all outward guards, both in the day time, and in the night, where his regiment hath command, every captaine is to give him the word, and from one guard to another he is to be guarded with certaine musquetiers ; hee is to instructe and shewe such of his officers as are to passe upon watch, where to place their sentinels and perdues ; he is likewise to shew every officer whether to draw his company to join with the rest in batalia ; if the enemy should give an alarme. He is to exercise all the companies of his regiment at convenient times.

“ THE office of a captaine being so honourable and a place of such great consequence, that it ought not slightly to bee considered of, wherefore they ought to be men of excellent quality, and of undaunted valiant resolution ; hee should not be inferior in knowledge and skill, and in all the circumstances and actions belonging to warre, in as profound a manner as the chiefeft officer of the field, for he hath a charge of great importance committed into him, hee being many times called to execute the office of serjeant major, or lieutenant colonel ; besides hee is exposed to all manner of danger in the warres, for no captaine but must leade on his men in the face of an enemy, and charge them in the teeth, which if he be not skilfull as well to leade them off as to draw them on, hee may be the occasion of spilling much blood ; hee ought not to be a man chosen altogether for birth, meanes, personage, favour or affection ; but for his wisedome, civility,

valour and experience ; the unexpertnesse of a captaine hath beene the ruine of armies and destruction of commonwealths : in the time of peace, every brave fellow desires to bee honoured with the name and charge of a captaine, but when warre approacheth, and the enemy is at hand, they quake their swords out of their scabbards, and had rather make use in fight of their wings then their tallents. A captaine ought to be well seene and read in all the liberal sciences, to be acquainted with history, and to have what speculative knowledge that may be to joyne with their practice ; all kinde of stratagems should be familiar with him, and nothing should be wanting that might make him an accomplished souldier : a captaine ought to have regard to the due exercising of his souldiers, fitting them in all points for service ; he ought to see his souldiers furnished with all things needful ; as armes, munition, and their weekly pay duely at the appoynted times ; hee is to be very conscionable in delivering them their off-reckonings and apparell ; he is to passe very strictly (if it be in time of warre) upon his watch ; being captaine of the watch, he is to command the gentlemen of the rounds to be set out, and to have the word given them ; if he be in the field he should lead out the perdues, and see them visited in due season ; then afterwards his lieutenant and other inferior officers are to do the like. If he be in garrison, in time of danger, hee is precisely to go the first round himselfe, being ayded with his serjeant and divers gentlemen, where he may viewe the strength and sufficiency of every guard, and how every officer doth dispose of his souldiers ; hee is to take the word of every officer in his round at every corps du guard. If he be incampt in the field, then he is to goe the patroule through his owne regiment, and cause all sutlers to extinguish their candles, and to suffer no drinking after the warning peece is discharged : if his company be two hundred strong, hee is to have foure corporalls, and to divide his company into foure even parts, viz. fifty souldiers in a corporal-ship : in the time of peace and being in garrison, one squadron onely watcheth, beginning with the eldest corporal-ship the first night, and so successively, one corporal-ship relieving the other : in time of warre, halfe or whole compa-

nies, specially being in the fieelde ; no guard should be relieved but once in twenty-four houres, hee is to make the choyce of the chief and ablest souldiers being men of quality, to be gentlemen of his company ; they are to guard with the captaine of the watch by turns, and to walke the round aboute all the walls and bulwarkes ; they are to give the word to the corporalls at every guard ; they are to discover the enemy, and to see the sentinells doe their duty ; which if they cannot, or mistake it, the guard is to charge them with their weapons, and apprehend them as enemies ; the captaine is to lay out these gentlemen perdue upon convenient passages and apt places, to discover if the enemy should fall out ; accordinge as the place is in distance from the enemies trenches, so must the number of perdues be laid, one a pretty distance behinde the other, so that if occasion bee, they maye retreat backe one to the other, and so give notice to the campe, that they may prepare for an assault: these are to be relieved every hour or half houre ; also the captaine to instruct his souldiers how to make an assault against the enemy, and also how to defend an assault: hee must be a good engineere, to knowe howe to raise all kinde of workes and trenches, and how to place his men upon the flankes to scowre the bulwarkes by the lyne of levell, upon a breste worke in the campe, hee is to place betwixt every two musquets, a pike, the musquetiers are to give fire and fall off, and another immediately to present in his place, the pikes are to stand firme: the captain is to have his armour of prooffe and a faire pike, for his offensive and defensive armes: hee is to have two great bougets made of dry neats leather, which will hold a hundred weight of powder apeece, to furnish his musquetiers withall: hee is to see the bandyliers filled with powder, with sufficient match and bullets; hee must ever be in readinesse to answer an allarum, and the first that shall charge the enemy ; if the enemy make his approaches against the campe, after the captaine hath drawne his men up to the parapet, to make resistance, and being all ready to give fire, hee is to command that no man gives fire until he gives order, and to suffer the enemy to come in as close as may bee, and then give him a brave volley of shot altogether in his teeth, one musquetire relieving

the other, the pikes charging manfully and stedfastly ; at all convenient times hee is to drill his souldiers very accurately, shewing them all the postures of the pike and musquet, then how to march, counter march, to double their files and rankes, the middle men to double to the front, to advance forwards, and to retreat backwards at the sound of the drumme, to wheele about his musquetiers, to make redy, present and give fire, to give fire in the front, in the reare and upon either flanke, to fall off by files and give fire, as we shall hereafter more largely discourse of. A captaine oughte to march into the field in the front of his company, and his lieutenant in the reare ; but marching out of the fiede the captaine's place is to bring up the reare, and the lieutenant to leade the company ; the ensigne is to march before the first division of pikes, the eldest serjeant is to bring up the next division of pikes, and another serjeant the last division of musquetiers.

“ THE captaine ought not to doe any reall act in the warres without commission from higher authority, he is to lead up the right wing of his musquetiers, to charge the enemy, and his lieutenant the left : when a captaine makes choice of a lieutenant, or ensigne, he is to drawe his company into armes, and one of the gentlemen is to carry the pattisen or colours, and being marched into the field, the captaine is to deliver the pattisen or colours (in the head of the troope) to the officer he hath made choice of, commanding the souldiers to take notice of him, and to obey him as their officer : he is to make choice of diligent serjeants and vigilant corporals, a trusty clerke, and good drummes ; he ought to have one waggon at the least, to carry his baggage, and to conducte sicke souldiers ; hee is to be as little pestered with luggage of his owne, or his souldiers, as possibly may be, lest it should hinder their march ; and also upon any service be rather forward to fight for goods, than have their mindes homewards, fearing to lose their own ; he ought not to be covetous nor niggardly, but forward to gratify all good services, with some guifts and courtesie, whereby he shall indeere his souldiers to be prodigall of their lives to doe him service : he must be familiar and eloquent in perswading and diswading his souldiers, and to stirre up their valors to undergoe pain



and perill ; if a fouldier transgreffe, he ought not to beate him, but to fend him to the provost marshall, to have irons laid on him ; by beating of a fouldier, a world of hatred will be stirred up, and happily private revenge ; he ought to be very careful to keepe his fouldiers in action, whereby idle expence of time (as drinking and playing) may be prevented, which usually ends in quarrelling and blood-shed : he is to have lanthornes and torches, suche as will burne in any storme and tempest, for they may stand him many times in great stead : he is to have his tent in the head of all his troope, and to be conversant with them, shewing them ensamples of hardship ; he ought always to have his colours and drumme in the field when he exerciseth his company, as well to give the more reputation unto the action, as also that the use of them may be well knowne.

“ LASTLY, a captaine ought to carry himself in such a way, that his fouldiers may both feare and love him ; too much familiarity breeds contempt, and to sterne a carriage begets hatred ; and so let him not over-value his life, but expose it to the fortune of the warre ; using his best skill and indeavours to annoy his enemies, and to be diligent and forward in executing such commands as authority enjoins him, and so to persist in a resolution to feare nothing but infamie.

“ AND I will conclude with an exhortation to all noble captaines, desiring them for their credits sake, and for the honour of our gracious king and wellfare of our kingdome, to be more diligent in the disciplining of their soldiers, and not to chop and change so many new men in their companies, that betweene muster and muster, the third part of the company are new untutored fellowes, that knowes not their right hand from their left ; so that it is a labor in vain to instruct them, and they are the meanes of putting all those that have some knowledge out of square, by their awckward doings ; besides all base beggarly fellowes are admitted into the muster rowle, when as the best and chiefeft yeomen ought to doe their king and country service in their owne persons. Then lastly, that every captaine would command his officers to instruct the pikes and musquets whilst the rest are a calling over, and then eyther himselfe or his lieutenant to exercise them in

groffe all their postures; and cause them to give fire in way of skirmish; and not to goe into the towne untill all the exercise bee finisht.

“ A LIEUTENANT is an office of high credit and reputation, and he ought in all respects to bee well indoctrinated and qualified in the arts military, and ought not to be inferiour in knowledge to any officer of higher authority; for an unskilfull captaine may better demeane himselfe with an experienced lieutenant, then an unskilful lieutenant can fadge with a skilful captaine; because all businesse belonging to a company is for the most part ordered by the lieutenant, the captaine having other employments of greate importance, hee is to see the company fitted in all respects for service; hee is the right hand to his captaine, in ayding and assisting him, as well in the brunt of battle, as in peace; hee is to see to the fitting and furnishing of all things necessary belonging to the company; hee is to keepe a perfect roule of all the fouldiers in the company, and to observe that every squadron be compleate; hee is to view the sufficiency and fixenesse of the armes, and to give order for the repaying of fuche as shall be found defective: he is to order and ranke the company fit for his captaine to marche with; hee is to divide his company into foure divisions; making two divisions of the pikes and two of the musquetieres; hee is to ranke the first division of musquets in the front, and the second division of musquets in the reare of the pikes; hee is to march in the reare of the company into the field; and in marching out of the field, the captaine is to march in the rear, and the lieutenant in the front; hee is carefully to passe upon his duty, to see the squadrons drawne to the guards for to watch; hee is to be very carefull and diligent in exercising his company; either by squadrons upon the guards, or the whole company in the field, assuming fit and convenient times; hee is to lead on the left wing of shot in time of service; in time of exercising, hee is to helpe order the company so that his captain may have the more ease and freedome; hee ought to be silent, and to cause silence in the company, during the time of his captaine's exercise; hee ought to bee in the reare of the company to instruct the fouldiers how to act and observe the captaine's commands; hee ought to call over the company, and to take a par-

particular survey of every defect ; hee ought to rule over the company, and take a particular survey of every foldier in his captaine's absence, for then hee is in absolute authority, and the souldiers are bound to obey him as their chief in all respects ; hee ought not to refuse to bee put upon any service by his captaine or colonel, or any chiefe officer of the field ; also he is not to bee sent upon any convoy, or to guard any passage without a sufficient troope of souldiers ; fifty or sixty at least ; if lesse, then the ensigne is of sufficiency to command them : hee is to view his captaine thrice a day, morne, noone and night, but especially in the time of warre, to see what hee hath to command him ; hee is to take notice of what discords, quarrels and debates arise amongst the souldiers of his band ; hee is to pacifie them if it may bee, otherwise to commit them : hee is to judge and determine such disputes with gravity and good speeches, and where the fault is, to make him acknowledge it, and crave pardon of the party hee hath abused : hee is duly to see the watch set, and to follow them to the guard, and see the sentinells set out, and give them their charge what they are to doe : if hee bee in the field, hee is to visit the sentry perdues very often : he is to command the foldiers in a kinde of perswasory way, to obey their corporals and serjeants ; wherefore hee ought to give good language, in a discreet and wise manner, to move and perswade them, with some reasons, to the observation and obedience of military discipline, disburthening his captaine of many toyles ; hee is to be careful that every souldier have a sufficient lodging in garrison, and in the field a hut : hee is also to take due care of the sicke and maymed, that they perish not for want of means or looking unto ; he is also to take care that the sutlers do not oppresse and rack the poor souldiers in their victuals and drinke ; he is to see the company provided with all kinde of ammunition, with axes, mattocks, spades and the like, to build their hutts withall ; these instruments are to have the marke of the gallowse set on them, in token of deathe to them that steale them ; hee is, in his captaine's absence, to sit in the christade or marshall's court, to define of the punishments which are to be inflicted upon delinquents and malefactours, their punishment going by most voyces ; hee is to

set a guard at his captaine's tent, and likewise at the cullours, where hee ought to give order for fitting a place to hang up loose armes; his hutt ought to bee in the head of the quarter upon the right hand, and the ensignes on the left, and the serjeants at the reare of the quarter; hee is to bee alwaies in readinesse to answer an allarum, and with all speed to draw his men, if they bee in garrison, to that part or guard his squadron hath the watch at; if in the campe, then to the brest-worke before their quarters, where hee is to place between each musquet a pike, for their better defence: in garrison hee is to bee captaine of the watch, in his captaine's stead, onely for the ease of his captaine; where hee must be very circumspect upon his guard; hee is to have his ensign and his serjeants to attend him, hee is to goe the first round with a serjeant and two gentlemen at the least to attend him, where hee is to take the word of every corporall, and to see that the sentinells bee duly plac'd out, and to give them charge to be very circumspect in their watches, that upon the sight of the enemy, or the seeing of their matches sparkle, or hearing their armour clatter, they presently informe the corporalls, so that an allarum may be given to the towne; but hee that shall give a false allarum is to be imprisoned. The lieutenant is to go the patroule with a sufficient guard about all the streets, within the night, to prevent treason in the town, or to discover fire or ill orders, as quarrelling, &c. Hee is to march in the morning with the major of the garrison, at the drumme beating, to the opening of the ports; hee is to be guarded with all the gentlemen of the round; in sommer time, at watch set, hee is to draw his men in parrado in the market place, with all the rest of the companies in the towne, their companies being compleate: if in the field and to goe upon service, hee ought to see prayers read in the head of the troopes every night; and every sabbath all those souldiers that have not the guard, hee is to compell them to goe to their colonel's tent to heare prayers and preaching; hee is to bee religious, valiant, and wise; his armes is only a gorget and pattisen.

“An ensigne, being the foundation of the company, ought to be endued with valour and wisedome, and to equal his superior officers in

skill, if it were possible ; the honour and reputation both of the capitaine and souldiers, depends upon the welfare of the colours, and contrarily there can be no greater dishonour than to lose them. I have read in history of ensignes, that rather than they would undergoe the dishonour of losing their colours, being so dangerously charged by the enemy, that either they must yield them up, or be slaine, have chosen rather to wrappe them about their bodies, and have leapt into the mercilesse waters, where they have perisht with their colours, most honourably to their immortal fames(e) : After any company is cashired, if the ensigne hath behaved himselfe honourably, the capitaine ought to bestow the colours on him as a favour : in the absence of his superior officers, hee is punctually to supply their places, and to passe upon those duties which they should ; whether it be to be capitaine of the watch, or to bee commanded out with some troopes for the guarding of some passage, to prevent the enemies approaches ; hee is to exercise his company in all their postures ; he ought to be gallantly appparelled, with a faire sword and brigandine ; if hee be commanded to passe upon any service with part of the company, he is not to carry his colours ; also, if the whole company are to guard some dangerous out-workes, as a halfe moone or a redoubt, the company is to troope thither, and he is to leave his colours in the quarters, with a sufficient guard over them, and hee is to take for his weapon a good pike.

“ ALSO, every souldier’s honour is highly engaged to defend and preserve their ensigne, and if occasion of necessity should happen, they must not spare to runne upon the pikes to relieve him, as divers valiant souldiers formerly have done : histories have eternized to their immortal fame, the honourable exploits of Capt. Morerula and his two brothers ; one of them being his ensigne at the siege of the citie of Africa, in Barbary, in Charles the Fifth’s time, when John de Vega, viceroy of Sicilia, scaled the walls of it ; this ensigne being fore wounded and overthrowne, his brother, being serjeant, seconded him, and recovered the

---

(e) ENSIGN EPPE, at the battle of Flanders, &c.

colours, who advancing forwards like a valiant souldier, was slaine; the captaine, brother to them both, tooke up the colours, and performed the ensigne's office; who in the scaling of the wall, was sore hurt, and died thereof: thus three valiant bretheren died honourably in defending their colours. If an ensigne should lose all his colours from the staffe and hose, it is no dishonour. When an army is drawne into batalia, the ensigne ought to stand out before the front of it, some five paces; and if the generall, or some other chiefe officer of the fiede pass by, he is gently to vaile his colours, holding the butte end of his staffe at his girdlested: also a maxime that no souldier moves hat or helmet to the greatest commander that is, but only to bow his body to him; likewise, in time of battell, the ensigne is to withdraw himselfe for his safety into the middlemost ranke of the pikes; likewise in a march the ensigne is to march before the first division of pikes, with his flying colours. If a kinge or great prince passeth by, the ensigne is to vaile his colours close to the ground, with his knee bending, in token of allegiance and submission; every ensigne of private companies ought to observe how the ensigne of the right hand of the battell orders his colours, after the same manner hee is to order his; every souldier upon an allarme is speedily to repaire to his colours; likewise not to forsake them until they be lodged; when any company shall march either into campe, guard, fortresse, or castle, no souldier ought to disarme himselfe, untill they see first the colours placed, and the ensigne disarmed; likewise no sooner shall a souldier see the ensigne take up his colours, but they should arme and ranke themselves immediately.

“No ensigne ought to disarme himself upon any guard, campe, or field, untill hee sees that with safety he may doe it: likewise an ensigne should shew himselfe forwardest with his colours in assaulting a fort, or entering a breach, to encourage the souldiers manfully to fall on to defend and make way for them: he ought to behave himself so, that he may gain the love of all the souldiers, whereby his owne person shall be in the more safetie, when he shall attempt any perillous exploits, for love will command a souldier to fight, when all things in

the world else cannot spur him forwards; and let him know that the vertue of the ensigne setteth forth the vertue and valour of the captaine and his whole band. I could wish our noble captaines would be pleased to be more circumspect in their election of officers, and not to put undeserving fellowes of base birth and qualitie into place of comand, which deserves gentlemen of quality to officiate, the office of the ensigne being a place of repute and honour, doth not sute every yeoman, taylor, or fidler; as I have knowne to one company in Essex, all these or the like mechanick fellowes have had the honour to beare the colours before a generous captaine of noble birth, whose name I forbear to relate, but let it be an item to all generous captaines to make choyce of officers that are well bred and deserving; otherwise they doe but disgrace themselves, and abuse his Majestie's service, and the reputation of our countrey."

VENN, in his *Military Observations* (f), is very copious in treating on ensigns or colours, their dignity, the disgraces to which they are liable, the use and ordering of them, with the postures and flourishes thereunto belonging: these, as they contain divers curious regulations, as well as ancient customs, are laid before the reader in the Appendix, No. 3.

THE officer next in command, in a company of foot, is a non-commissioned one, namely the serjeant, whose duty is thus described by Ward.

"A serjeant of a company ought to be a man of good experience, and sufficiently instructed in all martial exercises. He ought to be learned both in writing and arithmetic; he is always to have a squadron-rowle about him, wherein hee should distinguish every man by the armes he beares; his duty is, when the drumme beates for the watch setting, to repaire with his holberd to his colours, where he ought to call over particularly every souldier of that squadron, and view the fixennesse of their armes, and what match, bullets, and powder every man hath; he is to rancke the squadron; and if no

---

(f) *MILITARY and Maritime Discipline in three books, &c.* by Captain Thomas Venn, published 1672.

superior officer bee there, he is troope away with them to the guard, with his holberd advanced.

“ HEE is to attend the coming of the major of a garrison, or the serjeant major of his regiment (if they bee intrencht in the field) for the watchword ; and to receive such orders from him, as he hath received from the serjeant major generall of the army, or from the governor of the garrison, he is to give the word to his captaine first, if he bee in the place, and then to each superior officer, and lastly to the corporall ; the eldest serjant in a march leadeth up the division of musquetiers in the reare ; in time of training, they are to looke that every man keeps his rankes and files duly, helpe order the company all the time of exercise : in time of warre, he is employed upon parties which are sent out to discover, or to fetch in bootie and farrage ; likewise many times to the guarding of passages ; also in laying out of perdues, and visiting them ; also in ordering of troops that are drawne out to charge some part of the enemy, where he is to bring up the musquetiers to his superior officer, in good order to skirmish, and to give fire upon the enemy, and so orderly to leade them off againe, seeing them ranke themselves fairly, and causing them to make ready their peeces to come up and fire againe ; also in retreite, he ought to assist the souldiers discreetly in keeping their orders, lest confusion betide them ; also in time of fight, to see the foldiers bandaliers filled ready, that no stay bee made, and to see the powder transported after them securely ; he is also (when his captaine is captaine of the watch) to call out the gentlemen of the round to doe their duties, and to give them the word ; he ought to assigne every souldier his due and proper place to marche in, that no contention may arise ; hee is to place the chief gentlemen in the front, on the right hand file ; the next in degree to lead the left hand file, so placing every man according to his degree ; hee ought to see that every corporall be a musquetiere ; hee is to fetch the powder, shot, and match from the magazene, and distribute it to each corporall, and so to each soldier of their squadron : hee is, at his captaine’s command, to carry all delinquents to prison, and see irons put upon them ; if scarcity of victuals should be in the



campe, he is to procure it from the ammunitioner of the army, lest the company fall in want, which being procured, hee is to distribute it to the corporalls, and they to their squadrons; hee is also to instruct the drummes the true tone of beating, viz. a call, a march, a troope, a charge, an allarime, a retraite, &c. hee ought to be resolute and forward in times of skirmishing, shewing worthy examples to the souldiers, that they might imitate him; hee ought, by his serviceablenesse and care, to gaine the love of the whole company; it must be farre from him to be addicted to the hellish vice of drinking, drabbing or dicing, using his best endeavours to shame suche as should in that kind transgresse; also he is not to permit any souldier that is in drinke to performe any duty of charge for that time, for feare of sleeping or quarrelling, whereby much inconveniencies may ensue; but rather seeke to punish him severely, that all may take example by him, to beware of the like oversight: hee is every night at drum beating to draw billets for his guard, and accordingly to leade his squadron to it (g); and thus behaving himselfe wisely and valiantly, hee shall gaine honour and reputation, which will be steps to advance him to higher fortunes: and to define the office of a serjeant truly, hee is to bee the eye, eare, mouth, hand, and feet of his superior officers. I could wish our serjeants of bands here in England were thus qualified, for their captaines sakes; but I fear the blind will leade the blind, and so fall both into the ditch; it were happy if they would endeavour to learne to understand their office against his majesty should have occasion to use them."

SIR James Turner in his *Pallas Armata*, p. 220, defines the duty of a serjeant in substance pretty similar to the description of it here given; but adds, that a serjeant hath power to correct the soldiers with his halbert and sword, and commit to prison any soldier.

THE corporal, or more properly the caporal, is the next in rank to the serjeant; his title is of Italian origin, derived from capo, which

---

(g) IF the guard bee at a port, then the serjant is to guard with his holbert all the day, with the squadron, and many times all night in times of danger.

signifies head, he being the capo de escadra, or chief of his squad or squadron. "A caporal," says Sir James Turner, "ought to be an experienced, vigilant, and laborious foldier; he hath an absolute command of his squadron, neither may any in it disobey him; if any do, the caporal may beat him with his sword, and commit him to prison: when a musquet rest was in fashion, he was permitted to beat with it. He is to warn all his squadron, or a part of it (according as he receives order) to the watch, or to be sent on party or other duties; upon the watch the corporal (having got his orders from his superiors) appoints when, where, and how long each of his men are to stand centinel, and he is bound to teach them how they are to behave themselves when centinels, and is to visit them frequently; but if he finds any of them asleep, he must not leave him as he found him, as an Athenian captain did (who kill'd a sleeping centinel), but he must bring him to the corps de guard, and there make him prisoner till further order. The caporal is to receive the rounds at his court of guard, and take the word from them, but of this I shall tell you more in another place; he is also obliged, when he is not on the watch, to teach all that belong to his squadron their postures, and to handle their arms. So you see this caporal of ours hath work enough to do for all the pay or wages he gets."

THE lancepesata, anspesade, or, as the present term is, lance corporal, was originally a man at arms or trooper, who having broken his lance on the enemy, and lost his horse in fight, was entertained, as a volunteer assistant to a captain of foot, receiving his pay as a trooper (h), until he could remount himself; from being the companion of the captain, he was soon degraded to the assistant of the corporal, and at present does the duty of that officer, on the pay of a private foldier (i).

---

(h) PERE Daniel, tom. ii. p. 71.

(i) LANCESPESATE is a word derived from the Italian, lance-spesata, which is a broken or spent lance. He is a gentleman of no ancient standing in the militia, for he draws his pedigree.

DISBANDED officers, called reformado's, or reformed, sometimes carried arms as privates, till they could be re-inflated. These gentlemen, Sir James Turner says, were in some places permitted to be without arms.

A GENTLEMAN of a company is a term that frequently occurs among our ancient military writers; these seem to have been a kind of cadets, except that they had greater pay than the private men, arising, as it seems, from some allowance from the captain or colonel. Sir James Turner describes a gentleman of a company as one something more than an ordinary foldier, having a little more pay, and who did not stand centinel.

A MILITARY manuscript in the British museum (k), recommends, "that a number of wise and worthy foldiers should be retained by the colonel to be gentlemen of his company, lance spezzates, or to serve for extraordinary lieutenants, whom he should not only use and entreat well, with an advantage in their pay, but alsoe feast them, cherish them, and set them oftymes by course at his own table, and always shew them a courteous countenance."

THE office of drum major does not appear to have been universally admitted into our service till about the latter end of the reign of King

degree from the time of the wars, between Francis I. and his son Henry II. kings of France, on the one part; and the Emperor Charles V. and his brother-in-law the Duke of Savoy, on the other part; in those wars when a gentleman of a troop of horse, in any skirmish, battle or rencounter, had broke his lance on the enemy, and lost his horse in the scuffle, he was entertain'd (under the name of a broken lance) by a captain of a foot company as his comerade, till he was again mounted. But as all good orders fall soon from their primitive institution, so in a short time our *Monfieur Lancefepata* (for so he was called) was forced to descend from being the captain's comerade, and become the caporal's companion, and assisted him in the exercise of his charge, and therefore was sometimes called by the French, *aide caporal*. But when the caporal grew weary of the comradship of his lancefepata, he made him officiate under him, and for that, had some allowance of pay more than the common souldier. See Sir James Turner, in *Pallas Armata*, page 219.

(k) No. 5109. Bib. Harl. A colonel, his charge and emploiment notably demonstrated by E. D. late commander in the Lowe Countries.

Charles I. Sir James Turner positively denies the existence of such an officer in our service at the time he wrote.

"THERE is, (says he) another inconsiderable staff officer in most armies, yet necessary enough in all regiments of foot, and that is the drummer-major, the French call him colonel drummer: hee is to receive his directions from the major of the regiment, at what hour he is to beat to the watch, when the dian, and when the tap-too, wherewith he is to acquaint the severall drummers of companies and to appoint them by turns for their beatings: he is also to order them in what divisions each of them shall beat, when the regiment marcheth; and they are to obey all his directions punctually. In some places he gets a third more of pay than other drummers, but here at home we acknowledge no such creature."

NOTWITHSTANDING this, the drum major is mentioned by Ward (l) and Venn (m), and his duty described; possibly some regiments who had served abroad, might have adopted that appointment.

EVERY company had one or two drummers, according to its strength, and sometimes a phifer, by old writers often stiled whiffers (n), tho' I am apt to think there was some small difference in the instrument, as in the list of the forces sent to St. Quintin's, both fifers and whiffers are mentioned. The qualifications of drummers and fifers are thus laid down by Ralph Smith.

(l) P. 194.

(m) P. 193.

(n) It is mentioned in this sense by Shakspere, in Henry V. act 4. sc. ult.

——— Behold the British beach  
 Pales in the flood, with men, with wives, and boys,  
 Whose shouts and claps out-voice the deep-mouth'd sea,  
 Which like a mighty whiffler 'fore the king,  
 Seems to prepare the way.

SOME derive this from the old French word, *viffleur*, but no such word occurs in either Cotgrave, Lacombe, Richelet, or Boyer.

THE fife is of German origin, and called by Sir James Turner and other old writers, the *Allamaine whistle*.

" ALL captains must have drommes and ffifes and men to use the same, whoe shoulde be faithfull, secrette, and ingenious, of able personage to use their instruments and office, of fundrie languages; for oftentimes they bee sente to parley with their enemies, to sommon their fforts or townes, to redeeme and conducte prysoners and dyverse other messages, which of necessitie requireth language. If such drommes and ffifes shoulde fortune to fall into the handes of the enemies, noe guifte nor force shoulde cause them to disclose any secrettes that they knowe. They must ofte practise theire instruments, teache the companye the foundes of the marche, allarum, approche, assaulte, bataille, retreate, skirmishe, or any other callinge that of necessitie shoulde be knowen. They muste be obediente to the commande-mente of theyre captaine and ensigne, when as they shall commande them to comme, goe, or stande, or founde their retreate, or other callinge. Many thinges else belonge to their office, as in dyverse places of this treatise shal be saide."

It does not appear that drummers were at this time employed to execute the sentences of courts martial; indeed we learn from the account of Assarius Velthoven, the provost martial, page 253, that it was the duty of that officer, or his deputies, to execute all corporal punishments, for which he made a charge in his contingent bill; so that the custom of having those punishments inflicted by the drummers, seems to have taken place after the reign of King William (o). From the following passages in Sir James Turner it looks as if every regiment was not entitled to fifers on the establishment, but that they were paid by the captain or colonel: "with us," says he, "any captain may keep a piper in his company, and maintain him too, for no pay is allowed him, perhaps just as much as he deserveth."

---

(o) SIR James Turner, p. 223, says, "where regimental hangmen are wanting, capital crimes must be punished by harquebusiers, and scourging must be converted into the gat-loupe;" and further, treating of the regimental provost marshal, says, "he is to be present at the execution of every sentence; and when a soldier is to run the gat-loupe, he is to give him the first lash."

**FIFES** were for a long time laid aside in our armies, and only revived about the year 1745, by the Duke of Cumberland, who introduced them into the guards; the first marching regiment that adopted them was the 19th, in the year 1747. Fifers were afterwards only allowed to the grenadier company; but most of the drummers were taught the use of the fife as well as of the drum.

A **CLERK** of a company frequently occurs in the military writers of the last century, but he seems rather to have been the servant of the captain, than any part of the military establishment of the corps; at least no additional payment was allowed to him over and above that of a private soldier. The qualifications required in a clerk of a company were integrity, sobriety, writing a good hand, and a sufficient skill in arithmetick, to enable him to keep the accounts of the company.

**THESE** were the officers, commissioned and non-commissioned, usually found in a regiment of infantry, till about the middle of the seventeenth century; since which, one distinguished by the title of a staff officer (p), has been added to every battalion; this is the adjutant or aide major. Each regiment of cavalry has also an adjutant.

**THIS** officer, particularly from the term aide major, seems to have been borrowed from the French, and was, according to Father Daniel, not introduced into that service before the year 1666. No such officer is mentioned by Ralph Smith, Davis, Ward, Markham, Venn, or Sir James Turner; but we find him in the list of the army reviewed upon Putney Heath, in the year 1684. It is the peculiar duty of the adjutant to superintend the drilling of the recruits and awkward men; to receive the orders from the brigade major, and to deliver

---

(p) A **STAFF** officer is one whose duty is not confined to any single company, but lies equally with the whole corps, battalion, or regiment. The commissioned staff officers of a corps of infantry are the chaplain, adjutant, quarter master, and surgeon. The surgeons mates (now called assistant surgeons), though reckoned among the staff, have only warrants from the colonel. The quarter masters of cavalry are warrant officers, except those of the blues, who have the king's commission. The duty of an ancient regimental quarter master has been described under the article of herberger; the more modern duties will occur in the article of quarters.

them out to the serjeants, together with the particular regimental orders given by the commanding officer. The adjutant is charged with making out all the returns, and overlooking all the executions of the sentences of regimental courts martial. He, as well as the major, is to be on horseback when the whole regiment is under arms. In camp and in garrison the adjutant is to parade all guards, to see the men are properly dressed, that their arms are clean and in good order, and that they have their number of cartridges. In short, there is scarce any duty going forwards in a regiment, without the adjutant having some share in it. As the adjutant is an assistant to the major, in like manner he is assisted by the chief serjeant, styled serjeant major.

THE field, staff, and regimental officers of the cavalry have in part been already mentioned; I shall nevertheless, from Markham, give a description of the appointments of the commission and non-commission officers of a troop, about the middle of the seventeenth century.

“ Now for the arming of the superior officers of these troops, you shall understand that a captain of cuirassiers may be armed at all peeces, cap a pe, in such sort as I shewed for the gentlemen at armes, only he shall have no launce nor battle axe, but only his pistols and sword; his own head, his horse's head, and his horse's buttocks may be plumed; he may lead his men with a white truncheon charged on his right thigh. His place is on the head of his troope before the trumpet; he hath the absolute government of his troope, both for instruction and maintenance: onely he is to receive all speciall orders from his collonel, his collonel from the serjeant major of the field, and the serjeant major from the marshall.

“ THE lieutenant may be armed to the knee like the captain, and his own head and his horse's plumed; his place is the reare, and in marches he may carry a truncheon, but of a thicker size than that of the captain's.

“ THE cornet shall be armed and horst in all points both defensive and offensive like the lieutenant, onely instead of the truncheon, hee shall carry charged on his right thigh, his captain's cornet, which (being a private captain) should be compounded of colour and mettall impaled,

that is, the one half colour, the other mettall. The substance of the cornet should bee of damaske, and the forme must be almost square (only a little longer from the staffe, then on the staffe) and fringed about sutable. The staffe should be small, like a foot ensigne, and not so long as an ordinary launce; it must be headed with steele, and either guilt or filvered; with faire tassels suitable to the cornet. If the cornet belong to a great officer, it shall then be of one entire colour, of lesse quantitie, and still square; and in this cornet, the captaine may carry devise and word, or else none, at his own pleasure.

“THE trumpet is not bound to any armes at all, more than his sword, which in former times was not allowed, but with the point broken: he shall have a faire trumpet, with cordons suitable to the captaine's colours, and to his trumpet shall be made fast a faire banner, containing his captaine's full coat armour; he may weare a scarfe and feather, and all other ordinary accoutrements of a horseman; and for his horse, it shall be a good hackney, with gentleman-like furniture.

“THE corporalls shall be armed at all points, and horst like the maine body of the troope, onely in their right hands they shall carry truncheons; for their office is to be like the serjeants of foot companies, to ride extravagantly up and down on either side the troope, and to see them keep their rankes and files, and that all thinges may bee performed which shall come from the captaine's direction. They are likewise to supply and doe all the duties of corporalls and lampreza-does of foote, both upon scoutes, watches, and guards, as also to looke to the provision of all necessary things which appertaine to the troope, and where their own power cannot reforme, there to informe their superior officers; and therefore these officers are to be chosen out of the troope, as the principall and best understanding men therein.

“THE captaine of the hargobuffieres shall be armed, horst, and accoutered, at all points, like the lieutenant of cuirassieres, and the lieutenant of the hargobuffieres like the cornet of cuirassieres; and the cornet of hargobuffieres like a private gentleman of the troope of cuirassieres.

“THE captaine of dragons shall be armed like the lieutenant of the



hargobuffieres, the lieutenant of dragons like the cornet of hargobuffieres, the cornet and pistols excepted (for he shall carry the weapons of his owne troope), and the guydon (for these shall not be led with a cornet) of the dragons shall be armed like a private gentleman of the hargobuffieres; and here is to be noted, that the difference betwixt the cornet and the guidon is much; for the guidon is the first colours that any commander of horse can let flie in the field; this guydon is of damask fringed, and may be charged either with the crest of him that is the owner thereof, or with other devise at his pleasure; it is in proportion three foot at the least deepe in the top, next the staffe, and upon the staffe, and so extendeth downe narrower and narrower to the bottome, where the ende is sharpe, but with a slit divided into two peaks a foot deepe; the whole guidon is fixe foote longe, and shoulde be carried upon a lance staffe. If the captaine (owner of this guidon) shall doe a good daies service, or produce from his vertue something worthy advancement, so that he is called to a better command, as to lead hargobuffieres or cuirassieres, then the generall or officer in chiefe shall with a knife cut away the two peaks, and then it is made a cornet, which is longer one way than another, if (after that) hee doe any thing worthily, whereby he is made by the king or supreme, either bannaret or baron, then shall his cornet be made just square in forme of a banner, whiche none may carry in the fiede on horseback, under those degrees; now if these noble customes be neglected, and that men out of ambition, usurpation, ignorance, or connivance, take to themselves other liberties; let those great knowledges which have command of armies reforme it; or else vertue will sit mourning at the ladder foote, because shee hath not one true round left to mount by."

SIR James Turner gives the following list of the officers of a troop of cavalry, which evidently appears to have been taken from the Germans.

"THE stronger the troop be, it should have the more corporals, who begin now to be qualified with the title of brigadiers, for it seems not proportionable for a troop of one hundred and twenty to have no more corporals than a troop of sixty or seventy. Yet for most part

now all troops have a like number of officers ; and these are the captain or ritmaster, the lieutenant, the cornet, the quarter master, three corporals or brigadiers, two trumpeters, some have three, and some four, a fadler and a smith, and some allow a chirurgeon, and a clerk. Many troops have no allowance for the last four, though all four are very necessary ; in some places, if a chirurgeon be allowed for every regiment, it is thought very fair ; many ritmasters entertain a fadler and a smith in their troops, allowing them the pay of troopers, and what benefit else they can make by their several trades ; but if all who ride in the troop be gentlemen, they will not permit these two mechanics to ride with them ; yet my opinion is, since all who ride now in troops are not gentlemen, they may, without any disparagement, suffer a smith and a fadler to ride in rank with them, being they are profitable members of that little commonwealth. It is, I think, an oversight that a clerk is not allowed for every company of horse, for a quarter master hath enough to do otherwise, though he be not bound to officiate for the clerk, to receive the pay of the troop, and give it out, and keep the accounts of it ; unless you will say, that the paying money to a troop falls out so seldom, that the receiving it will be rather a divertisement than a trouble to the quarter master.

“ HAVING spoke to the duties of a captain, lieutenant, and ensign-bearer of a foot company, I have nothing to add to the duties of a ritmaster, lieutenant, and cornet ; but between the quarter masters of foot and horse there is the difference, that the first hath no command, but the second hath, in other duties there is none. But I shall tell the quarter masters of horse, that they should have skill in castrametation, as much as the foot quarter masters have, and rather more ; for the last look only to the regular quartering of men in the field, the first to the quartering of both men and horses. A corporal of horse should have experience, for he either affits the lieutenant in placing or setting the guards, or he doth it himself without his lieutenant ; he sets the centinels and sees them reliev'd ; and orders the patrouels, which are rounds. He is to ride in rank, and if the troop march not in breast, but in three several squadrons, then there is a corporal .

on the right hand of every squadron ; but in absence of higher officers, corporals lead divisions, so do they those parties which they are to command, if there be none to command above them.

“ WHEN a troop is divided into three squadrons they have not their denominations from the corporals or brigadeers, but the first is called the captain's squadron, the second the lieutenant's, the third the cornet's, and if there be a fourth it is called the quarter master's. When a troop marcheth, the captain leads the first division, the cornet with his standard the second, the quarter master leads the third, and the lieutenant brings up ; yet some will have the eldest corporal to lead the last division, and the quarter master to bring up on the lieutenant's left hand, for which I see very small reason, or rather none at all. Some French troops, and ours likewise, have, besides these officers whom I have named, a sub-lieutenant or under lieutenant who hath no command in the lieutenant's presence, but in his absence he commands over the cornet : the French have likewise a guidon, to whom perhaps may answer he who in other places is appointed to carry the standard, either in the cornet's absence, or when he pleaseth to appoint him to carry it. As to the officers of the regiment staff of the cavalry, they are the same with those of the foot\*.”

---

\* THE office of earl marshal still continues hereditary in the family of the Duke of Norfolk, the first English peer ; but it is no longer considered as a military office : that of high constable has been long since abolished ; instead of which a commander in chief has been occasionally appointed.

THE general staff of the army, at present (January, 1800), consists of six field marshals, 58 generals, 80 lieutenant generals, and 148 major generals, besides some others having local rank.

OTHER general officers of the staff are, the adjutant general, with his deputy ; the quarter master general, with his deputies and assistants ; the commissary general of musters, with his deputy ; the commissary general of stores, with his deputies and assistants ; the judge martial, with his deputy ; the physician general, surgeon general, and apothecary general, with their assistants ; the barrack master general, with his deputy ; the chaplain general, and the pay masters general of the forces. The field and regimental officers continue as before.

## CHAPTER VIII.

*Of the Pay of the English Armies.*

THE pay of our ancient armies comes next into consideration; in these armies there was at all times, both before and since the conquest, besides the feudal tenants, stipendiary or mercenary soldiers, natives as well as foreigners. Our ancient historians have not handed down to us a regular list of the pay of the different officers and soldiers, of which our armies were composed; but we are left to collect it from different records and official accounts. Of these the chief and most instructive are the accounts of the great wardrobe, as that office seems formerly to have had the payment of most of the servants of the crown; but I believe there are none of them extant older than the reign of King Edward I.

THE earliest information respecting military pay reaches no higher than the reign of King Henry II. in which reign, according to Fitz Stephens, a contemporary historian, the knights of Archbishop Becket's household, employed in the war of Thoulouse, who were no fewer than seven hundred in number, received 3s. a day, the country being besides obliged to provide for their horses and esquires.

THE pay and allowance of the constable was settled in that reign by a book of the constitutions of the king's household: this we learn from a reference made to it in the 10th of Edward I. printed in Rymer; part of the contents has been already quoted (page 191) under the article of constable; to which may be added, that all matters respecting the king's hawks came under his regulation, or that of his deputy; that he was one of the subscribing witnesses to all the accounts  
at

at the exchequer, where he had also a right to stop the sums due to him out of the wages of the stipendiary troops.

It does not appear that the marshal of that or several succeeding reigns had any standing pay more than that of his rank as duke or earl; his perquisites and emoluments have been already mentioned.

MR. PETIT and Dr. Brady cite a record of the 6th year of King John, wherein it is ordered, that every nine knights, throughout England, should contribute to find a tenth, well provided with horse and arms for the defence of the kingdom, and should allow him 2s. by the day for his wages.

IN the wardrobe account of the 28th of King Edward I. A. D. 1300, published by the Society of Antiquaries, we have the following articles respecting the payment of the military establishment of that reign. From divers instances, it appears the pay did not take place till after the muster and appreciation of the horses; probably the recruits subsisted on their way to the army, as was afterwards practised, by an allowance called conduct or prest-money, which was generally paid by the sheriffs of the counties wherein they were raised, or through which they passed, according to the number of days' march, reckoning each day's march at twelve and sometimes sixteen miles.

THE pay and emoluments of the constable in this reign were the same as in that of Henry II. the regulations of that period being cited as an authority.

THE pay of a banneret was four shillings; from the passage given in the note below, it appears that some bannerets used to diet at court, till the passing of the statute of St. Alban's, when certain wages were assigned them in lieu of their table (q).

---

(q) D'no Willmo de Cantilupo, baneretto, qui solebat comedere in aula regis ante statutum factum apud Sanctum Albanum, de aula non tenenda, et non comedenti amplius, sed percipienti certa vad. videlt, per diem 6s.—pro se et milite suo per statutum predictum, pro hujusmodi vadiis, a 27 die Junii, quo die venit primo ad curiam post statutum predictum, usque secundum diem Julii utroque computato per 6 dies, per quos fuit in Cur' et extra rotulum hospicii per compotum factum, cum Domino Rico de Nevill, militi suo, apud Drombou. 1l. 16s.

THE daily pay of a knight was 2s. and that of an esquire 12d.; both were obliged to have barded horses; those who had them not, or neglected to have them mustered and appreciated, had part of their pay struck off, of which an instance occurs in an esquire of the name of John de Clothale, who instead of 12d. received only 8d. per diem, till his horse was mustered and appreciated (r).

THE pay of a constable was also 1s. per diem: and though the appellation of constables in this reign was given to officers of infantry as well as cavalry (s) the former, like esquires, were obliged to have covered or barded horses; and we find, that such as were deficient in this article, received only 6d. a day, which was only half their ordinary stipend (t).

IN this account, under the article of esquires, we meet with many persons entitled valets, with the daily pay of 12d. Du Cange, and other writers, are of opinion that the appellation of valet was generally given to young gentlemen of rank and family who were not yet knighted (u).

(r) JOHANNI de Clothale percipient' per diem 8d.—quia sine equo appreciato, pro vadiis suis, a 20 die Novembr' anno presentis incipient' usque 23 diem Decembr', utroque computato, per 34 dies, 22s. 8d. Eidem, pro vadiis suis a 24 die Decembr, quo die equus suus fuit appreciat', usque ultimum diem ejusdem mensis, utroque computato, per 8 dies, percipient' per diem 12d. 8s. per manus proprias ibidem, 29 die Decemb. summa 1l. 10s. 8d. p. 211.

(s) GALFRIDO de Ampleford constabular' equitum, &c. the pay the same as a constable of foot, i. e. 1s. per diem, p. 220.

(t) ——— cult. const. per diem 6d. quia cum equis discoopertis. p. 145.

(u) FATHER DANIEL in the Mil. Fr. fol. 1. p. 131. from Du Cange, cites an ancient French manuscript Romance, called le Roman de Rou, where in speaking of William the Conqueror it is said

Guillaume fut, valet petit  
A Falaise posé & norrit.

And in another place:

Et me fit avoir en otage  
Deux valets de noble lignage,  
N'ert [n'étoit] mi Chevalier, encore ert Valleton.

THE term foldier frequently occurs, as if the party so distinguished was of a different order from the other troops; and there likewise appears to have been different ranks of foldiers; for we meet with the term scutifer, or esquire foldiers, at 12d. per diem each, and others filed foldier constables, and some simply foldiers, but all at the same pay (x).

THE daily pay of a hobiler was 6d. A vintner of cross bow men, 6d. A private cross bow man, 4d. An archer, 2d. There appears to have been but few hobilers at this time employed, and some of those were Irish men, and most of them belonged to different garrisons.

THE serjeants at arms, of which there seem to have been many admitted as volunteers, received also 1s. per diem (y); several of them appear to have been particularly assigned to different garrisons for their defence; six were sent to the town of Berwick (z).

HERE likewise we find some slight traces of the engineers and their artificers under the following articles. Some of the engineers appear to have been monks.

To Master Reginald, engineer, for going by the King's order from Berwick upon Tweed to Newcastle upon Tyne, to the sheriff of Northumberland, to procure and chuse timber for the making of machines for the castle of Berwick; for 78 days expences in going and returning, and for hackneys for riding, &c. 2l. 8s. (a) Another article charges his pay at 6d. per diem (b).

And speaking of Henry II. King of England:

Cinquante trois ans plus sa terra justifa  
Emprès la mort son pere qui valet le laissa.

(x) PAGE 216, 217. &c. Eidem pro vad' 50 scutiferorum foldar' quest. percip' per diem 12d. Eidem pro vad' 7 constabl' quorum unus in numero foldar', videlt Simon de Blakfale, percipit vad' inter foldar. p. 145. Idem pro vad' Willi de Cardewill, foldar', percip' per diem 12d. &c. P. 146.

(y) ITEM 28 die Julii admissus fuit Simon de Tardetz, tanquam serviens ad arma, ad percipiend' sicut alii servientes de hospicio Regis. P. 211. Eidem pro vad' Roberti de Neketon, Henr' Nafard, Johis de Villers, Ranulphi de Charron, Ingelrami le Charron, et Bernardi de Grismak, servientum Regis ad arma assignatorum ad' morand' in municione predicta, per idem tempus, cult, per diem 12d.

(z) P. 145.

(a) P. 78.

(b) P. 148.

To brother Thomas of Bamburgh, a monk of Darham, for timber, and making two large engines constructed by him for the defence of the town of Berwick upon Tweed, in the time of Dom. Phil. de Vernaco, then keeper of the said town, 5l. 6s. 3d. (c).

BROTHER Robert de Ulmo, master engineer, retained in the king's service for the Scottish wars, with Alan Bright, carpenter; Robert at 9d. per diem, Allan at 4d. (d).

GERARD DE MAYAR, engineer, and Gaillard Abot, carpenter, employed by the king to make the pele of Dumfries, at 6d. per diem each (e).

THREE master carpenters employed on the pele of Dumfries, had 6d. per diem each; thirty-five other carpenters, each 4d. and four pages, probably apprentices, 2d. each (f).

A MASTER smith, Thomas Furneys, working on the same pele, had for his daily pay 6d.; and of seven other smiths under him, two of them had 5d. and five 4d. per diem each (g).

For the repairs of the abbey of Holm Coltrom, against the king and his army should come thither, perhaps to take up his quarters, master Everard of Carlisle, and six masons his companions, were employed, Everard at 6d. and every other mason at 4d. per diem; two labourers to serve the said masons are charged at 2d. and a smith to mend the doors and windows, at 4d. per diem (h).

Two hundred ditchers, of whom ten were vintenars, were employed under a master; the private ditchers at 2d. the vintenars at 4d. and the master at 6d. per diem; four men were also paid 4d. per diem, as overseers. A number of women were likewise employed to assist these ditchers in clearing the ditch, at three half-pence per diem each (i);

(c) P. 78.

(d) P. 257.

(e) P. 268.

(f) P. 263 and 264.

(g) Ibid.

(h) Ibid.

(i) EIDEM, pro vadiis 7 mulierum coadjuvancium dictos fossatores ad mundand' dictum fossatum, per unum diem, videlt. 24 diem Octobr' cult. per diem 1d. ob. 10d. ob. Eidem pro vadiis 9 mulierum per 3 dies, 27 die Octobr' pro ultimo computato cult. per diem ut prius. 3s. 4d. ob. Eidem pro vad' 10 mulierum per 28 diem Octobr. et 14 mulierum per 29 diem



a bounty was distributed among the said ditchers by the king, over and above their wages ; as also 5s. to the masons.

SOME plaisterers were paid 3d. a day; others 2d.; boys serving as labourers to them were also paid 2d. (k)

MINERS hired for the Scotch war, had each for their daily wages 3d. and their apprentices, stiled pages, 2d. (l). Four pence per diem is charged for an artificer stiled attillator, in the castle of Berwick, the same for a chaplain, a clerk of the chapel, a watch-man, and a washer-woman (m). Clerks employed to chuse and pay the troops, had mostly 12d. per diem, others paying the artificers only 6d. (n).

IN Rymer, A. D. 1281, the 10th of Edward I. there is a writ for raising a number of wood-cutters in the county of Gloucester, who are directed to join the king's army at Rutland in Wales, they were allowed 3d. each per diem, during their march ; this was to be advanced by the sheriff.

THE daily pay of the constable of the castles of Berwick was 2s., that of the constable of Jedburgh the same ; this seems to have been the general pay for the constable of a castle, unless he was of superior rank, as a banneret, &c.

JOHN de ST. JOHN, captain and keeper of the Marches of Cumberland and Vale of Annan, received 4s. per diem for that office (o). Many marches and places were defended by persons indenting and contracting for a certain sum.

THE account of Roger de Waltham, keeper of the great wardrobe, gives a very accurate list of the pay of the army raised against the Scots in the 15th and 17th years of King Edward II. wherein the sums paid do not materially vary from those of the preceding reign ; but the titles of the officers are different in several instances ; among others the

29 diem Octobr' cult. ut prius. 3s. Eidem pro vad' 25 mulierum per unum diem. videlt. 30 diem Octobr. 3s. 1d. ob. Eidem ad distribuend' inter dictos fossatores de dono et curialitate Regis ultra vadia sua 11. 5s. 7d. P. 269.

(k) P. 266.

(l) Ibid.

(m) THE attillator was a kind of armourer. P. 152.

(n) SEE P. 53 and 263.

(o) P. 138.

term constable, applied to a regimental officer, is not once mentioned ; the denomination of constable was afterwards chiefly confined to the cavalry (p).

THE account opens with the roll of the Welch foot, who have divers officers not found in the English corps ; these are leaders, sub-leaders, chaplains, physicians and cryers (q). The pay of the leader was 2s. per diem : the sub-leader, every esquire, centenary or commander of an hundred men, and chaplain, had 1s. per diem each. Physicians 6d. Cryers, standard-bearers, and vinteners, each 4d. No regular proportion seems to have been observed between the private men and standard-bearers. Some leaders of small numbers, not exceeding an hundred men, had only 6d. a day. The pay of the other soldiers was, as is said above, the same as in the preceding reign, except that the foot soldiers, armed with acketons and bacinetts, received 3d. each per diem ; and those unarmed, stiled naked footmen, had only 2d.

SOME hobilers are charged 4d. and some 6d. a day ; no reason is assigned for this difference, but perhaps the former had no horses, for we find in another corps that a centenary not having a war horse, was credited only at 6d. per diem.

AMONG the armed foot sent by divers ecclesiastics and others to perform their feudal services, some of them having served the time for which they were hired, remained afterwards with the army, in the king's pay ; one of them, Andree de Netlee, is stiled *foldario ad arma* ; his daily pay was 12d. Divers cross bow men and lanceirs, infantry, from Gascony, are charged 4d. a day.

ADAMAR de VALENCE Earl of Pembroke serving in these wars, received for his own daily pay 8s. for every banneret in his suite 4s. every knight 2s. and every man at arms 1s.

(p) THIS valuable manuscript is in the library of Thomas Astle, Esq.

(q) STILED in the manuscript, *ductor*, *sub-ductor*, *centenarius*, *capellanus*, *medicus*, *clamator*, *standardarius*, *vintenarius*. In one account there were two standard-bearers to 1818 private men, but a third was added by the king, as appears by the following entry, *Tres standardarii q' habuerunt unum stand. de novo ex liberatione Domini Regis*. Another corps of 968 men had six standard bearers.

An ancient manuscript gives the annexed establishment of the army of King Edward III. in Normandy and before Calais, in the 20th year of his reign, with their several stipends (r).

						At per diem.		
						l.	s.	d.
	My Lord the prince	-	-	-	-	1	0	0
	Bishop of Durham	-	-	-	-	0	6	8
19	Earls, each	-	-	-	-	0	6	8
44	Barons and bannerets	-	-	-	-	0	4	0
1046	Knights	-	-	-	-	0	2	0
4022	Esquires, constables, centenary, and leaders	-	-	-	-	0	1	0
5104	Vintenars and archers on horseback	-	-	-	-	0	0	6
335	Paunceners							
500	Hoblers							
15480	Foot archers	-	-	-	-	0	0	3
914	{ Macons, carpenters, smiths, engineers, tent-makers, miners, armourers, gunners, and artillery men, - - }					{ Some at 12d. 10d. 6d. and 3d. per diem.		
4474	{ Welch foot, of whom 200 vintenars at the rest at - - - - }					0	0	4
						0	0	2
700	Masters, constables, mariners and pages							
900	Ships, barges, balingers and victuallers							
Sum total of the aforefaid men besides Lords 31000—294								

OF whom some men from Germany and France, each receive for their wages 15 florins a month.

THE sum total of the wages of war, with the wages of the mariners from the 4th day of June in the 20th of the said King Edward III. to the 12th day of October in the 21st of the same king, for one year 131 days, as appears from the book of particular accounts of Walter Wentwaght, then treasurer of the household, entitled wages of war in Normandy, France, and before Calais, was 127201l. 2s. 9½d.

(r) Ex Rotulo quodam penes Arth. Agard. Thef. in Novo Palatio, Westm. reposito collect. v. 1. p. 160. The original in Latin.

IN the account of Walter Wentwaght here mentioned, in the 21st year of the same reign, there is the following article (s).

RATES and WAGES of WARRE by the DAIE.	l.	s.	d.
The Prince of Wales - - - - -	1	0	3
A bishoppe, or an earle - - - - -	0	6	8
A barone, a bannerette, the king's chamberlaine, the stewards, the treasurer of the king's house, the keeper of the privy seale, every man by the daye - - - - -	0	4	0
A knight, comptroller, coferer of the king's house, the king's standard bearers, the clerk of the kichine, pantry and wardrope, the clerke, comptroller, and the keeper of the victualles, every man at - - - - -	0	2	0
The king's chaplines, esquier, fergentes of armes, men of armes, fergeauntes of office, and other clerks of the king's house, marshall of the hall, ushers, and sewers of the hall and chamber, sewer at dresser, harbengers, panteckers, butlers, furgions, minstrelles, ductors or centeners, every man by daye - - - - -	0	1	0
The king's archers, vintners, yeomen of offices in the king's house, archers on horse, hobilers, messengers, artificers, chaplines of Welchmen, a master, a clark, and constable, and a carpenter of a shipp, pannecos(t), couners, and crosbowes of Almaynes, Lorians, and Hymonde, every one at - - - - -	0	0	6
Archers on horse, vinteners of footmen, standard bearers of Welshmen, furgeons of Welshmen, and criers of Welshmen, every man - - - - -	0	0	4

(s) FROM a manuscript which seems a copy of that cited by Brady in his History of England.

(t) PANNECOS probably paveros or pavifors, persons bearing pavaises or large shields: a great number of these occur in the list of the officers and soldiers that were with King Edward III. at Calais, published by Rowe Mores.

THE following list of the army sent to Ireland 36 of Edward III. is taken from a manuscript in the British Museum (u).

A ROLL of the RETINUE of LIONELL the King's Sonne, Earl of Ulster, Lord of Clarence and Connaught, and Lieutenant of his father in Ireland.

Knights	Himself at 6s. 8d. per diem, five knights
Sir Thomas de la Dale	at 2s. per diem, five esquires at 12d. per
Sir Philip Topham	diem, 70 archers at 6d. per diem, for a
Sir John Cornewall	quarter of a yeare, viz. from the 14th
Sir Robert Clinton	of August till the 12th of November, 526l.
Sir Symon Flemming	5s. 8d. and for regards (x) to the said earl
	and his retinue, 155l. 11s. 1d. q. d. Total
	681l. 16s. 9d.

AFTER he was created Duke of Clarence his own wages was 13s. 4d. per diem, and eight knights at 2s. per diem. Total 582l.

360 Archers on horseback of the county of Lancaster at 6d. per diem.

23 Archers on horseback from Wales.

RALFE Earle of Stafforde, for himself 6s. 8d. as aforesaid, for a banneret, 4s. per diem, 17 knights at 2s. per diem, 78 esquires at 12d. per diem, 100 archers on horseback at 6d. per diem, his entertaignment began when he and his ritinue came to Bristow to transmitt for Ireland. ffor a quarter 973l. 11s. 7d.

24 Archers out of Staffordshire

40 Archers out of Worcestershire

6 Archers out of Shropshire

} under the Earle of Strafforde.

JAMES Earle of Ormond for himself 4s. per diem, 2 knights 2s. per diem, 17 esquires, 12d. per diem; 20 hobilers armed, at 6d. per diem, and 20 hobilers not armed, at 4d. per diem each, to guard the Marches of Leinster for a quarter 165l. 6s. 8d.

O'KENEDY for himself, 12d. per diem, 11 hobilers at 4d. 88 archers on foot at 1½d. per diem.

(u) MARKED Julius f. 6. Cotton.

(x) REGARDS was a kind of contingent allowance, which will be further explained in its place.

JOHN CAREW, banneret, at 4s. per diem, one knight at 2s. two esquires at 12d. 10 archers on horseback at 6d. per diem.

WILLIAM WINDSORE for himself, 2s. two knights 2s. 44 esquires at 12d. six archers on horseback at 6d. per diem each. For the quarter 493l. 16s.

SIR THOMAS HOGGESHAWE for himself, 2s. per diem, two knights 2s. 30 esquires and 30 archers as above.

SIR JOHN SHARDLEWE 2s. two archers on horseback.

SIR THOMAS NANTON 2s. and his valet at 6d.

DONALD GALL, an Irish captain, 4d. per diem; 280 archers on foot at 2d per diem.

HUGH SWISSET, an Irish captain, at 6d. per diem, four hobilers not armed at 4d. per diem, 35 archers at 1½d. to guard the Marches of Baltinglasse.

RICHARD TALBOT, a captain of the Irish, and 17 archers on horseback of Derbyshire, 14 of Shropshire, 15 of Nottingham.

VINTENARIES at 4d. per diem, and 12 archers on foot 4d. per diem, 150 more archers of different countries.

SIR WINDSORE 16 archers more.

SIR EUSTACE TABRICKECOURT, banneret, 4s. per diem, one knight, four esquires, and eight archers.

SIR JOHN ST. LAUDE, five esquires, and 20 archers on horseback.

THE passage of the Duke of Clarence, the Earle of Stafford, and the rest amounted to 500l. or upwards. A vintenarius had 20 archers under him, and no more.

No alteration appears to have been made in the pay of the army during the reign of Richard II. But in the succeeding reign there seems to have been some irregularity in that article, which had like to have produced very disagreeable circumstances to Prince John, son of King Henry IV.; this we learn from the rolls of parliament A.D. 1404, being the sixth year of that king's reign, wherein it is recited, "That whereas Monsieur John, the king's son, was at the point of having been put to great dishonor, and danger of his soldiers, for default of payment, if it had not happened that the Sire de Fournyvall

affisted him and formed a credit in different manners ; for the saving of the honor of the said Sire John, as well as for the honor of the said Sire de Fornyvall, the commons pray that payment be made, as reason and good faith require.

“ ALSO the said commons pray our lord the king, as they have before done, that he will please to consider the good and agreeable service that the Duke of Everwyk has done him at the time he was lieutenant in Guyen, and that the said duke for default of payment of him and his said soldiery in those parts, had sold and pledged all his gold and silver plate, as well for the preservation of the honor of our said lord the king, as of himself and all the kingdome ; and that it may please our lord the king, to order that payment and satisfaction may be made to him in these parts as he trusteth.

“ ALSO the commons beseech our said lord the king, that it may please him to have in especial recommendation Monsieur Thomas de Erpyngham, Monsieur Thomas Remptson, John Norbury, and the other vailliant knights and esquires who risked themselves with our said lord the king at his arrival in England, and that our said lord the king himself would have them in honor and esteem for their good and agreeable service performed to him both here and abroad.”

ANOTHER petition appears in the second year of the succeeding reign, A.D. 1414, wherein the soldiers forming the garrisons of the castles on the frontiers of Picardy, set forth, that being obliged to come to England for payment of their wages, the expences of their journey cost them the greatest part thereof, and also that the said frontier was considerably weakened by their absence ; wherefore they prayed that they might receive their pay at the exchequer of Calais, according to the tenure of their indentures : They were referred for an answer to the king and council, but their complaint seems not to have been remedied till the next reign.

IN an indenture between King Henry V. and the duke of Clarence, A.D. 1415, wherein the duke covenants to serve the king for a year in France with a certain number of men to be paid as follows. The duke for himself, 13s. 4d. for an earl 6s. 8d. a banneret 4s. a knight 2s. an esquire 1s. and for each archer 6d. per diem, with the usual

regards. It was also covenanted that if it happened that these troops should be employed in the duchy of Guyenne, that he should then receive for each esquire 40 marks, and for every archer 20 marks for the whole year, this to be paid half the first quarter on signing of the indenture, and the other half after the muster. The king to find transports going and returning for men, horses, harness, and victuals, at the following rate :

- 50 Horses for the duke himself
- 24 Horses for an earl
- 16 Horses for each banneret
- 6 Horses for each knight
- 4 Horses for each esquire
- 1 Horse for each archer (y).

IN another indenture made at the same time with Henry Le Scrope, as a security for the payment of the second quarter, the king covenanted to deliver in pledge on a certain day, jewels worth the sum of the said wages and regards, which jewels were to be returned at any time his Majesty should chuse to redeem them within a year and a day from the time of their delivery, and if not redeemed within that time, Lescrope was authorized to dispose of them at his pleasure without hindrance from the king or his heirs, according to the contents of the letters patent under the great seal (z). The king likewise covenanted with the persons thus indenting with him, that no process should issue against them for default of homage for any lands descending to them during the time they were abroad in his service.

---

(y) SEE Rymer, vol. 9, p. 227.

(z) AT the death of this king, many of his jewels were in the hands of captains who had indented to serve him, who applied to parliament to authorize them to offset the thirds of the gains of war due from them to the king, against the arrears of pay due to them ; and also for permission to sell the jewels deposited in their hands, paying the balance, if any, into the Exchequer ; this was granted to take place within half a year, if such jewels were not the jewels of the Crown. See Rot. Parl. 1st Henry VI.



BESIDES the daily stipend paid the troops, there was an additional douceur filed regards (a); this was a kind of perquisite to the commanding officer, or chief contractor with the crown for every body of men, to enable them to keep a table for their officers, and to provide for the different contingent expences: the quantum of this allowance differed according to the nature of the service or country in which the troops were to be employed; the usual sum was at the rate of an hundred marks for a quarter of a year, for every thirty men at arms, which amounted to near six-pence a day each (b). Sometimes we meet with a stipulation for regard and a half, and sometimes for double regards and double wages (c).

It also appears that the troops were occasionally paid half the quarter in advance, or had assignments on the supplies granted to the king, and in some indentures it is specified, that in default of payment of their wages or other reasonable cause, the parties indenting might disband and go whither they pleased, without any hindrance from the king or his heirs (d). Edward III. I think, more than once paid his army with wool.

(a) TRANSLATED by Du Cange, Reward.

(b) RYMER, 3 Hen. V. tom. 9. p. 227.

(c) IN a MS. in the library of Thomas Aſle, Eſq. entitled *Names of the Nobility and others retained to ſerve the kings of England in their wars from the 19th of Ed. III. to Henry VIII.* extracted out the office of the Pells, by the induſtry of Sir William Le Neve, knight, Clarentius King of Arms, digeſted by Sir Edward Walker, knight, Garter, principal King of Arms, anno 1664, with an index, by J. Anſtis, Garter; and the ſeals of the perſons indenting, neatly drawn with a pen in the margin. There are ſeveral inſtances of regard and a half, double regard, and even double regard and double wages, in the reigns of Edward III. and Richard II. The originals of theſe indentures were removed from the Pells by order of a Committee of the Houſe of Peers, anno 1719, and put into the hands of Mr. Incedon, houſe-keeper of the Houſe of Lords, from whom they were delivered to Mr. Anſtis to be arranged, they remained at his houſe at Mortlake till after his death. In 1756 they were taken into the cuſtody of Mr. Carrington, in whoſe poſſeſſion they continued till July, 1770, when purſuant to an application made by a Committee of the houſe of Peers to the Secretary of State, they were delivered into the State Paper Office, where, anno 1784, they remained.

(d) RYMER, A.D. 1347. 21 Edward III.

SOME little alteration in the denomination of the troops, caused a difference in their pay, about the beginning of the reign of Henry VII. as we learn from an indenture of war made in the year 1492, being the 7th of that king; wherein George, Earl of Kent, engages to serve the king abroad in such places as he shall direct, for one whole year, from the first day of muster, with six men of arms, himself reckoned as one; each man of arms having with him his cuistrill and page, sixteen demi-lances, sixteen archers on horseback, and sixty archers on foot, all able men fit for service, properly horsed, armed, garnished, and arraigned, according to their different kinds and stations, and the customs of war, or as shall be approved of by the king's commissioners deputed for taking the musters; the whole to be mustered at Guildford, on the 4th of June, and on their arrival at Portsmouth, probably the rendezvous of the whole army, to receive the conduct money (e), which was an allowance for marching, to be calculated at the rate of 6d. for every twenty miles each soldier should march, to be reckoned from his residence to that place, each soldier to swear to the number of miles marched by him. And that from the first day the said earl shall arrive at Portsmouth, and during the time he shall serve the king in his wars, he shall receive for every man at arms, garnished with his cuistrill and page, 1s. 6d. by the day; for every demi-lance, 9d. and for every archer, whether horse or foot, 6d. The earl to receive a month's pay in advance, immediately on his arrival at Portsmouth, reckoning twenty-eight days for a month; this to be paid him, without any deduction whatsoever, before the transports leave the harbour,

---

(e) THIS conduct money seems to have been in lieu of all other subsistence, as the troops do not appear to have drawn any pay from the treasurer of the army till they had actually joined it. Sums of money were, about the time of King Edward VI. and Queen Elizabeth, frequently if not always issued to troops going on foreign service, under the title of *emprest* or *imprest* money, from the French word *prest*, a loan, being considered as advanced or lent to enable them to provide sea stores, and other necessaries. Thus 20 days' *imprest* was ordered to the 2100 men embarked for Flushing, 34th Elizabeth anno 1592, under the command of Capt. Pooley, and it was directed that they should have such weekly lendings during the time they remained in France. See Rymer.

and on the last day of the month so paid, he shall receive another month in advance; the money so received he covenants to pay within six days to his soldiers, and in like manner to continue receiving and paying, during the time of his service. Respecting the payment of the thirds, and thirds of thirds of all plunder or prisoners of war (f) performing watch and ward, and other duties according to the statutes and ordinances of war, made by the king, with the advice of the lords of his council, a copy of which was delivered to him, he acknowledges himself liable to them, and covenants that he will obey and submit to them and the penalties therein contained; and that if any of his corps or retinue shall do any thing contrary to them, he will do his utmost to bring him to justice according to the said statutes. This indenture was signed the 9th day of May.

VERY little, if any, alteration was made in the pay or establishment of our armies from this period till the reign of Queen Mary. From the list of the army (g) which served at St. Quintins, anno 1557, the following appears to have been the subsistence of the officers and soldiers.

							Per diem.		
							l.	s.	d.
The captain general	-	-	-	-	-	-	5	1	2
The lieutenant general	-	-	-	-	-	-	3	6	8
The high marshal	-	-	-	-	-	-	3	6	8
Master of the camp	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	0	0
General of the horsemen	-	-	-	-	-	-	3	6	8
Captain general of the footmen	-	-	-	-	-	-	3	6	8
His lieutenant	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	0	0

(f) EVERY commanding officer was accountable to the king for one third of his gains of war, whether made by prisoners or plunder; and he was entitled to one third of the gains of war of every one serving in his corps; for one third of these thirds he was also accountable to the king. This will be further explained under the article, prisoners of war.

(g) THERE are several copies of this list; one in the library of the College of Arms, marked W. S.; another in the British Museum, among the Harleian manuscripts, No. 6844.

# THE ENGLISH ARMY.

287

					l.	s.	d.
The serjeant major (our major)	-	-	-	-	0	15	0
The master of the ordnance	-	-	-	-	1	6	8
His lieutenant	-	-	-	-	0	13	4
Master of the Carriages	-	-	-	-	0	10	0
The treasurer	-	-	-	-	1	6	8
The master of the musters	-	-	-	-	0	16	8
The provost	-	-	-	-	1	0	0
The chief harbinger	-	-	-	-	0	4	0
Master of the forage	-	-	-	-	0	6	0
Master of the scouts	-	-	-	-	0	6	0
The herald	-	-	-	-	0	5	0
Captain of armed horsemen	-	-	-	-	0	10	0
Lieutenant	-	-	-	-	0	5	0
Standard bearer	-	-	-	-	0	3	4
Surgeon	-	-	-	-	0	2	0
Trumpeter and private	-	-	-	-	0	1	6
Captain of light horsemen	-	-	-	-	0	6	0
Lieutenant	-	-	-	-	0	3	0
Standard bearer	-	-	-	-	0	2	0
Surgeon	-	-	-	-	0	1	6
Trumpeter	-	-	-	-	0	1	6
Light horsemen	-	-	-	-	0	1	0
Captain of foot	-	-	-	-	0	4	0
Lieutenant	-	-	-	-	0	2	0
Ensign	-	-	-	-	0	1	0
Chaplain	-	-	-	-	0	1	0
Surgeon	-	-	-	-	0	1	0
Serjeant	-	-	-	-	0	1	0
Drummer and fifer	-	-	-	-	0	1	0
Private soldier	-	-	-	-	0	0	8

THE next establishment of the British army that occurs is that levied

The RATES for the ENTERTAINMENT of the OFFICERS of the COMPANIES appointed for the service in the year 1588.

Digitized by Google

# THE ENGLISH ARMY.

289

				l.	s.	d.
Ten halberdiers, at 8d. each	-	-	-	0	6	8
The treasurer at war, per day	-	-	-	0	6	8
Four clerks at 2s. each	-	-	-	0	8	0
Ten halberdiers, at 8d. each	-	-	-	0	6	8
The master of the ordnance, per day	-	-	-	0	10	0
Lieutenant	-	-	-	0	6	8
Inferior officers of the ordnance, per day						
Ten halberdiers, at						
The muster master, per day	-	-	-	0	6	8
Four clerks at 2s. each	-	-	-	0	8	0
The commissary of the victuals, per day	-	-	-	0	6	8
One clerk	-	-	-	0	2	0
The trench master, per day	-	-	-	0	6	0
The master of the carriages, per day	-	-	-	0	4	0
Master cart takers, each per day						
Four clerks, each at						
The quarter master, per day	-	-	-	0	10	0
Six farriers, each at						
The scout master, per day	-	-	-	0	6	8
Two light horse, at 16d. each	-	-	-	0	2	8
The judge general, per day	-	-	-	0	2	8
The entertainment of the officers of the regiment						
The colonel, being a nobleman, per day	-	-	-	1	0	0
He being a knight or nobleman's son, per day	-	-	-	0	13	4
Lieutenant colonel, per day	-	-	-	0	6	0

THE pay of the captains and subalterns of the different corps being here omitted, as well as divers other officers, another list of the army in Ireland, A.D. 1598, is adduced from Fyne's Morrison's Travels to supply those and other deficiencies, from which it appears that the pay of the army was considerably raised in so short a time as ten years.

PAY of the ARMY in IRELAND under the EARL of ESSEX, signed by  
QUEEN ELIZABETH, 24th March, 1598.

				Per diem.	l.	s.	d.
The lord lieutenant general	-	-	-	-	10	0	0
The lieutenant of the army	-	-	-	-	3	0	0
General of the horse	-	-	-	-	10	0	0
Marshal of the camp	-	-	-	-	1	10	0
Serjeant major	-	-	-	-	1	0	0
Lieutenant general of the horse	-	-	-	-	1	0	0
The quarter master	-	-	-	-	1	0	0
The judge marshal general	-	-	-	-	1	0	0
The auditor general	-	-	-	-	0	13	4
The comptroller general of the victuals	-	-	-	-	0	10	0
Lieutenant of the ordnance	-	-	-	-	0	10	0
The surveyor	-	-	-	-	0	6	8
Two clerkes of munition, each	-	-	-	-	0	5	0
Four corporals of the field	-	-	-	-	0	6	8
One commissary of victuals	-	-	-	-	0	8	0
Three others, at each	-	-	-	-	0	6	0
The carriage master	-	-	-	-	0	6	8
Twenty colonels, each	-	-	-	-	0	10	0
Captains of horse, each at	-	-	-	-	0	4	0
Lieutenants of horse, each at	-	-	-	-	0	2	6
Cornets of horse, each at	-	-	-	-	0	2	0
Horsemen, (N. B. a troop consisted of one captaine, one lieutenant, one cornet, with fifty private troopers) each	-	-	-	-	0	1	3
Captains of foot, each	-	-	-	-	0	4	0
Lieutenants of foot, each	-	-	-	-	0	2	0
Ensigns of foot, each	-	-	-	-	0	1	6
Serjeants of foot, each	-	-	-	-	0	1	0
Drummers, each	-	-	-	-	0	1	0
Surgeons, each	-	-	-	-	0	1	0

EACH company consisted of a captain, lieutenant, and ensign, two ferjeants, one drummer, and one surgeon, with ninety-four effective private men, at 8d. per diem each, and six dead payes for non-effectives allowed the captain.

THERE is another list anno 1599, of the army under Lord Montjoy, where all the aforementioned officers and men are paid as before, but there is the addition of a provost marshal for Lough Foyle, and another for Bally Shannon, at 4s. per diem, each, 1600 gunners, canoneers, armourers, and clerks of the ordnance, some at 4s. some at 2s. per diem, an inginere, at 10s. per diem, sixteen surgeons, the chief at 5l. the other at 50s. and 40s. a peece, the week; the lord deputy's doctor of physicke, at 5l. the week, and his chief chaplain at the same rate, and other ten preachers at 30s. or 40s. the week, and the commissaries of musters augmented from five to twenty, at 3s. 4d. per diem each; one to follow the army in each province, the rest to reside in garrisons.

THE pay of the army in the succeeding reign of King James I. with the prices of all sorts of military stores are minutely exemplified in a manuscript frequently before cited in the course of this work (h). An extract from this MS. may be seen in No. 4. of the Appendix.

RUSHWORTH has preserved an account of the established pay for the army raised by King Charles I. against the Scotch, in the year 1639, the substance of which here follows:

A LIST of the several ENTERTAINMENTS of the Officers General of the Field, the Lord General his Train, Officers of four Regiments of Foot-bands, and Companies of Footmen; Officers General of the Horse, and twelve Troops of Horse.

Officers General of the Field, per diem.						l.	s.	d.
The lord general	-	-	-	-	-	10	0	0
The lieutenant general	-	-	-	-	-	6	0	0

(h) No. 5109. Harl. MSS.



	Per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Serjeant major general	- - -	2	0	0
Quarter master general	- - -	1	0	0
Provost marshal general	- - -	0	6	8
Waggon or carriage master	- - -	0	6	8
Four corporals of the field, at 6s. 8d. each	- - -	1	6	8

## The Lord General's Train.

Treasurer at war	- - -	2	0	0
Muster master general	- - -	1	0	0
Commissary general of the victuals	- - -	0	10	0
Judge marshal	- - -	0	10	0
Two chaplains, at 6s. 8d. each	- - -	0	13	4
Two physicians, at 6s. 8d. each	- - -	0	13	4
Two apothecaries, at 3s. 4d. each	- - -	0	6	8
Secretary to the council of war	- - -	0	10	0
Two chirurgeons, at 4s. each	- - -	0	8	0
Fifty halberdiers, at 1s. each	- - -	2	10	0
Four colonels of four regiments of foot, each regiment consisting of 1500 men, at 1l. each colonel per diem	- - -	4	0	0
Four lieutenant colonels, at 10s. each	- - -	2	0	0
Four serjeant majors, at 6s. each	- - -	1	4	0
Four quarter masters, at 5s. each	- - -	1	0	0

A LIST of the TRAIN of ARTILLERY, according to his Majesty's Direction, reduced to such a number of Officers and other Ministers as will be merely necessary for a mean Train of 30 or 40 Pieces of Ordnance, viz.

The general of the ordnance	- - -	4	0	0
Lieutenants	- - -	1	0	0

Sundry other Officers, Artificers, and Attendants upon the Ordnance and Train of Artillery, viz.

A comptroller, per diem	- - -	0	10	0
-------------------------	-------	---	----	---

# THE ENGLISH ARMY.

293

	Per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Two commissaries of the two magazines of munition, viz.				
one for the train, at	- - - -	0	6	0
The other for the army, at	- - - -	0	5	0
Four clerks under them, each	- - - -	0	2	0
Two engineers, one at	- - - -	0	8	0
And the other at	- - - -	0	6	0
Two clerks for them, each	- - - -	0	2	0
Six conductors of the trenches and fortifications, each at		0	2	0
One fireworker	- - - -	0	3	0
His assistant	- - - -	0	1	8
One petardier	- - - -	0	2	6
Twelve assistants, each	- - - -	0	1	0
One master gunner	- - - -	0	6	8
Four gentlemen, each	- - - -	0	4	0
Gunner's mates, each	- - - -	0	2	6
Thirty gunners, each	- - - -	0	1	6
A paymaster	- - - -	0	5	0
Captain of the pioneers	- - - -	0	5	0
Quarter master	- - - -	0	4	0
Four conductors of the matrozes	- - - -	0	2	6
Forty matrozes, each	- - - -	0	1	0
A purveyor	- - - -	0	3	0
One master smith	- - - -	0	3	0
Six servants under him, each	- - - -	0	1	0
One master wheelwright, at	- - - -	0	2	6
Four servants under him, each	- - - -	0	1	0
One tent maker	- - - -	0	2	8
Two servants, each	- - - -	0	1	0
A tent keeper, at	- - - -	0	1	6
One assistant to him	- - - -	0	0	8
A master carpenter	- - - -	0	3	0
Six servants under him, each	- - - -	0	1	0

	Per diem.	l.	s.	d.
One cordage maker	- - - -	0	2	0
Two servants under him, each	- - - -	0	1	0
One saddle maker	- - - -	0	1	6
One servant under him	- - - -	0	1	0
One cooper	- - - -	0	2	0
Two servants under him, each	- - - -	0	1	0
Four armorers, each	- - - -	0	2	6
Four servants under them, each	- - - -	0	1	0
Two gunsmiths, each	- - - -	0	2	6
Four servants, each	- - - -	0	1	0
One harness maker, at	- - - -	0	1	6
Two servants under him, each	- - - -	0	1	0
One farrier, at	- - - -	0	2	6
Two servants under him, at each	- - - -	0	1	0
One bridgemaker	- - - -	0	2	6
Six servants, each	- - - -	0	1	0
One provost marshal	- - - -	0	2	0
Two servants under him, each	- - - -	0	1	0
One chirurgion	- - - -	0	4	0
One servant under him	- - - -	0	1	0
One waggoner for the train	- - - -	0	5	0
One assistant to him	- - - -	0	2	6
Two principal conductors, viz. one for the munition of the army, the other for the munition of the artillery, each	- - - -	0	3	0
Forty conductors, viz. 20 for the waggons and 20 for the ordnance, each	- - - -	0	2	6
One commissary for the draught horses, at	- - - -	0	4	0
Two assistants to him, each	- - - -	0	2	6
In all, per diem,	- - - -	21	7	6

# THE ENGLISH ARMY.

295

	Per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Four provost marshals, at 5s. each	-	1	0	0
Four carriage masters, at 3s. each	-	0	12	0
Four preachers, at 3s. each	-	0	12	0
Four surgeons, at 4s. each	-	0	16	0

The PAY of a COLONEL'S COMPANY of 200 Men in each of the four Regiments.

A CAPTAIN per diem 8s. lieutenant 4s. ensign 2s. 6d. three serjeants at 1s. 2d. each; three drums at 1s. each; three corporals at 10d. each; 188 souldiers at 8d. each. Being in all for one colonel's company of 200 men, 7l. 8s. 10d. per diem.

The PAY of a LIEUTENANT COLONEL'S Company of 150 Men in each of the four Regiments.

A CAPTAIN per diem 8s. a lieutenant 4s. ensign 2s. 6d. two serjeants at 1s. 2d. apiece; two drums at 1s. apiece; three corporals at 10d. apiece; and 140 soldiers at 8d. apiece. In all, per diem, 5l. 14s. 8d.

And for four LIEUTENANT COLONEL'S Companies of 150 Men, per diem, 22l. 18s. 8d.

Four REGIMENTS of FOOT, containing in Officers and Souldiers 6000 Men, being 1500 Men in each Regiment, viz.

The PAY of a Company of 115 Men, viz.

A CAPTAIN per diem 8s. lieutenant 4s. ensign 2s. 6d. two serjeants at 14d. each; three corporals at 10d. each; and 105 soldiers at 8d. each per diem. In all for one company of 115 men, per diem, 4l. 11s. 4d.

AND so for forty companies of 115 men the piece, being ten companies in each of the four regiments, besides the colonel's and lieutenant colonel's companies; per diem, 182l. 13s. 4d.

## HISTORY OF

## OFFICERS GENERAL of the HORSE.

			Per diem.	l.	s.	d.
The general of the horse	-	-	-	5	0	0
The lieutenant general	-	-	-	2	0	0
Serjeant major or commissary general	-	-	-	1	10	0
Quarter master general	-	-	-	0	6	8
Provost marshal	-	-	-	0	5	0
Waggon or carriage master	-	-	-	0	3	4
Preacher	-	-	-	0	4	0
Chirurgeon	-	-	-	0	4	0

## The PAY of a Troop of a hundred Horse, viz.

A CAPTAIN per diem 8s. (a) a lieutenant 5s. a coronet 4s. three corporals at 2s. each; two trumpeters, one quarter master, a chirurgeon and 80 horsemen, at 2s. 6d. each per diem. After which rates, the pay of a troop of 100 horsemen, with their officers, is, per diem, 13l. 1s.

AND so the pay for 12 troops of 100 horse the piece, with their officers is,

			l.	s.	d.
Per diem	-	-	156	12	0
Per menssem	-	-	4384	16	0
Per annum	-	-	57159	0	0
Sum total of the entertainment aforesaid is					
Per diem	-	-	442	17	8
Per menssem	-	-	12420	14	8
Per annum	-	-	161652	8	4

Dated 19th March,  
1639.

AFTER the breaking out of the troubles between King Charles I. and his parliament, several alterations were from time to time made by the latter in their military establishments. And, according to Rushworth,

---

(i) IF not a mistake, Rushworth.—Probably the allowance for horses is omitted; the pay here stated being the same as that of a captain of infantry.

an ordinance was also passed, September 1643, wherein it was enacted, that all officers of Lord Essex's army, whose pay amounted to 10s. a day or upwards, should regularly receive only half their pay, the other half to be respited till the troubles were over. All officers whose daily pay was less than 10s. to receive only two thirds thereof. When three months respited pay became due, the general was authorized to grant certificates thereof to the different officers.

APRIL 13th, A. D. 1647. The following entry appears on the journals of the House of Commons, shewing the pay of the officers of the parliamentary troops, serving in England; and the manner in which that of the cavalry was computed.

RESOLVED, &c. That the proportions following are fit proportions of pay for the officers of horse that are to continue in this kingdom (k).

					l.	s.	d.	Per diem.
Colonel	{	As colonel	-	-	0	12	0	{ l. s. d.
		Four horses	-	-	0	8	0	
		As captain	-	-	0	10	0	
Major	{	As major	-	-	0	5	0	{ 1 1 0
		Three horses	-	-	0	6	0	
		As captain	-	-	0	10	0	
Captain	{	Captain	-	-	0	10	0	{ 0 14 0
		Two horses	-	-	0	4	0	

(k) APRIL 9th, 1647, Resolved, &c. That the pay of such commanders and officers as shall be employed in the service of Ireland, shall be higher than such as shall be employed in England.

12. RESOLVED, &c. That this House doth agree with the Committee, that the establishment for the officers and soldiers, now in Ireland, and to go over thither, shall be the same with that of Sir Thomas Fairfax's army: and that the same proportion of pay, which was respited upon the public faith, to Sir Thomas Fairfax's army, shall now also be respited for the present, and made good unto them out of the rebels lands, by English measure, according to the rates and proportions settled by act of parliament, upon the finishing of the war, after satisfaction shall be first given to the adventurers. Resolved, &c. That coats and knap-sacks shall be provided, over and above their pay, for the foot soldiers of the army that are to go for Ireland, for their better encouragement.

					l.	s.	d.	Per diem.
Lieutenant	{	Lieutenant	-	-	0	5	0	0 9 0
		Two horses	-	-	0	4	0	
Cornet	{	Cornet	-	-	0	4	0	0 8 0
		Two horses	-	-	0	4	0	
	{	Quarter master	-	-	0	4	0	0 6 0
		One horse	-	-	0	2	0	
Provost marshal			-	-	0	3	4	0 7 4
Two men			-	-	0	4	0	
Corporals and trumpets, each			-	-	0	2	6	0 5 0

RESOLVED, That the proportions following are fit proportions for the officers of foot that are to continue in this kingdom.

						Per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Captains	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	8	0
Lieutenants	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	4	0
Ensigns	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	6
Serjeants	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	12
Drummers	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	12
Corporals	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	12

RESOLVED, &c. That there shall be no officer within any garrison, above a captain, but only the governor.

RESOLVED, &c. That there shall be no company in any garrison, under the number of one hundred, where there is above one company in that garrison.

RESOLVED, That the governors of Pendennis, Chester, Plymouth, Hull, Gloucester, Liverpool, Lynn, Newcastle, Portsmouth, shall have for their pay, 12s. as governor, and 8s. as captain.

RESOLVED, &c. That the governors of Weymouth, Tynmouth castle, the castle and great fort of Bristol, shall have each of them 7s. as governor; 8s. as captain.

RESOLVED, &c. That all such garrisons as have fifty foot, and under, their governors to have 5s. per diem only: the rest of the garrisons not

named, that have above fifty, the governor to have 10s. per diem as governor and captain.

RESOLVED, &c. That as many of the dragoons of the army as can be persuaded to go for the service of Ireland may receive order for that purpose.

RESOLVED, &c. That the officers, &c. that shall go for Ireland, may have their debentures for their arrears; and that their accounts shall be made up, according to their musters, in their absence.

AMONG the manuscripts in the Harleian Library is one marked No. 6844, entitled "An Establishment of the Forces in England and Wales, as the same stood the 27th February, 1659," wherein the pay of every officer and soldier is stated as follows.

General Officers.

	Per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Commander in chief	- - - -	10	0	0
Lieutenant general of the army	- - - -	1	0	0
Lieutenant general of the horse	- - - -	1	0	0
Major general of the foot	- - - -	1	0	0
Commissary general of the horse	- - - -	0	15	0
Scout master general	- - - -	1	0	0
Quarter master general	- - - -	1	3	0
Judge advocate to the army, at 15s. and his clerk, at 3s. 4d.	- - - -	0	18	4
One adjutant general of horse and foot	- - - -	0	15	0
One adjutant general of horse and foot who hath command of a troop of horse	- - - -	0	5	0
Commissary general of the musters 15s. ten deputies each at 5s. and one clerk at 2s. 6d.	- - - -	3	7	6
Surgeon to the commander in chief and his mates	- - - -	0	8	0
Marshall general of the army 10s. and six men and horses, each at 2s. 6d.	- - - -	1	5	0
		<hr/>		
		22	16	10
		<hr/>		



## HISTORY OF

## Field and Staff Officers to a Regiment of Horse.

	Per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Colonel, as colonel	-	0	12	0
Major, as major	-	0	5	8
Surgeon 4s. and one horse to carry his chest 2s.	-	0	6	0
<hr/>				
		1	3	8
<hr/>				

## Colonel's Troop.

Colonel, as captain, 10s. and two horses each at 2s.	-	0	14	0
Lieutenant 6s. and two horses, each at 2s.	-	0	10	0
Cornet 5s. and two horses, each at 2s.	-	0	9	0
Quarter master 4s. and one horse at 2s.	-	0	6	0
Two trumpeters, each at 2s. 8d.	-	0	5	4
Two corporals, above trooper's pay, each 5d.	-	0	0	10
Eighty souldiers, each at 2s. 3d.	-	9	0	0
<hr/>				
		11	5	2
<hr/>				

## Major's Troop.

Major, as captain, 10s. and two horses, each at 2s.	-	0	14	0
Lieutenant 6s. and two horses, each at 2s.	-	0	10	0
Cornet 5s. and two horses, each at 2s.	-	0	9	0
Quarter master 4s. and one horse at 2s.	-	0	6	0
One trumpeter	-	0	2	8
Two corporals, above trooper's pay, 5d. each	-	0	0	10
Eighty souldiers, each at 2s. 3d.	-	9	0	0
<hr/>				
		11	2	6
<hr/>				

The pay of four troops more to complete a regiment of horse, at the same rates and numbers which are mentioned in the major's troop

44 10 0

---

# THE ENGLISH ARMY.

301

	l.	s.	d.
In all for one regiment consisting of 480 souldiers besides officers - - - - -	68	1	4

In all for nine such regiments - - -	612	12	0
--------------------------------------	-----	----	---

## Field and Staff Officers of a Regiment of Foot.

Colonel, as colonel - - - - -	0	12	0
Lieutenant colonel, as lieutenant colonel - - -	0	7	0
Major, as major - - - - -	0	5	0
Preacher - - - - -	0	6	8
Surgeon 4s. and one mate 2s. 6d. - - - - -	0	6	6
Quarter master and provost marshal, to be executed by one person (1) - - - - -	0	4	0
	2	1	2

## A Company of Foot.

Captain - - - - -	0	8	0
Lieutenant - - - - -	0	4	0
Ensigne - - - - -	0	3	0
Two serjeants, each at 18d. - - - - -	0	3	0
Three corporals, at 3d. per diem each above souldiers pay - - -	0	0	9
One drumm - - - - -	0	1	0
One hundred and twenty souldiers, each at 9d. - - -	4	10	0
	5	9	9

The pay of nine such companys more to compleat a regiment of ffoot, consisting of 1200 souldiers, besides officers - - -	49	7	9
--	----	---	---

In all for one regiment - - - - -	54	17	6
-----------------------------------	----	----	---

(1) At present the office of provost marshal is executed by the adjutant, whose duty it is to see all sentences of regimental courts martial inflicted.

	l.	s.	d.
In all for twelve regiments of foot, consisting of 14400 fouldiers besides officers - - - -	683	4	0
A regiment of foot more, consisting of nine companys and 1100 fouldiers besides officers - - -	51	8	11
In all for two regiments - - - -	102	17	10
Five companys of foot, consisting of 500 fouldiers besides officers, colonel's pay included - - -	24	5	9
Three companys more, consisting of 300 fouldiers besides officers - - - -	14	4	3
In all for fourteen regiments and eight companies as above	824	11	10

## Life Guard.

Captain - - - - -	0	19	8
Lieutenant - - - - -	0	14	0
Cornet - - - - -	0	12	0
Quarter master - - - - -	0	9	0
Four corporals, at 5s. each - - - -	1	0	0
Two trumpeters, each at 3s. 4d. - - -	0	6	8
Two other trumpeters, each at 3s. 6d. -	0	7	0
One hundred and sixty fouldiers, each at 3s. 6d. -	28	0	0
	32	8	4
Trayne { Engineer general - - - - -	0	10	0
Comissary of ammunition - - - - -	0	5	0
Quarter master of the trayne - - - -	0	4	0
A tent maker - - - - -	0	2	6
Three mattrasses, each at 12d. - - -	0	3	0
	1	4	6

AT this time we find that the governors of the several forts and castles were paid as follows :

			Per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Governor of Carisbrook castle	-	-	-	0	12	0
Guernsey	-	-	-	0	10	0
Jersey	-	-	-	0	10	0
Scilly Islands	-	-	-	0	10	0
Isle of Man (besides his pay as captain)	-	-	-	0	6	0
Pendennis castle	-	-	-	0	6	0
Plymouth castle and island	-	-	-	0	8	0
Portland, Weymouth, and Sandford castles	-	-	-	0	6	8
Brun Sea castle	-	-	-	0	3	4
Calshot castle	-	-	-	0	5	0
Hurst castle	-	-	-	0	5	0
Portsmouth and South Sea castle	-	-	-	0	8	0
Dover castle	-	-	-	0	8	0
Sandgate castle	-	-	-	0	3	0
Walmer castle	-	-	-	0	5	0
Deal castle	-	-	-	0	5	0
Sandown castle	-	-	-	0	5	0
Upnor castle	-	-	-	0	5	0
Tilbury fort	-	-	-	0	6	0
Landguard fort (as governor and captain)	-	-	-	0	10	0
Hull	-	-	-	0	8	0
Teinmouth castle	-	-	-	0	4	0
Berwick	-	-	-	0	5	0
Carlisle	-	-	-	0	12	0
Shrewsbury (as governor and captain)	-	-	-	0	10	0
Warwick	-	-	-	0	5	0
Windfor (as governor and captain)	-	-	-	0	10	0
Chipstow, ditto	-	-	-	0	10	0
Hereford, ditto	-	-	-	0	10	0
Beaumares, ditto	-	-	-	0	10	0
Holyhead	-	-	-	0	5	0

## TOTAL CHARGE of this ESTABLISHMENT.

	Per diem.			Per mensem.		
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
General officers - - -	22	16	10	639	11	4
Nine regiments of horse - - -	612	12	0	17152	16	0
Fourteen regiments and eight compa- nies of foot - - -	824	11	10	23088	11	4
Life guard of horse - - -	32	8	4	907	13	4
Trayn - - -	1	4	6	34	6	0
Garrisons - - -	205	15	2	5761	4	8
Contingencies - - -	-	-	-	1500	0	0
<hr/>						
Total per mensem - - -	-	-	-	49084	2	8
Total for a year at thirteen months - - -	-	-	-	638093	14	8
<hr/>						

This establishment consists of nine regiments of horse, with a troop of guards, officers included - - -	Men 4870
Fourteen regiments of foot, with the officers - - -	18732
The souldiers, gunners, mattrasses, and officers employed in the garrisons - - -	4740
<hr/>	

The whole army of horse and foot as above expressed, be- sides the general officers, officers of the trayne of artillery and staff officers, containeth in all - - -	28342
Whereof the annual charge of their pay, with the pay of the general officers, trains of artillery and contingencies doth amount to the sum of - - -	638093 14 8

IN the Journals of the House of Commons of the 1st of King Wil-  
liam III. in the estimate of the charge of divers regiments of horse,  
dragoons, and foot, to be employed in the service of Ireland, the follow-  
ing sums were allowed for the pay of the officers and private men.

# THE ENGLISH ARMY.

305

## HORSE.

	Per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Colonel, as colonel 12s. as captain 10s. and two horses, at 2s. each - - - - -		1	6	0
Lieutenant colonel, as lieutenant colonel 8s. as captain 10s. and two horses, each 2s. - - - - -		1	2	0
Major, as major (N.B. No troop) - - - - -		1	0	0
Captain, as captain 10s. and two horses at 2s. each - - - - -		0	14	0
Lieutenant 6s. and two horses, each 2s. - - - - -		0	10	0
Cornet 5s. and two horses, each 2s. - - - - -		0	9	0
Quarter master 4s. and one horse 2s. - - - - -		0	6	0
Corporal 3s. - - - - -		0	3	0
Trumpeter 2s. 8d. - - - - -		0	2	8
Private trooper - - - - -		0	2	6

## DRAGOONS.

Colonel, as colonel 15s. as captain 8s. and three horses, at 1s. each - - - - -		1	6	0
Lieutenant colonel, as lieutenant colonel 9s. as captain 8s. and three horses 2s. - - - - -		1	0	0
Major, who has no troop - - - - -		1	0	0
Captain 8s. and three horses, at 1s. each - - - - -		0	11	0
Lieutenant 4s. and two horses - - - - -		0	6	0
Cornet 3s. and two horses - - - - -		0	5	0
Quarter master, for himself and horse - - - - -		0	4	0
Serjeant 1s. 6d. and 1s. for his horse - - - - -		0	2	6
Corporal 1s. and 1s. for his horse - - - - -		0	2	0
Drummer 1s. and 1s. for his horse - - - - -		0	2	0
Hautboy 1s. and 1s. for his horse - - - - -		0	2	0
Private dragoon 1s. 6d. for himself and horse - - - - -		0	1	6
Adjutant - - - - -		0	5	0
Surgeon - - - - -		0	6	0

VOL. I.

R R

	Per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Chaplain - - - - -	- -	0	6	8
Gunsmith and his servant - - -	- -	0	5	0

## FOOT.

Colonel, as colonel 12s. as captain 8s.	- -	1	0	0
Lieutenant colonel, as lieutenant colonel 7s. as captain 8s.	- -	0	15	0
Major, as major 5s. as captain 8s.	- -	0	13	0
Captain - - - - -	- -	0	8	0
Lieutenant - - - - -	- -	0	4	0
Ensign - - - - -	- -	0	3	0
Adjutant - - - - -	- -	0	4	0
Quarter master - - - - -	- -	0	4	0
Surgeon 4s. and mate 2s. 6d.	- -	0	6	6
Chaplain 6s. 8d.	- -	0	6	8
Serjeant - - - - -	- -	0	1	6
Corporal - - - - -	- -	0	1	0
Drummer - - - - -	- -	0	1	0
Private foldier - - - - -	- -	0	0	8

IN addition to the daily pay here stated, the officers of the different corps of the army had the following allowance of servants, whose pay they were permitted to receive. At what time it was first granted, I have not been able to discover, but in the year 1697-8, being the 10th of the reign of King William III. it was allowed in the computation of the half pay, then first established, by the king's warrant (m) given in

---

(m) WILLIAM R.

WHEREAS our regiments of foot commanded by our right trusty and right entirely beloved cousin and counsellor, Charles Duke of Bolton, and our trusty and well beloved Colonel Richard Coote, Colonel Thomas Brudenell, Colonel Thomas Saunderson, Major General Thomas Erle, Colonel John Gibson, Colonel William Northcote, and Colonel Thomas Farrington, together with the independent companies commanded by Lieutenant Colonel Rouse and Captain John Pitt, have been lately disbanded; and we being graciously pleased to allow half

the note below, from the votes of the House of Commons. It seems as if this allowance was not at that time made to the whole army, for it is said in the report from the committee appointed to consider the

half pay to the officers of our said regiments and companies for their support untill they shall be fully paid off and cleared, and be otherwise provided for; our will and pleasure is, that out of such monies as are or shall come to your hands, for the use of our forces, you pay unto the several officers of our said regiments and companies, the respective allowances mentioned in the list and establishment hereunto annexed, being the half pay of themselves and servants, respectively; to commence from the 1st day of April next, and to be paid unto them by monthly or quarterly payments, upon certificates from our commissary general or deputy commissary general of the musters, of their being alive and qualified as aforementioned: and for so doing, this with the acquittances of the said officers, or of their assigns, shall be from time to time your sufficient warrant and discharge.

Given at our court at Kensington, the 16th of March, 1697-8, in the tenth  
of our reign,

By his Majesty's command.

CHA. MONTAGUE  
STE. FOX  
THO. LITTLETON  
T. PELHAM.

To our right trusty and right well beloved cousin  
and counsellor, Richard Earl of Ranelagh,  
Paymaster General of our forces.

VOL. 12. 567.

HORSE.							Per diem.					
							l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Colonel, as colonel and captain	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	13	0			
For six servants, at 15d. each	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	7	6			
										1	0	6
Lieutenant colonel, as lieutenant colonel and captain					-	-	0	11	0			
For three servants, each at 15d.	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	3	9			
										0	14	9
Major, as major and captain	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	9	9			
For three servants, each 15d.	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	3	9			
										0	13	6
										Captain		



## HISTORY OF

state of the land forces and marines in 1746, that "the first increase in the charge of the land forces (since the year 1700), was by virtue of an establishment signed the 15th of June, 1719, to take place from

										Per diem.			l. s. d.		
										l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Captain	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	7	0			
For three servants, at 15d. each	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	3	9			
										<hr/>			0	10	9
Captain lieutenant	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	5	0			
For two servants, 15d. each	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	6			
										<hr/>			0	7	6
The lieutenant the same.															
Cornet	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	4	6			
For two servants, at 15d. each	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	6			
										<hr/>			0	7	0
Quarter master	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	3	0			
One servant at 15d.	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	3			
										<hr/>			0	4	3
Chaplain 3s. 4d.															
N. B. No adjutant mentioned.															

## DRAGOONS.

Colonel, as colonel and captain	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	13	0			
For six servants, at 9d. per diem each	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	4	6			
										0	17	6
Lieutenant colonel, as lieutenant colonel and captain	-	-					0	10	0			
For three servants, at 9d. each	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	3			
										0	12	3
Major, as major and captain	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	8	0			
For three servants, at 9d. each	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	3			
										0	10	3
Captain	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	5	6			
For three servants, at 9d. each	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	3			
										0	7	9
Captain lieutenant	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	3	0			
For two servants, at 9d. each	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	6			
										0	4	6
												Other

the 24th of that month ;" so that it did not commence till almost three months after the peace of Utrecht ; and this first addition to the

Other lieutenants the same.										Per diem.					
										l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Cornet	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	6			
For two servants, at 9d. each	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	6			
										<hr/>			0	4	0
Quarter master	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	0			
For one servant at 9d.	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	9			
										<hr/>			0	2	9

Chaplain 3s. 4d.

N. B. Adjutant not mentioned.

#### FOOT.

Colonel, as colonel and captain	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	10	0			
For six servants, at 4d. each	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	0			
										<hr/>			0	12	0
Lieutenant colonel, as lieutenant colonel and captain	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	7	6			
For three servants, at 4d. each	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	0			
										<hr/>			0	8	6
Major, as major and captain	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	6	6			
For three servants, at 4d. each	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	0			
										<hr/>			0	7	6
Captain	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	4	0			
For three servants, at 4d. each	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	0			
										<hr/>			0	5	0
Captain lieutenant	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	0			
One servant, at 4d.	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	4			
										<hr/>			0	2	4
Lieutenant	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	0			
One servant	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	4			
										<hr/>			0	2	4
Ensign	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	6			
One servant at 4d.	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	4			
										<hr/>			0	1	10
Chaplain	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	3	4			
Quarter master	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	4			
										<hr/>			0	5	8

national expence consisted entirely of allowances to commission officers in lieu of their servants: this was afterwards twice increased, once by an establishment signed the 29th of April, 1714, to commence from the 25th of December, 1713, when a further charge was introduced for servants to officers and quarter masters of horse and dragoons; and a second time by an establishment signed the 24th of June, 1718, when a further increase was made for servants to the quarter masters of thirty battalions of foot. Although this allowance has continued ever since, it was not consolidated to their pay in Ireland till the year 1728, when it was done by the warrant transcribed in the note below from an authentic MS. establishment for that country (n).

Two other small additions were likewise made to the pay of the army, one in the seventh year of King George I. when three-pence was added to the pay of the serjeants, corporals, and private men of the dragoons, and four-pence per day to the pay of the serjeants and corporals of the three regiments of foot guards; but at what particular time the last addition took place, the committee before mentioned reported they were not able to learn (o). Some farther little addition has

---

(n) WHEREAS we have thought fit in the foregoing establishment to add to the personal pay of the officers of our army, the number of servants which have been usually allowed them, whereby the effective men do more plainly appear, and our said officers are more regularly entitled to the pay of their servants than formerly. Our will and pleasure therefore is, and we do hereby strictly require and command, that all the officers of our said army, now and for the time being, do make their care, that their respective companies are kept complete, and that they do contain the number of effective men settled by our said establishment, under pain of our displeasure; and hereof our muster masters are to take particular notice from time to time, in the mustering of our said forces, that the officers neglecting the same may be known.

(o) THERE appears to have been great irregularity in the payment of the army during the latter end of the reign of King James II. and that of the reign of King William III. inasmuch that the publicans of several towns where the troops were quartered, were not only obliged to trust them for their diet, but also to advance them part of their pay. Of this we have an instance among many of the publicans of Royston, in Lincolnshire, who, January 12th, 1694, petitioned the parliament, setting forth, that Capt. Henry Cartwright's company

within five or six years been made to the pay of the private men, by returning them the deduction of one shilling in the pound made out of their full pay, and likewise abolishing the weekly stoppage of 2d. per

company in Colonel Hastings's regiment of foot being quartered on them, demanded over and above their lodgings, and other necessaries directed by law, the following subsistence to be paid them weekly, viz. to the lieutenant 17s. 6d. the ensign 14s. the serjeant 6s. every corporal 4s. 6d. and every private centinel 3s. 6d. threatening in case of non-payment to take the petitioners goods. That the petitioners were willing to give them such subsistence as they were able to do, and as the law directs, but were not able to bear a grievance of this nature, having formerly been great sufferers by quartering two companies of Sir John Edgworth's regiment, from the 12th of February, 1688, to the 15th of April, 1689, for which they were never paid one farthing. They therefore prayed that the house would take the premises into their consideration. On this the officers in question, and the agents of that, and several other regiments, were ordered to attend the house, and were examined; in consequence whereof on the 26th of February, 1694, the commons caused a representation thereof to be made to his majesty, complaining of it as a violation of the liberty and property of the subject, and stating that it was in a great measure caused by the extortions of the agents and impositions of the colonel, who had also been guilty of divers acts of tyranny and oppression therein stated, for which he was by the king dismissed the service. About the same time various petitions for long arrears of pay to the widows and representatives of particular officers occur in the journals of the House of Commons.

ANOTHER instance in the same reign occurs in Ireland, respecting the Inniskilling regiment of dragoons, who for a long time received no pay, but subsisted themselves at their own expence. At length, A.D. 1694, a great number of both officers and soldiers, unable to procure any payment, though repeatedly promised by General Ginkle, surrounded the coach of the Lord Lieutenant Capel, when going in state to St. Patrick's church, and declared that if they did not in a few days receive what was due to them, they would use force to obtain it. The Lord Lieutenant promised them redress, and threw out his purse with thirty guineas in it, to one of the soldiers, who contemptuously threw it back into the coach through the glass of the window. Queen Mary was then regent, the king being in Flanders, an account of this matter was sent to her, whereupon she ordered a thousand pounds to be paid to the officers and men, out of her privy purse, promising that the remainder should be shortly paid, their demands being then settling by a board of officers. In the year 1702, 2000l. more was paid, which was all they got for their pay, from the year 1689, a very small portion considering they were then a regiment of nine troops. This anecdote was communicated to me by an old officer, who had it from his grandfather. The same gentleman gave me the following account of a like irregularity, so late as the latter end of the reign of King George I.

ABOUT

week from each serjeant, 1½d. from each corporal and drum, and 1d. per week from each private man, in the regiments of infantry, for the use of the paymaster and surgeon.

THE full pay of the different corps of the army, with their subsistence, and nett arrears, is given under their several establishments; as it stood at the commencement of the present war. An augmentation took place in 1797 to certain branches of the service, which shall afterwards be specified.

ABOUT the year 1718 or 1719, the 7th regiment of foot, with another, whose number is forgotten, were put on board Admiral Byng's fleet, after the action off Messina; they were landed and quartered at the Devizes in Wiltshire, Taunton in Somersetshire, and the neighbouring towns, at which time there was four years' pay due to most of the officers and men, some excepted, who held employments about the court. Although no money was issued for the above time, a kind of commissary, by the connivance of the colonel, attended the regiment, occasionally furnishing necessaries to the different officers, and even sometimes paying their tavern bills, taking usurious assignments on their pay for such goods and disbursements. After some time, the officers presented a memorial to Lord Tyrrawley their colonel; he referred them to Mr. Ford their agent, who said he had not received any money from the treasury for six years. On this they memorialized the colonel anew, and also the War-office; and after a course of time were promised to be paid in the following proportions, till money could be raised to pay them in full; a captain to receive lieutenant's pay, a lieutenant that of an ensign, and an ensign one half of his daily subsistence; but this promise was not kept. In the mean time the officers paid none of their bills, and kept together in bodies, armed, to prevent arrests, and finally embarked for Ireland, without clearing any of their scores.

On their arrival in Ireland their pay being greatly diminished, by the difference of the establishments, it caused the officers more earnestly to solicit for their arrears of pay, and they accordingly filed a bill in Chancery against Mr. Ford, who in his answer deposed, that Lord Tyrrawley had for twenty years charged certain sums against each officer's pay on their first appointment or promotion, viz. to a captain 120l. a lieutenant 70l. and an ensign 40l. some more, some less; on complaint being made of this to my lord, he pleaded the custom of the army, and said it was not unknown to the king. After many years these particulars were laid before King George II. who paid my informant, then a midshipman, 100l. as some compensation for the demands of his father, on account of his pay of lieutenant and adjutant.

## ROYAL REGIMENT OF HORSE-GUARDS. (Oxford Blues.)

	Subsistence.						Nett Arrears.					
	Per Diem.			For 365 Days.			Per Diem.			For 365 Days.		
	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>	<i>Parts of</i>			<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
Colonel	1	11		565	15		7	3	93	132	14	
Lieutenant Colonel } and Captain	1	2	6	410	12	6	5		160	91	18	4
Major	1	1	6	392	7	6	3	8	159	67	11	8
Captain - - - - -		16	6	301	2	6	3	7	78	65	14	5
Lieutenant - - - - -		11	6	209	17	6	2	6	7	45	13	1
Cornet - - - - -		11		200	15		2		299	37	14	11
Quarter Master - - - - -		6	6	118	12	6	1	5	75	26	3	4
Chaplain - - - - -		5		91	5		1	2	246	22	19	9
Adjutant - - - - -		4	6	82	2	6	2		2	3	11	
Surgeon - - - - -		4	6	82	2	6	1	1	76	20	1	9
Surgeon's Mate - - - - -		3		54	15		3	74		5	4	5
Kettle Drummer - - - - -		2	6									
Trumpeter - - - - -		2										
Corporal - - - - -		2	6									
Private Man - - - - -		2										

## DRAGOON GUARDS AND DRAGOONS.

	BRITISH.												IRISH.					
	Subsistence.						Full Pay.						Full Pay.			Subsistence.		
	Per Diem.			For 365 Days.			Per Diem.			For 365 Days.			Per Diem.			Per Diem.		
	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
Colonel	} and Lieut.Col. } Captain	1	6	6	483	12	6	1	15	638	15		1	11	4	1	3	8
Lieut.Col.			18	6	337	12	6	1	4	447	2	6		19	4		14	7
Major			15	6	282	17	6	1		374	2	6		17	4		13	1
Captain		- - -	11	6	209	17	6		15	6	282	17	6		12	4		9
Lieutenant	- -		7		127	15			9	164	5			7	2		4	9
Cornet	- - -		6		109	10			8	146				6	2		3	10
Chaplain	- - -		5		91	5			6	8	121	13	4		6	8		5
Adjutant	- - -		4	6	82	2	6		5		91	5						
Surgeon	- - -		4	6	82	2	6		6		109	10		4			3	
Surgeon's Mate	-		3		54	15			3	6	63	17	6					
Quarter Master	-		4		73				5	6	100	7	6	4			2	9
Kettle Drummer	-		1	6					2	3				1	8		1	
Hautbois	- - -		1	6					2					1	6		1	
Serjeant	- - -		2	3					2	9				2	8		1	7
Corporal	- - -		1	9					2	3				1	10		1	1 <sup>9</sup>
Private Man	- - -		1	5					1	9				1	6		11	

## HISTORY OF

## FOOT GUARDS.

	Subsistence.						Full Pay.						Nett Arrears.					
	P. Diem.			365 Days.			P. Diem.			365 Days.			Per Diem.		365 Days.			
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	s.	d.	Parts of 365	l.	s.	d.
Colonel - - - -	1	10	0	547	10	0	1	19	0	711	15	0	6	11	116	126	14	3
Lieutenant Colonel -	1	1	6	392	7	6	1	8	6	520	2	6	5	5	352	100	6	5
Major - - - -	0	18	6	337	12	6	1	4	6	447	2	6	4	8	121	85	13	5
Captain - - - -	0	12	6	228	2	6	0	16	6	301	2	6	3	1	145	56	17	6
Capt. Lieut. & Lieut.	0	6	0	109	10	0	0	7	10	142	19	2	1	4	46	24	10	6
Ensign - - - -	0	4	6	82	2	6	0	5	10	106	9	2	0	11	228	17	13	7
Chaplain - - - -	0	5	0	91	5	0	0	6	8	121	13	4	1	2	360	22	15	10
Adjutant, Qu. Master, Surgeon, Solicitor -	0	3	0	54	15	0	0	4	0	73	0	0	0	9	1	13	13	10
Surgeon's Mate - -	0	3	0	54	15	0	0	3	6	63	17	6	0	3	147	5	3	6
Drum-Major - - -	0	1	0	18	5	0	0	1	6	27	7	6						
Deputy-Marshal - -	0	0	9	13	13	9	0	1	0	18	5	0						
Hautbois - - - -	0	1	0	18	5	0	0	1	6	27	7	0						
Serjeant - - - -	0	1	4	24	6	8	0	1	10	33	9	2						
Corporal - - - -	0	0	10	16	1	7	0	1	2	21	7	6						
Drummer - - - -	0	0	8	13	9	0	0	1	0	18	5	0						
Private Soldier - -	0	0	6	10	8	7	0	0	10	15	4	2						

## MARCHING REGIMENTS OF FOOT.

N. B. The Pay of the Militia, Invalids, and Marines, the same.

	BRITISH.												IRISH.					
	Full Pay.						Subsistence.						Full Pay.			Subsist.		
	P. Diem.			365 Days.			P. Diem.			365 Days.			P. Diem.		Per Diem.			
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Colonel - - - - -	1	4	0	438	0	0	18	0	328	10	0	1	5	0	0	18	4	
Lieutenant Colonel - - -	0	17	0	310	5	0	13	0	237	5	0	0	17	0	0	12	7	
Major - - - - -	0	15	0	273	15	0	11	6	209	17	6	0	14	0	0	10	4	
Captain - - - - -	0	10	0	182	10	0	7	6	136	17	6	0	10	0	0	7	1	
Captain Lieut. and Lieutenant	0	4	8	85	3	4	3	6	63	17	6	0	4	8	0	3	4	
Ensign - - - - -	0	3	8	66	18	4	3	0	54	15	0	0	3	8	0	2	10	
Chaplain - - - - -	0	6	8	121	13	4	5	0	91	5	0	0	6	8	0	5	0	
Adjutant and Surgeon - - -	0	4	0	73	0	0	3	0	54	15	0	0	4	0	0	3	0	
Quarter Master - - - - -	0	4	8	85	3	4	3	6	63	17	6	0	4	8	0	3	4	
Surgeon's Mate - - - - -	0	3	6	63	17	6	3	0	54	15	0	0	2	6	0	2	4	
Serjeant - - - - -	0	1	6	27	7	6	1	0	18	5	0	0	1	6	0	1	0	
Drum-Major - - - - -												0	2	0	0	1	6	
Corporal and Drummer - - -	0	1	0	18	5	0	0	8	12	3	4	0	1	0	0	0	9	
Private Soldier - - - - -	0	0	8	12	3	4	0	6	9	2	6	1	0	7	0	0	5	

## ROYAL ARTILLERY.

	Full Pay.						Subsistence.						Arrears.					
	P. Diem.			Per Ann.			Per Diem.			Per Annum.			P. Diem.			Per Ann.		
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Colonel - - - - -	1	5	0	456	5	0	0	18	9	342	3	9	0	6	3	114	1	3
Lieutenant Colonel - - - - -	1	0	0	365	0	0	0	15	0	273	15	0	0	5	0	91	5	0
Major - - - - -	0	15	0	273	15	0	0	11	3	205	6	3	0	3	9	68	8	9
Captain - - - - -	0	10	0	182	10	0	0	7	6	136	17	6	0	2	6	45	12	6
Captain Lieutenant - - - - -	0	6	0	109	10	0	0	4	6	82	2	6	0	1	6	27	7	6
1st Lieutenant - - - - -	0	5	0	91	5	0	0	3	9	68	8	9	0	1	3	22	16	3
2d Lieutenant - - - - -	0	4	0	73	0	0	0	3	0	54	15	0	0	1	0	18	5	0
Serjeant - - - - -	0	2	0	36	10	0	0	1	7½	30	0	8½						
Corporal - - - - -	0	1	10	33	9	2	0	1	6½	28	2	8½						
Bombadier - - - - -	0	1	8	30	8	4	0	1	4½	25	1	10½						
Gunner - - - - -	0	1	4	24	6	8	0	1	1½	20	3	0½						
Mattrofs - - - - -	}	0	1	0	18	5	0	0	9½	14	8	11½						
Fifer and Drummer - - - - -																		

## HALF-PAY.

	ENGLISH, per diem.						ENGLISH, per annum.						IRISH, per diem.					
	Drag.			Foot.			Drag.			Foot.			Drag.			Foot.		
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Colonel - - - - -	0	13	0	0	12	0	237	5	0	219	0	0	0	15	8	0	12	3
Lieutenant Colonel - - - - -	0	10	0	0	8	6	182	10	0	155	2	6	0	9	8	0	8	3
Major - - - - -	0	8	0	0	7	6	146	0	0	136	17	6	0	8	8	0	6	9
Captain - - - - -	0	5	6	0	5	0	100	7	6	91	6	0	0	6	2	0	4	9
Lieutenant - - - - -	0	3	0	0	2	4	54	15	0	42	11	8	0	3	0	0	2	3
2d Lieut. Cornet & Ensign - - - - -	0	2	6	0	1	10	45	12	6	33	9	2	0	2	0	0	1	9
Quarter Master - - - - -	0	2	0	0	2	0	36	10	0	42	11	8	0	1	6	0	2	4
Adjutant - - - - -	0	2	0	0	2	0	36	10	0	36	10	0				0	2	0
Surgeon - - - - -	0	2	0	0	2	0							0	1	0	0	2	2
Chaplain - - - - -	0	2	4	0	3	4							0	3	4	0	3	4

The only deduction from the Half-pay is the poundage of 2½ per cent.

If the officer be not on the spot, to the Agent that receives it 6d.

THE pay of the troops, as it was established at the Revolution, underwent very little change till after the commencement of the present war in 1793. We find, indeed, in 1721, an addition of 3d. per diem to the pay of the serjeants, corporals, and privates of the dragoons ;



and also of 4d. per diem to the serjeants and corporals of the foot-guards. The officers likewise in the intermediate time received some additional emolument, in the form of allowance for servants, &c. But, in the course of the present war, the pay and allowance of the officers and soldiers have received considerable augmentations. In 1795 his Majesty issued a warrant for granting an addition of  $2\frac{1}{4}$ d. per diem to the subsistence of the non-commissioned officers and men; to this was afterwards added  $3\frac{3}{4}$ d. per diem, making the pay of the private foot-soldier 1s. per diem. In 1797 the stoppages from all the officers' pay, called arrears, were abolished; besides which 1s. per diem was added to the subsistence of each subaltern officer. The pay of the surgeon and his mate (now assistant) was also raised, the former to 10s. and the latter to 5s. a day. The following Tables will exhibit the rate of the officers' and soldiers' pay, according to the latest regulations\*.

DAILY RATES of the SUBSISTENCE or PAY and ALLOWANCE of the  
Officers and Men of the Cavalry.

LIFE GUARDS.

							Subsistence, per Diem.		
							l.	s.	d.
Colonel	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	7	0
Lieutenant colonel	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	3	3
Major	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	19	6
Captain	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	12	0
Lieutenant	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	8	3
Lieutenant and adjutant	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	8	3
Cornet	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	7	3
Surgeon	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	9	0
Veterinary surgeon	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	8	0
Quarter master	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	4	9

\* In the Appendix, No. 5, may be seen the late regulations respecting the office of the Paymasters General of the forces.

# THE ENGLISH ARMY.

317

							Subsistence, per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Corporal	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	3	9 $\frac{1}{4}$
Trumpeter	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	0
Kettle drummer	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	0
Private	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	3	2 $\frac{1}{4}$

N. B. THE above rates of pay for the corporals and privates include, in each case, 1s. 3d. a day for the subsistence of a horse.

## ROYAL REGIMENT OF HORSE GUARDS.

Colonel, as colonel	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	14	6
Lieutenant colonel, as lieutenant colonel	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	6	0
Major, as major	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	5	0
Captain	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	16	6
Lieutenant	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	11	6
Cornet	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	11	6
Adjutant	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	4	6
Surgeon	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	9	0
Assistant surgeon	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	5	0
Veterinary surgeon	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	8	0
Quarter master	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	6	6
Corporal	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	3	0 $\frac{1}{4}$
Trumpeter	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	5 $\frac{1}{4}$
Kettle drummer	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	6
Private	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	5 $\frac{1}{4}$

## DRAGOON GUARDS, DRAGOONS, and FENCIBLE CAVALRY.

							Pay and Allowance per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Colonel and captain	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	12	10
Lieutenant colonel and captain	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	3	0
Major and captain	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	3	0
Captain	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	14	7
Captain lieutenant, or lieutenant	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	9	0
Cornet	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	8	0

Pay and Allowance per diem.							l.	s.	d.
Paymaster	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	15	0
Adjutant	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	5	0
Surgeon of dragoon guards and dragoons	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	11	4
Surgeon of fencible cavalry	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	6	0
Affistant surgeon	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	5	0
Veterinary surgeon	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	8	0
Surgeon's mate	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	3	6
Paymaster serjeant	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	11
Serjeant	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	11
Corporal	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	4½
Trumpeter	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	4
Private	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	0

N. B. IN addition to the rate of pay above specified, the colonel or commandant of a corps has an allowance for each troop of which the same may consist, of 1s. 2d. a day in lieu of the pay of one warrant man, and 1s. 6d. a day in lieu of the pay of one hautbois.

THE surgeon and surgeon's mate of fencible cavalry, if not holding double commissions, have an allowance of 1s. a day in addition to the rate of pay above mentioned.

IN the fencible cavalry, where the paymaster must necessarily hold a commission in the corps, his pay, if a subaltern, is made up to 15s. a day; if a captain of a troop, it is 3s. 6d. a day in addition to his pay as captain; and an allowance of 2s. 2d. a day is made for the paymaster's clerk, who is not borne in addition to the numbers of the corps.

\*\*\* THE preceding rates of pay for the non-commissioned officers and privates of the Royal Regiment of Horse Guards, Dragoon Guards, Dragoons, and Fencible Cavalry, include, in each case, 9d. a day for the subsistence of a horse.

DAILY RATES of the SUBSISTENCE or PAY and ALLOWANCE of the  
OFFICERS and MEN of the INFANTRY.

## FOOT GUARDS.

	Subsistence per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Colonel, as colonel - - - - -	- - - - -	0	17	6
Lieutenant colonel, as lieutenant colonel - - - - -	- - - - -	0	9	0
Major, as major - - - - -	- - - - -	0	6	0
Captain - - - - -	- - - - -	0	12	6
Lieutenant - - - - -	- - - - -	0	6	0
Ensign - - - - -	- - - - -	0	4	6
Adjutant - - - - -	- - - - -	0	3	0
Quarter master. Pay 4s. 8d. Allowance 1s. - - - - -	- - - - -	0	5	8
Surgeon - - - - -	- - - - -	0	12	6
Affistant surgeon - - - - -	- - - - -	0	5	0
Solicitor - - - - -	- - - - -	0	3	0
Serjeant - - - - -	- - - - -	0	1	10 $\frac{3}{4}$
Corporal - - - - -	- - - - -	0	1	4 $\frac{3}{4}$
Drum major - - - - -	- - - - -	0	1	0
Drummer - - - - -	- - - - -	0	1	2 $\frac{1}{4}$
Deputy marshal - - - - -	- - - - -	0	0	9
Hautbois - - - - -	- - - - -	0	1	0
Private - - - - -	- - - - -	0	1	1

## INFANTRY of the LINE, MILITIA, and FENCIBLE INFANTRY.

	Pay and Allowance per diem.	l.	s.	d.
Colonel - - - - -	- - - - -	1	2	6
Lieutenant colonel - - - - -	- - - - -	0	15	11
Major - - - - -	- - - - -	0	14	1
Captain - - - - -	- - - - -	0	9	5
Captain lieutenant or lieutenant - - - - -	- - - - -	0	4	8
Second lieutenant or ensign - - - - -	- - - - -	0	3	8
Paymaster - - - - -	- - - - -	0	15	0
Adjutant - - - - -	- - - - -	0	4	0

## HISTORY OF

	Pay and Allowance per diem.					l.	s.	d.
Quarter master	-	-	-	-	-	0	4	8
Surgeon of the line	-	-	-	-	-	0	9	5
Surgeon of militia and fencibles	-	-	-	-	-	0	4	0
Affistant furgeon	-	-	-	-	-	0	5	0
Surgeon's mate	-	-	-	-	-	0	3	6
Serjeant major or quarter master ferjeant	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	0 $\frac{1}{4}$
Paymaster ferjeant	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	6 $\frac{3}{4}$
Serjeant	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	6 $\frac{3}{4}$
Corporal	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	2 $\frac{1}{4}$
Drummer	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	1 $\frac{3}{4}$
Fifer	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	1 $\frac{3}{4}$
Private	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	0

N. B. IN addition to the rate of pay of the Infantry of the Line, &c. above specified, the colonel or commandant of a corps has an allowance for each company of which the same may consist, of 6d. a day in lieu of the pay of a warrant man.

EACH lieutenant, ensign, adjutant, or quarter master, not holding another commission, has an allowance of 1s. a day in addition to the abovementioned rate of pay. The like allowance is made to each surgeon, and surgeon's mate, of MILITIA and FENCIBLE INFANTRY, in similar circumstances.

IN the Militia and Fencible Infantry, where the paymaster must necessarily hold a commission in the corps, his pay is made up to 15s. a day; and an allowance of 1s. 6 $\frac{3}{4}$ d. a day is made for the paymaster's clerk, who is not borne in addition to the numbers of the corps.

## INDEPENDENT COMPANIES of INVALIDS.

Captain	-	-	-	-	-	0	9	5
Lieutenant	-	-	-	-	-	0	4	8
Ensign	-	-	-	-	-	0	3	8
Serjeant	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	6 $\frac{1}{4}$
Corporal	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	1 $\frac{3}{4}$
Drummer	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	1 $\frac{3}{4}$
Private	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	11 $\frac{1}{4}$

We have seen that in our ancient armies there were, in addition to the regular stipend of the troops, certain allowances, called regards. Such there are, though under different appellations, at present. Among these we shall first notice the *non-effective* and *contingent* allowances to the captains of troops and companies. Formerly the captains received and kept the subsistence of the non-effective, or men wanting to complete their companies; but this becoming an enormous abuse, it has been since restricted to 20*l.* for each captain per annum. The contingent allowance is proportioned to the strength of the company.

TABLE of a CAPTAIN of INFANTRY'S ALLOWANCE.

Strength of the Company.	Non-effective Allowance per Annum.	Contingent Allowance.		Total Allowance per Annum.
		Number of Contingent Men per Day.	Amount per Annum.	
	<i>l.</i>	<i>d.</i>	<i>l. s. d.</i>	<i>l. s. d.</i>
50 and under - -	20	2 Men at 6	18 5 0	38 5 0
Above 50 and less than 76	20	3 Do. at 6	27 7 6	47 7 6
76 and upwards - -	20	4 Do. at 6	36 10 0	56 10 0

IN the Cavalry and Dragoons, the allowances to captains for non-effective men, contingents, and a riding-house, are as follows:

Captain's allowance. For a riding-house.

	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>		<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
When less than 40 per troop	30	0	0	—	18	1	0
From 40 to 50 - -	30	0	0	—	23	6	0
From 50 to 70 - -	40	0	0	—	23	6	0
From 70 upwards - -	50	0	0	—	23	6	0

THERE are besides other allowances to officers in general, such as bat, baggage and forage money in camp, and lodging money in garriſon, when there are no barracks. These allowances vary according to circumstances. The following table will shew the allowance in the home encampments for 1794.

Officers.	Allowance for bat horfe.			—	Allowance for 100 days' forage.		
	l.	s.	d.		l.	s.	d.
Colonel - - -	18	18	0	—	27	10	0
Lieutenant colonel -	18	18	0	—	22	10	0
Major - - -	18	18	0	—	17	10	0
Captains, each - -	18	18	0	—	12	10	0
For every two subalterns } and staff officers - }	18	18	0	—	12	10	0
Surgeon, for self and me- } dicine chest - }	37	16	0	—	12	10	0

THE number of horfes allowed to a regiment of infantry, when it takes the field, are as follows :

Colonel - - - - -	9
Lieutenant colonel - - - - -	7
Major - - - - -	5
Captains, each - - - - -	3
Captain lieutenant - - - - -	2
Every two subalterns and staff officers - - - - -	1
Surgeon, for self and medicine chest - - - - -	2

ON first taking the field the officers are also allowed for their tents in the following proportion :

	l.	s.	d.
A field officer's marquée and tent - - -	29	0	0
A captain's ditto - - - - -	21	0	0
For every two subalterns on ditto - - -	21	0	0

THE captains of the regiment and the independent companies of invalids, instead of the contingent men and non-effective money, are now to receive, as an indemnification for the repair of arms and other expences, 100l. each, when the establishment of their company is at 70 and upwards, and 80l. when it is under 70 men ; the corps of invalids being considered as an honourable retirement for officers of long service.

## CHAPTER IX.

*Of the Clothing of the Troops.*

AS the soldiers who composed our ancient armies were not always clothed by government, it seems probable they had not any regular uniform: very little respecting soldiers' clothing occurs in history or the records of early date; in several writs commanding the sheriffs to assemble the forces of their counties, the soldiers are directed to come clothed with a suit, but no particular direction is given, either as to its make or colour. Indeed their armour seems to have formed the chief part of the military dress of those times; and this was the soldiers' own property, kept either in consequence of their feudal tenures, or provided in obedience to the statute of Winchester, or that of Queen Mary, by which it was superseded. It, however, appears, that government sometimes clothed the troops, of which Rymer affords us an instance in the year 1337, 11th of King Ed. III. where that king having ordered a thousand men to be raised and trained with lances, five hundred in North Wales, and five hundred in South Wales, he also directed the chamberlains of North and South Wales to purchase a sufficient quantity of cloth for making one suit for each man, consisting of a tunic and mantle, the cost of which should be allowed in their accounts at the treasury.

AFTER the practice of furnishing soldiers by indenture took place, it seems, that the captains used to stop part of the soldiers' pay, to purchase necessaries for them, and also for other purposes; this being complained of, an act of parliament was passed in the 18th of Henry VI. (chap. 18), wherein captains were forbidden to stop any part of a soldier's pay, except for his clothing; "that is to say, if he was waged for half a year, ten shillings a gown for a gentleman, and six shillings



and eight pence for a yeoman, upon pain of twenty pounds for every spear, and ten pounds for a bow, to the king;" a spear was the weapon carried by a gentleman, a bow by a yeoman; whence the soldiers of those times, as at present, were denominated from the weapons with which they were armed. By the 2d and 3d of Edward VI. this stoppage is altered to 6s. 8d. per ann. for the livery coat of a yeoman, and 13s. 4d. for that of a gentleman, for a whole year; and that act being repealed in the 1st of Philip and Mary, was in the 4th and 5th of the said reign again revived and made effectual.

BEFORE this time soldiers were distinguished by badges of their leaders' arms, similar to those now worn by watermen.

At the battle of St. Alban's the army of the Queen of Henry VI. and the Earl of Warwick, as well as that of the Duke of York, were distinguished by badges; a mistake concerning them gave the victory to the latter. Besides these badges, the soldiers of those times frequently wore distinguishing scarves. A.D. 1512, 4th of Henry VIII. that king having issued his commission to the Earl of Shrewsbury, to raise an army to oppose an invasion, threatened by the French, gives him the following direction: "And ye then to deliver, for us, and in our name, to every of our subjects so retayned in your company, suche badges, tokyns, or lyveres to were, as by you shall be thought most convenient for the same, which we will they shall were for the same purpose"(p)."

A curious manuscript in the college of arms (q) contains the orders of the Duke of Norfolk to the conductor of the waward of an army, raised the 36th of Henry VIII. respecting the clothing, which, according to our present ideas, seems more calculated for jack puddings or merry Andrews than soldiers: it is here literally transcribed: "Furst, every man sowdyer to have a cote of blew clothe, after suche fashon as all fotemens cotes be made here at London, to serve his majestie in this jorney, and that the same be garded with redde clothe, after such

---

(p) REMER in anno.

(q) MARKED W. S. and contains a great number of very curious military papers.

forte as others be made here. And the best sene(r) to be trymmed after such fort as shall please the captayne to devise.

" PROVIDED alwayes, that noe gentleman nor other were any manner of filk uppon the garde of his coate, save oonely uppon his lefte sleeve, and that noe yeoman were any manner of filke upon his saide cote; nor noe gentleman, nor yeoman, to were any manner of badge.

" ITEM, every man to provide a payer of hose for every of his men, the right hose to be all red, and the lefte to be blew, with oone stripe of three fingers brode of red upon the outside of his legg from the stocke downward.

" ITEM, that every man have an arming doublette of ffustian or chanvas.

" ITEM, every man to have a cap to be made to put his sculle or sallete in, after such fashon as I have devised, wh. William Taylor, capper, within Ludgate, doth make for me, where you may have as many of them as ye lyst for eight pence the pece."

THE badge here seems set aside. A proclamation in the same book, signed J. Hertford, explains the distinction adapted in its place. " My lord lieutenant doth farther straitley charge and command, that no man of this armye, nor any other resortinge to the same, be he foldier, victualler, or other, do presum after this proclamation to come within the circuit or presynckt of this campe, ones he have a red crosse sew'd upon his uppermost garment, upon payne of 15 dayes imprisonment, and to be farther ordered at my lorde lieutenante's pleasure."

THIS was farther enforced by the 48th article of the statutes and ordonances of war, in force 35 Henry VIII. (s) which runs thus: " Also that every man goinge in hostinge or battayle, of what estate, condition or nation he be, of the king's partie and host, except he be

(r) " THE best sene," that is, the best looking men.

(s) IN same vol. i. c. W.S. where there is a MS. bearing the following title, " Statutes and Ordnaunces of War, 35 Henry VIII. printed by Thomas Bartelet, printer to the King's Highness, the xx day of June, the Year of our Lord MDXLIII."

a bishop or officer of armes, bear a cross of Saynt George, sufficient and large, upon the payne that if he be wounded or slayne in the default thereof, he that so woundeth or slaeth him, shall bare no payne therefore : and if he for anie cause passe the bondes of the fields, that then he bare openly a crosse of Saynt George, upon payne to be imprisoned and punished at the king's pleasure. And that noe soldier beare no cognissance but the king's and his captain's, upon payne of death ; and that none enemy bare the fayde signe of Saynt George, but if hee bee a prisoner and in warde of his master, upon payne of death."

THE colour of the soldiers' coats, notwithstanding the particular before quoted exception, seems generally to have been white, as we learn from a letter, written by Thomas Lord Wharton to Francis Earl of Shrewsbury, in the Shrewsbury letters, marked vol. D. fol. 109, in the College of Arms.

IN the reign of Queen Elizabeth, anno 1584, the colour of the uniform was changed again ; for she having caused an hundred men to be raised in Lancashire for the Irish service, a letter from the lords of the council to the sheriff and justices of that county directs, " that besides the arms here specified, the soldiers should be furnished with swords and daggers, likewise convenient doublets and hose, and also a cassocke of some motley or other fadd grene coller, or russet." Also every souldier to have five shillings to provide a mantle in Ireland, besides his livery coat, when he shall be there aryved (t).

THIS was the regulation for the clothing of the infantry : but we learn from the same authority, that the uniform cloaks worn by the cavalry were red (u) ; their fashion is described in a detail of the appointments of the lancers or horsemen, directed by Queen Elizabeth

---

(t) SEE Peck's *Defiderata Curiosa*.

(u) JULIUS FERRETUS, a writer of the middle of the 16th century, in his *Treatise on the Military Science*, says, that soldiers commonly wore a short red sagum, or frock, which colour was chosen that they might not be discouraged by the sight of the blood from their wounds.

to be furnished by William Chalderton, bishop of Chester, and his clergy, in part of a thousand launces, to be sent to the assistance of the Low Countries, " And for their apparell (says the order) yt shall be convenient that yow see them furnished of redd clokes, lined, without sleeves, and of length to the knee, dubletts, hose, hatts, boots, and all other necessarie apparell for thre bodies."

A VERY particular account of the clothing of the army employed in Ireland, anno 1599, is given by Sir John Harrington, wherein the different articles are specified, and the prices stopped for them weekly from the subaltern officers and private foldiers (x).

BUT I must not forget (says he) nor cease to tell her majestie's good, wife, and gracious providings for us her captains and our foldiers, in summer heats and winter colds, in hunger and thirst, for our backs and our bellies. That is to say, every captain of a hundred footmen doth receive weekly, upon every Saturday, his full entertainment of twenty-eight shillings, in like case every lieutenant fourteen shillings, and every ensign seven shillings, our serjant, surgeon, drum, and fife, five shillings pay by way of imprest, and every common soldier three shillings, to be delivered to all by the pole weekly. To the four last lower officers two shillings weekly, and for every common soldier twenty pence weekly, is to be answered to the full value thereof, in good apparel of different kinds, part for winter and part for summer, which is ordered of good quality and stuff for the prices, patterns whereof must be sent to the lord deputy, to be compared and prepared as followeth.

#### APPAREL FOR AN OFFICER IN WINTER.

A cassock of broad cloth with bays, and trimmed with silk lace, 27 shillings and 7 pence.

A doublet of canvass with silk buttons, and lined with white linnen, 14 shillings and 5 pence.

Two shirts and two bands, 9 shillings and sixpence.

---

(x) NUGÆ Antiquæ, vol. ii. p 17.

Three pair of Kersey stockings, at two shillings and four pence, 7 shillings.

Three pair of shoes of neats leather, at 2 shillings and four pence per pair, 7 shillings.

One pair of venetians (y) of broad Kentish cloth, with silver lace, 15 shillings and 4 pence.

#### IN SUMMER.

Two shirts and bands, 9 shillings and sixpence.

Two pair of shoes, 4 shillings and 8 pence.

One pair of stockings, 2 shillings and eight pence.

A felt hat and band, five shillings and five pence.

#### APPAREL FOR A COMMON SOLDIER IN WINTER.

A cassock of Kentish broad cloth, lined with cotton, and trimmed, with buttons and loops, 17 shillings and 6 pence.

A doublet of canvass, with white linnen lining, 12 shillings and 6 pence.

A hat-cap coloured, seven shillings.

Two shirts of Osnabridge Holland, and bands, 8 shillings.

Three pair of neats leather shoes, 2 shillings and four pence each, 7 shillings.

Three pair of Kersey stockings, 8 shillings.

One pair of venetians, of Kentish broad cloth, with buttons, loops, and lining of linnen, thirteen shillings and four pence.

#### IN SUMMER.

Two shirts of Osnabridge, and two falling Holland bands, seven shillings.

Two pair neats leather shoes, four shillings and eight pence.

One pair of stockings, two shillings and eight pence.

A hat-cap coloured, three shillings.

---

(y) VENETIANS, a sort of long trowers. "To make Venetians down below the garters." See Harrington's Epigram on the Taylor.

# THE ENGLISH ARMY.

329

FROM the Votes of the House of Commons, 30th of King Charles II.  
A.D. 1678, the prices of the clothing of the army were as follows :

				l.	s.	d.
Foot per man	-	-	-	2	13	0
Dragoons	-	-	-	6	10	0
Horse	-	-	-	9	0	0
Horse grenadiers	-	-	-	8	0	0

THE prices of the clothing for the non-commission officers and trumpets and drummers is not mentioned.

AN original contract in 1693, between the right honourable the Lord Castleton and Mr. Francis Molineaux, a clothier, preserved in the British Museum among the manuscripts of the Harleian collection, No. 6844, gives the prices of the different articles of clothing for a regiment of foot at that time, both as charged by the clothier, and estimated by an after valuation, made by the officers of the regiment, the original contract being deemed an overcharge.

## PRIVATE SENTINEL.

				Prices charged in contract.			Prices allowed.		
				l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Grey coat and breeches	-	-	-	1	12	0	1	5	0
Hat	-	-	-	0	6	6	0	5	0
Shoes	-	-	-	0	4	0	0	4	0
Shirt	-	-	-	0	3	6	0	3	0
Neckcloth	-	-	-	0	1	0	0	0	10
Stockings	-	-	-	0	2	0	0	1	8
				<hr/>			<hr/>		
				2	9	0	1	19	6
				<hr/>			<hr/>		

## SERJEANT.

Grey coat and breeches	-	-	-	4	12	0	3	12	0
Shirt	-	-	-	0	6	6	0	5	6
Neckcloth	-	-	-	0	2	0	0	2	0

VOL. I.

U U

## HISTORY OF

				l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Hat	-	-	-	0	12	0	0	10	0
Stockings	-	-	-	0	5	0	0	4	6
Shoes	-	-	-	0	4	0	0	4	0
				<hr/>			<hr/>		
				6	1	6	4	18	0
				<hr/>			<hr/>		

## DRUMMER.

Purple coat and grey breeches	-	-	-	3	10	0	3	0	0
Hat	-	-	-	0	6	6	0	6	0
Neckcloth	-	-	-	0	1	0	0	0	10
Shirt	-	-	-	0	3	6	0	3	0
Stockings	-	-	-	0	2	0	0	1	8
Shoes	-	-	-	0	4	0	0	4	0
				<hr/>			<hr/>		
				4	7	0	3	15	6
				<hr/>			<hr/>		

Grenadier ferjeants cap	-	-	-	0	16	0	0	14	0
Private grenadiers cap	-	-	-	0	9	0	0	8	0
Drummers badge	-	-	-	0	3	6	0	3	6

FROM the above account we learn, that the soldiers' and ferjeants' coats and breeches were then grey ; the coats of the drummers purple with grey breeches, and that they were likewise distinguished by badges.

IN 1729 the regulations for the clothing of his majesty's forces in time of peace, dated the 20th of November, were as follows, viz.

## FOR A TROOPER.

A new cloth coat, well lined with serge,  
 A new waistcoat,  
 A new laced hat,  
 A pair of new large buff gloves, with stiff tops, once in two years,  
 A pair of new boots as they shall be wanting.

As it is difficult to fix a period of time for providing saddles, it is to be left to the judgment of the general officer who may be appointed to review them.

HOUSINGS, caps, new horse furniture, bitts, and stirrup irons, cloaks faced with the livery of the regiment, entirely new, and new buff or buff coloured cross belts, to be provided as they shall be wanting.

THE second mounting is to consist of new laced hats, and horse collars.

## FOR A DRAGOON.

A new cloth coat, well lined with serge,  
 A new waistcoat,  
 A pair of new breeches,  
 A new laced hat,  
 A pair of new large buff coloured gloves, with stiff tops,  
 A pair of new boots, as they shall be wanting.

SADDLES to be left to the judgment of the general officer who may be appointed to review them.

HOUSINGS, caps, new horse furniture, bitts, and stirrup-irons; and cloaks faced with the livery of the regiment, entirely new, as they shall be wanting.

NEW buff or buff coloured accoutrements, viz. a shoulder belt, with a pouch, a waist belt sufficient to carry a sword, with a place to receive the bayonet, and sling for the arms, such as the general officers appointed to inspect the clothing shall approve of, as they shall be wanting.

THE second mounting is to consist of new laced hats, gloves, and horse collars.

## FOR A FOOT SOLDIER.

A good full bodied cloth coat, well lined, which may serve for the waistcoat the second year,  
 A waistcoat,  
 A pair of good Kersey breeches,



A pair of good strong stockings,  
 A pair of good strong shoes,  
 Two good shirts, and two good neckcloths,  
 A good strong hat well laced.

FOR THE SECOND YEAR.

A good cloth coat well lined, as the first year,  
 A waistcoat made of the former year's coat,  
 A pair of good Kersey breeches,  
 A pair of good strong stockings,  
 A pair of good strong shoes,  
 A good shirt and a neckcloth,  
 A good strong hat well laced.

For the fusilier regiments, caps once in two years.

THE new waistcoat, in the first year, is only given to regiments new raised, and to additional men: who are likewise to be furnished with two pair of stockings and two shirts.

A WARRANT for regulating the clothing of his majesty's horse and dragoon forces, dated the 26th of March, 1736, recites, that the general officers of the army to whom his majesty was pleased to refer the fixing a periodical time for providing several species of clothing and accoutrements for the horse and dragoon forces, had in obedience to his majesty's commands, met, and taken the same under their consideration: and in their report to his majesty, bearing date the 11th day of March preceding, had given their opinion that the clothing for the horse and dragoons, and the times for providing for them, should be as hereunder mentioned: and his majesty having approved thereof, was pleased thereby to authorize and direct, that the same should be duly observed and put in execution, viz.

## FOR A TROOPER.

A new cloth coat, well lined with serge,  
A new waistcoat,  
A new laced hat,  
A pair of new large buff gloves, with stiff tops, once in two years.

At the respective times of clothing, to be delivered to each troop of horse, consisting of thirty-one or thirty-three men, four new saddles, with holster pipes, buckets, stirrup leathers, and stirrup irons, and six bits; and to each troop of horse, of twenty-two or twenty-four men, on the establishment of Ireland, three new saddles with a proportionable quantity of holster pipes, buckets, &c. as before mentioned, and four bits.

New boots to be supplied every third clothing to the whole regiment.

New head stalls, reins, breast plates, and cruppers, to be delivered every third clothing to the whole regiment.

New housings and caps to be delivered every fifth clothing to the whole regiment.

Cloaks, faced with the livery of the regiment, entirely new, to be delivered every sixth clothing to the whole regiment.

New cross belts of the best buff that can be had in England, to be delivered every tenth clothing to the whole regiment.

The second mounting is to consist of new laced hats and horse collars.

## FOR A DRAGOON.

A new cloth coat, well lined with serge,  
A new waistcoat,  
A pair of new breeches,  
A new laced hat,  
A pair of new large buff coloured gloves, with stiff tops.

At the respective times of clothing, to be delivered to each troop of dragoons, consisting of fifty-two men, six new saddles with holster

pipes, buckets, stirrup leathers, and stirrup irons, and nine bits; and to each troop of dragoons, of twenty-two or twenty-four men, on the establishment of Ireland, three new saddles, with a proportionable quantity of holster pipes, buckets, &c. as before mentioned, and four bits.

NEW boots to be supplied every third clothing to the whole regiment.

NEW head stalls, reins, breast plates, and cruppers, to be delivered every third clothing to the whole regiment.

NEW housings and caps to be delivered every fifth clothing to the whole regiment.

CLOAKS faced with the livery of the regiment, entirely new, to be delivered every sixth clothing to the whole regiment.

NEW accoutrements of the best buff that can be had in England; viz. a shoulder belt with a pouch, a waist belt sufficient to carry the sword, with a place to receive the bayonet, and sling for the arms, such as the general officers appointed to inspect the clothing shall approve of, to be delivered every tenth clothing to the whole regiment.

THE second mounting is to consist of new laced hats, gloves, and horse collars.

AND his majesty in pursuance of these regulations required, that the colonel of each regiment should regulate the delivery of each of the species before mentioned, from the expiration of the then subsisting assignment, which was to be in the year 1737, agreeably to the opinion of the said board of general officers; and directed that, as it sometimes happens, that several of the above-mentioned species are lost, or totally destroyed, by extraordinary accidents, the colonel, in such case, should supply the same, that the regiments clothing may always appear in good order.

A COMMITTEE of the House of Commons was appointed, in the reign of George II. to enquire into the state of the army. In their report, made anno 1746, there was much interesting information respecting the clothing; of which the leading particulars were as follows:

It appeared by the evidence before the committee, that the foot received clothing annually, except waistcoats, which were made out of the old coats of the preceding year\* ; the horse and dragoons every two years ; and the horse and grenadier guards every three years. It appeared also, that the clothing fund arose from the stoppage of so much of the pay of the non-commissioned officers and private men as is above their subsistence, and is called off-reckonings. The off-reckonings from June 1740 to June 1743, for the first troop of horse-grenadier guards, amounted to 2823l. 5s. 9d. the payments for clothes in that time amounted to no more than 1946l. 2s. 1½d. The balance therefore appeared to be 877l. 3s. 7½d. out of which the colonel having provided several other necessaries not particularly specified, but alleged to amount to about 300l. a gain of above 500l. clear accrued to him by the neat surplus.

THE off-reckonings of a regiment of foot, upon the establishment, then amounted to 2173l. os. 1d. The clothing of such a regiment amounted to 1961l. 17s. 3d.

OUT of which balance the colonel was to find all sorts of clothing and accoutrements lost by desertion, and other incidental charges, which in some years were considerable.

HOWEVER, it appeared, that upwards of 578l. had been saved by a colonel, after clothing his regiment.

THE committee proceeding to enquire into the nature of the fund appropriated to the clothing, it appeared, that the gross off-reckonings consisted of all the pay of the non-commissioned officers and private men above the subsistence ; and that the nett off-reckonings were the produce of the gross off-reckonings, reserved for the clothing of the men, after the warrant deductions of one shilling in the pound, and one day's pay of the whole regiment for Chelsea Hospital, and also the deduction of two pence in the pound for the agent, were made at the Pay-Office ; that the balance of the officers' pay, over and above their subsistence after the warrant deductions were made, and the respited pay, if any,

---

\* THIS regulation has been since altered ; the soldiers being now provided with fronts to their waistcoats, and the backs are made out of the old coats as before.

charged to the officer, was called clearings, which was paid by the pay-master-general to the several agents.

It appeared also that this balance was not paid to the colonels till a year or two after the clothing was provided: that it was usually the custom for the colonel to assign the whole of the off-reckonings to the clothier for his security, or else to pay ready money; and that, in the former case, the clothier was allowed interest for forbearance. That the subsistence of the men allowed for clothing, lost by desertion, was paid to the respective colonels, the off-reckonings only being included in the assignment; and that there were several other articles of expence defrayed out of the clothing fund, as the charge of package, of carriage by land or water, of insurance when not abroad, of interest more or less as the off-reckonings are paid, of fees of office, of small accoutrements, colours, drums, and other contingent charges.

THE clothes to be furnished by the colonels were found to be as follows:

To a trooper, a new coat, waistcoat, laced hat, and large buff gloves once in two years: to a dragoon the same, with the addition of breeches. At every clothing each troop of horse of 31 or 33 men to receive four new saddles, with holster-pipes, buckets, stirrups, and six bits: each troop of dragoons of 50 men six new saddles, with holster-pipes, buckets, stirrups, and nine bits. The whole regiment, whether of horse or dragoons, new boots, head-stalls, reins, breast-plates, and cruppers, every third clothing; new housings and caps every fifth; new cloaks every sixth; and new shoulder-belts, &c. of the best buff, every tenth clothing. The second mounting, viz. the year they are not clothed, to consist of new laced hats and horse-collars to the troopers; and to the dragoons the same, with the addition of gloves.

EACH foot soldier a new coat, a waistcoat made of the former year's coat, a pair of new breeches, a pair of strong stockings, a pair of strong shoes, a good shirt and neckcloth\*, and a strong laced hat every year.

---

\* At present the neckcloth is changed to a black stock and roller; which, together with the shirt, shoes, and stockings, is called the half-mounting.

WHEN a regiment is new raised, or men added, such regiment or additional men to have new waistcoats, with two pair of stockings, two shirts and neckcloths.

To prevent abuses in clothing the regiments abroad, the governor of each place, as well as the commanding officer of each regiment, was to see all these particulars delivered out to the men, and certify the condition of them to the clothing board.

THE committee examined the agents of several regiments, as to the expence of clothing, compared with the total amount of the off-reckonings: when it appeared, that the nett off-reckonings of Lord Mark Kerr's regiment of foot, for each of the years 1730

					l.	s.	d.
and 1731, amounted to	-	-	-	-	1713	5	7

That the expence of clothing, including interest, was

for 1730	-	-	-	-	1570	16	2½
----------	---	---	---	---	------	----	----

Balance	142	9	4½
---------	-----	---	----

Ditto, for the year 1731	-	-	-	1447	0	6½
--------------------------	---	---	---	------	---	----

Balance	-	-	-	266	5	0½
---------	---	---	---	-----	---	----

1713	5	7
------	---	---

That the nett off-reckonings of Major General

Bragg's regiment of foot, for the year 1742, were	2173	0	1
---	------	---	---

That the clothing and interest amounted to	-	1847	18	8
--	---	------	----	---

Balance	325	1	5
---------	-----	---	---

Off-reckonings for 1743	-	-	-	2179	0	10
-------------------------	---	---	---	------	---	----

Clothing and interest the same year	-	-	-	1797	10	10
-------------------------------------	---	---	---	------	----	----

Balance	381	10	0
---------	-----	----	---

## HISTORY OF

That the off-reckonings for Colonel Murray's regi-		l.	s.	d.
ment in the year 1743, amounted to	-	2173	0	1
Disbursements for clothing and interest	-	1551	5	1 $\frac{1}{4}$
		<hr/>		
Balance		621	14	10 $\frac{3}{4}$
		<hr/>		

The off-reckonings of Colonel Thomas Murray's				
regiment of foot for the year 1745	-	2173	0	1
Disbursements for clothing and interest	-	1602	19	4 $\frac{1}{2}$
		<hr/>		
Balance		570	0	8 $\frac{1}{2}$
		<hr/>		

A STATE of the disbursements for clothing and assignments of off-reckonings of General Campbell's regiment of dragoons, for twelve years, was laid before the committee, viz. from 1733 to 1745, when it appeared that on an average the colonel's clear annual gain was 641l. 8s. 5d.

LIKEWISE that of Colonel Handaside's regiment of foot for six years, viz. from 1739 to 1744; when his clear annual profit upon the clothing appeared to be on an average 348l. 2s. 9d.

THIS report, containing much curious information, and being the latest authentic statement respecting the clothing of the army, may be seen at large in No. 6. of the Appendix.

## CHAPTER X.

*Of Quarters.*

THE ancient mode of quartering our troops may in a great measure be gathered from the ordinances of war, and seems to have differed very little from that now in use, except that they were indiscriminately quartered upon all householders, as was practised in England so late as the rebellion in the year 1745.

THE king, or some officer authorized by him, having directed the march of the army, or any part of it, issued out his mandate to the chief civil magistrate of that district to which it was destined, requiring him to provide quarters and provisions for the occasion (z). On the approach of the army the marshal, who acted as quarter-master-general, attended by the chief harbinger, those belonging to the different corps, and the harbingers of the great officers, went forward, when the general quarters being assigned to the marshal, were by him divided and delivered out to the regimental and other harbergers, whose names had been previously given in to the constable and marshal by their respective officers or lords: whether the present form of billeting was then used, is not certain, though it is most likely that it was.

RAPIN says, that William the Conqueror quartered almost all his troops upon the monasteries, and obliged the monks to find them in

---

(z) IN order to provide victuals for the army, it was sometimes ordered that no market should be held in a number of the different counties: many proclamations of this kind, temp. Edward III. are extant, and one of the 13th Richard II. wherein it was directed, that no markets should be held in these seven shires, to wit, Berks, Surrey, Suffex, Southampton, Dorset, and Somersetshire; but that all victuals should be brought to Portsmouth to the army, where it lay waiting for transportation.



neecessaries; by which means he maintained his army without any charge, and had spies in all the religious houses, who watched the actions of the monks: these houses were long after charged with finding carts and horses for the carrying of the baggage of the army; and there are still extant many of the original returns from different monasteries, stating the number of each they were able to furnish for that purpose; copies of some of them will be given in the Appendix.

IN the 9th of Richard II. anno 1385, an order was sent from the king and council to all mayors, &c. reciting, that having retained William Drayton and Hugh Spenser, with a certain number of men at arms and archers, to set out for the town of Gaunt with all possible speed; they the said mayors, &c. were commanded to be assistant to certain servants appointed by the said William and Hugh to secure decent and sufficient quarters at Dover, Sandwich, and the ports adjacent, such as to them shall seem most proper and convenient for obtaining victuals and necessarys (a).

IN the 10th of the said king, there is an order to the mayor of London, acquainting him, that his majesty being informed that Charles, King of France, meditated an invasion of this kingdom; he had ordered his army to assemble, as soon as possible, at London; and that he, being desirous that his army and liege men may be lodged in the said city, and that they may be accommodated with victuals for their money; had directed the herbergers of the different leaders, to meet the marshall at a street, called the Ropery, there to receive quarters from him: it was also ordered, that no herberger to any leader should quarter any one by his own authority, without the warrant of the marshall, under pain of forfeiting his armour and harness.

THE soldiers were forbidden (under pain of forfeiting all they could forfeit) to molest any victualler, or to take any provision without payment.

No one to rob or pillage his quarters, on pain of life and members, and every other possible forfeiture.

---

(a) RYMER in anno.

No victualler, armourer, or dealer in horses, to take greater prices for their goods than before this time were usually given, under pain of forfeiting the said goods. These ordinances were directed to be publickly proclaimed at all expedient places. A proclamation was also issued, forbidding the raising the prices of horses, armour, &c.; persons disobeying this order, to be arrested and imprisoned till the king should order their enlargement (b).

It appears that the great officers of state attending our kings, had particular quarters assigned them and their retinue for life, as is instanced in Thomas, Earl of Dorset, to whom Henry V. A. D. 1414, the 2d year of his reign, assigned the town of Stratford Langthorn, with the parish of Ham, in Essex, for life, for the herbergage of his men servants and horses, whilst attending the king at Westminster; inso-much that the king's herbergeours could not assign it to any other, nor take from thence grafs, hay, horse, cart, carriages, nor other necessaries during his stay there; always provided that the said earl should justly pay for all sorts of hay, horses, carts, &c. taken for his use; in like manner, Canford and Poole, in Dorsetshire, were granted for the herbergage of the Earl of Salisbury, whilst attending the king in those parts (c).

In the year 1415, the third of King Henry V. that king issued his commission to John Merston and William Enger, directing them to provide quarters at Plymouth and places adjacent, for John Tiptoft, Knight, seneschal of the dutchy of Aquitaine, his men at arms, soldiers and their horses, who were to embark from thence for the said dutchy; and also to take and provide victuals and other necessaries for them during their stay, to be promptly paid for with the money of the said John; in this purveyance, the fees of the church to be excepted: the civil magistrates were herein directed to be assisting (d).

ABOUT the time of Henry VII. we meet with a regulation that somewhat respects quarters; this is a coat and conduct-money; the first

---

(b) RYMER, vol. 7, p. 584.

(c) SEE Rymer in anno.

(d) SEE Rymer in anno.

was, as has before been observed, a species of clothing, probably for recruits; the money for which was advanced by the county wherein they were raised, or such other as was directed by the king or his privy council; conduct-money was an allowance for subsistence, to and from the army, according to the number of days the soldiers had to march; a day's march was sometimes estimated at twelve and sometimes at fifteen miles; both the coat and conduct-money was occasionally advanced by the different counties wherein the troops were quartered, under the promise of being repaid by government (e).

TOWARDS the latter end of the reign of King James II. and even after the accession of King William III. soldiers used to oblige the inhabitants of the towns wherein they were quartered, not only to furnish them with diet and lodging, but also to advance them their daily subsistence; the Journals of the House of Commons furnish many instances wherein this is complained of.

AFTER the revolution, by the mutiny act passed the 23d day of December, anno 1689, the following laws and regulations respecting quarters were enacted:

AND whereas, by the petition of right in the third of Charles I. it is enacted and declared, that the people of this land are not by the laws to be burthened with the sojourning of soldiers against their wills; and by a clause in an act of parliament, made 31st of Charles II. for granting his majesty 206,462l. 17s. 3d. for paying and disbanding his forces: it is declared and enacted, that no officers, military or civil,

(e) 1280l. is charged for coote and conduyt money in Cardinal Woolsey's warrant, anno 14 Henry VIII. by Thomas Magnus Clerk, for the king's army going to Scotland. See book marked *W. S. in Coll. Arm.*

In the paper-office there are divers letters from the deputy-lieutenants of counties, respecting the marching, quartering, and paying new-levied troops in the year 1627: in one from the deputy lieutenants of the county of Surrey, coat money appears to have been settled at 12s. 6d. Six hundred men were, it is there said, coated at that rate; the conduct-money was 8d. per diem, accounting twelve miles for a day's march.

ANNO 1640, conduct-money was settled by King Charles I. at 8d. per diem, and a day's march at not less than fifteen miles. See *Rymer*.

nor any other person whatsoever, shall from henceforth presume to place, quarter or billet, any soldier or soldiers, upon any subject or inhabitant of this realm, of any degree, quality, or profession whatsoever, without their consent; and that it may be lawful for any such subject and inhabitant to refuse to sojourn or quarter any soldier or soldiers, notwithstanding any command, order, warrant, &c. &c. But forasmuch as at this present time there is a rebellion in Ireland, and a war in France, whereby there is occasion for the marching of many regiments, troops, and companies in several parts of this kingdom towards the sea coast and otherwise; be it enacted, &c. that during the continuance of this act, and no longer, it shall be lawful for constables, &c. to billet officers and soldiers on inns, livery stables, ale-houses, victualling-houses, and all houses selling brandy, strong waters, cyder, or metheglin, by retail, to be drunk in their houses, and no other, and in no private houses whatsoever; any constable, &c. presuming to quarter officers or soldiers on private houses, the owner to have his remedy at law.

THE officers and soldiers so-quartered, to pay such reasonable rates as shall from time to time be settled by the justices at the quarter-sessions; which said justices are required to appoint all necessary provisions for such officers and soldiers, for one or more nights in their marching through the cities, towns, villages, &c. and for the first night only, in such places as shall be appointed for their residence or quarters, provided the price so set by the said justices be within the subsistence money paid to the soldiers, which is,

				l.	s.	d.	
Each trooper	-	-	-	0	2	0	} per diem.
Each dragoon	-	-	-	0	1	2	
Each foot soldier	-	-	-	0	0	6	

AND after the said first night in their quarters, the owners and occupiers of the inns, ale-houses, and other publick-houses as aforesaid, are hereby required to furnish such officers and soldiers so quartered and

billeted as aforefaid with dry lodgings (f), ftale room for horfes, and with fire and water, and neceffary utensils to drefs their meat, and not otherwife, without the faid officers or foldiers fhall make a contract or agreement for their provifions with the faid owners or occupiers: provided alfo, and be it enacted, that if any officer or foldier fhall take any money of any perfon for excufing the quartering of officers or foldiers on any of them, in any houfe allowed by this act; every fuch officer or foldier fhall be cashiered and made incapable of ferving in any military employment whatfoever.

IN the act of 12th Anne, to take place June 5th, 1714, was the following claufe: provided alfo, and it is hereby enacted, that nothing in this act contained fhall be conftrued to extend to compel the quartering of any officer or foldier of the regiments of foot within that part of Great Britain called England, the dominions of Wales, and town of Berwick upon Tweed, unlefs it be within ten miles of the palace or place of her majesty's ufual refidence, or within ten miles of the place where her majesty fhall be prefent, or in fome garrifon or garrifons where fufficient barracks are not provided for them; and unlefs it be in the marches of fuch officers and foldiers: and that in fuch marches, no perfon fhall be obliged to quarter them more than fix days at a time; any thing in this act to the contrary notwithstanding.

OFFICERS, &c. were to be quartered in Scotland, as by the laws in force there at the union.

THE prefent mode of quartering our troops is according to the form following:

---

(f) GREAT difputes have at all times arifen, between the officers and landlords of the houfes wherein they are billeted, refpecting the quality of the room to be furnifhed for them: an opinion has long prevailed in the army, that the fuperior commiffion officer quartered in any publick-houfe, has a right to the fecond beft apartment in the houfe; this we find affirmed by Edward Davis, who wrote in the year 1619; his words are: "note, that " a fouldier in garrifon being furried in a houfe, is allowed the beft bed and chamber; fave " one, faire sheetes, boardclothes, plates, napkins, towels, drefling of his meate, fervice at " the table, oil, vinegar, mustard, candle-light, fire, &c."

WHEN a regiment is to change its quarters, an order, stiled a route, is sent from the secretary of war or his deputy, signifying that it is his majesty's pleasure that the ——— regiment shall march from its present quarters on a day specified, to the place or places destined, there to be quartered, and to remain till further orders. Routes are either particular or discretionary; in the first, the number of divisions in which the regiment is to march, the places through which they are to pass, and where they are to rest, with the days and places at which they are to halt on their way, are all specified in the margin; a discretionary route simply directs the corps to march from its present quarters to those destined for it, in such divisions, and by such routes, as shall be found shortest and most convenient, halting as there shall be occasion, or, as is most frequent, on Sundays and Thursdays; both routes contain an order for all civil magistrates to be assisting in impressing carriages, and providing quarters, as is by the act of parliament directed: the power of granting routes is confined to the commander in chief, the master-general, and lieutenant-general of the ordnance, or the king, signified by the secretary of war: the difference of the routes above mentioned are very material; for, should any accident delay or prevent the corps arriving at the place directed in the first at the day therein directed, the remainder of the route would be made void, and the magistrates not authorized to furnish quarters or carriages.

ON the receipt of the route, several copies attested by the commanding-officer, the quarter-master or adjutant, are made out, and the original, or one of them, is shewn to the chief magistrate or neighbouring justice; who thereupon grants his warrant to the constable, to impress as many carriages as are required to carry the regimental baggage, which he, under the penalty of forty and not less than twenty shillings, is obliged to execute: the hire of these carriages is to be paid into the hands of the constable at the following rates; for a waggon with five horses, one shilling per mile; and a cart with four horses, nine pence per mile; the first, to carry thirty hundred, and the second in proportion, the over-weight (if any) to be paid for; the

common price for a day's march is one shilling per hundred: officers are forbidden to take the waggon further than it can return in the same day; to force the waggoner to carry their women, children, servants, any other than the sick or lame soldiers, or to beat or abuse the driver; the treasurer of the county to pay the persons to whom the carriages belong such additional sums as the justices at the quarter sessions shall direct.

IN case the waggon should break down on the march, or the horses become unable to draw it, it has been the custom to demand other waggons of the constable of the place where the accident happens, and even without a constable to impress waggons or horses, as the case required.

THE carriages being provided, which is commonly done the day before the march, the quarter-master or some other commissioned or non-commissioned officer goes forward with the route to the first stage or day's march, to provide billets; for which purpose he applies for them with a copy of the route, to the chief magistrate, as well as for carriages for the next day's march; the billets being made out, the constable meets the regiment in the place where they draw up, and delivers them their billets; before the regiment quits these quarters, it is the duty of the commanding officer to see that all the landlords are paid according to the rates laid down in the mutiny act; these are, for a commission officer of horse, under the degree of a captain, for his diet and small beer, 2s. per diem, for that of an officer of dragoons of the same rank, or one of foot, 1s. each, and for their horses for their hay and straw, 6d. per diem each, for the diet and small beer of a non-commission officer or private trooper or dragoon, 6d. per diem, and 6d. per diem for the hay and straw for their horses; for every non-commission officer or private foot soldier, 4d.

THE common method practised by the publicans, is to give the soldiers their dinner and small beer gratis, to avoid further trouble.

THESE forms are repeated at every day's march. On the arrival of the regiment at its quarters, the commanding officer sends a drum and serjeant round the quarters, to give public notice to the publicans not

to credit the soldiers for above two days' diet, they being paid twice a week; should this be neglected, the commanding officer is liable, by the articles of war, to pay all the soldiers' debts; this is called crying down credit.

Two or three days after the arrival of the regiment in their quarters, a list, called a comptroll of quarters, is given to the constable, to enable him to correct any error made in distributing the men at the first billeting.

For the sums above mentioned the publicans may at their option either board the non-commission officers and soldiers, or find them fire, candle, vinegar, salt, and five pints of either small beer or cyder, with utensils for dressing their victuals, gratis; of this they are to give notice; but recruiting parties and the recruits by them raised, or troops on a march, they are obliged to board.

THE commanding officer may, for the benefit of the service, exchange one man for another at any of the quarters in the same place.

ANY officer taking or suffering any one to take money, to excuse quartering soldiers in any house liable by the act, is to be cashiered and rendered incapable of holding any military employment. No justice invested with a military office can be concerned in quartering soldiers.

THE houses subject to the quartering of soldiers are livery-stables, ale-houses, victuallers, and the houses of persons selling wine by retail to be drunk in their own houses, or places thereunto belonging, except tavern-keepers that are free of the company of vintners in London, admitted before the year 1757, or such as have and shall be afterwards admitted in right of patrimony or apprenticeship.

IN the mutiny act the same rate continues to be specified for the payment of quarters; but since 1793, the publicans, and other persons obliged to furnish quarters, have been relieved by a further allowance of 4d. each man per diem for the cavalry, and 6d. each man per diem for the infantry; which makes the whole sum for each man's diet and small beer per diem 10d. They are also, by virtue of the same act,



entitled, An act for the relief of innkeepers, &c., allowed  $4\frac{1}{2}$ d. for each horse's hay and straw, in addition to the former sixpence. This additional or extra rate is called *Marching* or *Billet* money, and is charged in the extraordinaries of the army. There is also a further allowance of 2d. each man per diem, to the publican, when he does not diet the soldiers, but is obliged to provide them with fire and candle, cooking utensils, vinegar, salt, and small beer or cyder. This allowance is called *Beer money*, and comes likewise under the head of the army extraordinaries.

## CHAPTER XI.

*Of Field Exercise and Tactics.*

WHAT was the particular form of exercise used by the infantry in our ancient armies is uncertain, nor is it mentioned in any books I have been able to find; probably it was somewhat like that handed down to us by Ælian, in which was practised the facing, opening, closing and doubling the ranks and files, counter-marching, and wheeling; indeed, it would be an absurdity to suppose, that an army could ever have been led to the field uninstructed in some uniform principles of movement, and handling their arms; and it is also certain, as has I believe been before observed, that the great number of various troops assembled at the crusades, would tend to assimilate the tactics of the whole, as every nation would undoubtedly adopt the form of discipline most approved of in the army (g).

---

(g) THE French Military History is as barren on this matter as our own; from father Daniel, it appears, that the oldest form of military exercise, he has found, is of the year 1473, being a manuscript in the king's library, containing the ordonances of Charles the Bold, Duke of Burgundy, for the corps of gendarmerie, formed on the model of those of France, and composed of men of arms, archers, coustiliars, and pages; but the infantry, the Genoese cross-bow-men, and archers excepted, being long after held in small estimation, no great attention was paid to their discipline; the free archers only, assembled on holidays in their villages, to practise shooting, and the game of the popenjay, which was A.D. 1721, when father Daniel wrote, still in use; a military writer (Montegon), who had served under Charles IX. and Henry III. contemporaries with Queen Elizabeth, complains (says father Daniel), that in his time, no soldiers were made to perform an exercise except the regiment of guards; this fact, incredible as it may appear, is in some measure confirmed by the testimony of Monsieur de Montgomeri de Corbofon, who lived at the same time; for that gentleman in his Treatise on the French Militia, speaking of the exercise of the Greek Soldiers,

By Camden's letter printed in a preceding chapter of this work, we learn, that an innovation in our national military discipline took place towards the latter end of the reign of Queen Elizabeth, introduced by the officers who had served in the low countries; this, it appears, was disapproved of by many ancient commanders and soldiers, a circumstance extremely natural, since they were thereby reduced from the rank of masters or teachers, to that of scholars or learners, a degradation to which it requires great philosophy to submit; this innovation in part consisted of a more general introduction of fire arms, and a consequent decrease of archers.

Soon after this era, a number of military treatises were written; from these we learn, that the infantry was drawn up ten deep; one reason for which was, that the first rank having fired, would be able to march into the rear, form, and reload, by the time that the other nine ranks had severally done the same; a company then generally consisted of an hundred men, which being a square number, presented an equal face every way; a matter then considered as of great importance: a company contained four escadrons or squares of twenty-five men each, five in each face.

BOTH ranks and files had three different distances at which they stood; they were distinguished by the terms; 1st. open order; 2d. order; and 3d. close order: the first was six feet; the second three feet; and the third only one foot and a half.

THE measure of open order, or six feet between the ranks, was judged by observing, that the but end of a soldier's pike when sloped, almost reached the heels of his file leader; the distance of order, or three feet, was found by closing up, till every man almost touched the chape or point of the sword of his file-leader.

THE distances of files were regulated by the following rule: for open order, a distance of six feet was taken by each file, standing so far

---

as described by Ælian, compares it with that used in Holland, under Prince Maurice, and not with that practised in France, which shews, that the military exercise was not at that time so accurately or frequently performed there.

from their right and left hand men, that their arms being mutually extended, their finger ends would just meet.

FOR order, the soldiers putting their hands on their hip bones, with their arms (as the term is) set a-kimbow, the elbows just met or touched those of their right or left hand men.

CLOSE order was commanded by the word close; it was one foot and a half distance between the files, and three feet between the ranks; it was for pikes only, and was never to be used but in standing to receive the charge of an enemy; musketeers were never to be closer than the second distance, or order, three feet square, that they might have a free use of their arms.

IN exercising or performing the motions of the pike, musket, and caliver, or manual, as it is now called, the ranks and files were at open order, each man being allowed a space of six feet square.

THE second distance or order was used when the regiment was embattled or marched in the face of an enemy, to halt or to wheel, in marching through a country; the files were at order, and the ranks at open order.

EVERY corps consisted of pikes and musketeers; the pikes were drawn up in the centre, the musketeers on the flanks.

IT does not appear from any book I have seen, that at first the musketeers ever attempted to fire more than one rank at a time; all their firings by ranks were conducted somewhat in the manner of the modern street firings.

THE postures or motions of the manual exercise for the musket and pike, are represented in the annexed plates; the words of command for these exercises are engraved beneath each figure, as are also those for the halbert: besides the musket, there was a lighter kind of fire-arm, called a caliver, used without a rest; the exercise of which differed in some small matters from that of the musket.

THE evolutions were facing, wheeling, countermarching, and doubling their ranks and files; exhibiting a variety of methods of changing the front, increasing either the breadth or depth of the corps, or changing the situation of the ranks and files with respect to

front and rear, and right or left; the manœuvres of this time were forming wings, wedges, rhombs, squares, triangles, the sheers, the saw, and a variety of other whimsical figures (h).

It does not appear that any great attention was paid to the mode of marching or dressing, or that the officers of that time had the least idea of the points of direction or allignement.

THE following extract from a small pamphlet entitled "A worthy speech spoken by his excellence the E. of Essex in the head of his armie before his arrivall at Worcester, on Saturday last, being the 24th September, 1642. Pub. September 29th, 1642," shews the state of the discipline of the parliamentary army at that period, and is replete with good sense.

1. I SHALL desire all and every officer to endeavour by love and affable carriage to command his souldiers, since what is done for fear is done unwillingly, and what is unwillingly attempted can never prosper.

LIKEWISE 'tis my request that you be very carefull in the exercising of your men, and bring them to use their armes readily and expertly, and not to busie them in practizing the ceremonious formes of military discipline, onely let them be well instructed in the necessary rudiments of warre, that they may know to fall on with discretion and retreat with care, how to maintaine their order and make good their ground: also I do expect that all those which voluntarily engaged themselves in this service, should answer my expectation in the performance of these ensuing articles.

---

(h) TOWARDS the latter end of the last century, military manœuvres were, particularly in France, so multiplied and complicated, as to exhibit as many ridiculous conceits, as a Dutch parterre; an instance of this occurs in Mr. Guibert's Essay on Tactics; who says, "when I entered into the service, this puerile exercise still prevailed; though men's minds began to be enlightened for twenty years before; they manœuvred with open ranks, and passed their time in countermarching by rank and file, in grounding their firelocks, and taking them up without bending their knees; they formed battalions into circles, triangles, squares, and bastions; M. de Chevert related, that when adjutant to the regiment of Beauce, he was much admired for having at the end of a field-day, he conducted before the inspector, delineated with the regiment, the words, 'Vive le Roy,' and caused this living alphabet to fire a feu de joye."

1. THAT you willingly and chearfully obey such as (by your owne election) you have made commanders over you.

2. THAT you take speciall care to keepe your armes at all times fit for service, that upon all occasions you may be ready when the signal shall be given by the found of the drumme or trumpet to repaire to your colours, and so to march upon any service, where and when occasion shall require.

3. THAT you beare yourselves like soldiers without doing any spoile to the inhabitants of the country; so doing you shall gain love and friendship, where otherwise you will be hated and complained off, and I that should protect you, shall be forced to punish you according to the severity of law.

4. THAT you accept and rest satisfied with such quarters as shall fall to your lot, or be appointed you by your quarter-master.

5. THAT you shall (if appointed for centries or per-dues) faithfully discharge that duty, for upon failure hereof, you are to undergo a very severe censure.

6. You shall forbear to profane the Sabbath, either by being drunke, or by unlawfull games, for whosoever shall be found faulty must not expect to passe unpunished.

7. WHOSOEVER shall be knowne to neglect the feeding of his horse, with necessary provender, to the end that his horse be disabled or unfit for service, the party for the said default shall suffer a month's imprisonment, and afterwards be cashiered as unworthy the name of a souldier.

8. THAT no trooper or other of our souldiers shall suffer his PAD-DEE (i) to feed his horse in the corne, or to steale mens hay, but shall pay every man for hay 6d. day and night, and for oats 2s. the bushell.

LASTLY; that you avoid cruelty, for it is my desire rather to save

(i) THE meaning of this word I have not been able to ascertain; it is by some supposed to mean Irish boys; many of them were then, it is said, serving as grooms to the troopers: Paddet; according to this idea, originated from the vulgar appellation of paddy, given by the English to the Irishmen of all denominations.

the life of thousands, than to kill one, so that it may be done without prejudice.

THESE things faithfully performed, and the justice of our cause truly considered, let us advance with a religious courage, and willingly adventure our lives in the defence of our king and parliament.

THE exercise adopted in the attempt to re-introduce the long bow into our armies, by connecting it with the pike, comes next under consideration.

THE following are the directions given by Nead in his treatise, entitled, *The Double-armed Man* (k).

Now the perfection of this exercise, if they have been bowmen, may be attained unto by practice without any great difficultie, and thereby he is a double armed man; and for the order and postures belonging to the pike and bow, for the true use thereof is as followeth.

FIRST, the whole body of pikes must keep their files of pikes straight by line, for in so doing, they may all shoot, as well the middle and the rear, as the front, without offending one another.

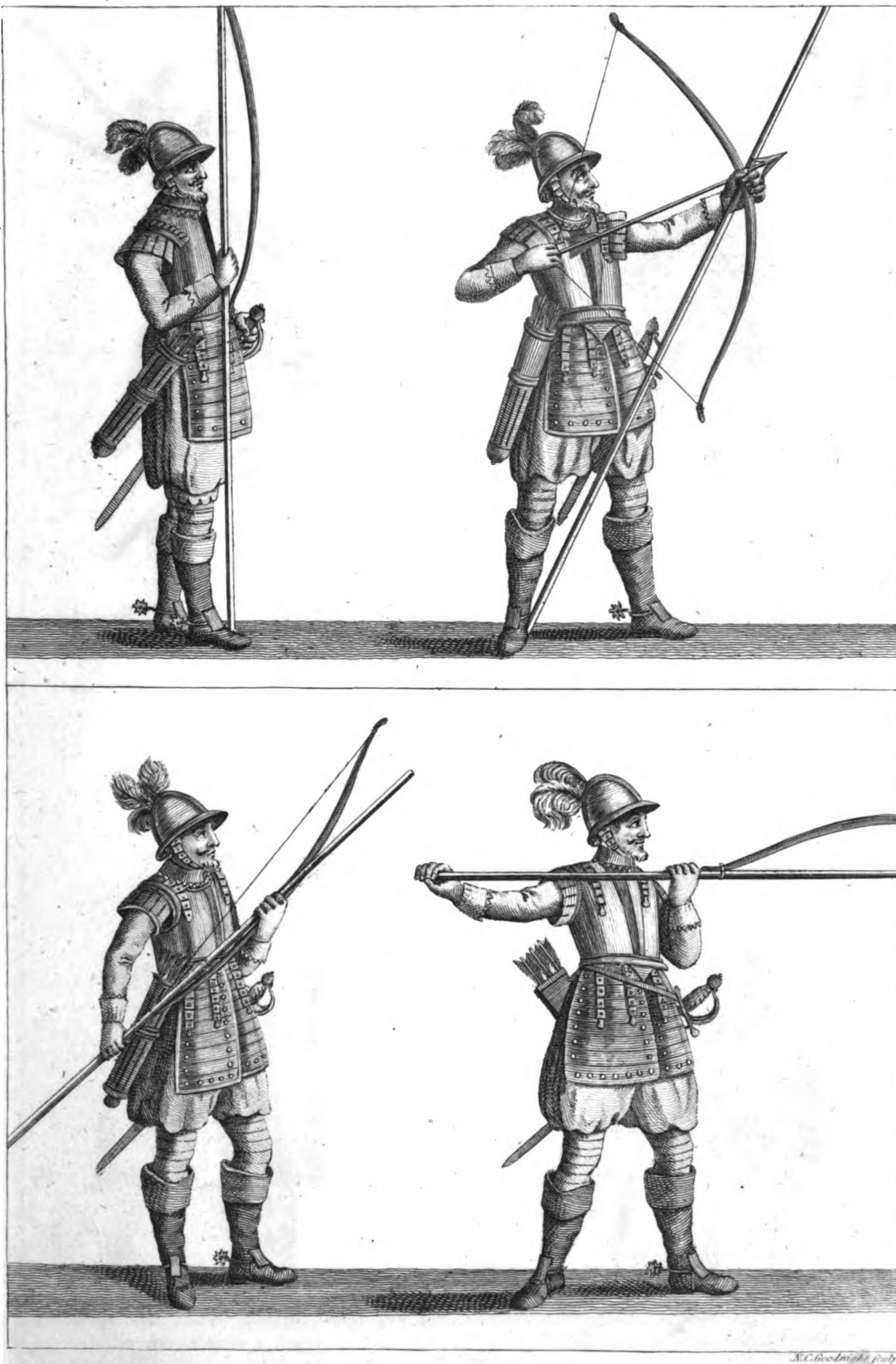
SECONDLY, every follower must shoot right over his leader's head, and so shoot thorow his own file of pikes, for that must be his true direction to make his shoot.

THIRDLY, after the enemy comes on, and that the leaders do shoot

---

(k) PRINTED A.D. 1625. It appears by the preface, that the author, William Nead, caused a soldier to perform this exercise before King Charles I. in St. James's Park, and that he by petition solicited the king to give orders for its being practised in the artillery gardens of London and Westminster; to which the king answered, that it were meet for them to practise it of their own accord: he also there complains of having neither supportation, nor countenance from any (but God alone); he, however, at length obtained a commission, about the year 1633, for himself and son, also named William; wherein he (the father) is styled an ancient archer, who had presented to the king a warlike invention for uniting the use of the pike and bow, seen and approved by him and his counsel of war; wherefore his majesty had granted him a commission to teach and exercise his loving subjects in the said invention, which he particularly recommended the chief officers of his train band to learn and practise; and the justices, and other chief magistrates throughout England, are therein enjoined to use every means in their power to assist Neade, his son, and all persons authorized by them in the furtherance, propagation, and practice of this useful invention.

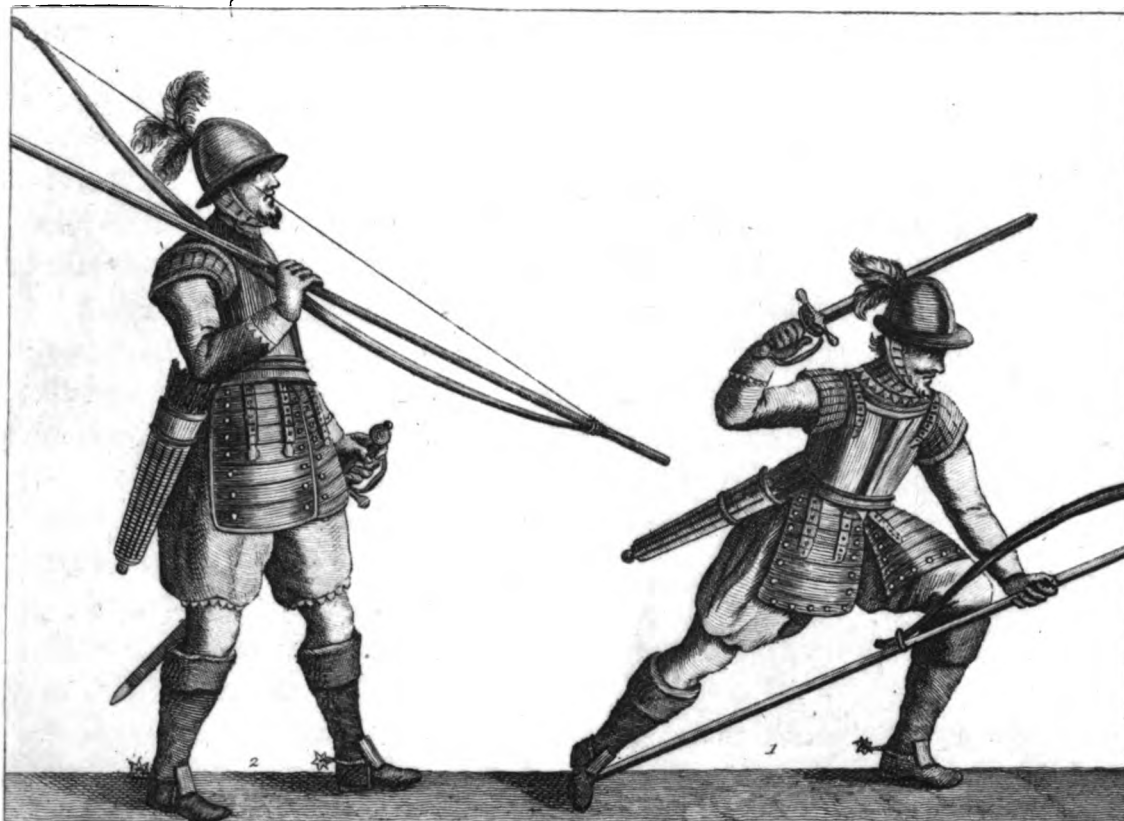




*The double armed Man.*







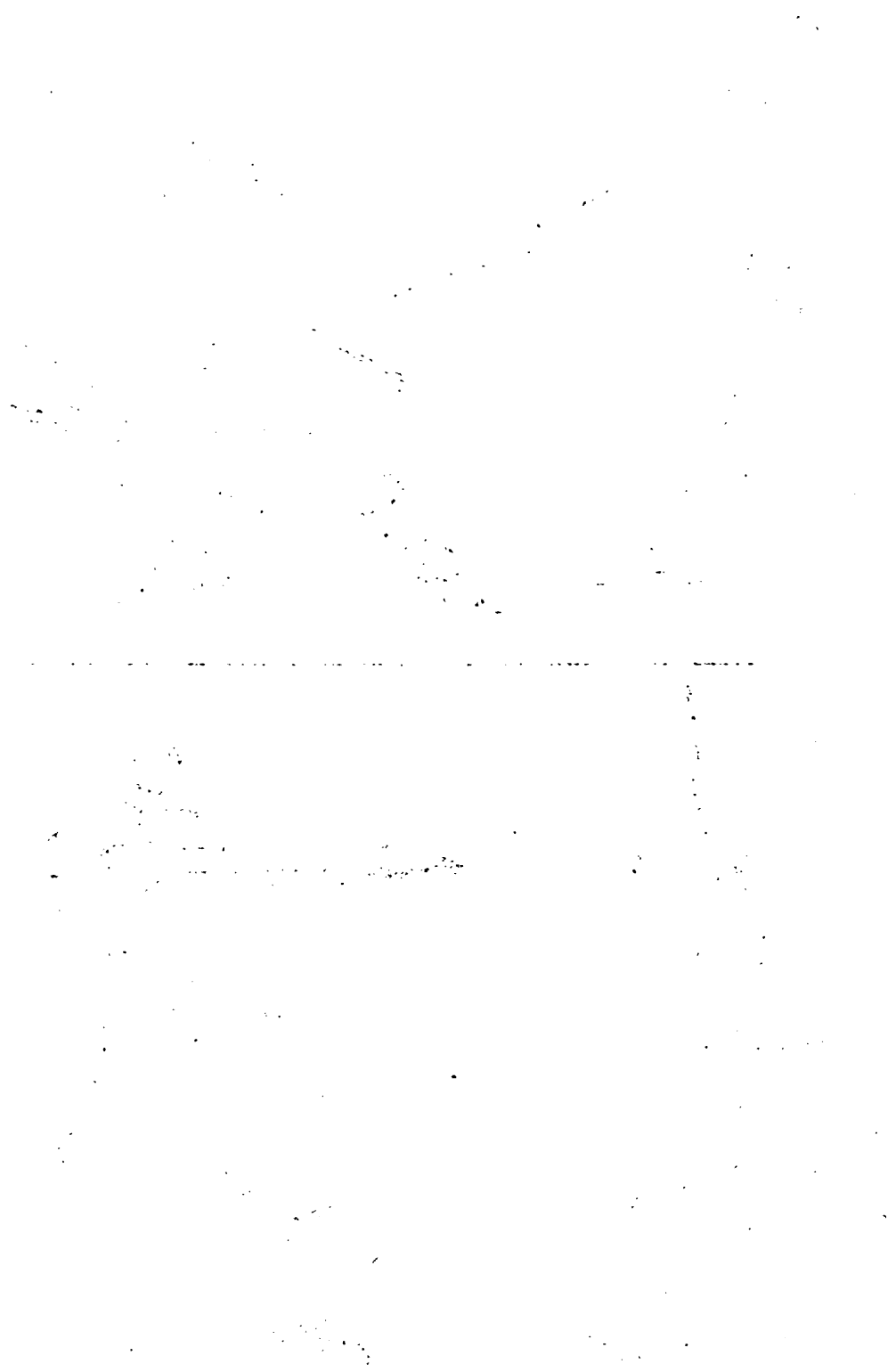
*Double armed Man. Pl. 2.*

*N.C. Goodnight sculp*



*Soldier arm'd with a Target.*

*Pikeman armed with a Roundel.*



breast high, then are the followers to bear their bowe hand even with the top of his leader's head, for that is the lowest and shortest distance that they can shoot, standing in their order and square body.

FOURTHLY, after your last shoot, which is about fixe score yards, you must fasten your bowe and come up to your close order for the charge ; and if it be for horse, while the five or fix first ranges stand charged with their pikes, rested at the foot, and their swordes drawne ; the middle of the reare may shoot their voley of arrowes, and doe good service ; whereas, without their bowes they can doe nothing but stand with their pikes floapt or ported.

THESE observations for the practice of this exercise, I have here set downe for the instruction unto all those that hereafter shall endeavour to practise the same.

HERE followeth the proper words of command belonging to this exercise for the pike and bow, accordinge as it hath been practised by the worthie societie in the Artillerie-garden, London.

THE proper words of command for this exercise are as followeth :

Order your pike.	Fasten your bow.
Slope your pike.	Recover your pike.
Unfasten your bow.	Advance your pike.
Draw out your arrow.	Come up to your close order.
Nock your arrow.	Charge your pike.
Shoot wholly together.	Recover your pike.
Port your pike and march.	Shoulder your pike and march.
Port your pike and retire.	Comport your pike and march.

HERE followeth also, fixe severall portraitures most proper for this exercise, with the pike and bow, by this invention, with the observations and words of command, properly belonging to each severall posture (1).

---

(1) WARD in his animadversions of Warre, mentions this invention with approbation :  
 " This invention of joyning a bowe to the pike, may bee of excellent use in the warres, to impale the flankes of an army ; for when the horse shall charge eyther in flank or reare, those arrowes will gaule them ; they are very good to be drawn out to safeguard some small troopes

to

FIG. 1. The pikemen stands ordered.

THIS portraiture is first placed, being properly the first posture; for the pikemen standing ordered, is ready also for all other postures or service whatsoever he shall be commanded, as

Advance your pike, &c.

Shoulder your pike, march.

Sloape your pike.

Unfasten your bow and shoot.

Port your pike and march.

Port your pike and retire, &c.

FIG. 2. The pikemen stands sloaped and shooting.

THIS portraiture is properly for shooting with this observation, that the butt end of the pike be fast in the ground, at the right foot.

THE words of command for this posture are as followeth:

Sloape your pike.

Unfasten your bow.

Draw out your arrow.

Nocke your arrow.

Shoot wholly together.

FIG. 3. The pikeman stands ported, to march or retire.

THIS portraiture is most proper for the third place; for after shooting the first volley of arrowes at the farthest distance, if any fall short, you are ready, so ported, to march ten paces, or more or lesse, as you shall be commanded, to shoot your second volley of arrowes, &c.

AFTER which, the words of command are;

Fasten your bowe.

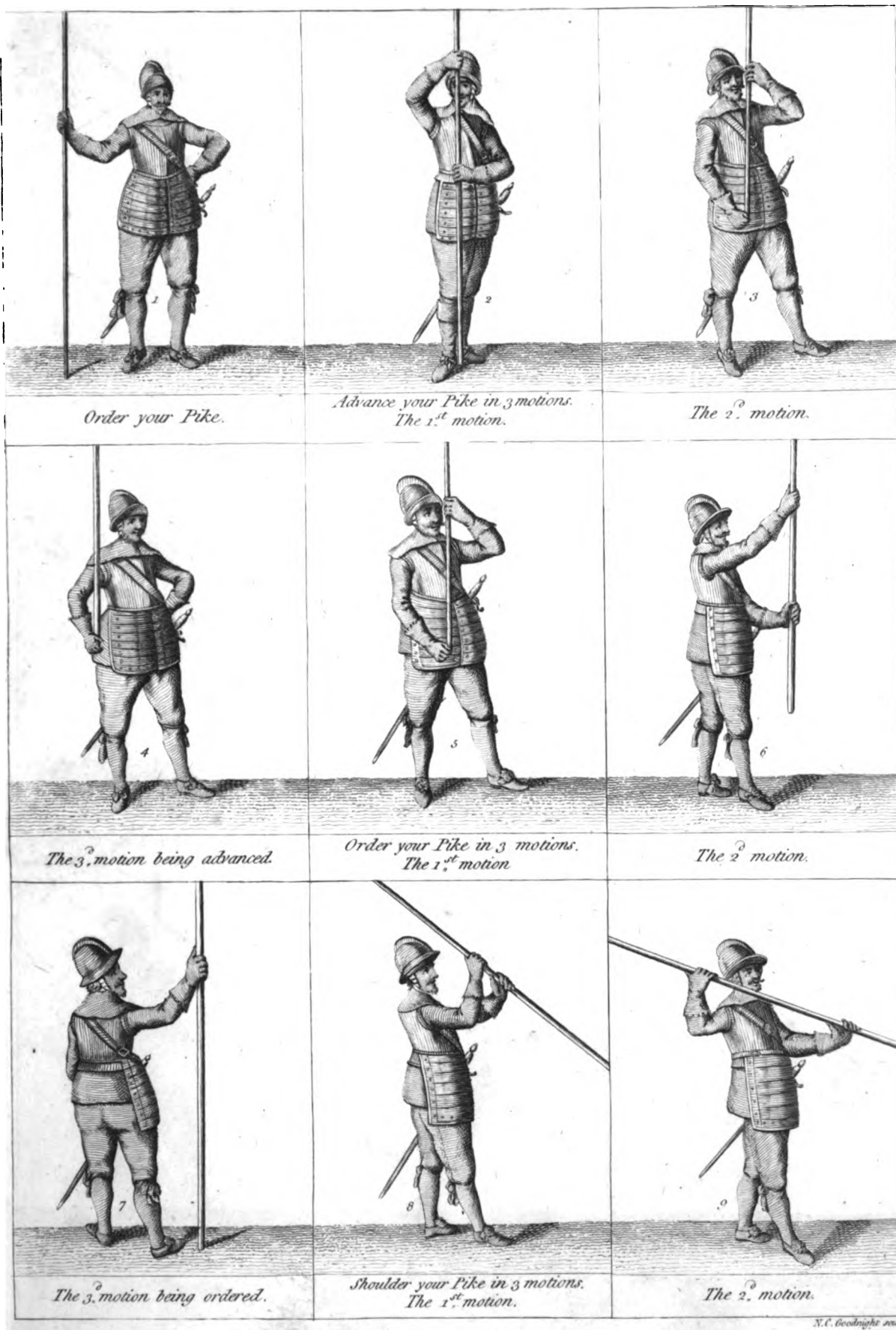
Recover your pike.

FIG. 4. The pikeman stands charged.

THIS portraiture is placed next after the former; for when the

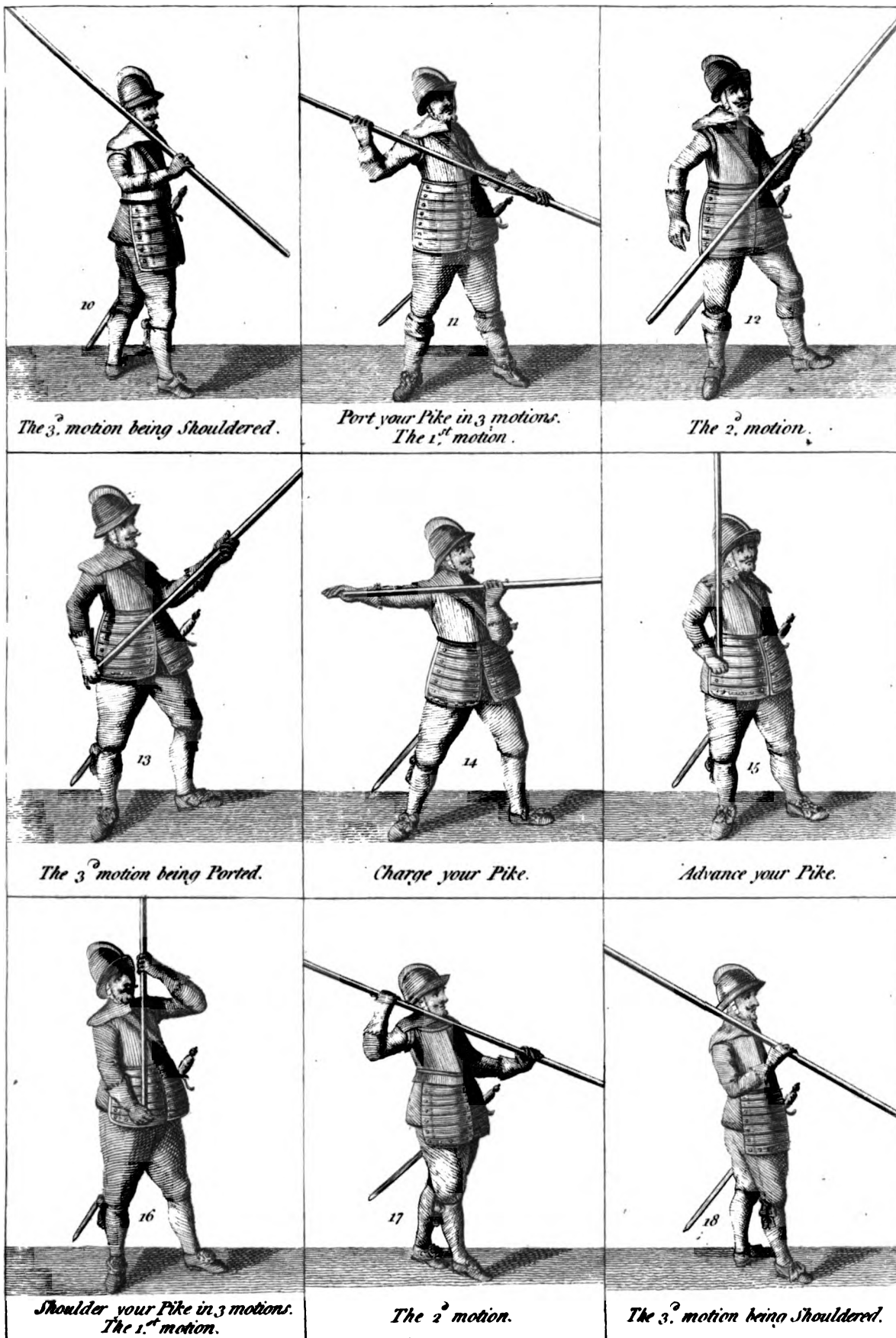
---

of shot that shall be sent out to discharge upon the horse; but for the placing of these in the front of the maine batalia's, I hold it not so good, unlesse it be only the two first rankes, for it will be very troublesome when the troopes shall joyne at push of pike; besides, the pikes heads will soon cut their bow-strings in sunder, and make them of no validitie; and questionlesse in time of stormie wet weather, these bowes would doe great service, when the musquet cannot be discharged for wet.



EXERCISE OF THE PIKE PL.1.



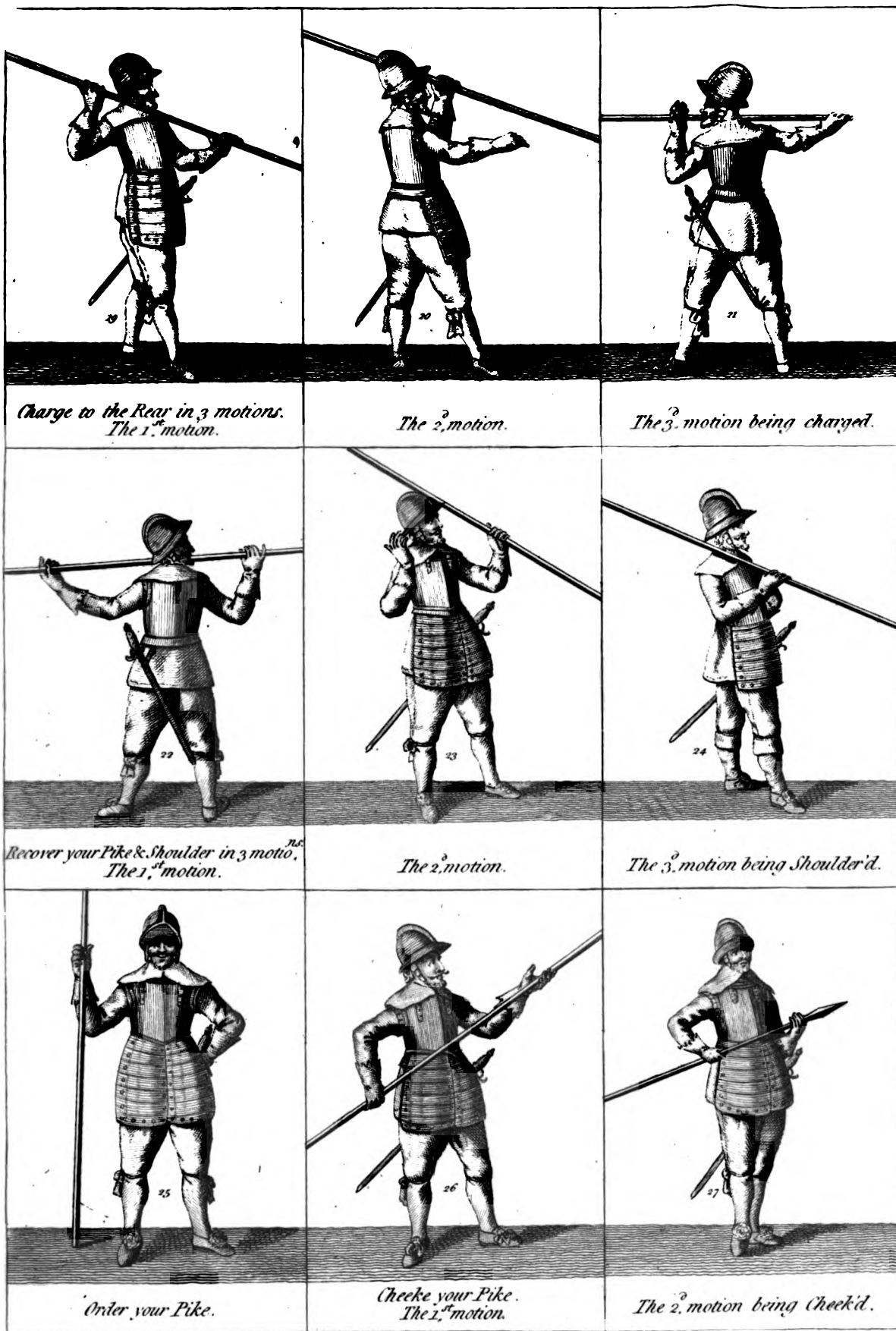


*N.C. Goodnight sculp.*

**PIKE EXERCISE Pl:2.**

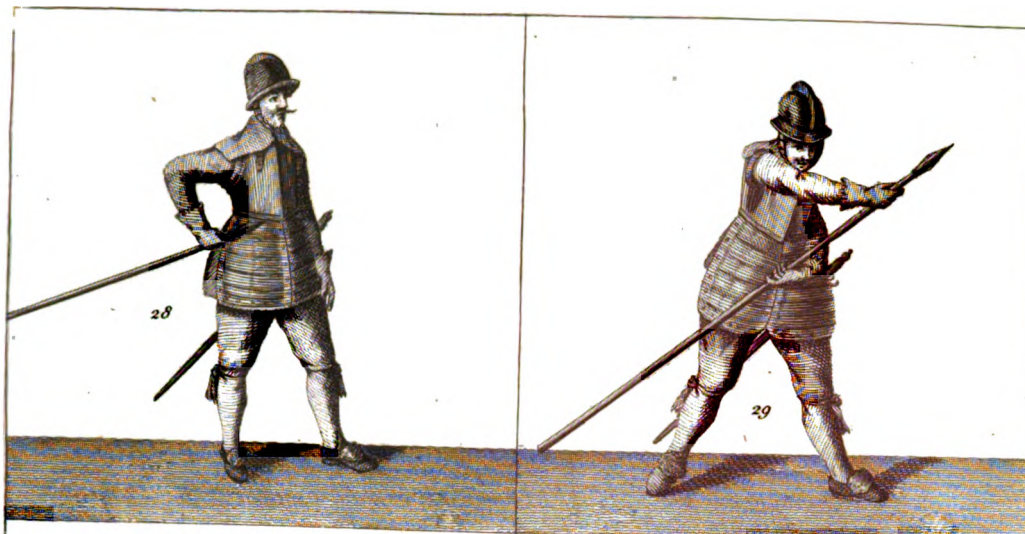






*N.C. Goodnight sculpsit.*





28

*Trayle your Pike.*



29

*Recover your Pike and Charge.  
The 1<sup>st</sup> Palming motion.*



30

*The 2<sup>d</sup> Palming motion.*



31

*Charge your Pike.*



32

*Order at close order.*



33

*Put up your Sword & order your Pike.*



souldier hath shot his volleys of arrows, and fastened his bow, if the enemy will come to the push, then is he readyly a pike-man, and so to receive his enemy at the push.

THE words of command for this posture are as followeth:

Advance your pike.

Come up to your close order.

Charge your pike.

FIG. 5. The pikeman stands coucht and charged for the horse, with his sword drawne.

THIS portraiture of charging for horse, is to shew, that the bow is very material for this service; for the five or six first rankes standing coucht at the charge, the middle and the reare may shoot their volleys of arrowes, and therewith both gaule, wound, disorder, and kill the enemy, both man and horse.

THE words of command are:

FIVE first ranks, draw your swordes close to your pouldrons, charge at the foot and couch low; middle and reare, port and come up to your order, and shoot your arrowes.

FIG. 6. The pikeman shoulders and marches.

THIS portraiture of shouldering and marching, is placed to shew with what ease the bow is carried with the pike, and without incumbrance unto the pikeman, either for carriage or service.

THE words of command for this posture are;

SHOULDER your pike and march.

LIKEWISE comporting is very proper upon some occasion for the pike and bow; the words are,

COMPORT your pike and march.

By an abridgement of the English military discipline, published by royal authority, A.D. 1686, it appears, that great improvements had been made in that science in a very few years; the troops were many of them armed with firelocks instead of matchlocks; the idea of the bayonet began to be adopted, and the musketeers fired three deep, the front rank kneeling, the center stooping, and the rear standing upright: in this firing, the platoon division or regiment having pre-

pared themselves as here mentioned, the center and rear ranks fired, and recovered their arms; and lastly, the front rank did the same; the whole then clubbed their muskets at the word given for that purpose, and on the word, fall on! rushed forward with a huzza!

THE grenadiers likewise practised the grenade exercise; in which, after slinging their firelocks, they lighted and threw their grenades by ranks, and at the same time seizing their hatchets, which made part of their appointments, at the word of command, "fall on!" rushed forwards hatchet in hand, as at an attack of the covert way, the hatchets being intended to cut down the pallisades.

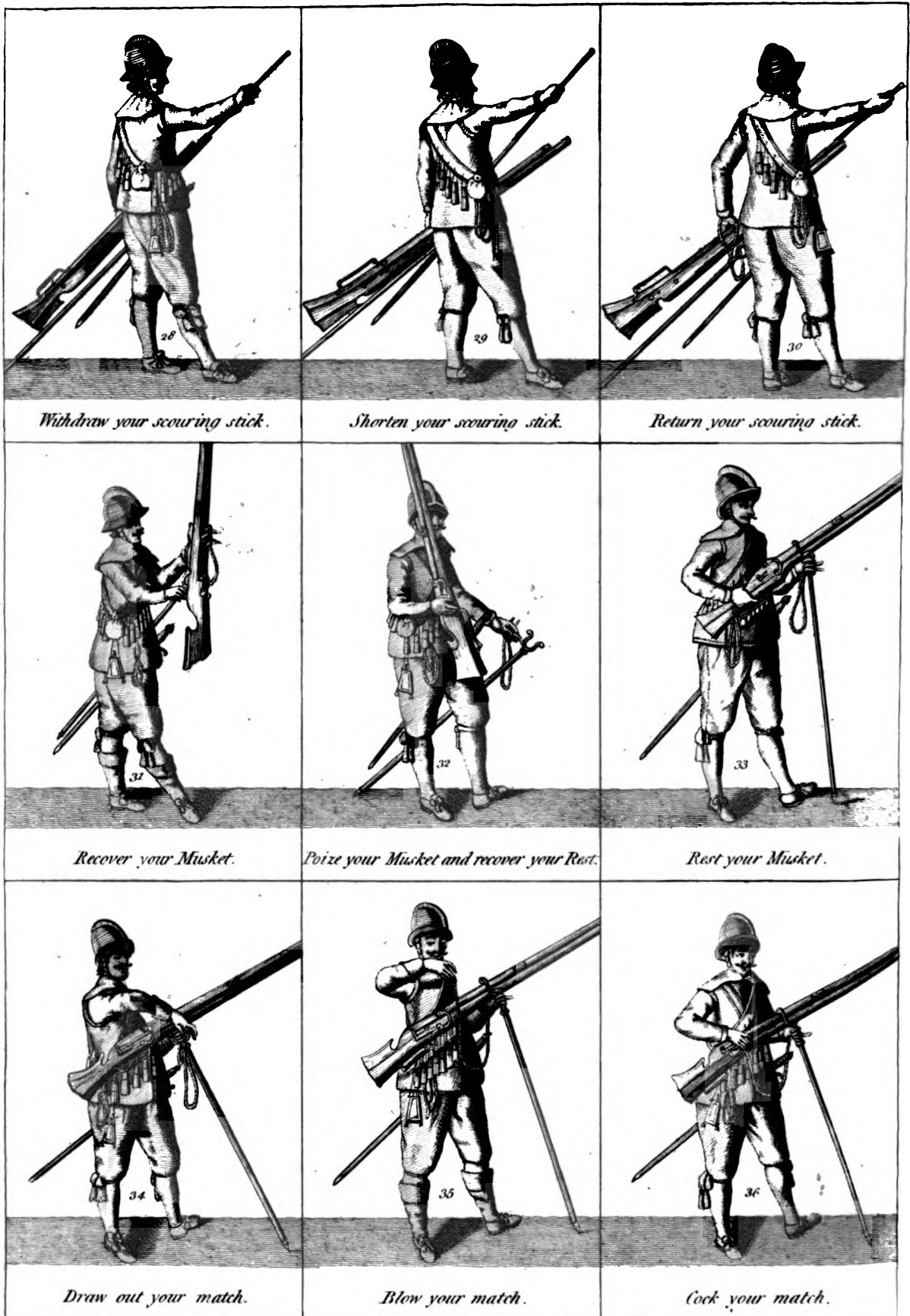
WHEN a regiment was drawn up for exercise or a review, the files were six deep, the ranks at open order, the companies posted according to their seniority, the eldest on the right, the next on the left, till the youngest came into the center: the battalion was then formed by the musketeers facing to the right and left, outwards, and the pikes to the right and left inwards; at the word "march" they interchanged their ground, the front rank of the pikes passing before the front rank of musketeers, and the remainder between the ranks, in the same manner as was lately practised by the grenadiers in covering the flanks of the battalion; by this movement the pikes were all in the centre flanked by the musketeers.

THE serjeants were posted, part on the flanks to the right and left of each rank, and the remainder in a rank in the rear, three paces from the rear rank of the regiment; the drummers on the flanks of the serjeants, dressing with the front, or with the front and second ranks; the musick was on the right of the drummers of the right wing, and dressing with them.

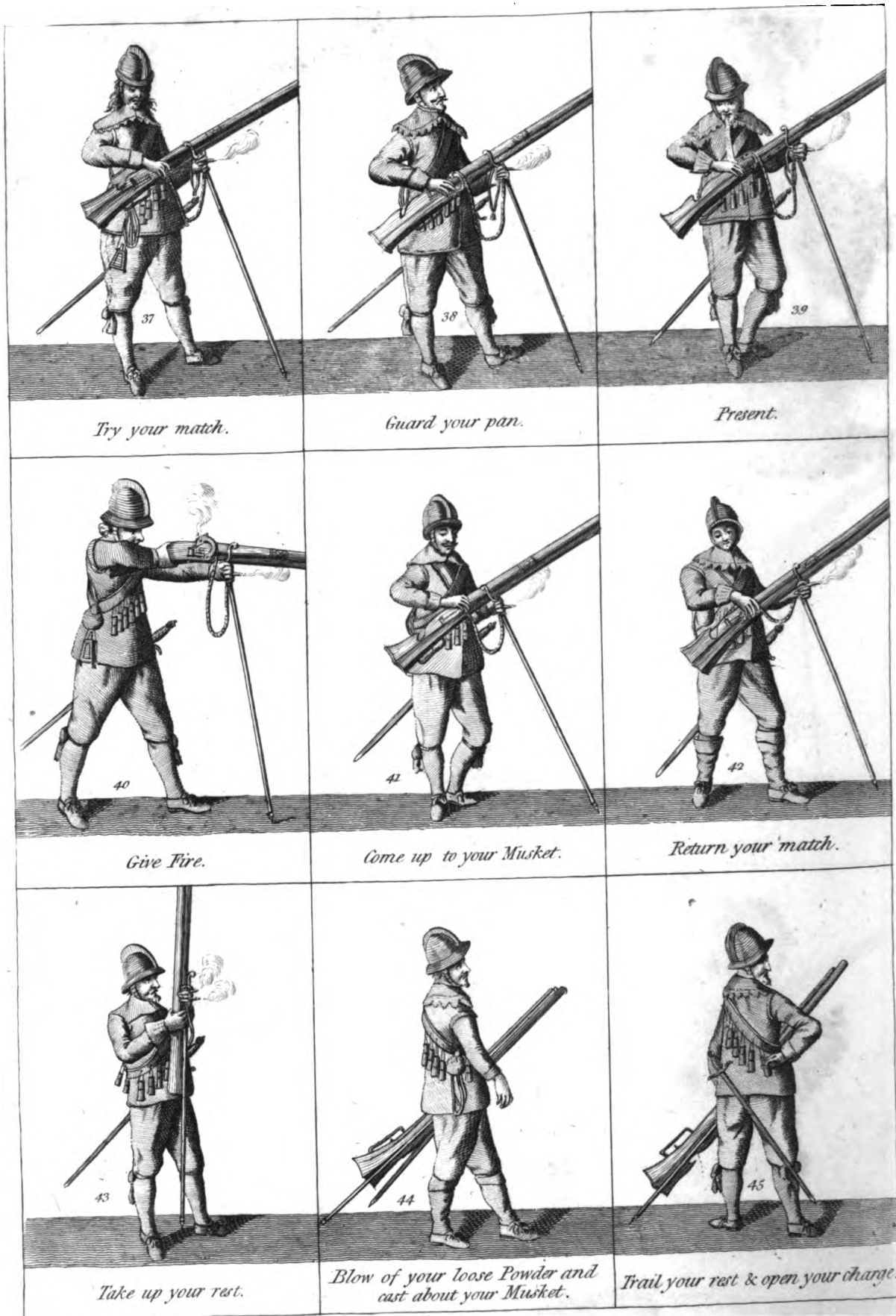
THE officers were thus placed: the lieutenants were divided equally, half at the head of the right wing of musketeers, and the other at the left; the ensigns at the head of the pikes upon the same line with the lieutenants, and each of them two paces from the body; the captains were divided equally, and placed on each wing, two paces before the lieutenants; none were to stand before the ensigns, but he only who commanded in chief, who was to be two paces before the captains



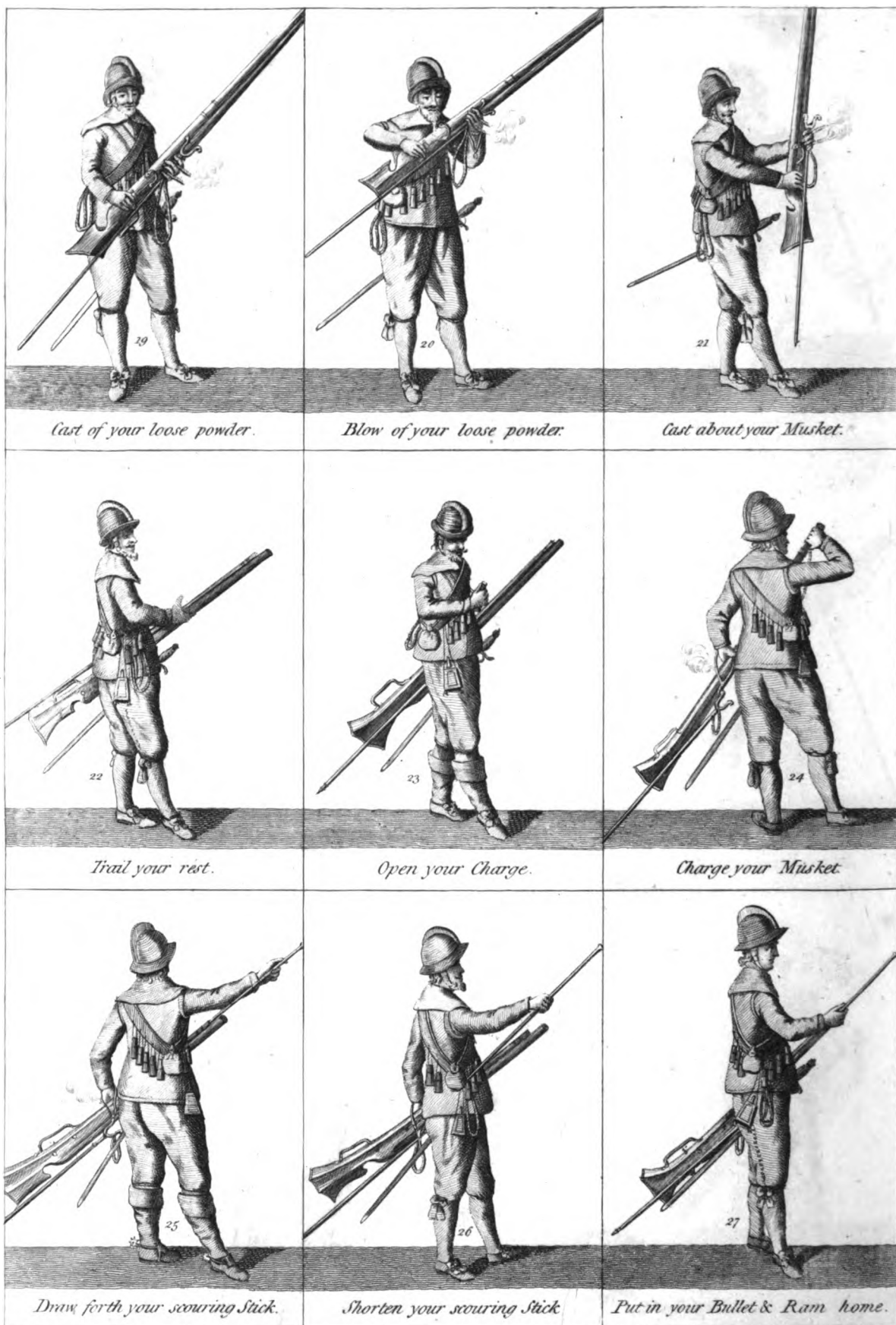




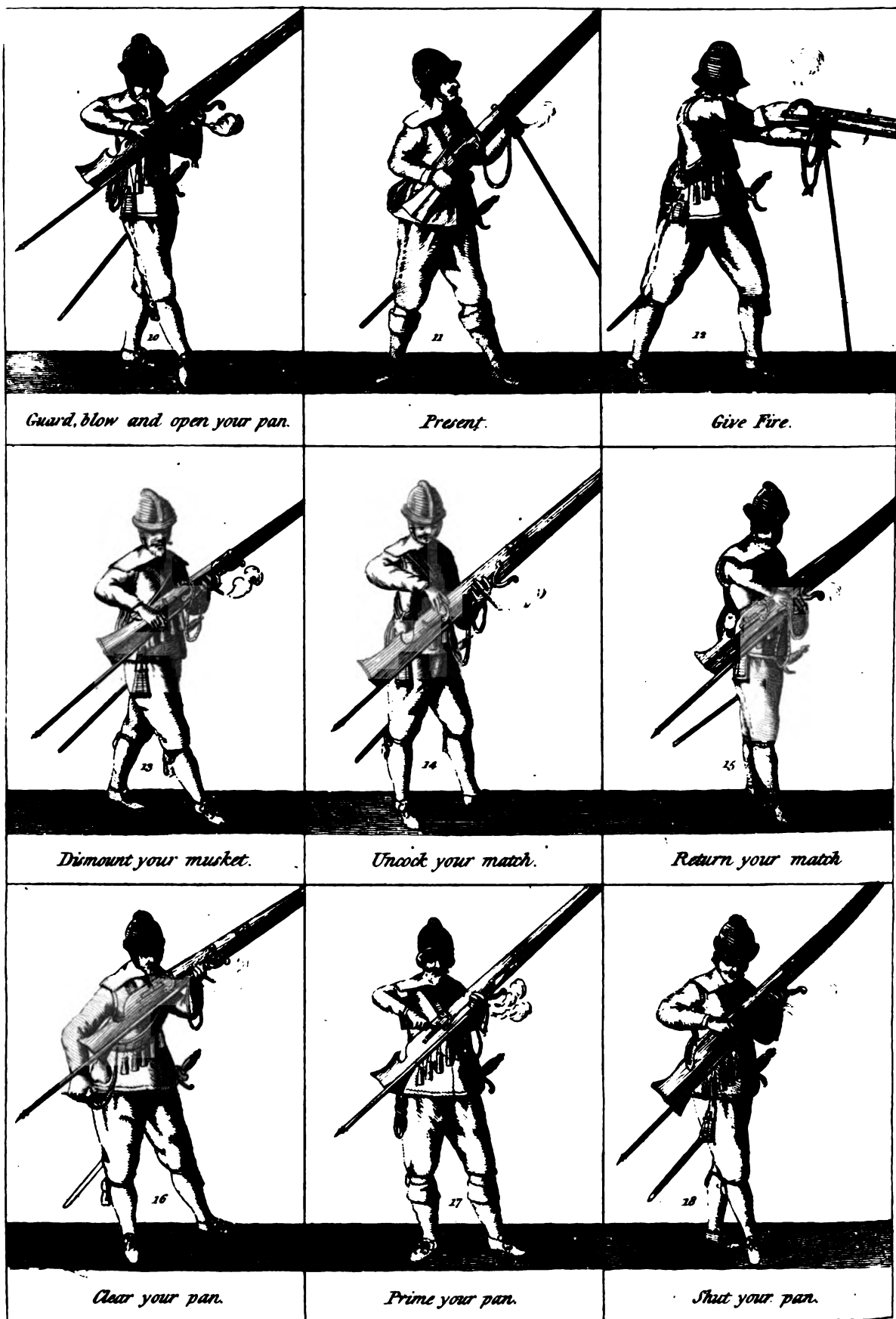






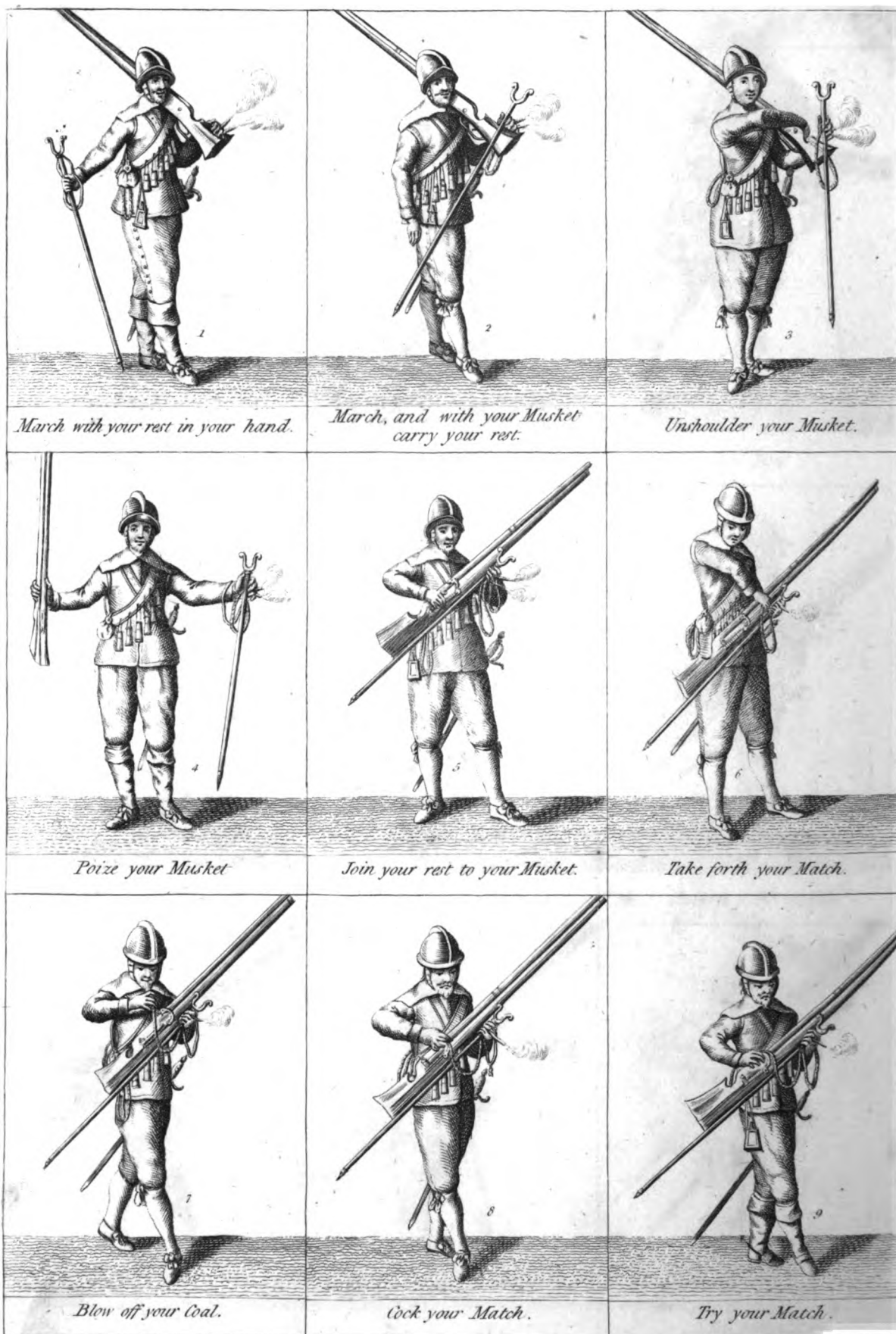












(that is), six paces from the pikes, unless when a regiment made but one battalion, and the colonel and lieutenant-colonel were both present; then the lieutenant-colonel was to be posted on the left hand of the colonel; the major (who always was to be on horseback,) in a direct line before the serjeants on the right angle, a little advanced before the line of captains; and the adjutant on the left angle in like manner on horseback.

To receive the king or queen, the pikes were advanced, and the muskets shouldered; but to all others the pikes were ordered.

If there was a company of grenadiers, it was drawn up on the right of the battalion three deep, about two or three paces distance between the drums of the battalion, and that of the grenadiers.

THE files were now opened to the right or left, and the officers took their posts of exercise in the rear, forming two ranks, the subalterns and colours eleven paces, and the captain thirteen paces, to the rear of the rear rank of the battalion.

THE serjeants at the same time moved through the intervals opposite to them, into the front, forty-six paces beyond the front rank; that is, six paces beyond the exercising officer, and then divided themselves at equal distances along the front, in a line parallel to the battalion.

THE regiment then went through the manual exercise of the musket and pike; this being done, both the pikemen and musketeers were ordered to ground their arms, and to go to the right about, and march to the rear, and as soon as they were clear of the officers to disperse; on the beating of the preparative, the soldiers all drew their swords, and carrying their points upwards, ran to their arms with a loud huzza, and stood beside them, their swords poised before them: they then, on the word of command, returned their swords, took up their arms, and the officers resumed their posts in the front.

THE evolutions and manœuvres were opening, closing, and doubling the ranks and files, wheeling forwards and backwards by subdivisions, passing a defile, forming and reducing the hollow square; in this manœuvre, the colours, one to each company, were in the center, and the grenadiers covered the angles.

THE firings were to the front, the rear, and the flanks, the street firing, volley, and running fire, or firing by files.

FIRING to the front was thus performed; the files being six deep, the front, second, third, fourth, and fifth ranks, all kneeled; the sixth, or rear, made ready and fired; the fifth then rose, and did the same, and so on successively till the front had fired; this firing was also performed by two or three ranks at a time; in the last case, the first and second ranks stooped, and the third stood upright.

THIS firing was likewise performed advancing and retreating, much in the same manner as was lately practised in the street firings.

FIRING to the rear differed only in the battalion going to the right about, and the front rank beginning instead of the rear; firing to the flanks was performed by leaving an interval of six feet on the right and left, between the division of musketeers and pikemen: the battalion having faced to the right and left outwards, the right and left hand files made ready, presented, and fired; after which they faced outwards, divided, and marched into the intervals prepared for them, where they joined, formed and reloaded; this was successively repeated till the whole had fired; the officers after every fire taking care to make their men move forward a few paces, in order to keep these intervals open.

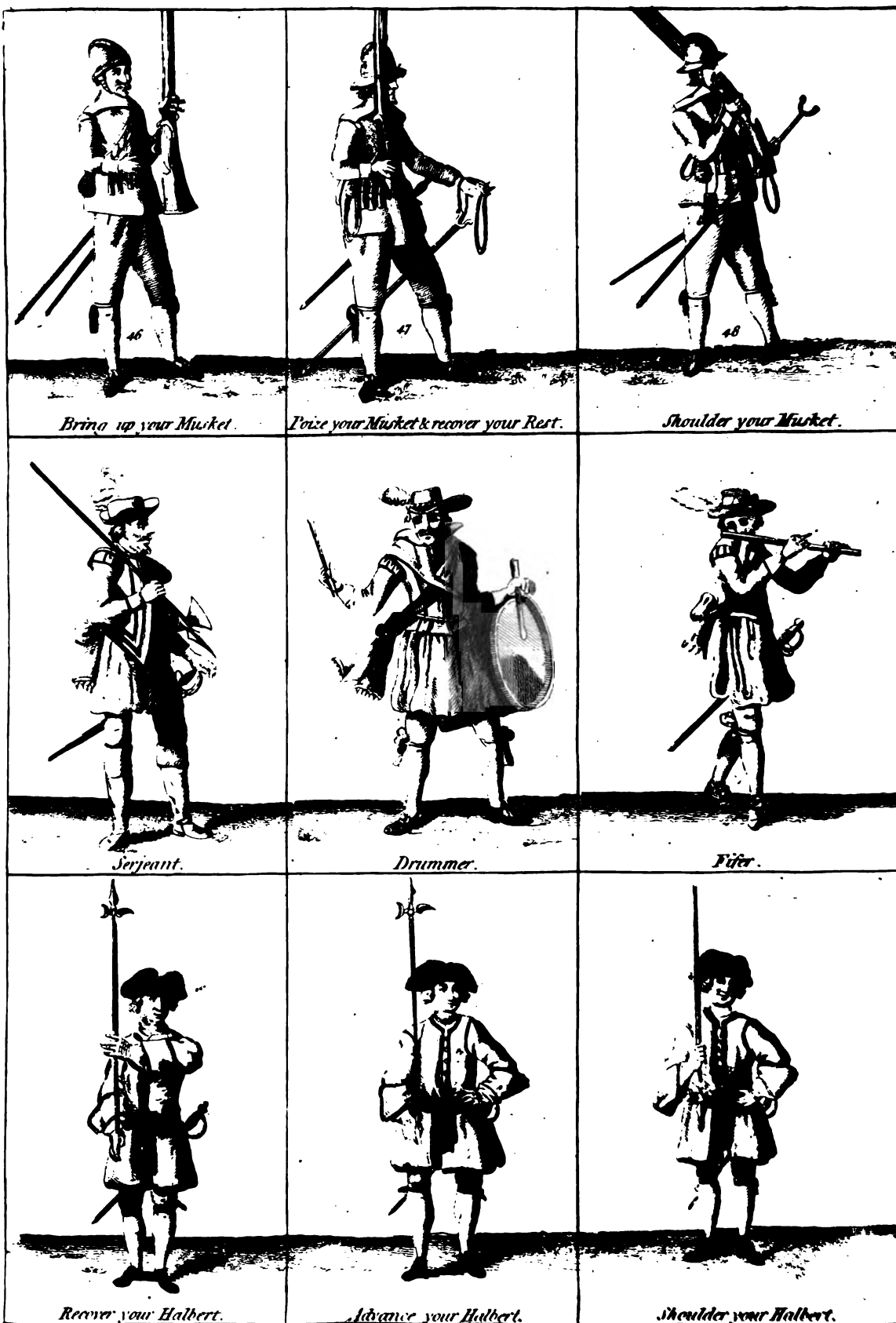
THE volley and running fire require no explanation, as they were performed in the same manner as at present (m).

THE street firing differed very little from the present mode of performing it, that except for that purpose the musketeers occupied the center, and the pikemen the flanks of the divisions.

THE following regulations are given for marching past the king or any person to be saluted:

---

(m) It may not, perhaps, be improper here to correct an error, into which many military writers have fallen; this is confounding a general discharge with a volley: the volley is a feu de joy, always fired with the ranks at half distance without bayonets, and with the muzzles elevated, whence it derives its appellation of *vollé*, or flight, borrowed from a flight of rockets; a general discharge is always fired with fixed bayonets and well levelled arms.



THE MUSKET & HALBERT EXERCISE. PL. 6.





THE HALBERT EXERCISE. PL. 7.



IF the battalion be to march in three divisions, the captains are to be divided, one half at the head of the first division of shot, and the other half in the rear of the last division; one half of the lieutenants in the rear of the first division of shot, and the other half at the head of the last division of shot.

THE colours are to march at the head of the pikes, which are to be advanced: the colonel, or lieutenant-colonel, or (in their absence) the officer in chief, is to march two paces before the rank of captains, at the head of the first division of shot; the captains and all the officers keeping at the same distance from the soldiers as they were posted at, at the head of the battalion, when drawn up, and taking great care that they keep that distance exactly, and no more; viz. the captains four paces from the soldiers, and the lieutenants and ensigns two, or at least at a proper distance to salute.

THE officers that are to march in the rear of the division are to fall after them as they march off, and not before, and the serjeants that were posted in the rear are to take care of the pikes in their marching.

THE drums are to be divided equally to the divisions, and to march between the second and third rank.

THE grenadiers are to march about twenty yards before the battalion.

THE equipage of the colonels and officers of the front, is to march a little on the left hand, between the grenadiers and the battalion; the ho-boys are to march at the middle distance between the commander in chief and the grenadiers.

WHENEVER a division is commanded to march, they are to step together at once, both front and rear, with their left feet, and to march slowly.

IN marching, both colonel, lieutenant-colonel, and all officers, are to march with their pikes under hand comported, taking care not to droop the spear too much, nor to swing their hands in marching, but to keep them steady.

As soon as they come near the king or person whom they are to salute, they are to shoulder their pikes, and to take care to do it to-



gether, that is, every rank of officers as they approach the king, to shoulder their pikes together, and to carry them level upon their shoulders, and when they come to salute, to be very exact in doing it together, that it may seem as if but one man saluted.

THE first rank of captains are not to begin to salute till the colonel or commander in chief has done saluting, and the officers must take care above all things that they neither stand still when they salute, nor mend their pace so as to get too far from the men, and to take care in the salute not to do the motions too quick (n).

THE ensigns are to take care to bring their colours down altogether directly before them, without waving them to either hand, and to take them up altogether without standing still, or mending their pace.

As soon as the officers have saluted, they must pull off their hats, and keep them off till they are past by the person they salute, without bowing, and when they are past at a convenient distance, they are to bring their pikes again underhand.

THE serjeants are to march with their halberts shouldered, the but ends upwards, and are always to march with their hats off when they pass by the person that comes to view the battalion, whether the officers salute or no.

NONE is to salute the same person but once standing, and once marching.

THE major and aid-major have no fixed post for marching, but are always to attend the colonel, or officer in chief, to receive his orders.

No serjeant or corporal is at any time to carry or hold the colours in the absence of the ensign, but only a pikeman.

BESIDES the figures representing the exercise of the pike and musket, that of the halbert is likewise given, copied from the engravings of Hogarth, made for the artillery company.

SINCE these regulations, the national exercise has been frequently

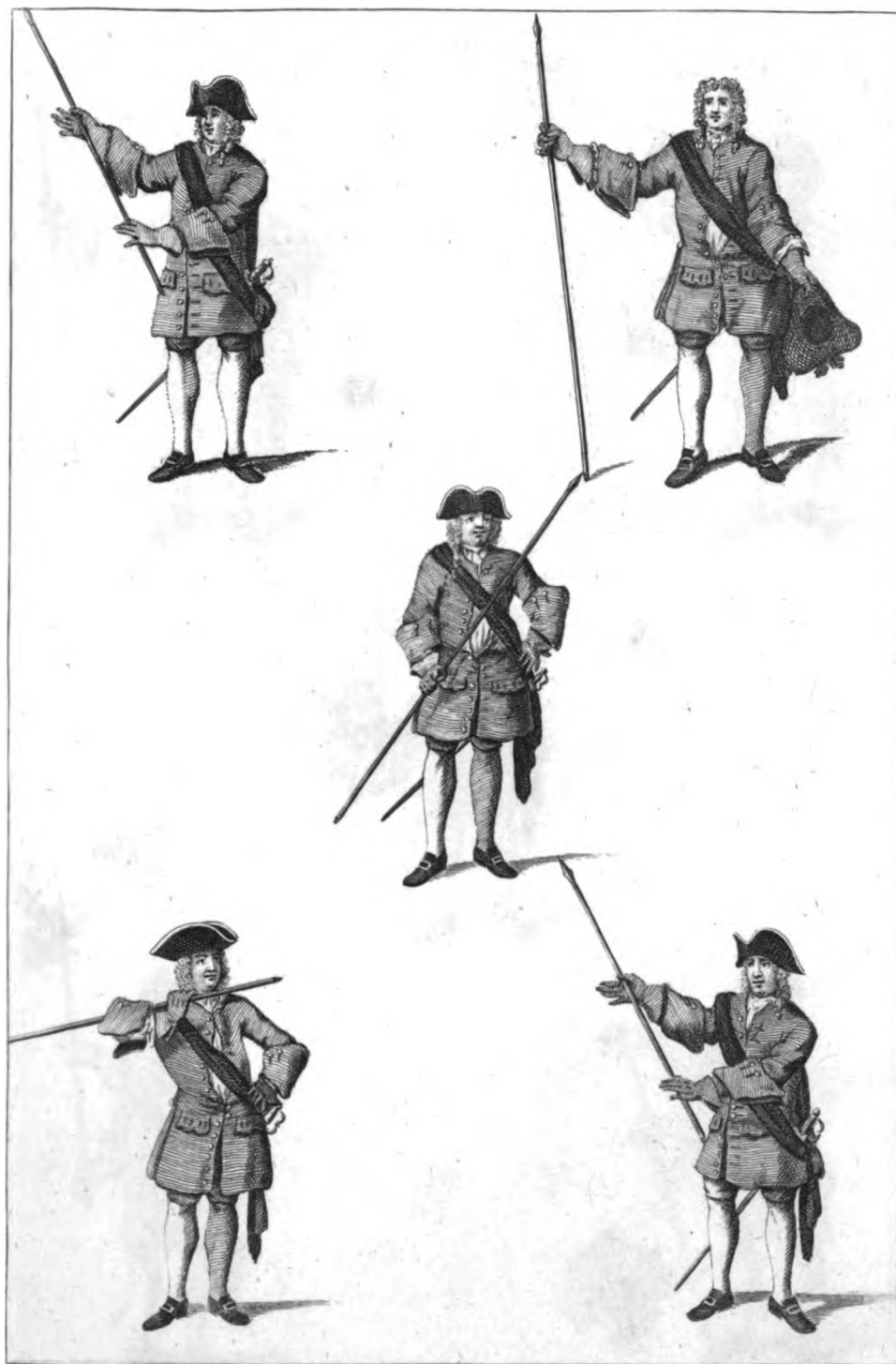
---

(n) THE motions of the salute, both standing and marching, were the same as lately used.



THE STANDING SALUTE.





STANDING & MARCHING SALUTES. PL.2.





THE STANDING SALUTE.



changed by authority, three different systems having been practised within the space of about forty years; among other improvements, the introduction of the quick step in marching and manœuvring, is not the least important; before that, every movement was performed with a slow, and almost funereal solemnity; till about the year 1750, the firelock was carried nearly in the position now termed sloped, and held by the swell; the motions were all performed as slow as possible, wide, and in the poize, and divers other motions, at the full extent of the arm.

THE exercise of the antient cavalry seems in a great measure to have resembled that of modern times; the methods of dismounting and linking their horses practised by the archers on horseback being very much like the mode now used by our dragoons; this may be gathered from the following sketch extracted by father Daniel, from a manuscript in the king of France's library, written about the year 1473, containing instructions for a corps of gens d'armes raised by Charles the Bold, Duke of Burgundy, in imitation of those of France; each lance, or man at arms, being attended by two archers, with a coustillier and page.

My said lord also ordains, that for the better accustoming the said body to the use of arms, and that they may be better taught and instructed, when opportunity offers, the captains of the gensdarmes and chiefs of squadrons being in garrison, or having time and leisure to do it, shall take parties of their men at arms to exercise in the fields, armed sometimes with their upper pieces only, that is to say, with head pieces or casks, and cuirasses only, and at other times completely armed, and shall practice them in running at each other with the lance, keeping themselves close and compact, teaching them to charge briskly, to keep to their ensigns, to leave them if ordered, and to rally, succouring each other when commanded, and the manner of sustaining a charge: to instruct the archers how to manage their horses, to accustom them to dismount and to shoot with their bows, causing them to learn the manner of linking their horses together with their bridles, and making them march after them to the front, fixing the horses of the archers by their bridles to the cornets of the hinder part of the saddle of the



page to the men at arms to whom they belong : moreover to march briskly to the front, to shoot without breaking their ranks, and to make the piquenaires, or pikemen, march with a close and even front before the said archers, and on a signal, to kneel on one knee, keeping their pikes lowered to the height of a saddle bowe, in order that the archers may shoot over the said pikemen, as over a wall ; and that the said pikemen seeing their enemies fall into disorder, may be ready to fall forth upon them, and also to set themselves back to back upon a double defence, or in a square or round order, the pikemen being always in close order before the archers, to sustain the charge of the enemy's horse, enclosing within their centre the pages and horses of the archers ; and the said conductors or captains may in the beginning introduce these operations, by small companies, and as soon as one of them is accomplished, they shall teach another.

IN the reign of King James I. the cavalry, according to Markham, was formed six deep ; the horses being set on their haunches were taught to run the circle in the lunge, to turn, passage, and rein back.

ONLY two sorts of distance were then observed, in both ranks and files ; namely, close and open order ; close order in files was, cuisse to cuisse, or knee to knee ; open order was six feet, in both files and ranks ; close order in ranks was close to the croop, or in other words, the head of each horse was close to the tail of his file-leader, leaving no interval between.

THE evolutions on horseback were opening and closing the ranks and files to the right and left, and to both hands by divisions.

DOUBLING the ranks and files to the right and left, and to both hands by divisions ; middle-men and bringers up doubling the front to the right, to the left, and to both by divisions, turning to the right and right about, the left and left about by conversion, countermarching to the right and left, countermarching to both by conversion, wheeling to the right and left, and to both.

THE manual exercise of the pistol was also practised ; the motions and words of command are exhibited in the plates engraved from those of Captain Cruse, published at Cambridge, A. D. 1632.





*Free your Cock.*



*The Marching Postures*

*Of the Harquebusiers.*

**EXERCISE OF THE HORSE Pl.6.**





*Return your Pistol.*



*Bend your Cock.*



*Guard your Cock*



*Order your Hammer*

**EXERCISE OF THE HORSE PL. 5.**





*Return your Rammer.*



*Pull down your Cock.*



*Recover your Pistol.*



*Present & give Fire*

**EXERCISE OF THE HORSE Pl.4.**







*Gage your Flask.*



*Load your Pistol.*



*Draw your Rammer.*



*Load with Bullet & ram home.*

**EXERCISE OF THE HORSE. Pl. 3.**





*Span your Pistol*



*Prime your Pistol*



*Shut your Pan.*



*Cast about your Pistol.*





*To Horse.*



*Uncap your Pistol.*



*Draw your Pistol.*



*Order your Pistol.*

THE cavalry occasionally formed, what was called, the square battle, the wedge, and the rhombe, with divers other figures then in fashion.

TOWARDS the latter end of the reign of King James II. the cavalry were armed with carabines which they fired on horseback.

THE horse-grenadiers then acted like a company of grenadiers to a battalion, and were armed with muskets and grenades, linked their horses, dismounted, fired, screwed their daggers into the muzzles of their muskets, charged, returned their daggers, fired, and threw their grenades by ranks, the center and rear ranks advancing in succession through the intervals between their file-leaders; they then grounded their arms, went to the right about, dispersed, and at the preparative or beating to arms, drew their swords, and stood by their arms, falling in with a huzza! they then returned their swords, shouldered and slung their muskets, marched to their horses, unlinked and mounted; after which, they fired their pistols and muskets on horseback.

THE exercise of the dragoon differed very little from that of the horse-grenadier, except in that part relative to the grenade.

VERY great alterations have of late taken place in the field exercise and manœuvres both of the cavalry and the infantry. Most of the dragoon regiments have been made light; and a new sword exercise has been adopted for the cavalry. The whole system of the army has been rendered uniform, by regulations issued from the adjutant-general's office. Within the last fifty years, the British infantry has been gradually falling into the Prussian system; and the new regulations are almost wholly founded on the Prussian institutions. The number of motions, which the soldier has to go through, in the exercise of the firelock, has been considerably diminished; and the manœuvres or principal movements for a battalion are confined to eighteen in number. For the particulars, the reader is referred to the "Rules and regulations for the formations, field-exercise, and movements of his majesty's forces."

## CHAPTER XII.

*Of Military Machines and Artillery.*

**T**HE projectile machines, or antient artillery, used by our ancestors about the time of the Norman invasion, were the scorpion, catapulta, balista, and onager of the Romans, with divers other species of the same machines, under a variety of different appellations.

THESE machines, their proportions and properties, are described in the works of Vitruvius, Ammianus Marcellinus, and other writers; but for want of illustrative delineations the descriptions are in general extremely obscure, and in some parts unintelligible.

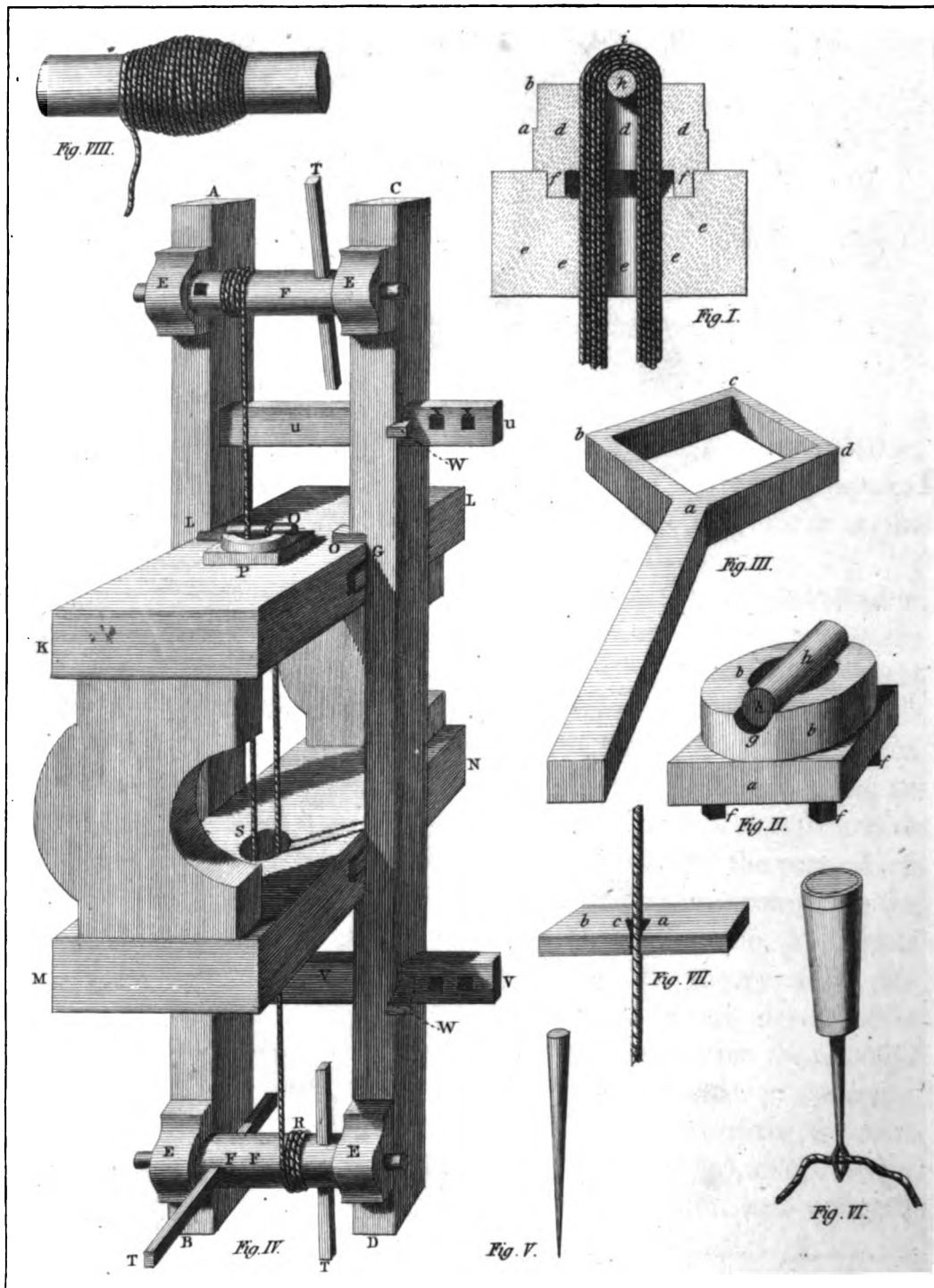
MANY mathematicians and engineers have at different times taken great pains to investigate this subject; among them is Mr. Newton, an ingenious architect, who, meaning to favour the world with a new edition of Vitruvius, has been particularly attentive to the part which treats of these machines, and not only examined and compared the several authors who have written on that matter, but also, by models and experiments, has endeavoured to ascertain the theory of the different constructions: the drawings and descriptions here given are the result of his labours, which he has generously permitted me to copy, and insert in this work. I have been the more particular in the consideration of this article, as the moving powers of most of the different machines so variously named, the scorpion excepted (o), depended on the same principles as those of the balista, catapulta, and onager;

---

(o) THE scorpion was only a large cross-bow; the balista was at first chiefly used for throwing stones, and the catapulta for lancing darts or arrows; but by degrees they were confounded, and indifferently appropriated to both.

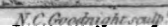






ANCIENT ARTILLERY. PL. IV.







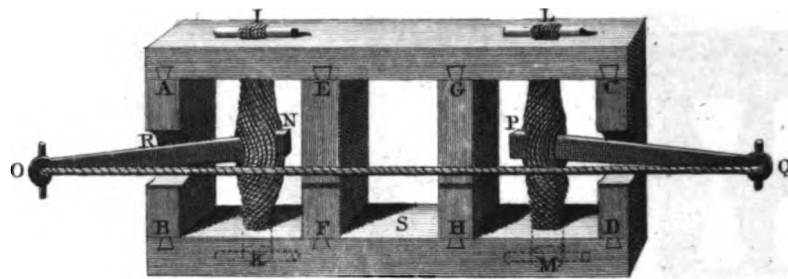


Fig. I.

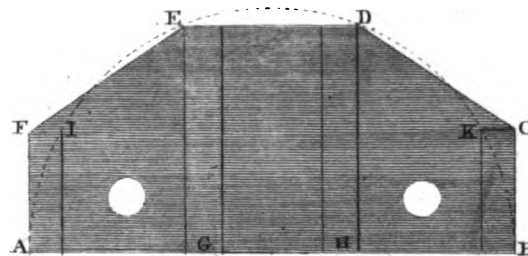


Fig. II.

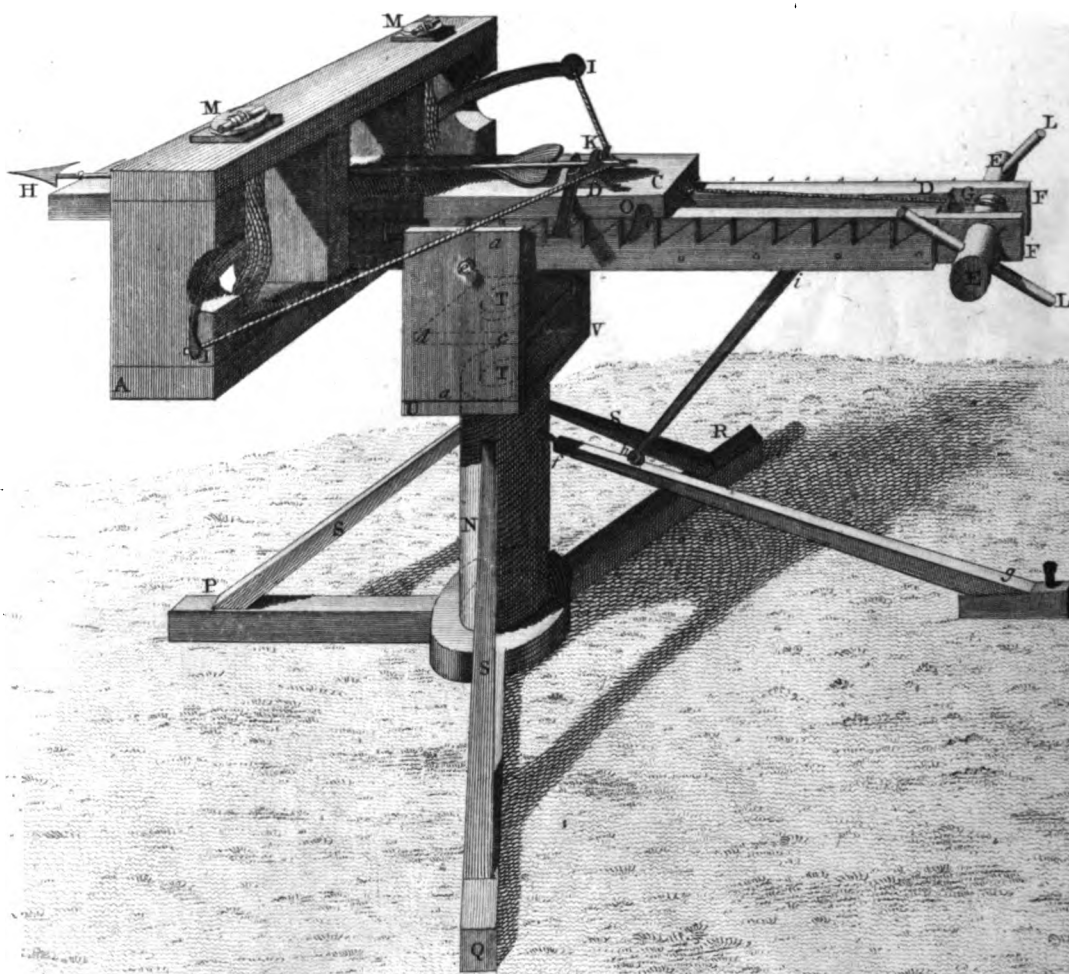


Fig. III.

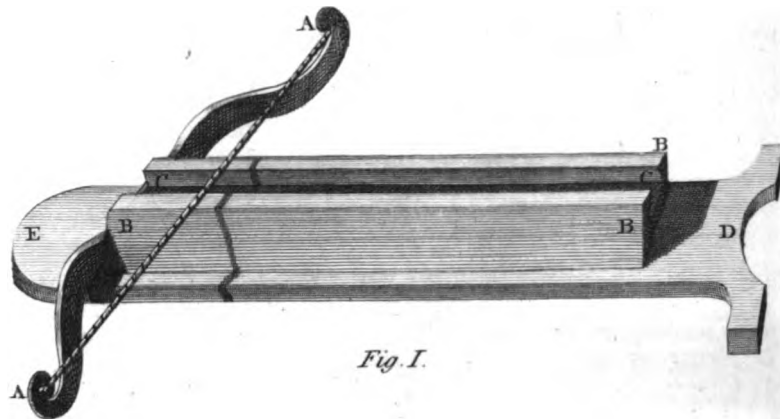




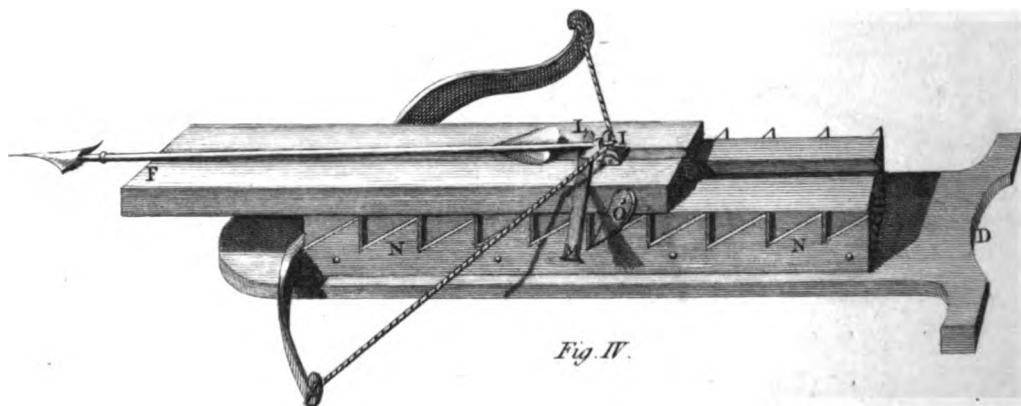
*Fig. II.*



*Fig. III.*



*Fig. I.*



*Fig. IV.*

namely, the elasticity of twisted cords formed of the bowels of animals, sinews, human hair, flax, and hemp.

THE scorpion was the smallest machine of its kind, and of the least effect; it was so called, because its form was thought to have some resemblance to that of the insect so named; it consisted of a bow AA., fig. 1., made of steel, or of some elastic wood, having a cord made of the bowels of animals, stretched from one end to the other, and fixed through holes made for that purpose at its extremities; in the middle was placed the *regula* BB., which had in its upper surface a channel cut in the shape of a swallow's tail, the lower part being the broadest; this *regula* was called the *fyrinx*; it was made of wood, and of such size as was thought suitable; it was fixed on a board DE., somewhat exceeding it in length and breadth, called *catagogis*; upon the *fyrinx* was placed another *regula*, fig. 2., equal to it in length and breadth, having a *masculus* FF. swallow-tailed, fitting exactly for form and size to the swallow-tailed channel or groove, cut on the *fyrinx*, and which was joined to it in its lower part; this last *regula* was called the *diostra*, and being placed on the *fyrinx* with its *masculus* F. inserted into the swallow-tail'd groove C., it might be made to slide backward and forward without risk of separation.

IN the upper surface of this *diostra* there was a semi-circular channel G. of its whole length, called *epitoxis*, in which the arrow was placed; and at the end of the said *epitoxis*, which was farthest from the bow, there were two perpendicular plates of iron HH., fig. 3., called *catobas*, fixed on the *diostra*, at a small distance one from the other; between them was placed a hook, or hand of iron, I., called *chira*, and *manucla*; one of these extremities was bent back like a hook, and was slit, so as to be able to receive the thickness of the arrow between its two parts; its other extremity L. terminated in a point; afterwards, crosses the sides of the *catobas*, and of the *chira*, was placed an iron axis K., so that the *chira* could turn vertically about; under the pointed extremity L., of the *chira*, was the end of a thin bar of iron LM., which was fixed upon the upper surface of the *diostra*, to the left of the *epitoxis*, by an axis of iron, on which it turned



horizontally ; this bar was called the *fbasteria*, and whilst its extremity L. rested under the end of the *cbira*, it hindered the latter from turning on its axis ; but when it was displaced by pulling forward the other extremity M., it permitted the hooked end I. of the *cbira* to turn over and to put itself in the place of the pointed end L., which consequently turned under, and put itself in the place of the hooked end, there being an opening cut in the *diostra*, purposely to let it pass.

THE points AA. of the bow were bent upwards, so that the string or cord could pass freely over the upper surface of the *diostra*, although the middle of the bow was lower than the *masculus* F., which was under the *diostra* ; the *catagogis* was rounded off at its extremity E. near the bow, and was hollowed out at its other extremity D., the archer leant his body against the hollow, and then pushed the *diostra* forward, until the *cbira* I., fig. 4., came to the cord of the bow, which he then put upon the hooks of the *cbira*, and to prevent it from turning, and consequently letting go the cord, he put the *fbasteria* under its extremity, which ended in a point L., he then pushed with all his force the end F. of the *diostra* against some wall, or against the earth, keeping his body in the cavity D. of the *catagogis* ; in this manner he drew to him by force the *diostra* and the *cbira* ; the *cbira* having seized the string or cord of the bow, this last was in like manner drawn forwards towards his body, and the bow thereby bent : the following mechanism was made use of to hinder the bow from drawing the *diostra* backwards : there was a rule with teeth, N., fixed on both sides the *fyrinx* their whole length, and a hook of iron, O., called *cataclida*, which turned vertically, on an iron axis, on both sides of the *diostra* ; when the *diostra* was pushed forwards, the *cataclida* fell successively between the teeth of the rule, which hindered the *diostra* from going backwards.

WHEN the bow was bent as much as was thought necessary, and retained in that state by the *cataclidas*, the archer placed the arrow in the *epitoxis*, inserting its extremity where it is feathered between the parts of the *cbira*, quite to the string of the bow, which entered into a cut made purposely at that end of the arrow ; he then raised the

machine and took his aim by looking along the arrow, and taking the end M. of the *sbasteria*, drew it towards him, and consequently drew the other end of the *sbasteria* from under the *cbira*, which by the tension of the string of the bow, instantly turned on its axis, thereby disengaging the string; the arrow was discharged with a great force: this machine was called *gastrapheten*, because the bow was bent by the action of pushing with the belly.

THE catapult was a machine which served for the same use, but which acted with a greater force; to encrease its force in a great degree without much augmenting its magnitude, which would have rendered the machine too heavy and difficult to make use of, it was necessary to make some alteration in its construction, and above all in that part which was the first cause of its force; that is to say, in the bowe; but in encreasing the force of the bow or the arms, it was also necessary to augment the force which acted on the bow or arms; instead of producing that effect by joining the force of many men, it was more conveniently and efficaciously done by the application of some mechanic power, which occasioned some other difference in the machine; these differences consisted in that which follows:

INSTEAD of a bow, as in the scorpion, the catapult had a rectangular frame of wood, ABCD, pl. 2, fig. 1, consisting of four uprights, placed at a convenient distance, and two horizontal traverses; one AC above, and the other BD beneath the four uprights, with which they were strongly joined by tenons and plates of iron; the horizontal traverses were called *scutulæ* by the Romans, and *peritretæ* by the Greeks, because they had perforations on all sides.

THE two outside uprights, AB and CD, were called *parastæ*, and the two others on the inside, EF and GH, *mésostæ*.

VITRUVIUS gives to all the frames the name of *capitule*, and Hero of *plintbe*: the holes IKLM were pierced perpendicularly through the two *peritretæ*; in the middle between the *parasta* and the *mésosta*, on the right and left sides of the *capitule*, opposite to the holes of the *peritrete*, were placed two strong bars of iron, IL, and two others, KM;

were applied in the same manner, opposite in the holes under the lower *peritreta*; these bars of iron were called *epizygis*.

THEY then tied to the upper epizygis, I, one of the ends of a cord made of the bowels of an animal; the other end was passed through the holes of the two *peritretæ* to the lower epizygis, K, it was stretched round it, and passed again through the same holes to the upper epizygis, I, about which it was stretched, and again in like manner to the lower *epizygis*; the same operation was repeated till the holes were filled, and that the cord could no longer pass there; they afterwards inserted in the middle, N, of this assemblage of cords, the end, N, of an arm of steel, or elastic wood; the other end, O, projected out beyond the face of the *parafta*, AB, near it; the two epizyges, I and K, were afterwards turned, so that the cords were extremely twisted; by this means they kept the arm, NO, quite firmly, and caused it to press backwards with force against the face of the *parafta*, AB, where a semi-circular cavity was cut purposely to receive it; the same manœuvre was repeated exactly at the other extremity of the capitule with the epizyges L and M, at the arm PQ, and the two arms being thus retained by the assemblages of twisted cords, made of bowels, will acquire a great degree of elastic force, and produced exactly the same effect as the bow of the scorpion before described: the cord, OQ, made of the strongest sinews of animals, was passed through the extremities of the arms, and fixed; it was of such a length, as to retain the arms at a small distance from the *paraftæ*, so that in the discharge they should not strike against and endanger them; these arms were called *brachia*, and likewise *ancones*: the assemblage or column, IK, of twisted cords, which retained the arms, was called *tonus*, and the frame, ABEF, about it, was called *bemitonus*, and sometimes *unitonitus*; the interval, FH, which was between the two *bemitones*, was left for the *fyrinx*, and the *diostra*; the end of the *fyrinx* being strongly fixed upon the upper surface S, of the *scutula*, or lower *peritreta*.

HERO gives a description of another capitule, differing, though not essentially, from this: the *scutula* having the form of a demi-octagon,

ABCDEF, fig. 2, so that it was broader in the middle than at its extremities; and the two *mesoftæ*, GEHD, were consequently broader than the two *paraftæ*, AFBC, their breadth being determined by the intersection of the interior sides of the *paraftæ*, IK, and of the exterior sides, ED, of the *mesoftæ*, with the semi-circle, AIEDKB, as may be seen by the figure.

WHEN the capitule AM, fig. 3, was finished, there was fixed to it (as has been before said) one of the ends, B, of the *fyrinx*, which has also the diostra, CH, the *chira* and *sbasteria*, D, and *cataclida*, O, were similar in all things to those which are described in speaking of the scorpion; but it had no *catagogis*; instead of which it had a *fucula*, or axis, E, placed at the other end of the *fyrinx*, its sides, F, projecting properly to receive it.

IN the middle of this *fucula*, or axis, between the two sides of the *fyrinx*, was fixed a cord, GC, which extended from thence to the end C, of the *diostra*, where it was fastened to a hook; when the machine was prepared, as was said, speaking of the scorpion, that is to say, when the diostra was pushed forwards until the chira reached the string of the bow, IKI, and was hooked to it, the *diostra* was drawn backward by means of the *fucula*, which was turned by two men, with the assistance of the levers L, which passed through its two extremities; by this means the arms, II, were drawn and bent, and when they were bent sufficiently, the arrow, KH, was placed in the epitoxis, and discharged in the manner before described.

THE large machines of this species, whose forces were very considerable, were worked by different combinations of pullies, or pullies combined with the *fuculæ*, instead of simple *fuculas*; and instead of simple bars of iron, or *epizyges*, which sustained the *tonus*, the machines, M, called by Vitruvius *modiols*, and by Hero *choenices*, were used; they shall be explained in the description of the balista.

BUT as this machine of war was infinitely too large and too weighty to be managed by hand, and as it was required to turn and elevate it in different directions, it became necessary to support it upon a base

which should procure it those different movements ; that base was thus constructed :

A PILLAR, M, or *columella* (as Vitruvius calls it), in height two feet and a quarter, was fixed upright upon a foot with three branches, PQR, and sustained by three props, SSS, placed thereon ; on the top of the *columella* there was a cylindric tenon, T, upon which the *chalchesium*, UV, turned, which was thus made : upon a horizontal and rectangular plane, UV, two perpendicular and rectangular sides, Ua and Vb, were fixed on the right and left, and between these was fixed another similar horizontal plane, b, c, d, a little above the first.

IN the middle of these two horizontal planes were holes capable of receiving the tenon, T, of the *columella* ; the two perpendicular sides were at such a distance one from the other, that they could receive between them the breadth of the *fyrinx*, which being placed there, an iron axis, E, was passed horizontally cross the two sides of the *chalchesium* and of the *fyrinx*, binding them altogether, and permitting the *fyrinx* to revolve vertically about that axis, in such a manner, that the whole catapulta could be inclined in all possible positions, and by means of the *chalchesium* which turned upon the tenon of the *columella*, it might be moved horizontally on all sides, and in this manner it might be pointed towards any object whatsoever.

To keep it fixed and immovable in the direction desired, it was thus managed ; one end f, of a piece of wood, f, g, was joined to the top of the *columella* by a hinge or joint, which permitted it to turn vertically, so that the other end, which rested on the earth, might be placed in different situations ; this piece was called *anteridium* ; near its upper extremity, the *anapausteria*, b, i, was joined to it by a joint, which permitted it to turn vertically. When the *fyrinx* was placed in the proposed direction, the lower end g, of the *anteridium*, was moved and fixed it on the earth, so that the *anapausteria* rested perpendicularly under the *fyrinx* ; the end i, of the *anapausteria*, was then raised and fixed under the *fyrinx* in the holes purposely made : by this means the *fyrinx* was rendered immovable in its position, and then the archer

discharged the arrow in the same manner as is said in the description of the Scorpion; Catapultas were made of different sizes, but there were only two generally in use: the smallest was called *trispitbama*, because it threw arrows of three spans long; the largest was called *tricubital*, because it shot arrows of three cubits, or six spans long.

VITRUVIUS gives here the proportions of their different parts, but they are so altered and corrupted by the copyists, that they are not to be relied on. Hero says, that they can only be fixed after the experience of several trials. Philo makes mention of several of their proportions, and differs much from Vitruvius; they however all agree in this, that the proportions are regulated by the size of the holes in the *scutula*, and that the diameters of these holes were always made equal to the ninth part of the length of the arrow that the catapulta was made to throw.

THE capitule, pl. 3, AB, fig. 1, of the balista, was similar to that of the catapulta, except that the two hemitones, AE and BD, were placed at a greater distance one from the other, leaving a larger interval, CE, between the two mesostæ, G, G, which in the balista were called *antistæ*.

As this machine was designed for throwing large stones, it was necessary to have this large interval, which, according to Hero, ought to be a little less than double the length of the arm, RS; there was besides another difference, namely, that the *scutulæ* or *peritretæ* AF and DI (which in the catapulta extended in piece over the two hemitones), were separated in the balista, and extended only over one hemitone, AF.

- THE lower *peritretæ*, HC and EB, were also separated in the same manner, so that the two hemitones were not united by their *peritretæ*, but by two other pieces of wood, KL and MN, one of which, KL, extended over the two upper *peritretæ*, and the other, MN, under the two bottom *peritretæ*, being fastened to the same by tenons. The *parastæ*, O, were made like those of the catapulta, but had on their back part a curvilinear projection, P, opposed to the circular cavity, Q, in which was the arm, in order to strengthen it: The *antistæ*, G, had also a curved

projection, R, called *bypopterna*, on the side next the arm, R, S, against which the root, R, of the arm called *pterna* rested. The grain of the wood in the *paraftæ* and *antiftæ* was perpendicular; they had both tenons placed at their upper and under extremities, which entered into the *peritretæ*, and there joined them strongly, and all the angles and the joints of the capitule were strengthened with plates of iron; the *peritretæ* in this machine had the figure of a rhombe, in order to permit the arms to diverge so much the more: Hero thus describes them:—"In a rectangular parallelogram *a, b, c, d*, fig. 2, whose breadth is one half its length, a diagonal line being drawn *a, c*; parallel to the same draw *b, e*, and *d, a*, continued to *e*: then will *a, e, b, c*, shew the figure of the *peritretæ*: the extremities *ae*, and *bc*, are enlarged in giving them a curved figure to strengthen them. Drawing afterwards *c, e*, the intersection *f*, of that line, with the line *ab*, shews the middle of the *peritretæ* where the whole of the tonus is bored."

PHILO gives another rule for determining the obliquity of the rhomboidal figure of the *peritretæ*; "divide," says he, "a semicircle in eleven parts, and draw a line from the fourth division to the center, that line will shew the obliquity sought." Vitruvius differs from these two authors; he says that the oblique form ought to be a sixth part of the length and a fourth of the breadth.

THE capitule of the balista being finished, the other parts were added, which answered to the *fyrinx*, *diostra*, &c. of the catapulta, as hereafter.

To the piece of wood, MN, fig. 1, under the lower *peritretæ*, was joined the horizontal frame of wood, NABC, fig. 3; it consisted of divers pieces of wood, DDD, placed at equal distances cross-ways at the whole length of the capitule, they projected forwards, and were bound at their salient extremity by a piece of transverse wood, AB; this frame was called *mensa*, the Greeks called it *trapeza*; over it was a covering of boards, EE, called *tabula*, of which the upper surface was on a level with the bottoms of the lower *peritretæ*: on the *tabula* was placed the *climax*, or, as Vitruvius calls it, the *climaciclos*, FGG, which was an horizontal frame of wood resembling a ladder, from

whence it derived its name ; it was composed of two long pieces, GG and FF, joined together by many transverse pieces, HH, placed among themselves at suitable distances.

THE breadth FG, of the *climax*, according to Hero, was equal to the interval between the antistæ, and its length was of nineteen holes according to Philo, although it was but thirteen according to Vitruvius.

THE climax answered to the syrx of the catapulta ; it was placed on the tabula, so that it projected from it on every side ; upon two long parallel pieces were placed two others, called *alæ*, II, and KK, equal in breadth and length ; between the said *alæ*, and over the transverse pieces, HH, of the climax, was placed the diostra, LLL, which was of the same length as the climax ; the climax was strongly fastened to the mensa, and strengthened by the antérides, or stays, MM, extending from the extremities of the *alæ* to the upper peritretas.

THE chira (or manuca), shasteria, &c. OP, were fixed on the diostra, in the same manner as in the catapulta, but here the crooked extremity, P, of the chira was not split into a fork, but was made like a finger, and was raised high enough above the diostra, that the cord of the bow when disengaged might seize the stone to be thrown, Q, towards the middle of its height, in order that it might act on it with more certainty and strength ; with the same intention the arms, RR, were disposed in that manner, that the cord of the bow in going backwards might be moved at that height above the diostra ; moreover, the cord of the bow, SS, was made broad like a girdle, and not round as in the catapulta, and had a loop, P, in the middle, which hooked upon the finger of the chira.

THESE machines were made with very strong and hard wood, and as light as could accord with these two qualities, in order that they might the more easily be transported from one place to another ; for the same reason, the different pieces of which these machines were composed, might be separated one from the other, except the hemitones, which were always entire, on account of the difficulty and time



necessary for preparing the tonus; the manner of doing it is described in a chapter following.

IN balistas and large catapultas, they made use of machines, that Hero calls, choenices, and Vitruvius modiolis, pl. 4, fig. 1, 2, instead of simple bars of iron, or epizyges, before mentioned; if they were small, they were made of brass, but if they were great, of some hard wood: the upper part, *a, a*, was square, and was placed on the peritreta, *c, c*, above the hole of the tonus; the upper part was circular. In the middle of the circle was pierced a hole *d*, through the *choenices*, equal in diameter to the hole *e*, in the peritreta; joined to the inferior surface of the square part were four tenons or teeth, called *antitormi*, *f, f*, which entered into a circular excavation, cut in the surface of the peritreta, in order to hold the *choenices* firmly in its place: and in the said excavation under the teeth was a plate of iron, to prevent them from penetrating into the wood; upon the upper surface of the *choenices* was cut a groove *g*, passing exactly through the diameter, and in that groove was placed the *epizygis*, *b b*; one of these *choenices* was put in every hole of the *peritreta* through which the *tonus* was stretched, the teeth entered into the upper surface of the upper *peritreta*, and the lower surface of the lower *peritreta*; then was put about the *epizygis* (as has before been described) the cords, *i i*, which form the *tonus*. That being done, the cords were twisted by turning the *choenices* with a key of iron, fig. 3, having a square collet, *a b c d*, exactly fitting the square part of the *choenices*. When the *choenices* was made of wood, the grain ought to be disposed perpendicularly, but the *epizygis* was made of the strongest iron, as having all the effort of the *tonus* to sustain.

THE proportions of the parts of a balista are mentioned by Vitruvius. I refer the reader to him, with the advice before given in the explication of the catapulta; some information might be there obtained; but as Hero remarks, it is only after experience and trials that they ought to be fixed.

THE balista was mounted on a base; Vitruvius and Hero both

mention it, without describing it; Vitruvius gives to many of its parts the same names which he made use of in speaking of the base of the catapulta; nevertheless that base could not be exactly like that of the catapulta, for the different figure of that machine, and the different manner of making it act, will not permit it.

For the balista was not made to act by means of the *fucula*, or any other power joined to it, as was the case in the catapulta; but detached powers of diverse constructions were used, differing among themselves according as the force of the machine or other circumstances required. Vitruvius remarks, that some were put in action with the *fucula* and levers; others by means of the pulley, and others by combinations of wheels and cogs, placed at proper distances and convenient situations.

THE diameter of the hole of the *tonus*, pierced in the *peritreta*, was proportional to the weight of the stone to be thrown by the balista; when that was determined, all its members and parts were regulated by the diameter of that hole, as was practised in the catapulta. Several authors make mention of the sizes of the holes corresponding with different weights, but they differ greatly in their calculations.

THE following method was observed in preparing the *tonus*, that is to say, the combination of twisted cords, from the elasticity of which was derived the force of these military machines.

For this purpose the machine, plate 4, fig. 4, was made use of, it was called *entonium*. It consisted of two parallel posts, AB and CD, so joined by the two traverses, UU and VV, as to form a rectangular frame, capable of receiving into its cavity either the capitule of the catapulta, or the hemitone, KLMN, of the balista to which it was applied. The extremities of these two traverses passed through the posts, and had holes, X, in which, when the hemitone was inserted in the frame, wedges, W, were driven in, and by these means the hemitone was held firmly fixed in the frame; there was also cut a notch, GH, at the inner side of each post, to receive the hemitone, which was fixed in it with wedges, OO, so that it could not move; at each extremity of the two posts there was an axis, FF, the ends of which

turned in the cheeks E, which were fixed to the posts. The said capitule, or hemitone, KLMN, being thus placed between the posts with the two *peritretæ* towards the two axles, and the choenices or modiolis, P, being placed in the holes, as has before been described; there was tied to one of the epizyges one of the ends Q, of a cord, and the other end, R, was passed through the holes of the two choenices at the farthest roller, FF, to which it was fixed; the end of another cord, S, was, in like manner, fastened to the other epizygis, and it was passed in the same manner through the two choenices to the other roller, by means of levers, T, which stretched the two cords, R and S, until (as Vitruvius says) in sounding them both, they sounded in unison. Wedges were then driven in the choenices, to hinder the parts of the cords which were between the choenices from sliding, and to keep them in the same degree of tension.

AFTER that, the parts of the cords which were about the rollers were loosened, and they were put about the *epizygis* by passing them through the two choenices, in the same manner as before, and they were fastened to their opposite rollers, by means of which the cords were stretched till they had the same degree of tension as those preceding; this process was repeated till the holes of the choenices were entirely filled by the cords, so as to have no room for more.

WHEN the holes of the choenices were nearly full, and it became difficult to pass the cords through them, an iron point, called *cestra*, fig. 5, was forced in, which being well polished and dipt in oil in order to open a passage, afterwards a cord was passed by means of a polished iron needle, called *ramphis*, fig. 6, which had a hole near its point through which was passed the end of the cord. At the other extremity there was a head upon which strokes of a hammer were given, in order to force a passage for the needle.

THIS operation being finished, a small portion of the cord was tied about the tonus, and the remainder cut off. After this the tonus was twisted, by turning the choenices with the key, fig. 3, as before explained. It was then finished.

To fix the cord in the hole of the choenices, to hinder it from sliding

and losing its tension, the *peristomis*, fig. 7, was used; it was a piece of wood of the length of two or three palms, having a groove, *a*, in its side, big enough to receive the cord. The *peristomis* was placed over the *choenicis*, and the cord was placed in the groove, where it was fixed by the wedge *b*. The cord was ordinarily prepared beforehand, and fitted for the purpose, it was rolled about a wooden roller called *epistomis*, fig. 8.

PERAULT observes, among his remarks, that it is difficult to comprehend how cords made of hair, which were eight inches thick, could give a sound distinguishable by the ear. This remark arises from a false idea, which he had formed of these machines. He imagined that Vitruvius said it was the entire *tonus*, or the assemblage of twisted cords, which yielded the sound; instead of which it is every separate cord, the assemblage of which makes the *tonus*: what has been said before explains it sufficiently.

WHAT was sought in this operation was, that every cord of the *tonus* should have the same degree of tension, and that the two *tonus* of the capitule should be equal in force: for had one been stronger than the other, the arm it held would have had a stronger recoil than the other, and it would have acted on the missile, or thing to be thrown, sooner than the other, by means of which the missile would have been impelled by the force of one arm only, and would also have been projected with an oblique direction.

THE cords which formed the *tonus* were commonly made with the sinews or tendons of animals; those of the legs of the deer kind, and of the neck of a bull, were particularly recommended; but they oftener preferred cords made with women's hair, and considered them as the strongest.

WHEN from long use the elasticity of the *tonus* was diminished, it was re-established to a certain degree by turning the *choenices* with the key, in the same manner as was done in forming it at first.

THE ancients had *balistas* and *catapultas*, which were of constructions different from those we have been describing. Bito has given a description of two of these machines, and says, that it was often ne-

cessary to diversify their form, according to place, different customs, and other circumstances. Philo also makes mention of several alterations and corrections he had made in the construction which was most commonly followed.

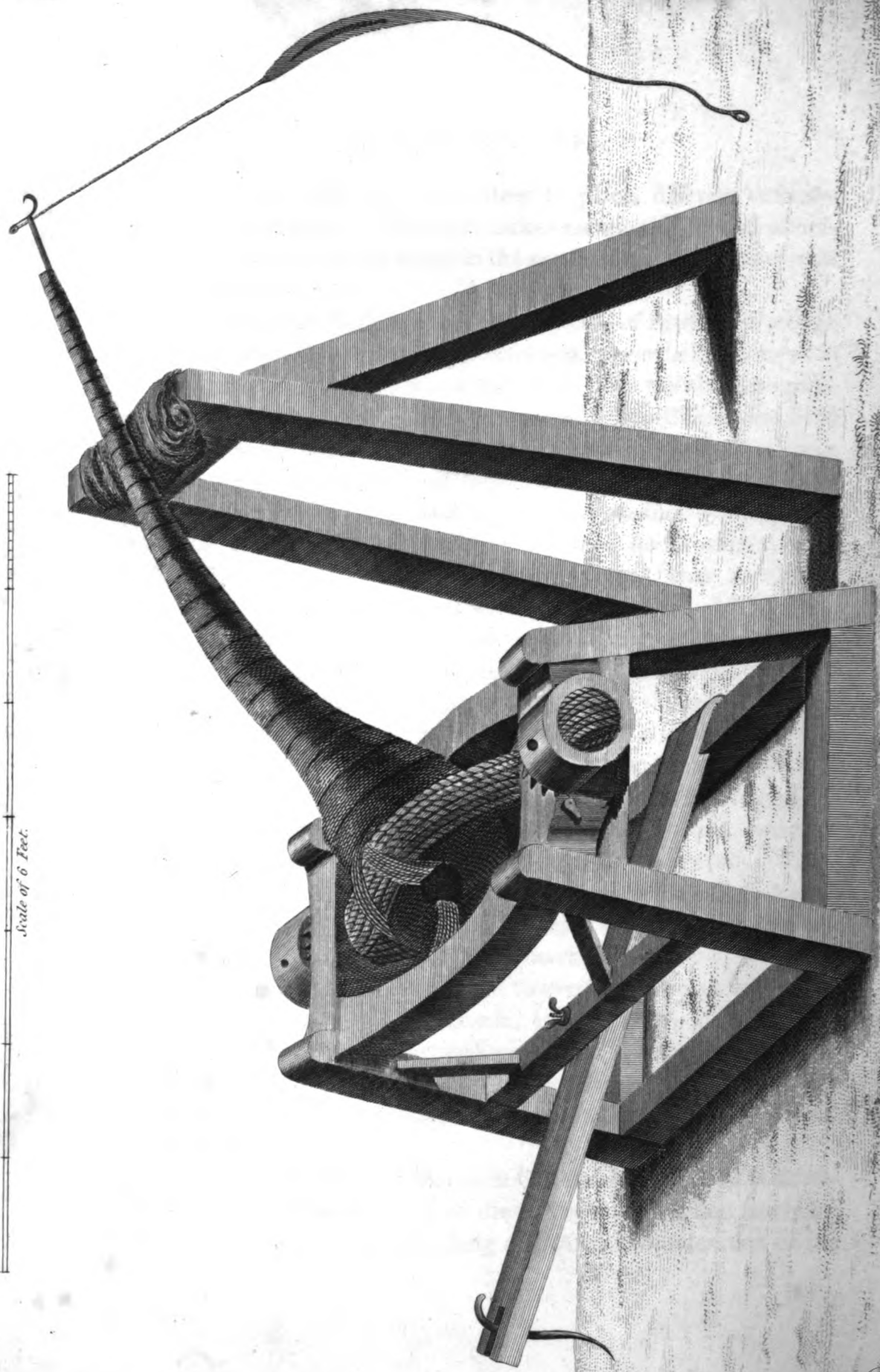
THE catapulta that Lipsius found in the arsenal of Brussels, although it much resembled the species above described, nevertheless differed in some particulars, and had some of the corrections which Philo mentions. The descriptions found in Vegetius and Marcellinus, who lived some years after Vitruvius, prove that during that interval of time, the forms as well as the names of those military machines had undergone many changes. These authors call the machine which lanced arrows and darts *balista*, and those which threw stones *onager*, after the animal of that name, of whom it is reported, that he throws stones with his feet at the hunters when pursuing him. Marcellinus also says, that the same machine was called a scorpion, because, like the insect of that name, it had its sting always raised.

THE power of these machines, according to what the antients relate, must have been very great: Athenæus speaks of a catapulta, which was only one foot long, and threw an arrow to the distance of half a mile. It is said, that others could throw javelins from one side of the Danube to the other. Balistas threw great beams of wood, lances of twelve cubits in length, and stones that weighed 360 pounds. Polybius makes mention of stones which were thrown by balistas to hinder vessels from entering into the port. Josephus has likewise related several examples of the power of these machines; he says, they beat down the battlements and corners of towers, and overthrew whole files of soldiers even to the rear rank; in fine, many other antients have likewise spoken of their prodigious effects: I refer the reader to those authors for a more extensive knowledge of them; my design here being only to describe the form and construction of these antient machines of war.

THUS far Mr. Newton. Lieutenant General Melville, an indefatigable and successful investigator of the military science and machines of the antients, has, by dint of a long and careful consideration of the



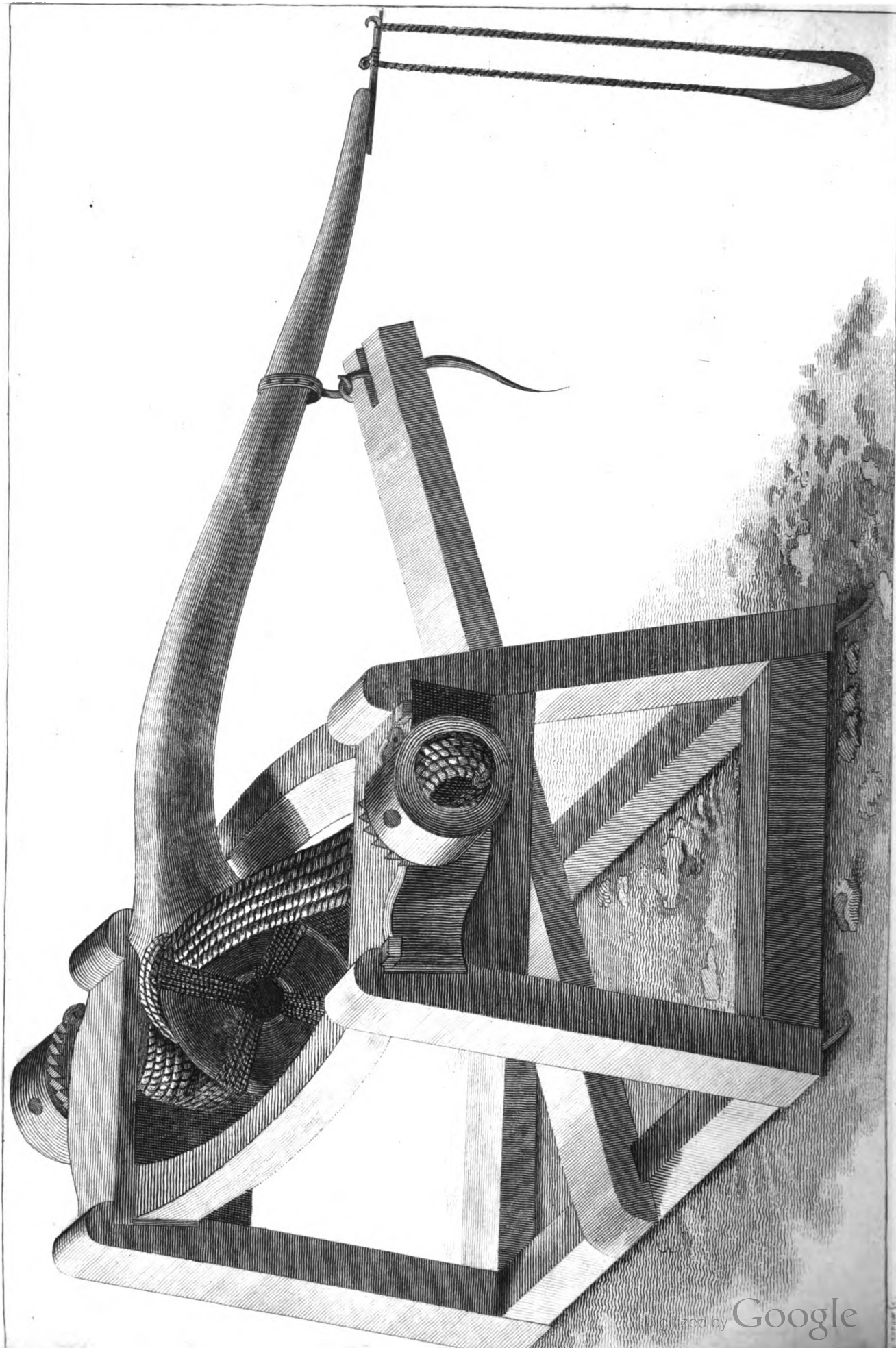
Scale of 6 Feet.



ONAGER III.







description given by Marcellinus and others, aided by a knowledge of mechanicks, discovered the construction of the machine above mentioned, called the onager ; a model of it has been made by Mr. Wenzlow, a delineation of which is here given, plate 4, of antient artillery, that will sufficiently explain its size and structure ; on a trial it has answered very well, considering that it is strung with common cords only (p).

THESE were the machines used by the Greeks and Romans, and afterwards by our ancestors even after the invention of gunpowder, and its application to cannon ; some of them retained their original names, as the balista and catapulta, though these were also applied to other engines (q) ; indeed, as most of the writers by whom these machines have been mentioned, were either monks or lawyers, who could only know them by hearsay, and consequently had but a very imperfect idea of them, it is not to be wondered at that they often confounded their names and properties.

THE catalogue of projectile machines in the eleventh and twelfth centuries, exclusive of the balista, catapulta, onager, and scorpion, were the mangonel, the trebuchet, the petrary, the robinet, the mate-griffon, the bricolle, the bugle or bible, the espringal, the mata-funda, the ribaudequin, engine a verge, and the war wolf ; many of these continued in use after the introduction of bombards and cannon.

THE term mangona is, it is said, generical, standing for all kinds of machines, and was a Greek word of that import, in use in the time of the lower empire ; mangonel was a diminutive, applied to the smaller machines.

(p) ANOTHER machine of the catapulta kind, for throwing stones, was made for the garrison of Gibraltar, but it did not answer so well as the Onager above mentioned ; the cost was 137 pounds, though the artist that made it generously relinquished all profit : it threw a ball of iron of six pounds.

(q) THE cross bow was called in Latin, balista, and sometimes manubalista. The term catapulta was used in our antient law Latin, to signify a sling.

THE trebuchet was a machine for throwing stones, for which purpose a sling was sometimes fixed to it; it acted by means of a great weight fastened to the short arm of a lever, which being let fall, raised the end of the long arm with a great velocity; a singular delineation of the trebuchet is given in this work, taken from an ancient carving in ivory, supposed to be of the time of Edward II.

THE petrary was also a stone-throwing machine, as its name imports.

THE robinet and mate-griffon threw both darts and stones (r).

THE bricolle, according to Froissart, shot darts, called carreaux, and in English quarrels, from their solid square pyramidical heads of iron; this is said to have acted by the same moving power as the trebuchet (s).

BEUGLES, or bibles, were also engines for throwing large stones, as we learn from an antient poem (t).

THE espringal was calculated for throwing large darts, called mu-chettæ; sometimes instead of feathers winged with brags; these darts were also called viretons, from their whirling about in the air.

THE matafunda; this was a stone-throwing machine, probably by means of a sling; some derive its name from the words, funda and mactare, sometimes written, matare, i. e. a murdering sling.

THE ribaudequin was a large kind of cross bowe.

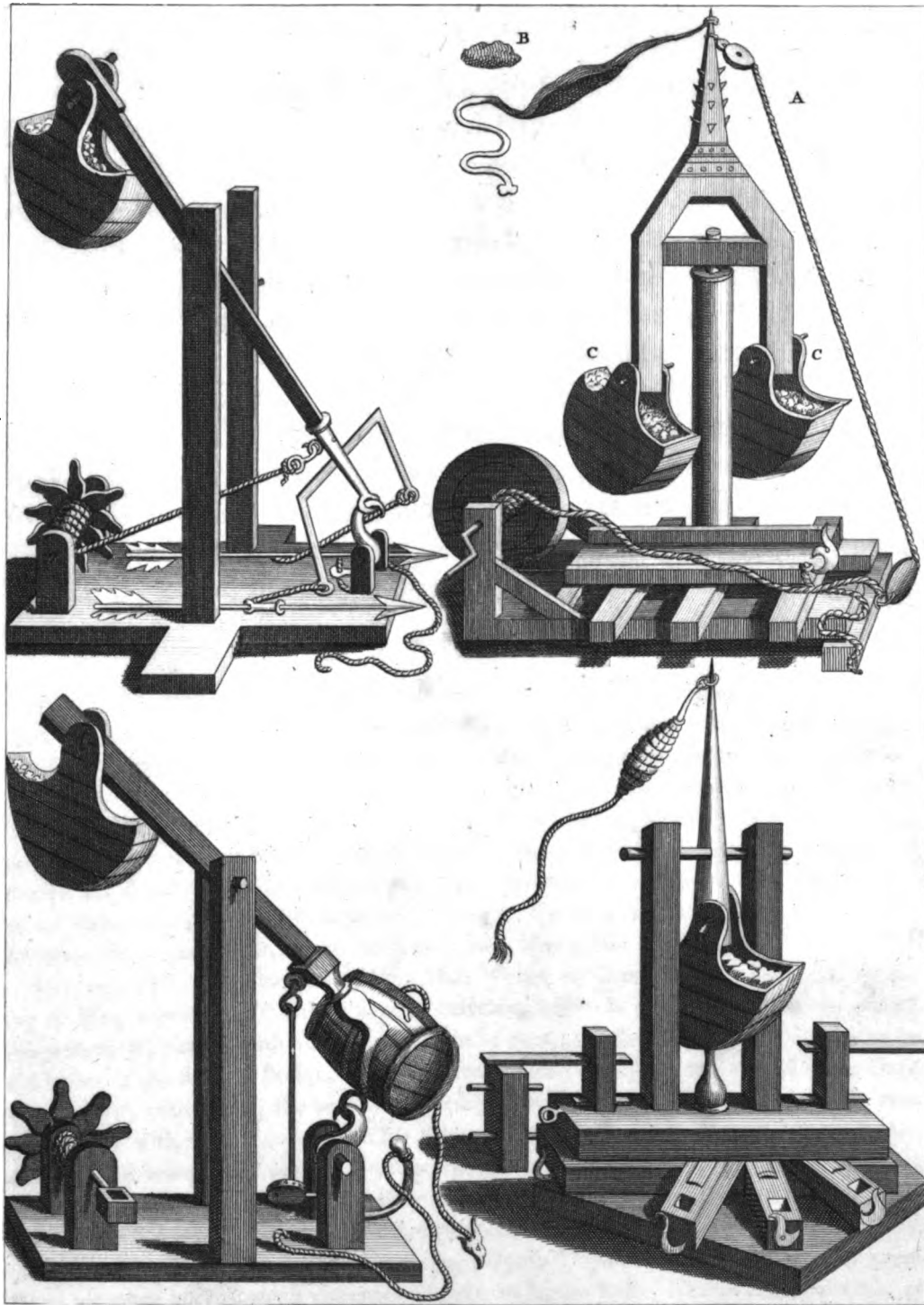
THE war wolf is very differently described by different writers; Procopius makes it a kind of portcullis, or rather a harrow for defending a gate; Mathew of Westminster, and Camden, a machine for

(r) MATE-GRIFFON, the destroyer or terror of the Greeks.

(s) SEE the plate of different machines for throwing stones and darts, constructed on this principle.

(t) *Et pierres grans, & les perrieres,  
Et les bibles qui sont trop fieres;  
Gétent trop manuement.*

FROM the Romance of Claris in the French king's library, No. 7534. See a large extract in the appendix, No. 1.



MACHINES FOR THROWING DARTS AND STONES.



throwing stones. See both their descriptions in the note (u); possibly they might be different machines under the same name.

OF the engine a verge, there is no particular description; but from a passage in the history of Charles VII. of France, quoted by father Daniel, we learn that it was a projectile machine; that it was used with cannon, and that it remained in use after the other machines were laid aside. "Lesquels engins a verge & bombardes, dit l'historien, jettoient & tiroient nuit & jour fans cesse contre ce chateau."

OF the vast force of these machines surprising stories are related, though, from the construction of our antient castles, it does not seem as if their range was very great, since many of our most important fortresses are commanded by hills within four or five hundred yards of them, an instance of which may be seen in the castle of Dover, once deemed the key of this kingdom, and also in those of Corfe and Guild-

(u) AT the gates they set up *wolves* made thus: they set two beams from the ground reaching to the battlements, and laying chequer wise pieces of timber wrought, some upright, and some cros; they joint them so that the mortissing holes meete one another; and before each joint sticks out a pointed piece of wood like a thick spurr, and fastening the cros timbers to another beam, which from the top, reaches half way down; they lay the beams flat long upon the gates, and an enemy approaching, men above lay hold of the higher ends of the beams, and thrust them down, which falling suddenly among the assailants with those wooden points sticking out, kill all they light on. *Procopius History of the Gothic Wars, book 1. p. 27.* Probably there was a chain or cord to draw it back after it had taken effect.

THE war-wolf is thus mentioned from Mat. Westm. by Camden in his Remains, speaking of King Edward I. "At the siege of Stivelen, where he with another engine, named the war-wolfe, pierced with one stone, and cut as even as a thread, two vauntmures; as he did before at the siege of Brechin, where Thomas Maule, the Scotsman, scoffed at the English artillerie, with wiping the walls with his handkerchief, until both he and the walls were wiped away with a shot." Again in his Britannia relating to the siege of Bedford: "concerning these mangonels, petraries, trabucces, bricoles, espringolds, and what our ancestors called the war-wolf, out of which, before the invention of bombs, they threw great stones, with so much force as to break open strong gates, concerning these (I say) I have several things to add, if they were not foreign to my purpose." *Jussit rex arietem fabricari, quem Greci nicanam vocant, quasi vincentem omnia, et lupum belli. Verum aries indecens, et incompositus parum aut nihil profuit: lupus autem belli, minus sumptuosus inclusis plus nocuit.* *Mat. Westm. Ann. 1304.*

ford ; Monsieur Joly de Mezeray says, the greatest range of a mangonel was five stadia, or 1042 yards, but then this was at an elevation : these machines not only threw darts and large stones, but even the bodies of men and horses ; instances of both are mentioned by Froissart.

OF the machines moved by human strength, the chief was the ram, which was a huge beam or beams joined together, having its extremity shod with iron, sometimes cast in the shape of the head of a ram ; it was pushed forwards by the united strength of a number of men in the method shewn in the plate, when its iron head striking or butting against the wall, in the manner of the animal whose name it bore, it displaced the stones, and made a breach. The ram, though sometimes supported on the shoulders of men, was more frequently suspended to a triangle or beam, so that the whole force of the men was directed to pushing it forwards ; the ram was frequently used in the middle of the 14th century. In Dr. Desagulier's Lectures on Experimental Philosophy, the momentum of a large battering ram, worked by a thousand men, is compared with and found equal to that of a point blank shot from a thirty-six pounder (x).

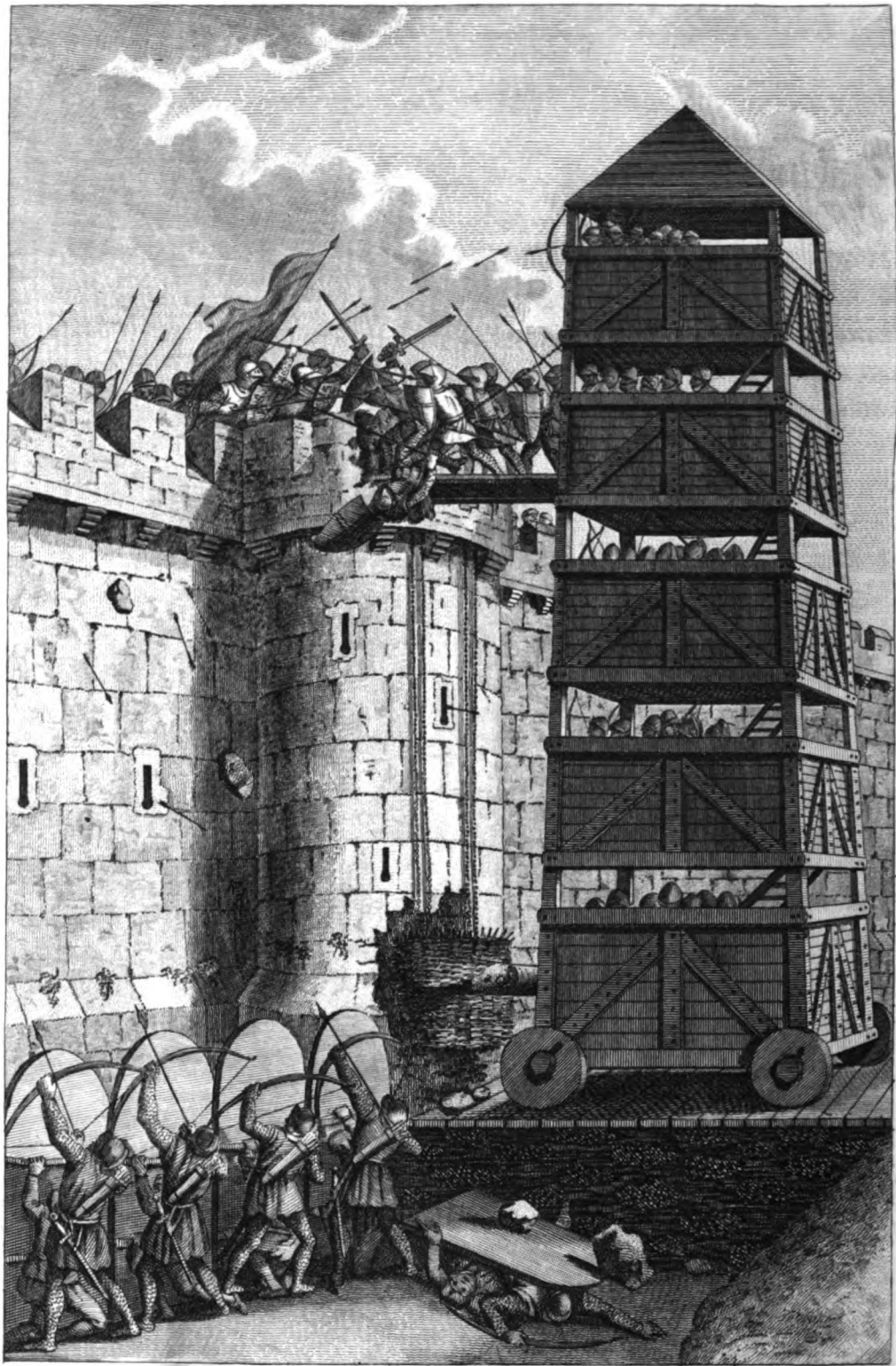
THE machines used for covering the approaches of troops employed in sieges, were moveable towers of several stories, called belfreys, cats and fows, similar to the tortoise, vinea and pluteus, of the ancients : these were fixed on wheels, and likewise pushed forward or drawn by human strength ; latterly, sometimes assisted by the capstern or other mechanical contrivances.

---

(x) DR. DESAGULIERS has demonstrated in the annotations on his second lecture on experimental philosophy, that the momentum of a battering ram, twenty eight inches in diameter, one hundred and eighty feet long, with a head of cast iron, of one ton and a half ; the whole ram, with its iron hoops, weighing 41,112 pounds, and moved by the united strength of 1000 men, will be only equal to that of a ball of thirty-six pounds weight, shot point blank from a cannon. Sir Christopher Wren made great use of the battering ram to demolish and throw down the walls of the old church of St. Paul, when he was pulling it down in order to rebuild it. He found no machine equal to it for that purpose, particularly in disjoining the stones.







*H. C. Burdett del.*

PAVISORS, & A MOVEABLE TOWER.

THE moveable towers of the antients were of an amazing magnitude. Hero distinguishes three kinds; the smallest were, he says, of sixty cubits and ten stories; the base, which was square, measured seventeen cubits on each side. The larger were of ninety cubits height, and had fifteen stories; the greatest, called double, were of twenty stages, they were largest at bottom, and decreased every story: the dimensions of the timber used for the uprights, the traverses, and other principal pieces, were proportioned to each of their three sizes. The strength and thickness of the wheels was also in the ratio of the weight they were to carry. The number of the wheels was in the proportion of the squares of their bases; they had at least six, and sometimes eight.

THE towers or belfreys of more modern times were not so large; they rarely exceeded three or four stages or stories, and were covered with raw hides, to protect them from fire; in them was a bridge to let down on the parapet, when the works were to be stormed.

THE lower stage or ground floor was occupied by a ram; the upper stories by archers and cross bow men. In the annexed plate there is a view of an attack of the parapet from one of these towers, and in the ditch, the archers covered by their pavifours.

A MOVEABLE tower was constructed by the royalists so late as the troubles under King Charles I., and surprised and taken by the parliamentary forces; it was misnamed a sow (y).

---

(y) AND much about the same time we had certaine information by letters from Gloucester, that that valiant and most active governour of Gloucester had intelligence of a designe against Canon Froom by the enemy in Hereford, for the storming and surprising of it, with a strange engine, which they had provided for that purpose, and brought along with them; marching thus forth out of Hereford with about 400 men, with their governour, they only faced the house, and after that wheeled about toward Malvern hills, to meet with additional forces from Worcester, fully to besiege it; whereof the governour of Canon Froom having knowledge, and considering his present dis-furnishment of things necessary to defend the garrison against a siege or assault, he sent to valiant Colonell Morgan to Gloucester, praying his assistance, who presently came forth to help him, with 500 horse and

THE cattus, cat-houfe, gattus or cat, was a covered fhed, occasionally fixed on wheels, and ufed for covering foldiers employed in filling up the ditch, preparing the way for the moveable tower, or mining the wall: it was called a cat, becaufe under it foldiers lay in watch, like a cat for its prey. Some of thefe cats had crenelles and chinks, from whence the archers could difcharge their arrows; thefe were called caftellated cats. Sometimes under the cover of this machine the befiegers worked a fmall kind of ram.

THE fow was alfo a covered machine for the fame purpofe, and much of the fame conftruction; though probably lefs, as it derived

200 foot, and marched to Ridley, where he joyned with 300 of Corflane men, but the enemy having notice thereof (lying then about Ledbury) pofted thence quite away, but had left behind them the ftrange engine (which forely frightened our men at Froom) guarded with two or three troops of horfe from Hereford, till they returned; in the interim thofe that had faced Canon Froom, as was touch't before, falling in at Ledbury, in their way to Malvern, to refrefh themfelves there, a quarter-mafter of Canon-Froom, with about twelve onely of their horfe, accidentally being forth to view the coafts, and coming through the towne, not knowing of the Roysters being there, fell upon them all, and feeing themfelves fuddenly engaged, cried out, fall on! fall on! flew two on the place, and brought away five prifoners, paff by the engine without much ado, the enemy, it feems, being amazed at the fudden onfet, and unprovided, fome drinking, and others carelefse of any fuch attempt, cried horfe! horfe! and went away in a diftracted manner, where they furprifed the engine within a mile and half of the place, drove away the troops that were with it, feized on it with two captains, and many prifoners, and brought all, with their ladders and other inftruments provided for the ftorme, to the garrifon at Canon Froom; upon the coming in whereof, fuch a fhout was made, that all the country rang of it. The engine was fuch a one as the like hath not been known fince thefe wars: the Roysters call it a Sow: it was carried upon great wheelles, and to be drawn with oxen; it was made with rooms or lofts one over another, mufquet proof, and very ftrong, out of which were holes to play and fhoot out. It was fo high, that it was above all the works at Canon Froom, fo that they could difcharge over the works; befides which, a doore opened to bring them into the works, out of which a bridge went for their entrance. The garrifon was then in fuch a condition, that had they not been thus difappointed, in all probability this engine had effected their intended defign; but, God be praifed, it was prevented. On the Lord's day following, November 9th, Mafter Jackfon, a Minifter of Gloucefter, having information thereof in the morning (before fermon), gave public thanks in the pulpit for fo great a deliverance, and unexpected and unlikely prefervation. A.D. 1645. See *Vicars's Chronicle, entitled the Burning Bufb not confumed*, p. 318.

its name from the soldiers under it lying close together, like pigs under a sow; though another reason is given for that appellation, namely, its being applied to digging and rooting up the earth. The former was alluded to by the countess who defended the castle of Dunbar against King Edward III. when she threatened, that unless the Englishmen kept their sow better, she would make her cast her pigs. Camden, who mentions this circumstance, says "The sow is yet used in Ireland." Two machines, the one called the boar, and the other the sow, were employed by the parliamentarians in the siege of Corfe castle, Dorsetshire (z).

THE Greek fire was, as the oriental Greeks pretend, invented by Callinicus, an architect of Heliopolis or Balbeck, who lived in the reign of the emperor Constantine Pogonatus. That emperor, it is said, forbade the art of making it to be communicated to any strangers or others, except his subjects (a); it was, however, at length known, and in common use among the nations confederated with the Byzantines; the crusaders also possessed the secret of preparing this wonderful composition (b).

(z) AMONG some ancient drawings of the time of Henry VIII. preserved in the British Museum, there is the representation of a kind of covered war cart, or waggon, filled with musketeers, the top and sides of the waggon are pierced with loop holes, the horses placed under cover beneath the waggon; several of these waggons were stationed in the centre of a square battalion of halberdiers; one of them is represented as without its covering in order to explain its construction; a kind of portable mantlet is also shown in those drawings and copied here.

(a) THE Greeks if asked to give the composition, answered it was strictly forbidden by Constantine the Great, according to them the original inventor.

(b) THIS is more properly supposed to have been the invention of some of the Arabian chymists, who were formerly great adepts in their art. Something like this fire is mentioned by Quintus Curtius. It is supposed to have been compounded of the gum of the pine and other resinous trees, reduced to powder with brimstone, to which was added *Naptha*, and other bitumens, and according to some, the water of a fountain in the East, which had the property to amalgamate with these combustibles, and to render them more inflammable; this seems hardly possible, as in that case it could have been only made where the water was to be had, whereas it was in use both all over Asia, and in Europe. *L'Esprit des Croissades*, &c. Amsterdam, 1780.

ANNA COMMENA has given an account of the ingredients of which it was composed; these were, bitumen, sulphur and naphtha. The Greek fire is much spoken of in all the Histories of the Holy Wars, as frequently employed with success by the Saracens against the Christians. Procopius, in his History of the Goths, calls it Medea's oil, considering it as an infernal composition prepared by that forcerefs.

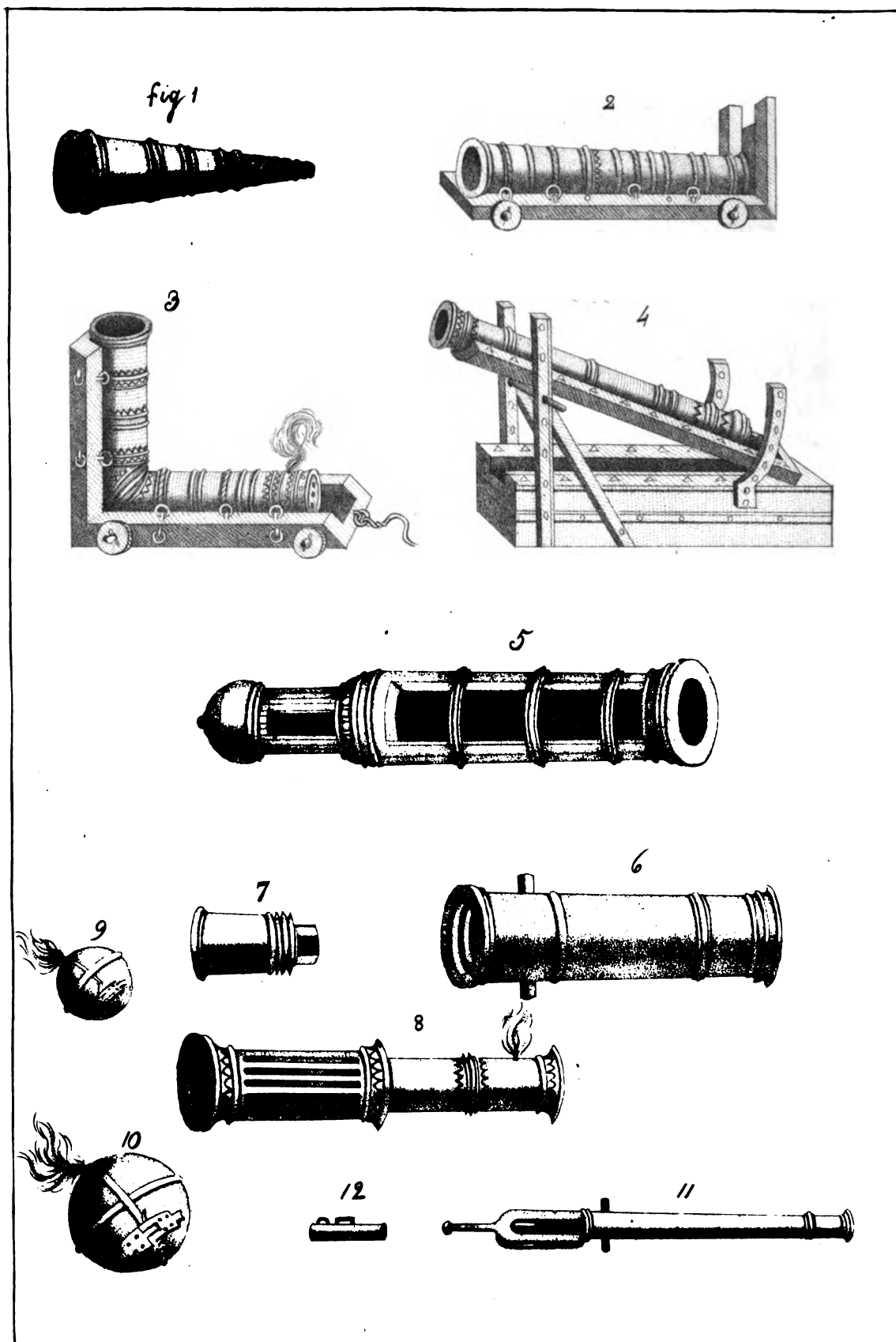
It is said to have been known in China, in 917, 300 years after Constantine Pogonatus, under the name of the oil of the cruel fire, and was carried thither by the Kitan Tartars, who had it from the king of Ou (c).

By the following description of it, given by Joinville, who was an eye-witness, it has somewhat the appearance of one of the iron rockets still used in India: he says it was thrown from the bottom of a machine called a petrury, and that it came forwards as large as a barrel of verjuice, with a tail of fire issuing from it as big as a great sword, making a noise in its passage like thunder, and seeming like a dragon flying through the air, and from the great quantity of fire it threw out, giving such a light that one might see in the camp as if it had been day; such was the terror it occasioned among the commanders of St. Louis's army, that Gautier de Cariel, an experienced and valiant knight, gave it as his advice, that as often as it was thrown, they should all prostrate themselves on their elbows and knees, and beseech the Lord to deliver them from that danger, against which he alone could protect them; this counsel was adopted and practised; besides which, the king being in bed in his tent, as often as he was informed that the Greek fire was thrown, raised himself in his bed, and with uplifted hands thus besought the Lord; "Good Lord God, preserve my people!" The effects of this fire do not seem to justify the

---

(c) L'ESPRIT des Croissades. A machine seemingly depending on the Greek fire, or that of gunpowder, is mentioned in the Speculum Regale, an islandish manuscript, supposed to have been written some time in the 13th century, where treating of the different kinds of warlike machines then in use, it is said, "omnium autem quæ enumeravimus armorum et machinarum, præstantissimus est incurvus clypeorum gigas, flammas venenatus eructans."

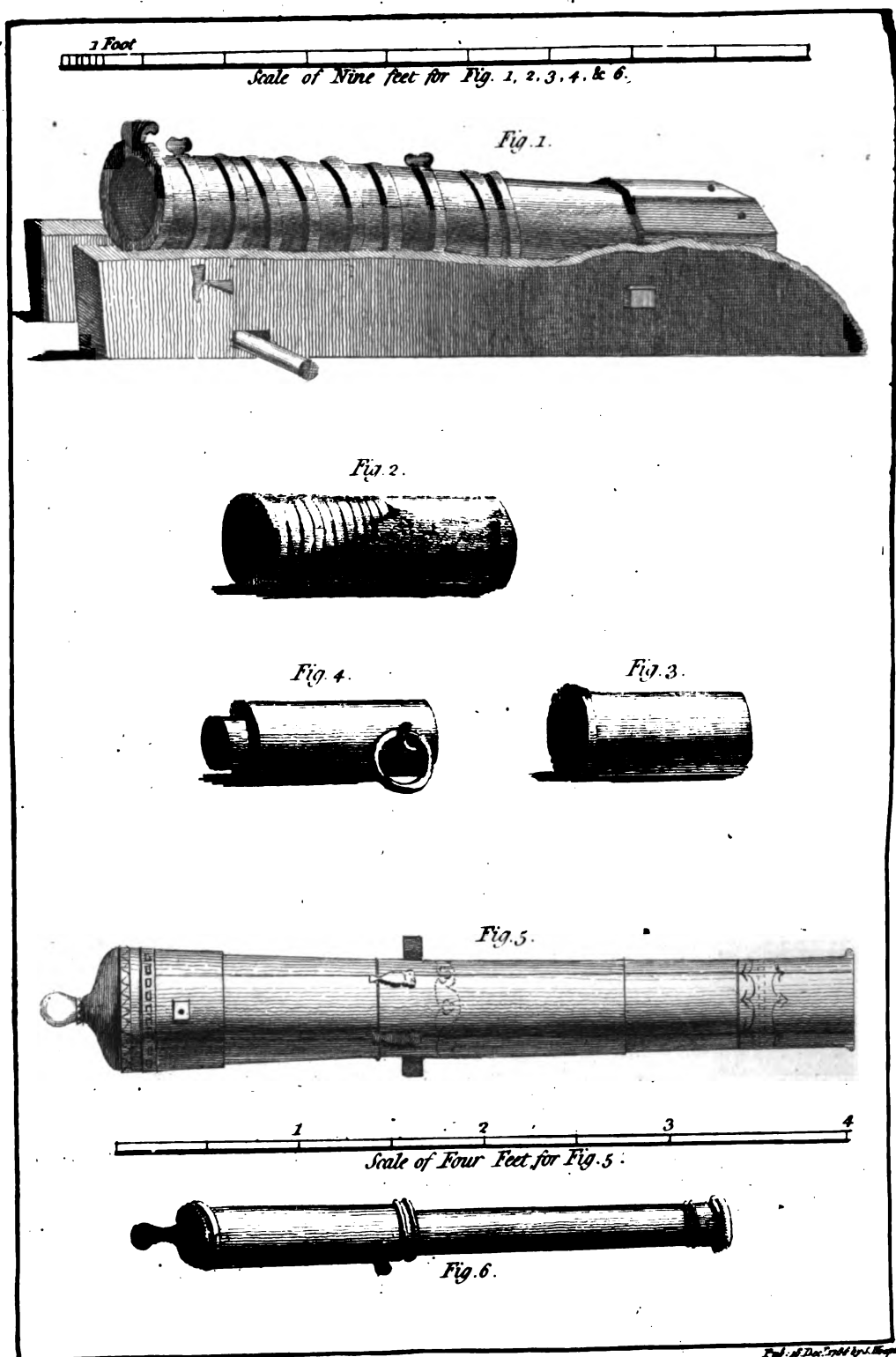




ARTILLERY, Pl. I.

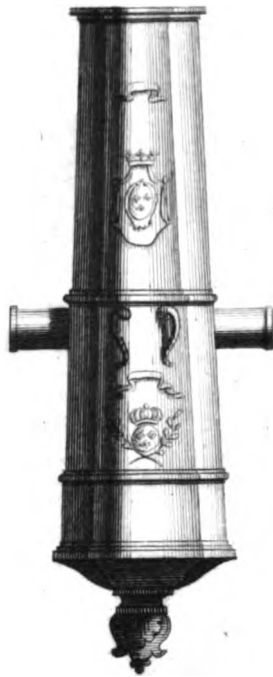








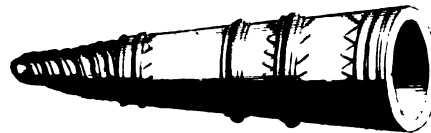
*Triple Cannon*



*Section of the breech of the Triple Cannon.*



*Twin Cannon*



*Ancient Screw-piece.*

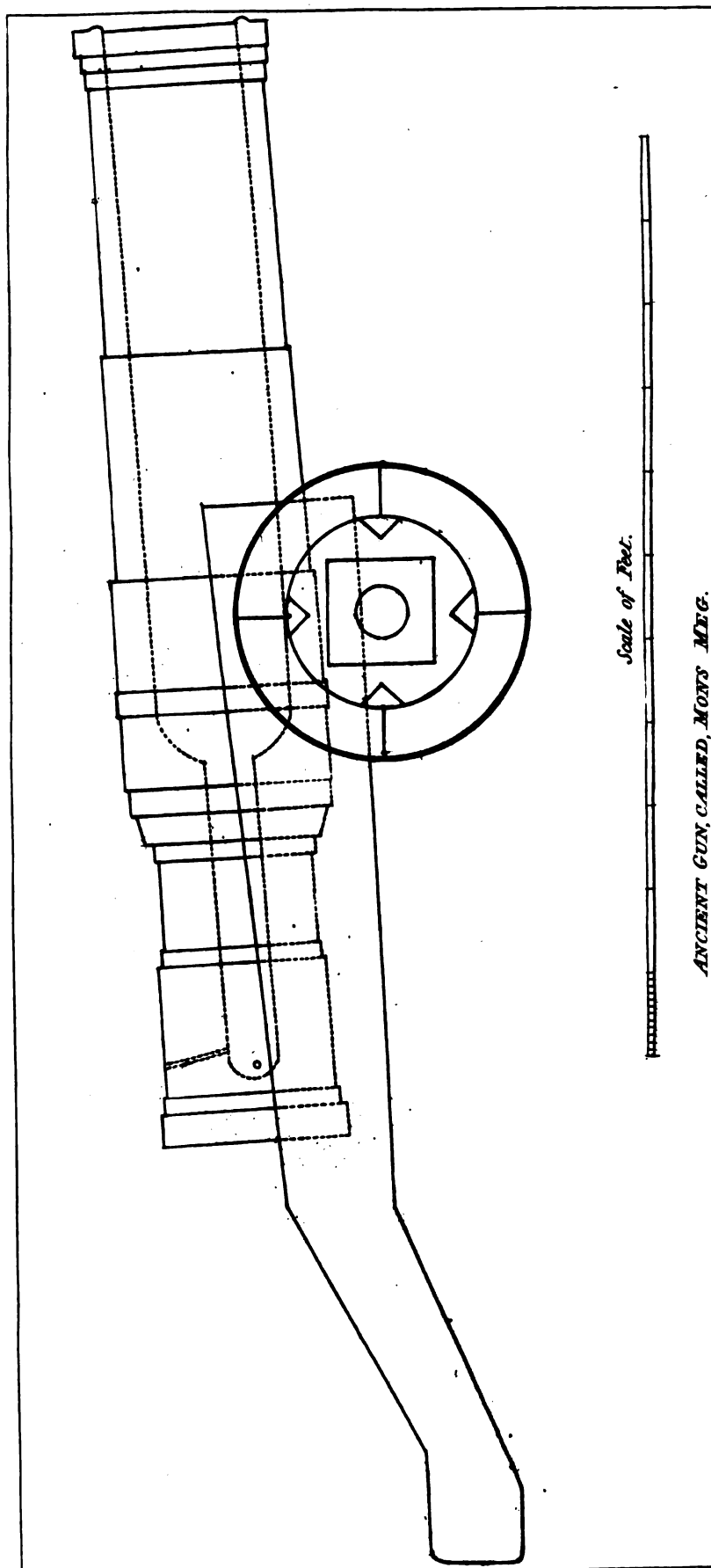
*The Culverine of Nancy*



*Scale of Six Feet.*

**EXTRAORDINARY PIECES OF ARTILLERY.**





great terrors it here occasioned ; some of their castelated cats were set on fire, but extinguished ; it was thrown three times in the night from the petrary, and four times from a large cross bow ; the fire caused by this composition is said to have been inextinguishable by water : Geeoffry de Vineauf, who accompanied King Richard I. to the crusade ; says of it, “ with a pernicious stench and livid flame, it consumes even flint and iron, nor could it be extinguished by water ; but by sprinkling sand upon it, the violence of it may be abated, and vinegar poured upon it will put it out (d) ;” from other descriptions it appears, this composition was of an unctious and viscid nature, sticking to the objects against which it was thrown ; it was in land engagements and sieges projected by the machines of the times, and at sea by hand, enclosed in vessels or phials, in which it was also kept and transported (e) ; it was likewise sometimes fastened to the heads of arrows ; sea-water, instead of extinguishing it, seemed to give it new violence and activity.

FATHER DANIEL says this wildfire was not only used in sieges, but even in battles, and that Philip Augustus, King of France, having found a quantity of it ready prepared in Acre, brought it with him to France, and used it at the siege of Dieppe, for burning the English

(d) To these some add urine and even oil. See Ducange.

THE following lines shew the general opinion of its properties :

Pereat ó utinam ignis hujus vena,  
Non enim extinguitur aquâ, sed arenâ,  
Vix que vinum acidum arctat ejus fræna  
Et urinâ stringitur ejus vix habena :  
Ignis hic conficitur tantum per paganos,  
Ignis hic exterminat tantum Christianos,  
Incantatus namque est per illos prophanos,  
Ab hoc perpetuo Christe, libera nos.

Monachus Florentinus de Expugnat. Acconensi.

(e) AINSI qu'il alloit par mer, il recontre une nef de Saracens que le Soudan Saladin envoioit en Acre pour le secours faire a ceux, qui estoient en la cité & cele nef avoit grand plant de fioles de voire pleines de feu Gregois. *Cbron. MS. Franc. ex Bib. Mammiana, an. 1190.*

vessels in that harbour. It was also used at several other sieges in France, and an engineer named Gaubert, a native of Mante, acquired the art of making it, which luckily for mankind has been since lost. A composition something of the same nature was a few years ago invented by a chymist in this country, who at present enjoys an annual allowance so long as it shall remain a secret; our government being unwilling to encrease the destruction and cruelty of war; a like discovery was made in France or Holland, and for the like reason suppressed (f).

GREEK fire was used long after the introduction of fire-arms, particularly in sieges. When the bishop of Norwich besieged Ypres, A.D. 1383, the garrison is said by Walsingham to have defended themselves so well with stones, arrows, lances, Greek fire, and certain engines called guns, that they obliged the English to raise the siege with such precipitation, that they left behind them their great guns, which were of inestimable value. A great part of that army was soon after besieged in the town of Burburgh by the French, who threw such quantities of Greek fire into it, that they burned a third part of the town, and obliged the English to capitulate (g).

ALTHOUGH the invention of gun-powder, with its application to fire-arms, may be ranked among the most important and beneficial discoveries, yet, strange to relate! the date of that invention, with the name of the person to whom mankind are indebted for it, are both

(f) DANS ce siècle des gens ont prétendu en avoir retrouvé la composition; & il n'y a pas dix ans qu'un nommé Dupré est mort avec un pension, que lui faisoit le gouvernement, pour tenir son secret dans l'oubli; nous connoissons nous mêmes un medecin, qui a fait la même decouverte, ou de moins quelque chose de bien approuchant, mais dont la ministre s'est bien gardé de recompenser les travaux, humanité qui fait autant d'honneur a la philosophie qu'à notre nation, la seule, peut etre, ou il puisse se trouver des hommes en place assez amis des hommes pour ne pas multiplier les germes de leur destruction, pour se souvenir que si malheureusement les guerres sont quelque fois necessaire il faut laisser aux armées infernales des secrets infernaux, et que c'est deja trop de la poudre à Canon. *L'Esprit des Croissades.*

(g) T. WALSINGHAM, p. 303 and 304.

equally unknown (h). Perhaps one cause of this was, that at first it was extremely weak; of this, indeed, we may be certain from the proportion of its ingredients here annexed; so that it probably reached its present perfection and force by degrees, and was originally only used for recreative fireworks, as Bacon seems to say, and afterwards might be applied to military uses, in setting fire to ships, castles, and buildings.

THE common story respecting the invention of gunpowder and artillery is thus related: about the year 1320, one Bartholdus Schwartz, a German monk, and student in alchymy, a pursuit then much in fashion, having in the course of his work mixed salt-petre, sulphur, and charcoal in a mortar, and partly covered it with a stone, by some accident it took fire, and blew the stone with great violence to a considerable distance; thus by one accident furnishing the hint for making gunpowder, its use, and a piece of ordnance for using it: and it is worthy of observation, that stones are said to have been thrown from mortars long before point blank shooting was attempted; possi-

(h) PERHAPS, at first sight, the assertion of its being a beneficial discovery may seem somewhat paradoxical; but let any one compare the slaughter of antient battles, with the killed and wounded in modern engagements, and the length and consequent miseries of sieges before and since the invention of gunpowder, where equal armies were engaged, or the same or similar places attacked, and I flatter myself the propriety of the epithet beneficial will be apparent.

WAR is now carried on at a distance, and in large and distinct bodies, so that the least advantage becomes instantly obvious; whereas formerly troops engaged hand to hand, whereby they were so intermingled as to be with difficulty separated, and besides the victor had no other certainty of his success, than by finding no more of the enemy to slaughter: in sieges, a numerous train of artillery, with a few barrels of this wonderful powder, deposited in a mine, soon batter and throw down the strongest walls, and we now rarely hear of those long sieges, where thousands are destroyed by fatigue and famine.

INDEED the greatest effects towards a victory or capitulation is by gunpowder and artillery, brought about without any mischief or slaughter, but solely by the terror raised by the noise, few men having sufficient firmness to stand their dreadful thunder; and it is undoubtedly a fact, that a battle or a town is won, more by the flight of those who are terrified at the noise of the cannon, than from the loss of those killed or wounded by them.



bly, this story may be true; but it does not at all follow from thence, that gunpowder was not before known, the same discovery having been frequently made by different persons engaged in the same study.

MANY modern writers carry the invention of gunpowder, and even its application to artillery, back to very remote antiquity; the ingenious translator of the Gentoo Laws, finds fire-arms, gunpowder, and cannon, mentioned in that code, supposed at least coeval with Moses; it will, no doubt (says he), strike the reader with wonder, to find a prohibition of fire-arms, in records of such unfathomable antiquity; and he will probably from hence renew the suspicion which has long been deemed absurd, that Alexander the Great did absolutely meet with some weapons of that kind in India, as a passage in Quintus Curtius seems to ascertain (i); "gunpowder has been known in China, as well as in Hindostan, far beyond all periods of investigation."

"UFFANO, says another author (k), reporteth, that the invention and use, as well of ordnance as of gunnepowder, was in the 85 yeere of our lord, made known and practized in the great and ingenious kingdom of China; and that in the maretyme provinces thereof, there

(i) THERE is also the following antient testimony to this point in Grey's Gunnery, printed A.D. 1731. In the life of Appolonius Tyanæus written by Philostratus, about fifteen hundred years ago, there is the following passage concerning a people of India, called Oxycracæ; (L. 2. c. xiv.) "These truly wise men, says he, dwell between the rivers Hyphasis and Ganges; their country Alexander the Great never entered, deterred not by fear of the inhabitants, but as I suppose by religious considerations; for had he passed the Hyphasis, he might doubtless have made himself master of the country all round them; but their cities he could never have taken, though he had led a thousand as brave as Achilles, or three thousand such as Ajax to the assault, for they come not out to the field to fight those who attack them, but these holy men, beloved by the Gods, overthrow their enemies with tempests and thunderbolts shot from their walls: it is said, that the Egyptian Hercules and Bacchus when they over-run India, invaded this people also, and having prepared warlike engines, attempted to conquer them; they in the mean time made no shew of resistance, appearing perfectly quiet and secure; but upon the enemies near approach, they were repulsed with storms of lightning, and thunderbolts, hurled upon them from above."

(k) ROBERT NORTON, in a folio book, entitled, the Gunner, London, 1664: Norton there styles himself, one of his late majesties gunners and engineers.

yet remains certaine peaces of ordnance, both of iron and brasse, with the memory of their yeares of founding engraved upon them, and the armes of King Vitey, who he saith was the inventor ; and it well appeareth also in antient and credible historyes, that the said King Vitey was a great enchanter and nigromancer ; who one time being vexed with cruel warres by the Tartarians, conjured an evil spirit, that shewed him the use and making of gunnes and powder, the which he put in warlike practice in the realm of Pegu, and in the conquest of the East Indies, and thereby quieted the Tartars ; the same being confirmed by certain Portingales that have travelled and navigated those quarters, and also affirmed by a letter sent from Captain Artred, written to the King of Spaine ; wherein, recounting very diligently all the particulars of Chyna, sayd, “ that they long since used there both ordnance and powder ; and affirming further, that there he found antient ill-shapen pieces ; and that those of later founding, are of farre better fashion and metal than their antient were ; some also imagine powder and ordnance were invented by the famous mathematician, Archimedes, who made use of them at the siege of Syracuse, in Cicillia, and they grownd that supposition upon Vitruvius, who reporteth that one of his engines with a terrible noise did shote foorth great bullets of stone ; which, by reason of that report, could neither be supposed the catapulta, balista, scorpion, nor any other of the known engines.

Our countryman, Frier Bacon, whose works were written at Oxford, about the year 1270, fourscore years before the supposed invention by Swartz, has exprefsly named the ingredients of gunpowder as a well known composition used for recreation (1), and describes it as producing a noise like thunder, and flashes like lightning, but more terrible than those produced by nature ; and adds, this might

---

(1) ET experimentum hujus rei capimus ex hoc ludicro puerili quod fit in multis mundis partibus, scil. ut instrumento facto ad quantitatem pollicis humani, ex violentia salis, qui sal petre vocatur, tam horibilis sonus nascitur, in ruptura tam modice rei scil. modici pergamini, quod fortis tonitrum excedere rugitum & corruscationem maximam sui luminis jubar excedit. Vide Dr. Jebb's Preface to his edition of Bacon's Opus Majus.

be applied to the destruction of an enemy by sea and land: Bacon acquired this composition from a treatise on Artificial Fireworks, written by one Marcus Græcus; the manuscript is still extant, and is quoted by the Reverend Mr. Dutens in order to prove that gunpowder was known to the antients (m); the composition therein prescribed is, two pounds of charcoal, one pound of sulphur, and six pounds of saltpetre, well powdered and mixt together in a stone mortar; this is a better composition for powder than many in late use.

IN a black letter book in quarto, entitled, the Forrest, or Collection of Histories (n), there is the following account of the invention of gunpowder and artillery: But all these were trifles of little weight and importance far surpassed in cruelty by the invention of shot in diverse sorts of artillery: the first invention of which some attribute unto an Almain whose name we find nowhere, as unworthy of memory; as report Blondus and R. Volateranus: the first that used shot to their behalf and profit were, the Venetians, against the inhabitants of Genua, in the yeere of our Lord, a thousand three hundred and four score; howbeit in my judgement this invention was yet

---

(m) THE title of this manuscript runs thus; "Incipit liber ignium a Marco Græco per-scriptus, cujus virtus et efficacia est ad comburendum hostes, tam in mari quam in terra." At page 9, of the MS. are the following directions for making a rocket; "Secundus modus ignis volatilis hoc modo conficitur: R. lib. i. sulphuris vivi. lib. ii. carbonis saliciis, salis petrose vi. libras, quæ tria subtilissime tereantur in lapide marmorea, postea pulvis ad libitum in tunica reponatur volatili, vel tonitrum facienta. Nota, quod tunica ad volandum debet esse gracilis et longa, et prædicto pulvere optime concalcato repleta; tunica vel tonitrum faciens debet esse brevis, grossa, et prædicto pulvere semiplena, et ab utraque parte filo fortissimo bene ligata. Nota, quod in qualibet tunica primum foramen faciendum est, ut tenta imposita accendatur quæ tenta in extremitatibus, fit gracilis, in medio vera lata, et prædicta pulvere repleta. Nota, quod ad volendum tunica plicaturas ad libitum habere potest, tonitrum vero, faciens quam plurimas plicaturas. Nota, quod duplex poteris facere tonitrum, ac duplex volatile instrumentum, vel tunicam subtiliter in tunica includendo. Dutens's Inquiry, p. 266.

(n) PRINTED by John Day, dwelling over Aldersgate, 1576.

more antient, for that we read in the Chronicle of Alfonfus the XI. king, by iust account, of Castille, who at the conquest of the citie of Algezcar, found while he besieged the towne, in the yeare of our redemption, a thousand, three hundred, and fortie and three; that the Moores from within, threw out among the enemyes certain thunders through long mortars, or troughs of iron, and this was almost fortie yeares before that Blondus recordeth.

AGAIN before that, it is reported by the said Alphonfus which semblably conquer'd Toletam in Spain, that one Petus, bishop of Leon, writeth, that in a certain battail don on the sea, betwixt the King of Tunnye, and Morus, King of Sibilia, whose faction Alphonfus favoured, that the Tunnigenciens threw on their enemyes, certain bombards or tunnes of fire, which by all likelyhood might be deemed artillerye, although it were not in such perfection as now, and that was foure hundred yeeres before and more.

To the above accounts it may be added, that iron rockets have been used as military weapons, or machines, in the East Indies, as far back as can be remembered, and are still in great fashion and estimation.

CAMDEN, in his life of Queen Elizabeth, says, she was the first that procured gunpowder to be made in England, that she might not pray and pay for it also to her neighbours (o).

At first, gunpowder was not corned, but remained in its mealed state; it was then called serpentine powder in several accounts of military stores in the time of Edward VI. and Elizabeth; there are large quantitys of serpentine powder.

(o) P. 56. In the work called, Cotton's Abridgment of the Records of the Tower of London, p. 24., there is a strange mistake respecting gunpowder; it being there said, that a pardon was directed to be made out 14 Edward III. to Thomas de Brookhall, for a debt of 32 tuns of powder, and in the index it is added by way of note (before its pretended invention). The original in the rolls of parliament stands thus: Item, pur Thomas de Brookhall, pur trent & deux toneux de *pomadre*, des quex il est charge sur son acounte du temps qu'il estoit assigne de faire divers purveances a l'œps le roi en le countee de Kent."

*Pomadre*, is cyder, instead of gunpowder, and probably provided for the king's drinking.

*The following Proportions of the Ingredients for making Gunpowder is given by Peter Whiteborne (p).*

The first invention and oldest manner in making serpentine powder or powder for ordinaunce.

1.	Saltpeter	-	-	-	1 part
	Brimstone	-	-	-	1 part
	Coles	-	-	-	1 part

The next practis of making powder for ordinaunce.

2.	Saltpeter	-	-	-	3 partes
	Brimstone	-	-	-	3 partes
	Coles	-	-	-	3 partes

Powder for ordinaunce of a newer making.

3.	Saltpeter	-	-	-	10 partes
	Brimstone	-	-	-	3 partes
	Coles	-	-	-	3 partes

Powder for ordinaunce not so olde.

4.	Saltpeter	-	-	-	12 partes
	Brimstone	-	-	-	3 partes
	Coles	-	-	-	2 partes

Powder for ordinaunce not verie olde.

5.	Saltpeter	-	-	-	9 partes
	Brimstone	-	-	-	2 partes
	Coles	-	-	-	3 partes

Powder used of late daies for handgunnes.

6.	Saltpeter	-	-	-	4 partes
	Brimstone	-	-	-	1 parte
	Coles	-	-	-	1 parte

Powder for ordinaunce used not long agon.

7.	Saltpeter	-	-	-	20 partes
	Brimstone	-	-	-	3 partes
	Coles	-	-	-	10 partes

Powder for ordinaunce used of latter daies.

8.	Saltpeter	-	-	-	100 partes
	Brimstone	-	-	-	10 partes
	Coles	-	-	-	26 partes

Grosse powder of a newer forte.

9.	Saltpeter	-	-	-	100 partes
	Brimstone	-	-	-	20 partes
	Coles	-	-	-	37 partes

Grosse powder of a newer making.

11.	Saltpeter	-	-	-	2 partes
	Brimstone	-	-	-	1 parte
	Coles	-	-	-	1 parte

Harkabus powder of a newer making.

12.	Saltpeter	-	-	-	3 partes
-----	-----------	---	---	---	----------

(p) THIS work is entitled "Certayne Wayes for the ordering of Souldiours in Battelray, and setting of Battayles after diverse Fashions, with their Maner of marching: and also Figures of certayne new Plattes for Fortification of Townes: and moreover how to make Saltpeter, Gunpowder, and diverse Sortes of Fireworks or Wilde-fire, with other Things appertayning to the Warres, gathered and set forth by Peter Whiteborne. Imprinted at London by W. Williamfon, for Jhon Wight. Anno 1573."

Brimstone - - - 1 parte  
Coles of willow stickes - 1 parte

Fine powder of newer making.

13. Saltpeter often refined - 5 partes  
Brimstone - - - 1 parte  
Coles of young hafell  
stickes - - - 1 parte

Grosse powder of newer making.

14. Saltpeter refined - - 3 partes  
Brimstone - - - 1 parte  
Willow coles - - - 2 partes

Powder of newer making.

15. Saltpeter - - - 10 partes  
Brimstone - - - 2 partes  
Willow coles - - - 3 partes

Harkabus powder used nowe adayes.

16. Saltpeter very often re-  
fined - - - 10 partes  
Brimstone - - - 1 parte  
Coles made of hafell  
twigges, with the parke  
pilled - - - 1 parte

Handgun powder of a newer making.

17. Saltpeter refined - - 27 partes  
Brimstone - - - 3 partes  
Coles of hafell having  
their rinds pulled off - 3 partes

Handgun powder of a stronger and of a  
newer making.

18. Saltpeter refined - - 7 partes  
Brimstone - - - 1 parte  
Coles of young hafell - 1 parte

Finer and stronger handgun powder.

19. Saltpeter diverse times re-  
fined - - - 7 partes  
Brimstone - - - 1 parte  
Coles of young hafell  
twigges, having their  
rinds pulled off - 1 parte

Grosse powder used nowe adayes.

20. Saltpeter - - - 4 partes  
Brimstone - - - 1 parte  
Willow coles - - - 1 parte

Grosse powder used nowe adays.

21. Saltpeter - - - 20 partes  
Brimstone - - - 4 partes  
Willow Coles - - - 5 partes

Hande gun powder used nowe adaies.

22. Saltpeter refined drie - 48 partes  
Brimstone cetrine - 7 partes  
Hafell coles - - - 2 partes

Hande gun powder used nowe adaies.

23. Saltpeter refined - - 18 partes  
Brimstone - - - 2 partes  
Hafel coles - - - 3 partes

NYE, in his Treatise on Fireworks, gives the proportions as here-  
under, with the dates when they were used.

THE making of gunpowder after the most antient manner, anno  
1380.

Saltpeter, brimstone, charcole, equal parts.

ANNO, 1410, saltpeter 3 parts, brimstone 2 parts, charcole 2 parts.

ANNO, 1480, faltpeter 8 parts, brimstone 3 parts, charcole 3 parts.

THE making best powder, 1520, faltpeter 4 parts, charcole 1 part, brimstone 1 part.

ANNO, 1647, the best fort now made, faltpeter 6 parts, brimstone 1 part, charcole 1 part.

THE musket powder is now commonly made of faltpeter 5 parts, brimstone 1 part, charcole 1 part; cannon powder, faltpeter 4 parts, 1 part charcole, 1 part brimstone (q).

AT what time cannon (r) were first used in Europe is not clearly ascertained; if we may credit John Barbour, archdeacon of Aberdeen, King Edward III. had artillery in his first campaign against the Scotch, A. D. 1327; these the archdeacon calls (s) crakys of war;

(q) THESE were the most approved compositions, but diverse conceits have prevailed at different periods respecting the strengthening of gunpowder by the addition of various substances, such as to every pound of brimstone, an ounce of mercury, or to every pound of faltpeter, a quarter of an ounce of sal armoniac; to sprinkle the powder with brandy, or spirits of wine; and Ward has the following receipt to make a gun shoot half as far again as its usual distance with the same quantity of powder; this is effected, he says, by taking of white cafe-pepper of the soundest cornes, and steepe them 24 houres in strong aqua vitæ, then being taken out and dried in the sunne, so that they may not danke the powder; then charging the peece with the usual charge of powder, you must take so many of these pepper-cornes as will cover the circumference of the bore, and being put downe close with the sticke to the powder; then putting next to the pepper the bullet, this being tryed at any marke, it shall be sensibly found to convey the bullet with such a violence, farre beyond the accustomed shooting, and being charged without this ingredient, the bullet shall not come little more than half the way. Thomas Diggs, in his *Stratoticos*, likewise mentions an extraordinary degree of science possessed by his father, who could, as he says, by reflection of glasses, fire powder, and discharge ordnance many miles distant; which, with several other curious matters, he partly acquired by the "aide he had by one old written book of the fante Bacon's Experiments, that by straunge adventure, or rather destinie, came to his hands." By Bacon, he meant the learned Friar of that name: I do not assert the truth of these matters.

(r) CANNON is derived from canna, a large hollow reed.

(s) IN his metrical life of King Robert Bruce, p. 408, and 409.

Twa novelties that day the saw,  
That forouth in Scotland had been nane,  
Timbers for helmes was the anc,

That they brought then of great beautie,  
And also wonder for to see;  
The other crakys were of war,  
That they before heard never air.

Father Daniel does not carry his claim in behalf of the French so high by some years, as he only cites a record preserved in the Chamber of Accounts at Paris, to prove that the French had and used cannon in the year 1338 (t).

VILANI, an Italian author, says, the English had cannon at the battle of Crécy, in 1346; this, however, is not mentioned by Froissart, or any other of the many historians who have described that battle.

LUIGI COLLADO states the introduction of cannon to have taken place in 1366; and other authors say, that cannon was first used by the Venetians against the Genoese, in 1378.

THESE machines, when first invented, were rather mortars than cannon, most of them having chambers; they were in general constructed of iron bars, folded or welded together, and strengthened with iron hoops; others were made of plates of iron rolled up and fortified with hoops of the same metal; of the first kind, there are several remaining; some I think at Woolwich. One belonging to — Pooley, Esq. in Suffolk, and another, well known by the name of Mons Meg, now in the tower, are here engraved, and also several of those hooped guns, which were loaded by chambers fixed in at the breech, these are kept in a cellar at Peel, in the Isle of Man: cannons called also bombards (u) were at first chiefly made of hammered iron, but in process of time many were cast of that composition named bell or gun metal; they were also sometimes made of plates of iron and copper, with lead run between them: one of these sort of guns was taken up on the coast of Ireland by a fisherman, and is supposed to have belonged to the Spanish armada: see Col. Valleney's account of it in the note be-

(t) IN the accounts of Bartholomew de Drach, treasurer of war for the year 1388, there is the following charge: To Henry de Faumechon, for powder and other things necessary for the canons which were before Puy Guillaume Puy Guillaume, is a castle in Auvergne.

(u) FROM the Greek word bombos, expressing the noise made by them in firing; great guns were afterwards named from serpents, as the basilisk, colouverine, &c. some of the large bombards were jocularly called, bourgeoisie, from their constant residence in one place, their weight rendering them inconvenient to move.



low (x): another gun of this kind is kept in a cellar before mentioned; in the Isle of Man; both are engraved in plate 2, of artillery; on particular emergencies, guns have been made of jacked leather.

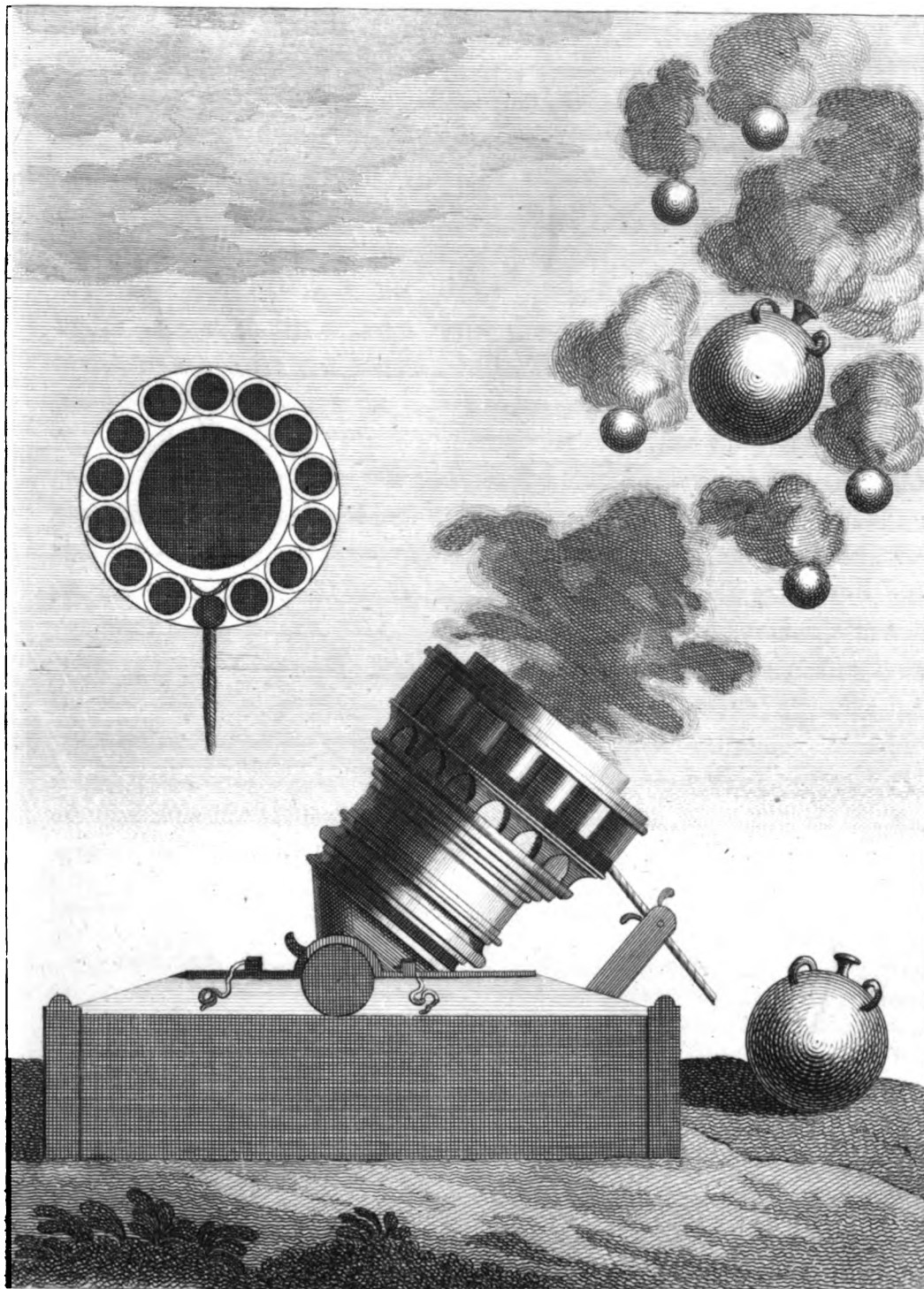
THE antient bombards were sometimes very large, and chiefly discharging stone balls of a monstrous size. When Mahomet the II. besieged Constantinople, anno 1453, he battered the walls with stone bullets, and his pieces were some of them of the calibre of 1200 pounds; but then they could not be fired more than four times a day (y).

IN Rymer, there is an order from King Henry V. to the clerk of the ordnance, and John Bonet, a mason of Maidstone, to cut 7000 stone shot in the quarries there.

FROISSART describes a very extraordinary bombard, used at the siege of Oudenarde, made by the people of Ghent, under the direction of D'Arteville; Therefore (says he), to terrify the garrison of Oudenarde, he caused to be made a marvellous great bombarde, which was fifty feet long, and threw great heavy stones of a wonderful bigness; when this bombard was discharged, it might be heard five leagues by day, and ten at night, making so great a noise in going off, " that it

(x) THE inside is a tube of copper foldered, the length of the piece; this tube is covered with a tube of plated, or hammered iron; as it could not be made to shut close upon the copper, the interval is filled with melted lead; over the iron tube is lead, then plated iron where necessary to fortify it from the trunnions to the breech, and over all sheathing copper, lapping over one another, as may be seen by the drawing. The dolphins are broke, the heads and tails remain; the cascabel broke. The trunnions are composed of iron cylinders, half an inch diameter, covered with lead, probably they were also covered with sheet copper, they are much bruised; the ornaments are punched. I send you some pieces of the outside copper, and of the lead coatings, but could not rip off a piece of the iron tube, which is about an eighth of an inch in thickness were I opened it, which was half way between the trunnions and the muzzle. I do not recollect this construction of a cannon described by any of our old authors. This gun, which is nearly a four pounder, was taken up in Kinsale harbour, by some fishermen in their nets. It is supposed to have belonged to the Spanish armada. See a delineation of it, artillery, plate 2, fig. 5; fig. 6, shews a gun said to be constructed of the same materials, at Peel Town, in the Isle of Man, where are also the pieces of antient hooped guns, fig. 2, 3, 4.

(y) SEE preface to Robins's Gunnery.



THE PARTRIDGES.



seemed as if all the devils in hell were abroad." We frequently read of cannon or bombards carrying stone balls from 200 to 500 pounds weight.

THE terms cannon and colouverine were not confined to large guns, but were given also to those of small caliber, such as were portable, and might be moved by hand.

JUVENAL DES URSINS, an author contemporary with Charles VI. under the year 1414, calls them hand canons, and they were so named at the time of Louis XI. ; for Philip de Comines, reckoning the strength of the Swiss army, and their allies, which defeated Charles the Bold, Duke of Normandy, before Morat, not far from Bern, in Switzerland, says, that there might be thirty thousand footmen, well chosen, and well armed ; that is to say, eleven thousand pikes, ten thousand halberts, and ten thousand coulouverines : now it is manifest by the word, coulouverines, he could not mean those great and long canons formerly so named, but something like a musquet, or arquebuse, a croc, sufficiently light to be carried by hand, or put on very small stands, and moved and turned by one or two men (2) ; this supposition is further corroborated by diverse other instances, in which small armies are said to have had several hundreds, and even thousands, of canons and colouverines ; one mentioned by the author last cited, who in the year 1411, says ; that in the army of the Duke of Orleans,

---

(2) THE Duke of Burgundy appears to have had some very large ordnance in his army ; our countryman Coriat, describes one that he saw in the arsenal at Zurich ; " among them, I saw one passing great murdering piece, both ends thereof were so exceeding wide, that a very corpulent man might easily enter the same ; this also was wonne in the field from the said duke." Vol. 2. p. 193. He likewise mentions another large piece, termed a basiliske, which he saw in the arsenal of Milan ; " also (says he), I saw an exceeding huge basiliske, which was so great, that it would easily containe the body of a very corpulent man."—In the 2d of King Henry V. A. D. 1414, there was a master of the ordnance named Nicholas Merbury, and John Louth, his clerk ; to whom that king, by a warrant in Rymer, assigned the necessary workmen and materials, with authority for pressing all sorts of carriages required.

under Charles VI. there were four thousand canons and colouverines; hand guns were not however introduced into England till sixty years afterwards, as has before been mentioned (a) : during this time perhaps they were improving, so as to become more manageable.

ALTHOUGH artillery was used from the time of King Edward III. and purchased from abroad by all our successive kings, it seems extremely strange, that none of our workmen attempted to cast them, till the reign of King Henry VIII. when in 1521, according to Stowe, or 1535 (Camden says), great brass ordnance, as canon and culverins, were first cast in England, by one John Owen, they formerly having been made in other countries; whether this man did not succeed, or died before the year 1543, is not mentioned; but in that year, according to Stowe, the king employed two aliens as his gunfounders; his words are, "the king minding wars with France, made great preparations and provision, as well of munitions and artillery, as also of brass ordnance; amongst which at that time, one Peter Bawd, a Frenchman born, a gun-founder, or maker of great ordnance, and one other alien, called Peter Van Collen, a gunsmith, both the king's feedmen, conferred together, devised and caused to be made, certain mortar pieces, being at the mouth from eleven inches, unto nineteen inches wide; for the use whereof, the said Peter and Peter caused to be made certain hollow shot of cast yron, stuffed with fire works, or wild-fire; whereof the bigger sort for the same, had screws of yron to receive a match to carry fire kindled, that the fire-work might be set on fire to break in small pieces the same hollow shot; whereof the smallest piece hitting any man, would kill or spoil him; and after the king's return from Bullen, the said Peter Bawd by himself in the first year of Edward VI. did also make certain ordnance of cast yron of diverse sorts and forms, as sawconets, falcons, minions, fakers, and other pieces (b)." Chamber'd pieces for throwing stones, called cannon perriers, port-pieces, stock-fowlers, sling-pieces, portingale bases,

(a) Vol. I. p. 162.

(b) Stowe's Chron. p. 584.





*Pierriers vulgarly called Pattereras.*



and murderers, were about this time much used in small forts, and on ship-board.

KING HENRY VII. and his son Henry VIII. took great pains to introduce the art of gunnery into this kingdom, and for that purpose both of them had a number of Flemish gunners in their daily pay.

THE wretched state of that art is related by William Bourne, author of a treatise on the Art of shooting in great ordnance, printed at London, in 1587; "I have seen (says he) a number of bookes that have been written concerning ordnance, but surely they that wrote them were not seen in any part of the mathematical science, neither good mechanics; but (in respect) utterly void of any science; in (comparison) no good order described in the shooting of ordnance, to know what distance the shotte is delivered from the peece; neyther have they known what instruments have meant; and although they have named degrees in their bookes, yet it appeareth unto me, that they have no knowledge what a degree signifieth, for that they have named a quadrant, a triangle, and other fond and foolish bye-names; wherefore, they that have written these bookes, that the gunners have amongst them, were utterly unlearned in any manner of science; which were in the beginning, in the time of King Henry VIII. made by Flemmings; for in the war of those daies, the king sent over into Flanders and those parts thereabouts, to have gunners to serve him in the warres, and the gunners have no other bookes, but such as were written by them; wherefore, I do thinke it good to shewe unto you what a degree is."

IN the year 1626, the 2d of King Charles I. some improvement was attempted in the ordnance, for one Arnold Rotifpen had a patent for 14 years for making guns of all sorts both great and small after a new way, or manner, not formerly practised by any within these dominions (c).

THE next year a patent was granted to William Drummond, of



Hawthornden, for the sole making and vending a number of war-like machines. As we hear nothing further of them, it is most reasonable to suppose, like many other wonderful projects, they proved abortive.

SINCE the introduction of artillery a variety of whimsical pieces have been invented, many by ecclesiastics, but in the whole the simple gun has been found the most serviceable. Several of these inventions, as matters of curiosity, are engraved for this work.

BOMBS are certainly of greater antiquity than is generally supposed (d). Strada says, they were used in the year 1588, at the siege of Vakterdonc, a town in Guelders; but from his description it appears, that what he calls a bomb was in reality a carcass. Nothing, says he, frightened the burgers more than certain hollow balls filled with powder and materials that could not be extinguished; these balls were thrown into the air by mortars, and had a match of a certain length, in order to set fire to the powder. Falling on the tops of houses they broke through them, and as soon as they had taken fire, they burst, and spread out on every side a flame, which was difficult to extinguish with water. This instrument, which gave origin to grenades, fire-pots, and the like machines contrived for the destruction of the human species, were invented, as it is said, a few days before the siege of Vakterdonc, by an inhabitant of Venlo, a maker of fireworks; the inhabitants of that town proposed with this invention to divert the duke of Cleves, who was on a visit to them, and to whom they had given a grand repast; they therefore were desirous of making the first trial of it before him, and it succeeded much better than they proposed, for the bomb falling on a house, beat in the roof and floors, and set it on fire, which communicating with the neighbouring houses, burnt two thirds of the town, the fire being so violent, that it was impossible

---

(d) It has been supposed that the first guns or bombards were used for throwing stones, not point blank, but at an elevation, so that they might rather be considered as mortars than guns.

to extinguish it. I know, adds Strada, that some have written, that a month or two before, a like experiment had been made at Bergen Op Zoom, by an Italian deserter from the Spanish troops, who had engaged with the Dutch, and had promised to make them some hollow balls of stone or iron, which being thrown into a besieged town, and bursting after their fall, would set every thing on fire; but as he was preparing his composition, a spark having fallen on the powder, he was killed, and by his death left those for whom he was working in an uncertainty, whether or not his secret would have succeeded. From both these descriptions it is evident the end proposed was to burn the towns by means of these fire balls. The effect of the bomb is chiefly confined to beating down buildings by its fall, or by its explosion and the pieces of broken iron thrown about in all directions, to break and destroy every thing around it.

VALTURINUS, who is the oldest of the modern writers on war, the first edition of whose book was published in Latin, at Basle, in 1472, carries the invention of bombs at least a century farther back than Strada; for in book x. page 267, of his work, there is the figure of a cannon, somewhat of the howitzer kind, destined to throw a brazen ball filled with powder. It is entitled *machina quæ pilæ æneæ tormentarii pulveris plenæ, cum fungi aridi fomite urentis, emittuntur* (e).

BOMBS since their first invention have been much improved. They are now made of cast iron; thickest at the part opposite the vent, by which means, that side being heaviest, they fall with the fuse upper-

---

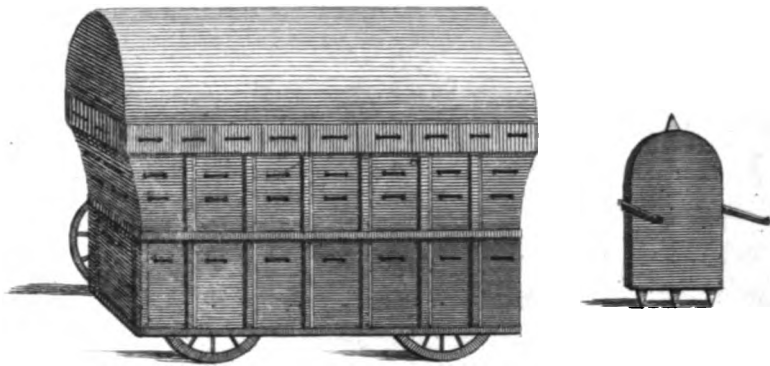
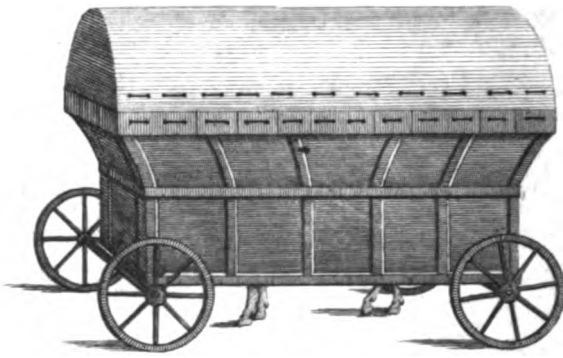
(e) THIS passage is in a note, p. 394, of Monsieur Joly de Maizeroy's *Treatise on Ancient Sieges*. I have never been able to see the Latin edition of Valturinus; but in a French translation of that author, printed at Paris in 1555, in book X. p. 163. b. there is a print of a cannon as just fired, with a ball in the air, seemingly burning out of the vent, and another ball likewise burning on the ground. The balls appear to open by means of hinges opposite the vent. The title over it is *Voyci encores une autre tienne invention d'artillerie par laquelle on tire un boulet artificiel plein de poudre avec un nourissement de feu*. It is copied in *Artillery*, plate 1. fig. 8. 9. 10. the last is made a little larger than the other to show the hinges.

most, and thereby prevent its being broken or smothered. Though some engineers think that when cast equal they fly truer, and burst into more pieces (f). Blondel at the end of his book (g) points out an extraordinary method of throwing stones into a besieged town without making use of a mortar. " The Poles (says he) assisted by some auxiliary troops, besieged the town of Thorn in Prussia, held by the Swedes, into which they frequently threw stones of a monstrous size, great quarters of mill stones, and squared stones of more than 800 weight, without making use of mortars, in this manner; in the firm ground near the counterscarp, they digged holes just of the size and figure of the stone they intended to throw, the bottom of which hole being flat and even, was turned towards the town, with such an angle of inclination as they judged by estimation was proper for the direction of their throw, and in the middle of this bottom they digged another hole deeper and in form of a chamber, and in such sort, that the axis of the last hole passing through the center of gravity of the stone, was perpendicular to its bed, and was the same as the line of direction; they filled this hole with powder, if the earth was sufficiently firm, or else they put in a petard of a size proportioned to the weight of the stone, which resting on the plane of the madrier of the petard, or of the tompon of the chamber, received the full force of the powder, which was lighted by means of a thread dipt in brandy, and composition of

(f) AT the siege of Bergen Op Zoom in the year 1747, I was shewn a Scotch Hollander, I think of Collyer's regiment, who, tempted by the reward given for stifled shells, contrived a machine of the lever kind, with which he had, when I saw him, drawn out the burning fuses of two bombs, but afterwards making a third attempt, an eighteen-inch shell burst between his legs, and tore him in pieces.

(g) ENTITLED *L'Art de Jetter les Bombes*. This author agrees as to the abovementioned epocha of the invention of bombs, but at the same time remarks that that of mortars is still more ancient; he says he has seen them both of iron and brass, of a structure which seemed to be of the time of the oldest cannon, and that they were used to throw stones and red hot balls. He confirms what he advances by a print, which is in the frontispiece of the book of Nicholas Tartaglia, a mathematician, of Bresse in Italy, printed in the year 1538, where among diverse other pieces of artillery, a mortar is represented throwing a burning ball.

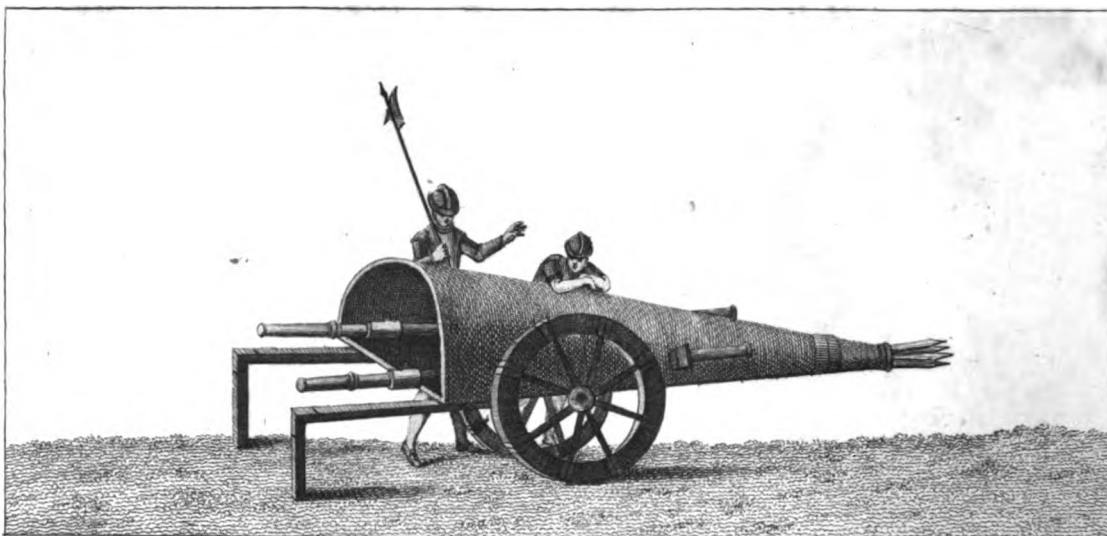




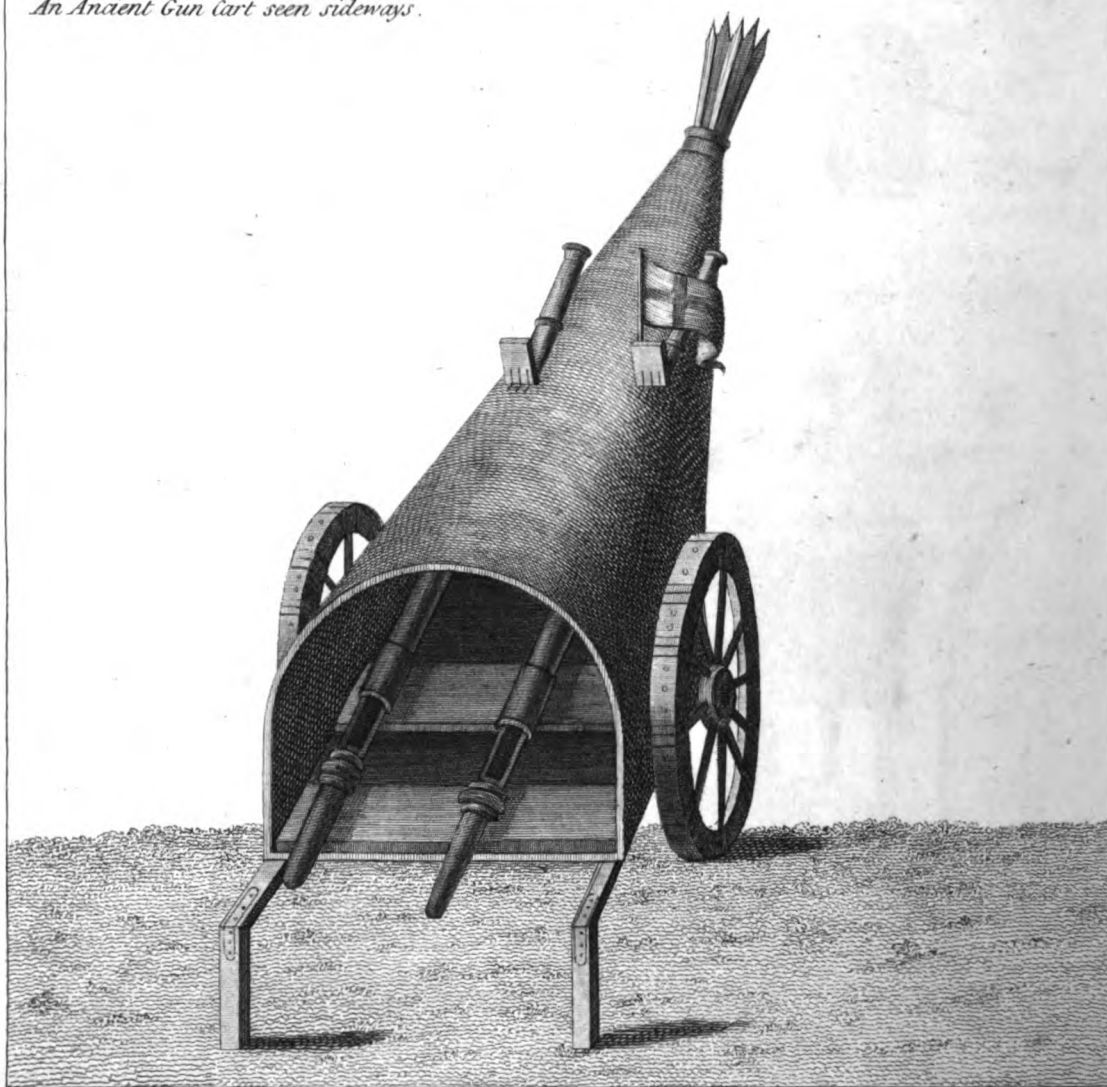
*Carts of War.*

*N.C. Gooding & Co.*





*An Ancient Gun Cart seen sideways.*



*N. C. Goodnight Sculp.*

*An Ancient Gun Cart, viewed from the rear.*

artificial fire-works, and rising to a great height in the air, fell in the town at the destined places, where it crushed every thing it met with in it's fall." This contrivance is also mentioned in an ancient English Book of Fireworkes, the name of whose author I cannot recollect. Diverse mortars of this kind are (as it is said) cut in the rocks at Malta, some of these perhaps suggested the idea to Healey for that he constructed at Gibraltar, an account of which see in the Appendix, No. 7.

AFTER the first invention of bombs, those of carcasses of different kinds, and grenades, naturally followed; the latter are said to have been first used in 1594. The howitzer, which is a kind of mortar mounted like a gun on a field carriage, its trunnions being fixed in the middle, is a modern discovery, and on particular occasions extremely serviceable; they were invented by the Germans about the year 1593 or 1594.

ANOTHER species of artillery were the war carts, each carrying two peteraros, or chamber'd pieces; several of these carts are represented in the Cowdry picture of the siege of Bullogne, one of which is given in this work; these carts seem to have been borrowed from the Scotch; Henry, in his History of England, mentions them as peculiar to that nation, and quotes the two following acts of parliament respecting them; one A.D. 1456, wherein they are thus described, "it is tocht speidfull, that the king mak requiest to certain of the great burrows of the land that are of ony myght, to make carts of weir, and in elk cart twa gunnis, and ilk ane to have twa chalmers, with the remnant of the graith that effeirs thereto, and an cunnand man to shute thame:" by another act, A.D. 1471, the p̄lates and barons are commanded to provide such carts of war against their old enemies the English (h).

THESE carts seem to be the same as mentioned by Munro (i), who

---

(h) BLACK ACTS, James II. act 52. James III. act 55.

(i) MUNRO his Expedition with the worthy Scots Regiment, called Mac-Keyes Regiment, layed in August, 1626, &c. &c. part 2. p. 151.

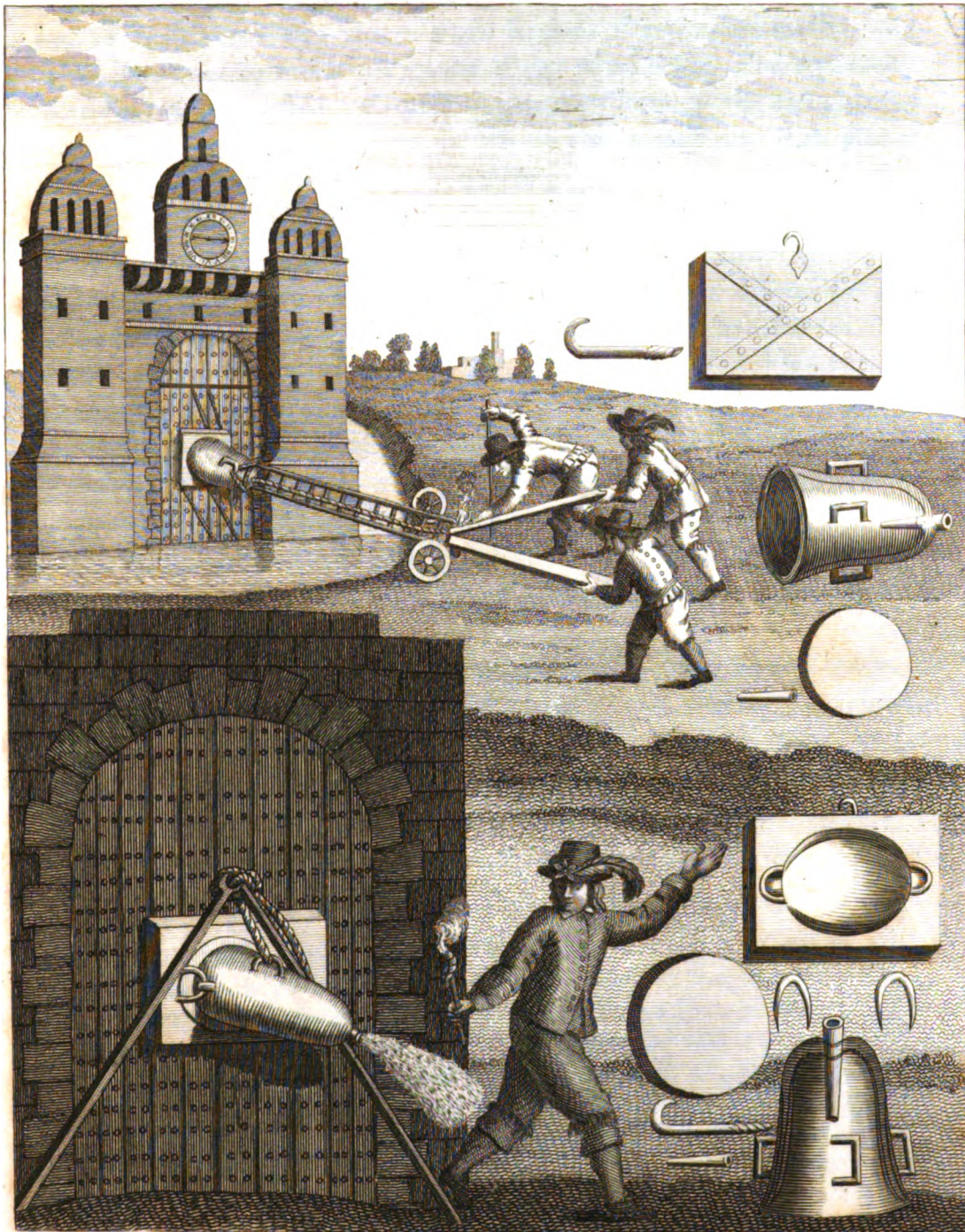


speaking of the invention of artillery, says ; “ and it is thought that the invention of cannon was found first at Nurenberg, for the ruin of man, being at first for a long time used for battering down of walles and cities, and for counter-batteries, till at last they were used in the field to break the squadrons and battailes of foot and horse, some carrying pieces, called SPINGARDS, of foure foote and a halfe longe, that shot many bullets at once no greater than walnuts, which were carried in the fields on little chariots behinde the troopes, and how soone the trumpet did sounde, the enemy was thundered on, first with those as with shoures of haile stone, so that the enemies were cruelly affrighted with them, men of valour being suddenly taken away, who before were wont to fight valliantly and long with the sword and launce, more for the honour of victory, than for any desire of shedding of blood ; but now, men are martyryzed and cut downe, at more than half a mile of distance, by those furious and thundring engines of great cannon, that sometimes shoote fiery bullets able to burne whole cities, castles, houses, or bridges, where they chance to light, and if they happen to light within walles, or amongst a briggad of foote or horse, as they did at LEIPSIGH, on the grave son Torne his briggad, spoiled a number at once, as doubtlesse the devilish invention did within Walestine, his leaguer at this time.”

THE petard is a machine made use of to burst open gates, draw-bridges and doors of arsenals or fortresses and castles attacked by surprise.

It is a kind of iron mortar of the form of a truncated cone, or that of a bell, with a touch-hole in the centre of the breech, and four handles for fastening it to its madrier : petards were of different sizes, according to the uses for which they were designed ; a small one sixteen lines thick at the breech, and eight or nine at the mouth ; its caliber five inches at the breech, and eight at the mouth ; its length from ten inches to a foot long, weighed about sixty pounds, and was the best size for general use.

THE manner of loading it was this ; it was to be filled nearly full with the best gunpowder, and then covered with wadding, and after-



THE PETARD.



wards by a wooden trencher exactly fitted to its caliber ; after this, it was to be driven with seven or eight strokes of a wooden mallet, care being taken not to break the grains of the powder (k) : the remainder of the petard was filled with yellow wax, or Greek pitch, and covered over with a waxed cloth ; the mouth of the petard was then placed in a cavity turned to receive it, in a strong plank about eighteen inches square, called a madrier, strengthened on the opposite side with a cross band of iron, and a strong iron hook ; to this madrier the petard was fastened by staples passing through the handles before-mentioned ; when it was to be used, the madrier was made fast by its hook, and divers other contrivances, to the gate to be broken, and fire set to the fuse which passed through its vent or touch-hole into the center of the powder ; the effect was generally a fracture in the gate equal to the madrier. In the annexed plate is shewn the back of the madrier, with its hook and cross bands, the petard, its trencher, and fuse ; and under them, the cavity of the madrier, section of the petard, and the staples for fastening it ; two different methods of applying it are also represented.

ACCORDING to Father Daniel, the petard was invented in France, a short time before the year 1579, in which year it was used by Henry IV. of France, then only King of Navarre. In December, 1641, Arundel castle was taken by the parliamentary forces under Sir William Walter and Colonel Browne, who coming unexpectedly, and finding the castle gate shut, blew it open with a petard (l).

---

(k) SEVERAL authors recommend driving in the powder with a force that must have broken the corns of the powder, in which case it is doubtful whether it would have had its intended effect ; others recommend moistening the powder with spirits of wine, and afterwards drying it in the sun, in order to make it stronger, and then to sprinkle every layer of powder of two inches thick with mercury, laying the powder on it, and pressing it down ; then sprinkling it again with mercury, and continuing the same operation till the petard is filled.

THE best effect would probably be produced by filling the petard loosely with good powder, the fire would thereby be more quickly communicated.

(l) SEE *Vicar's Parliamentary Chronicle, God in the Mount*, p. 231.

THE infernals were floating mines constructed in the bodies of ships or boats; the first inventor of them, or, at least, the first who put them in practice was, Frederick Jambelli, an Italian engineer; at the siege of Antwerp, by the Spaniards, under Alexander, Prince of Parma, in the year 1585: a very particular and interesting relation of their wonderful effects is given by Strada, in his History of the Belgic War.

THE great destruction made by these caused several others to be tried, but none of them by any means succeeded. At Dunkirk, and St. Maloes, they were tried by the English; at Havre de Grace by the English and Dutch, under King William; and one was constructed by the French, to be used against Algiers, in 1688, but was not made use of.

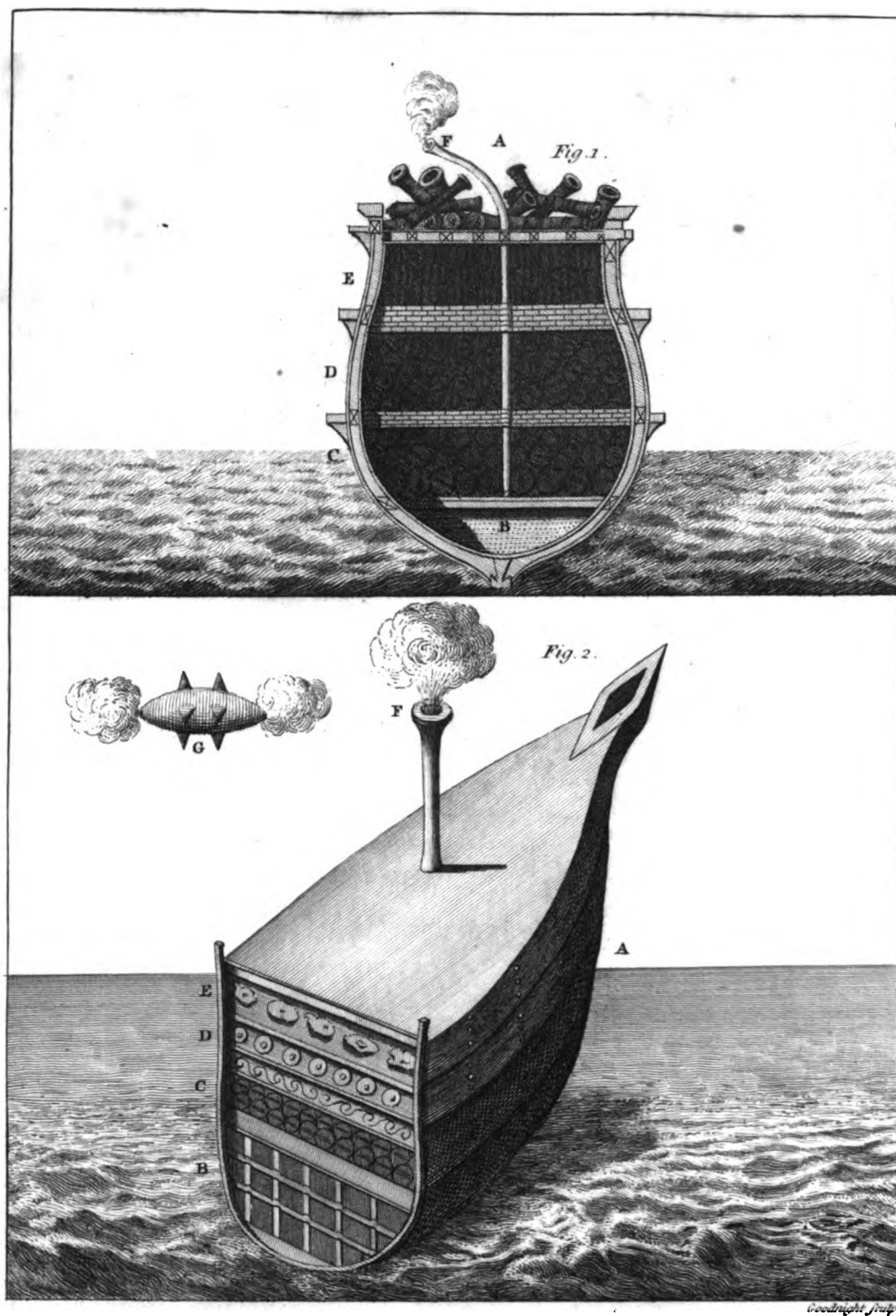
IN St. Remi's Memoirs of Artillery, there is a section and view of the infernal used by the Dutch and English at St. Maloes, which is copied in this work; with it is the following description; fig. 1. A, section or profile of the machine; B, bottom of the vessel filled with sand; C, lower deck filled with twenty thousand pounds of powder, with a covering of masonry a foot thick; D, second deck furnished with six hundred bombs and carcasses, having two feet of masonry over it; E, third deck above the gaillard, furnished with fifty barrils, hooped with iron, filled full of all sorts of fireworks.

F, CANAL, or tube for conducting the fire to the powder, and to the priming; G, fig. 2, iron instruments, fifty in number, filled with fireworks, and armed with points, whereby they would, if they fell on wood, stick fast to it.

THE machine or vessel was thirty-four feet in length, eighteen in height, and drew nine feet water; the upper deck was covered with old iron cannon and langridge, it broke a great number of windows and uncovered many houses without any other effect; one part of the vessel did not blow up; by what remained its construction was known.

IN no department of the army or of military science has so great improvement and increase been made as in the artillery; particularly





*The INFERNAL, used by the English at S.<sup>t</sup> Malo's.*



within the last fifty years \*. Instead of being merely an appendage to an army, the artillery is now the principal arm by which the success of campaigns and the fate of battles is decided. In the sixteenth century, according to Macchiavel, the small number of pieces of ordnance attached to an army seldom made more than one discharge; the troops were so awkward in the management of their clumsy guns, that the cavalry in general was able to charge them, before they could load again, after once firing. From this moment the artillery could have no share in the action. But now, besides the guns attached to each battalion, whole brigades of ordnance are employed, and combine their movements with those of the other parts of an army.

THE royal regiment of artillery does not date its establishment beyond the commencement of the present century. From small beginnings it has gradually been augmented to five battalions, each consisting of 10 companies and above 1200 officers and men. There is besides a battalion of artillery invalids, and two companies stationed in the East Indies.

\* IN 1745 the whole of our artillery, employed in the campaign against the French in Flanders, consisted of the following pieces :

10 Six-pounders,	}	Heavy metal.
27 Three ditto,		
6 Gallopers.		
4 Eight-inch howitzers.		

---

Total 47

---

THE gradual augmentation may be seen from the following return of the ordnance in Germany, anno 1762.

18 Twelve-pounders, heavy, medium and light.
58 Six-pounders, of which 24 heavy and 34 light.
4 Royal howitzers.
8 Eight-inch mortars.

---

Total 88

---



THE most novel institution in this branch of the military art is the horse-artillery, by which the force of cavalry and ordnance is united, and the most rapid movements executed with machines, that were once so cumbrous. Frederick II., in his last war, first mounted some artillery men on horseback; but it was the French, who, at the commencement of the present, brought this institution to the improved state in which it now is, and so forcibly demonstrated its utility and efficacy, that it has been introduced into several other countries. The British government was among the first to adopt it; and we have now six troops of horse-artillery, not inferior to those of a prior establishment \*.

\* BRIGADE of Horse-Artillery, six troops;

Colonel - - - - -	1	Bombardiers - - - - -	42
Lieutenant-Colonels - - - - -	2	Gunners - - - - -	582
Major - - - - -	1	Gunner-Drivers - - - - -	426
Captains - - - - -	6	Farriers - - - - -	24
Captain-Lieutenants - - - - -	6	Smiths - - - - -	6
First Lieutenants - - - - -	12	Collar-Makers - - - - -	12
Second Lieutenants - - - - -	6	Wheelers - - - - -	6
Adjutant - - - - -	1	Trumpeters - - - - -	6
Quarter-Master - - - - -	1		
Surgeon - - - - -	1		1195
Assistant-Surgeons - - - - -	4		
Riding-Master - - - - -	1		
Serjeant-Majors - - - - -	6		
Quarter-Master Serjeants - - - - -	7		
Serjeants - - - - -	18		
Corporals - - - - -	18		

		Horses.	
		Riding - - -	618
		Draft - - -	858
			1476



END OF THE FIRST VOLUME.









